



3 1761 04117 1596











HOW TO LEARN RUSSIAN.

---

A MANUAL

FOR

STUDENTS OF RUSSIAN.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

---

*Crown 8vo, pp. 126, cloth. Price 5s.*

KEY TO THE EXERCISES OF THE MANUAL  
FOR STUDENTS IN RUSSIAN.

---

*Crown 8vo, pp. viii—314, cloth. Price 10s. 6d.*

A GRADUATED RUSSIAN READER,

WITH A

*Vocabulary of all the Russian Words contained in it.*

---

LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.



# HOW TO LEARN RUSSIAN.

---

## A MANUAL

FOR

## STUDENTS OF RUSSIAN.

Based upon the Ollendorffian System of Teaching Languages,  
and Adapted for Self-Instruction.

BY

HENRY RIOLA,

PROFESSOR OF THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE AT THE STAFF COLLEGE.

WITH A PREFACE

BY

W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A.

~~~~~  
Fourth, Revised, Edition.  
~~~~~

LONDON :

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

1890.

[*All rights reserved.*]

38226  
22/10/96.

Лондонъ :

Печатано въ типографіи Гильберта и Ривингтона  
52, Ст. Джонсъ Скверъ, Клеркенвелъ.



## PREFACE

BY

W. R. S. RALSTON, ESQ., M.A.

---

HITHERTO students of Russian who attempted to learn the language without the help of a teacher have been met by a grave initial difficulty — the want of a good Grammar. As a general rule they availed themselves of Reiff's "English-Russian Grammar," but it left much to be desired. There existed, it is true, in French and German, Grammars on the Ollendorff System, but in English there was little aid to be obtained beyond what Reiff could give. In order to meet the demand caused by the growing interest in the Russian language—a language which has been neglected in a manner for which it is difficult to account, but to which political circumstances have lately given a novel importance—Mr. Trübner has caused the present work to be prepared, and he has asked me to supply it with a few lines of Preface, which I do willingly.

I am far from thinking Ollendorff's System the best possible, but in the present instance there was not much choice. For Mr. Riola's present work, which is based upon that system, there will doubtless be a demand,

there being numbers of students who wish to gain some acquaintance with Russian, but who are unable, if living in the country, to find a master. To them the present work will be practically useful, whereas a scientific Grammar, such as would satisfy a linguist, would be of little value to the general public, and would command little or no sale.

I can vouch, from personal knowledge, for the fact that Mr. Riola has performed his work most conscientiously, having taken very great pains to elucidate what in previous works on the subject was left obscure, and having, I think, succeeded in rendering comparatively easy what has generally been considered a difficult task. I shall be glad indeed if I find it serves the purpose of aiding those readers who take an intelligent interest in a language spoken by forty millions of people, a language rich, sonorous and lucid, and which is the key to a vigorous young literature, destined, I am sure, to make its voice widely heard. The greater the number in England of Students of Russian, the more Englishmen will there be free from the extraordinary ignorance about all things Russian which now makes itself so widely felt.

W. R. S. RALSTON.

8, ALFRED PLACE,

*April 25, 1878.*



## AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

---

THE almost total neglect that the Russian Language has hitherto met with in this country is capable of two explanations, one of which may be said to include the other, namely, its supposed insurmountable difficulties and the want of a good Grammar. On the first point, suffice it to say that there is nothing—absolutely nothing—which should deter the student. The prominent features of the language are clearness and methodical arrangement. If the contrary have been found to be the case, it is owing to no other causes than the defective methods and the insufficient or faulty explanations presented by the Grammars hitherto published both in this country and on the Continent.

Now the fact is well worthy of notice that while, on the one hand, English authors in every department of History, Fiction and Poetry are known and appreciated throughout the length and breadth of the Russian Empire; on the other hand, save to a select few, the bulk of a new, vigorous and original literature, comprising invaluable geographical, ethnological and linguistical treasures, the product of Slavonic life, thought and culture as developed in Russia, has imparted nothing to the educated classes of England beyond a few paltry translations and a few names. What reasons are we to assign for this failure of reciprocity? We have not far to seek. The student of Russian, however diligent, is confronted at the outset by a paucity of Grammars. But not only is his choice thus limited, but even should he select

Reiff's, as the one best known, he will search through its pages in vain for the solution of the difficulties he may encounter in his course of reading. If to this we add, as is too often the case, a teacher unable to enlighten him, what wonder that, in the face of ever new and recurring obstacles and discouragements, he should relinquish altogether the study, under the despairing conviction that the chief phenomena of the language are beyond the reach of comprehension and illustration?

I confidently repeat, however, that this is far from being the case, and that Russian is easy of acquirement by dint of average diligence and perseverance. It now remains for me to state briefly in what respects I have opened new paths, or made old ones less rugged, for the attainment of this object.

The experience of a course of tuition of this my native language during several years in London has convinced me that Ollendorff's Method, qualified by some necessary modifications, is the one most suitable for all classes of learners. On its merits it is not for me to expatiate here: they have stood the test of time; and leaving this point for the present, I proceed to indicate the special features which, I trust, render this work far superior to those published in France or Germany.

To begin with Pronunciation, I have devoted a minute and exhaustive treatise, supplemented with tables of reference, to the powers of the Alphabet, both proper and accidental. One observation, however, is here necessary. Some Grammarians have sought to represent the ambiguous distinctions of unaccented vowels by numerical indications. To make my meaning clear, the reader must know that Russian is similar to English in this respect. For instance,



in "admirable," the vowel-sounds of the three last syllables are somewhat equivocal, although Walker attempted to assign a fixity to each in this and in all other examples. Again, take *a* in "Indian." Is not its proper sound purely conventional? Now it must be understood that Russian polysyllables are open to analogous observations. Nevertheless, I have considered it my duty to refrain from laying down rules thereon, feeling convinced that all such attempts must prove not only burdensome to the memory, but utterly illusory and abortive. These niceties, the result doubtless of rapidity of colloquial utterance, are influenced, be it remembered, by nature, education, caprice, and a variety of other causes, and defy classification. Under the guidance of a native, they are readily apprehended and retained; and I will add, for the benefit of the self-instructor, that if he thoroughly possess the distinct vowels, both proper and accidental, he may safely let the unaccented ones shift for themselves, and rest assured that his pronunciation will be perfectly intelligible to the ear of any Russian.

In treating of Orthography, I have considered a knowledge of words in which the letter *Ѣ* occurs so indispensable, that I have subjoined a complete list of them, the more so that this letter is a stumbling-block even to many natives.

I cannot too strongly recommend the mastery of inflexions and terminations, inasmuch as they constitute, so to speak, the be-all and end-all of this great Slavonic idiom. This step once passed over, the storing up of roots in the memory becomes an easy and profitable task, and the rules of construction can be digested at leisure. And this object I have constantly borne in mind in the framing of the exercises. I have purposely grouped the most difficult

combinations, in order to bring the learner face to face with this paramount requisite, and that too at the risk of trifling inelegancies and incongruities, especially in the early themes. It is chiefly in this department that the value of Ollendorff's Method becomes apparent. The mere learning of rules, or of any other grammatical exposition, will never impart the faculty of readiness and resource in using the inflexions of a living language, unless a progressive praxis of combination and inversion be superadded. This, however, cannot be afforded by dealing with each part of speech in separate detail, but by a judicious intermixture of all, at the very outset, and thus passing gradually from the simplest to the most complex forms of discourse. That examples, however varied, are valueless without rule or guiding principle, is also true; and on this head I trust that I leave nothing to be desired in point of conciseness and intelligibility. At the same time, throughout the Exercises, I have strenuously and, I hope, successfully aimed at variety of topic and illustration, to the end that the learner who has worked at this branch may find himself in possession, not only of a *copia verborum*, but of a *copia fandi* on subjects of common life, such as he may search for in vain in Manuals of Dialogues and Vocabularies. Exception might possibly be taken by some persons to the frequency of interrogative sentences with *и*; but it cannot be known too soon that herein lies a cardinal point of conception in the Russian mind, affecting especially the construction of interrogative clauses; and unless this point be fully seized by the Englishman, he will fall into grievous blunders in the framing of questions.

My exposition of the Verb is founded on that of the Russian Grammarians most in repute. Some foreign ones



have presumably aimed at journeying by easy stages, by means of minute subdivisions of what they are pleased to misname classes and branches. All such methods are erroneous, and lead to inevitable confusion. The simple and easily retained distinctions are those on which my countrymen have settled, namely, two conjugations, and these subdivided into ten classes, eight of which belong to the first and two to the second conjugation. Besides this, each verb is susceptible of three *branches*—the present, past, and iterative. Thus the verb is the stem from which the branches spring. To these we add only thirteen irregular verbs. All the regular ones I have not failed to illustrate by complete tables of reference.

But inasmuch as the Russian verb possesses Aspects, by whose agency it becomes such a supple instrument of thought as to be unrivalled even by the Greek verb, I felt it my duty to enter into great detail on this point, and I trust that the lessons given on this subject leave nothing to be desired by way of explanation. At the same time, I conceived that I should fail in presenting a full picture of moods and aspects had I stopped there. I have therefore given in the Appendix paradigms of conjugation in all voices, and, by parallel contrasts of aspects, it will be seen at a glance in what particular tense each one is found or wanting. Any mere statement by itself would have afforded less valuable assistance.

The declensions, with copious tables, are given in the Practical Part, according to gender, as being most suited to the requirements of a beginner. In the Appendix, however, for those already initiated, Nouns are divided into two classes, according to the inflexions of the genitive, as laid down by Russian Grammarians.

A list of Adverbs and Prepositions, with their govern-

ment, are to be found, with copious illustrations, and leave, I hope, nothing unnoticed in this vital part of Syntax.

Idiomatic forms, a constant source of embarrassment, are fully grappled with and lucidly explained throughout the work. I would point especially to those of *было* and *бывало*, which, although of frequent recurrence both in writing and speaking, have hitherto failed in securing their due share of attention.

On the Order of Words no less than two lessons are given, with much detail and appropriate exercises and examples. It seemed to me that a subject so important, embracing as it does the arrangement and structure of periods, and presenting wide divergences from the genius of the English language, was deserving of nothing short of a separate and somewhat lengthy treatise.

It were perhaps tedious to enumerate the other features of this work; they can be easily discovered by a fair and intelligent comparison with any of its predecessors. I will only state, in addition, that I have steadily kept in view the object of self-tuition, and have constantly endeavoured to afford every assistance in cases where oral teaching might be either unattainable or insufficient.

After all, it must be borne in mind that the merits or the shortcomings of an undertaking like the present are unaffected by the praise or censure of critics alone, however discerning. Their true test and arbiter is time, upon whose verdict I confidently rely. I trust, too, that my humble labours may prove of some assistance in promoting the interchange of enlightenment between two great nations, on whose mutual esteem and friendship so much depends the welfare of the world.

HENRY RIOLA.



# Russian Written Alphabet

А, а	М, м.	Ш, ш.
Б, Б, б.	Н, н.	Щ, щ.
В, В, в.	О, о	Ъ, ъ.
Г, г, г.	П, П, п.	С, с
Д, Д, д	Р, Р, р.	С, с, в. б.
Е, е.	С, с.	Х, х, ѣ
Ж, ж, ѣ.	Т, Т, т.	З, з
И, и, з.	У, у.	Ю, ю.
К, к.	Ф, Ф, ф, ф.	Я, я.
Л, л.	Х, Х, х, х.	О, о
	Ц, ц.	У, у
	Ч, ч.	Щ, щ.

Русская Словесность, бывшая  
 долгое время подражательною,  
 со времени Пушкина и  
 Гоголя становится вполне  
 национальною и самобытною.





## DIVISION OF THE LETTERS OF THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

THERE are in the Russian Alphabet thirty-six letters, of which twelve are vowels, twenty-one are consonants, and three are semivowels.

The vowels (гласныя буквы) are :

а, е, и, і, о, у, ы, ѣ, э, ю, я, v.

It may be well to note that the following five, е, ѣ, я, ю, и are also called diphthongs (двугласныя).

The twenty-one consonants (согласныя буквы) are :

б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ.

The three semivowels (полугласныя буквы) are :

ъ, ь, й.

The English Alphabet has no letters corresponding to the following in the Russian Alphabet :

ы, ѣ, я, ѳ, ь, й, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ, v.

The Russian Alphabet, on the other hand, has not the English j, w, x, the н mute, or the sounds of *th* as in the English words *that* and *thin*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

NOTE.—Each syllable in English words, representing the Russian pronunciation, should be pronounced as is directed in Table on p. 6 ; and until the student is thoroughly sure of the correct sound of every Russian letter, he should always consult that table. By following closely the sounds as they are given he will be able, without the assistance of a teacher, to pronounce so as to be understood even by uneducated Russians.

## A. THE VOWELS (ГЛАСНЫЯ БҰКВЫ).

## A, a.

*Proper Sounds.*

This vowel, when accented, is pronounced :

1. as the *a* in the following English words : *art, far, star* ; as, for example,

даръ, *dar*, 'the gift ;' далá, *da-la*, 'gave.'

2. When not accented is pronounced in the same way, but somewhat weaker, and approaching the sound of *a* in the English word *fat* ; as,

наша, *na-sha*, 'our ;' páра, *para*, 'the pair.'

*Accidental Sounds.*

1. When not accented in the middle of a word, after the hissing consonants ж, ч, ш, щ, the vowel *a* is pronounced as the *e* in the words *met, bet* :

ко́жа, *kozhe*, 'the skin ;' часы́, *che-sy*, 'the watch.'

ло́шадь, *loshedí*, 'a horse ;' пи́ща, *pësh-cha*, 'the food.'

2. When accented in the termination *аю* of the genitive case of adjectives, the vowel *a* is pronounced like the *o* in the words *no, blow* :

ду́рнáго, *door-no-ta*, 'of bad ;'

нѣ́мáго, *ne-mo-ta*, 'of dumb.'

It should be observed that at the end of words the vowel *a*, whether accented or not, always retains its proper sound of *a*, as in *far* or *fat*.

## E, e.

*Proper Sounds.*

This soft vowel after a consonant has—

1. The sound of *e*, as in the words *met, bet* :

бе́регъ, *be-reg*, 'the shore ;'

че́ло, *che-lo*, 'the brow.'



NOTE.—In the above examples of *met* and *bet* the sound of Russian *e* is well represented ; but after some other consonants an Englishman is apt to pronounce the *e* much harder than is required. It must therefore be born in mind that the *e* should always be heard soft, as if the consonant were followed by the English *yea* ; thus *нетъ*, *детъ*, *летъ*, *тетъ* should not be pronounced as the English *net*, *det*, *let*, *tet*, but as if they were written with *yea*, as *nyeat*, *dyeat*, *lyeat*, *tyeat*, etc.

2. At the beginning of words and after vowels it has the sound of diphthong *ye*, as in the words *yes*, *yellow* :

ѣли, *yes-lé*, 'if ;'    емý, *ye-moo*, 'to him.'

*Accidental Sounds.*

- I. The diphthong *e* (*ye*) is pronounced also like *yo* (*ë*) :

1. When accented, as in the words *yonder*, *yoke* :

ѣлка, *yo-l-ka*, 'the fir ;'

моë, *ma-yo*, 'mine.'

2. In the accented terminations *еуъ*, *емѡ*, *емѡ*, *еме* of the present tense of verbs :

даёшь, *da-yosh*, 'thou givest ;'

берётъ, *be-ryot*, 'he takes.'

- II. After the consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, *ц*, the vowel *e* when accented has the sound of *o* in the following cases :

1. At the end of words :

лицѣ, *lë-tso*, 'the face.'

2. When coming before a consonant, which is followed by one of the hard vowels *а*, *о*, *у*, *ы*, or *ѡ* :

счѣтъ, *s-chot*, 'the account.'

- III. It sounds like *yo* or *o* in the accented termination *ёю* or *ёу* of the instrumental case of feminine nouns :

зем.лѣю, *zem-lyo-u*, 'with the land ;'

душѣю, *doo-sho-u*, 'by the soul ;'

and, when accented, before the gutturals *г, к, х* and the hissing letters *ж* and *ш* :

ѣ—далѣкъ, *da-lyok*, 'distant;'

о—жѣгъ, *zhog*, 'burnt.'

OBS.—Many writers place a diæresis (¨) over the letter *ѣ* when it is to be pronounced as *yo* or *o*. In order therefore to facilitate the pronunciation of this letter, whenever in this work the letter *e* is pronounced as *yo* or *o*, a diæresis (¨) will be placed over it, and in such case it will be used instead of the tonic accent.

## И, и.

### *Proper Sound.*

When by itself, at the beginning of a word or when it follows a consonant, this vowel is pronounced as the English *é* in the words *me*, *be* (*mě*, *bě*) :

Ивѣнъ, *é-can*, 'John;'

иди, *é-dé*, 'go.'

### *Accidental Sound.*

After the semivowel *ѵ*, or after *і* (dotted), the vowel *и* has the sound of the diphthong *yé* :

статѣи, *stati-yé*, 'the articles;'

Марѣи, *maré-yé*, 'of Mary.'

## І, і.

This vowel has the same sound as the preceding letter *и*, but it must always be followed by another vowel :

лінія, *lě-ně-ya*, 'the line;'

мнѣніе, *mne-ně-ye*, 'the opinion.'

OBS.—The only instance in which this letter is found standing before a consonant is in the word *миръ*, *měr*, 'the world;'<sup>9</sup> in order to distinguish it from the similar word, *миръ*, *mér*, 'the peace.'

## O, o.

*Proper Sound.*

This vowel when accented has the sound of *o*, as in the words *on, pot*:

домъ, *dom*, 'a house ;'  
законъ, *za-kon*, 'the law.'

*Accidental Sound.*

When unaccented it is pronounced like *a* short in *fat*:

обманъ, *ab-man*, 'the deception ;'  
основать, *as-na-rati*, 'to found.'

## Y, y.

The corresponding sound of this vowel in English is *oo*, as in *moon, book*:

утро, *oot-ra*, 'the morning ;'  
дубъ, *doob*, 'the oak.'

## Ы, ы.

*Proper Sounds.*

This hard vowel, the Russian hard *u* or the English *e* hard, has a sound, the perfect idea of which cannot be rendered in English words, as the language does not possess so hard a sound as the vowel *ы*. The *y* in the words *pity, charity*, or *ea* in *tea*, approximately represent it. An Englishman, after hearing this vowel pronounced by a Russian, can easily catch it:

ты, *ty*, or *tea*, 'thou ;'  
дыръ, *dyr*, or *dear*, 'of holes.'

*Accidental Sound.*

The vowel *ы* after the labial consonants sounds nearly like *we*:

вы, *we*, 'you ;'  
былъ, *bwel*, 'was ;'  
рылъ, *rwel*, 'dug.'



NOTE.—The hard vowel *u* will be represented in English by the letter *y*.

## Ѣ, Ѣ.

### *Proper Sounds.*

This soft vowel has the same sound as the Russian *e*, or English *e* as in *met*, or *ye* as in *yes*, with the exception that it is never pronounced as *o*.

OBS.—The same can be said of *ѣ* as of *e*; i.e. *нѣтъ, дѣтъ, лѣтъ*, etc. must be pronounced not as *net, det, let*, etc., but as if they were written *nyeat, dyeat, lyeat*, etc.

### *Accidental Sound.*

As *yo*, when accented, it is heard only in the following words:

звѣзды, *zyoz-dy*, 'stars ;'  
гнѣзда, *gnyoz-da*, 'nests ;'  
обрѣлъ, *ab-ryol*, 'he found ;'  
двѣлъ, *tsyol*, 'he flourished ;'  
сѣдла, *syod-la*, 'the saddles.'

And also in their derivatives and compounds, as :

звѣздочка, *zyoz-doch-ka*, 'little star ;'  
приобрѣлъ, *prѣ-ob-ryol*, 'acquired.'

## Э, э.

This vowel has the same sound as the *e* in the word *end* and it is never pronounced as the diphthong *ye*. At the beginning of words and after vowels, therefore, whenever the diphthong sound of *ye* is not wanted, the vowel must be used.

The following Russian words only are written with *э* :

это́тъ, э́та, э́то, 'this ;'  
э́такій, э́дакій, 'such,' 'such like ;'  
э́такъ, 'so,' 'thus ;'  
э́кій, э́къ, 'what (a man).'

OBS.—There are some other words beginning with the letter э, but they are of foreign origin, mostly Greek, and have merely been adopted by the Russian language, as :

эра, *era*, ‘era.’

экзаменъ, *ek-za-men*, ‘the examination ;’

эшафотъ, *e-sha-fot*, ‘the scaffold,’ etc.

## Ю, ю.

### *Proper Sound.*

1. At the beginning of words, and after vowels or semi-vowels, the vowel ю has exactly the same sound as the English *u* in the words *use*, or *ew* in the words *pew*, *new*.

югъ, *ug*, *youg*, ‘the south ;’

даю, *da-u*, *da-you*, ‘I give ;’

пью, *p-u*, *peu*, ‘I drink.’

2. After consonants, ю has no longer the sound of the diphthong *u* (*you*), but approaches it, like *u* in the word *tube* :

говорю, *ga-ra-ru*, ‘I speak ;’

люблю, *lub-lu*, ‘I love.’

OBS.—Particular care should be taken that ю should never pronounced as the English *u* in *full*, *bull*, etc., but always in *tube*.

### *Accidental Sound.*

words which have come from the French language, ю retains the sound of French *u* :

Брюссель, ‘Brussels ;’

Дюма, ‘Dumas.’

NOTE.—The English *u* represents the Russian ю.

## Я, я.

### *Proper Sound.*

1. At the beginning of words and after vowels and semi-

vowels, this letter when accented has the sound of the diphthong *ya*, as in the word *yard* :

яма, *ya-ma*, 'hole ;'

дѣлая, *de-la-ya*, 'doing.'

2. After consonants the vowel *я* is no longer pronounced as diphthong *ya*, but when accented it sounds very much like *ya* :

любя, *lu-by-a*, 'loving ;'

заря, *za-ry-a*, 'the dawn ;'

OBS.—At the end of words the vowel *я*, whether accented or not, retains its proper sound of *ya* : except in the suffix *ся* in reflexive verbs pronounced *sa*.

короля, *ka-ra-ly-a*, 'of the king ;'

потеря, *pa-te-ry-a*, 'the loss.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

1. At the beginning of words, and after vowels or semi-vowels, when unaccented the vowel *я* is pronounced as *ye* in the word *yes* :

яйцо, *ye-y-tso*, 'an egg ;'

заяць, *za-yets*, 'the hare ;'

таяль, *ta-yel*, 'melted.'

2. After consonants, and when unaccented, it has the sound of the simple vowel *e*, as in *met* :

память, *pa-met*, 'the memory ;'

потеряно, *pa-te-re-na*, 'lost.'

## V, v.

This vowel never changes its natural sound of *и* (English *é*), and is pronounced as the English *é* in the words *bé*, *mé*.

OBS.—It is used in but very few words, derived from the Greek, as *мύρο*, *впостась*, etc.



## В. THE CONSONANTS (СОГЛАСНЫЯ БУКВЫ).

### *Proper Sound.*

THE consonants б, в, д, з have the same sound as the English *b, v, d, z*. All these consonants retain their proper sound before vowels, or when they are followed by a liquid or by any other weak consonant.

#### *Before vowels.*

БѢДА, *be-da*, 'ill-luck ;'  
 ВІДѢТЬ, *vê-del*, 'he saw ;'  
 ДАТЬ, *dal*, 'he gave ;'  
 ЗОВѢ, *zof*, 'the call.'

#### *Before liquid and weak consonants.*

БЛАГО, *bla-ha*, 'good ;'  
 ВНЕ, *vne*, 'out ;'  
 ДЛЯ, *dlya*, 'for ;'  
 ЗРИТЬ, *zrêt*, 'he sees.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

All the above letters at the end of words ending with the hard semivowel ь, or when placed before strong consonants, take the sound of their corresponding letters :

П, Ф, Т, С  
 p, f, t, s

#### *Before ь at the end of words.*

БОБЬ, *bor*, 'the bean ;'  
 РОВЬ, *rof*, 'the ditch ;'  
 САДЬ, *sat*, 'the garden ;'  
 ВОЗЬ, *vos*, 'the cart.'

#### *Before hard consonants.*

БАБКА, *báp-ka*, 'the knuckle ;'  
 ЛОДКА, *lót-ka*, 'the boat ;'  
 ЛОВКО, *lof-ka*, 'cleverly ;'  
 СВЯЗКА, *svyas-ka*, 'the bundle.'

## Ж, ж.

As there is no equivalent letter in the English Alphabet for this consonant, *zh* will represent the letter Ж.

The proper sound of this consonant is the same as the French *j* in the word *jour*.

(

The sound of *s* in the English words *treasure*, *pleasure*, of the sound of *z* as in the words *glazier*, *grazier*, represent well the sound of the consonant ж.

*Proper Sound.*

Before a vowel, or before a liquid, or any other weak consonant, the letter ж retains its proper sound :

ЖИЛЪ, *zhêl*, 'he lived ;'

ЖМУ, *zhmoo*, 'I press.'

*Accidental Sound.*

At the end of a word ending in Ъ, or Ь, or before a strong consonant, the ж is pronounced like its corresponding letter ш (*sh*), as :

НОЖЪ, *knife*, is pronounced 'nosh ;'

НОЖКА, *little foot*, is pronounced 'noshka.'

Г, Г.

*Proper Sound.*

1. The sound of this consonant is generally the same as that of the English *g* before *a*, *o*, *r*, as in *game*, *God*, *grass* :

ГОДЪ, *god*, 'the year ;'

ГАДЪ, *gad*, 'the reptile ;'

ГРЪША, *groo-sha*, 'the pear.'

2. Г aspirated is pronounced like the English *h* in *hay*, *habit* :

ГОСПОДИ, *hós-podé*, 'God ;'

БЛАГО, *bla-ha*, 'well.'

Obs.—At one time the Russian language had only the *r* aspirated, as in the words *hay*, *habit* ; but in the language of the present day it is no longer used, except in a few

words. as Гóсподи, благо, the former *г* being replaced by *г* hard, as the *g* in *God, game, grass*.

### *Accidental Sounds.*

1. When the letter *г* ends a word, or is placed before the consonant *ш*, it sounds very nearly like *к* :

кругъ, *krook*, 'the circle ;'  
помóгъ, *pa-mok*, 'he helped.'

Obs.—Exceptions to this rule are met with in the words Богъ and убогъ, wherein *г* is not pronounced as *к*, but as *х* (*kʰ* or German *ch*) :

Богъ, *bokh,—boch*, 'God ;'  
убóгъ, *oo-bokh,—oo-boch*, 'poor.'

2. Before the consonants *к* and *т* (*k, t*) *г* is pronounced as *х* (*kʰ*) as :

лѣгкó, *lekh-ko*, 'easily ;'  
нóгти, *nokh-tě*, 'the nails.'

3. In foreign words ending in *ргъ* the sound of *х* (*kʰ*) is heard instead of *г*, as in

Петербúргъ, *pe-ter-boorkh*, 'St. Petersburg ;'  
Динабúргъ, *dě-na-boorkh*, 'Dunaburg.'

4. *Г* is pronounced as *в* (*v*) in the terminations *аго, яго, оро, еро* of the genitive case of Adjectives or Pronouns :

дóбраго, *do-bra-ra*, 'of good ;'  
сíняго, *sě-nya-ra*, 'of blue ;'  
тогó, *ta-ro*, 'of that ;'  
моегó, *ma-ye-ro*, 'of mine.'

## K, К.

### *Proper Sound.*

The sound of this consonant is exactly like the English *c*



hard before the vowels *a, o*, as in the words *can, come*, or the English *k* in the words *key, king* :

КОТЬ, *kot*, 'the cat ;'

КАКЪ, *kak*, 'how ;'

КРИКЪ, *krèk*, 'the cry.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

The accidental. sounds of *к* are *г* or *х*. When the letter *к* occurs in the preposition *къ* before the feeble consonants *б, д, ж, з*, it has the sound of its corresponding consonant *г*, as :

КЪ БО́гу, *g'* *bo-hoo*, 'to God ;'

КЪ ДО́му, *g'* *do-moo*, 'to the house ;'

КЪ ЖЕ́нѣ, *g'* *zhène*, 'to the wife ;'

КЪ ЗЕМЛѣ, *g'* *zémle*, 'to the earth.'

When before the strong consonants *к, т, ч*, the letter *к* is pronounced like *х* (*kh*, German *ch*), as :

КТО, *khto*, 'who ;'

КЪ КО́му, *kh ka-moo*, 'to whom ;'

КЪ ЧА́су, *kh cha-soo*, 'to the hour.'

NOTE.—The letter *к* will be represented by the English *k*

## C, T.

### *Proper Sound.*

These consonants have the same sound as the English letters *s* and *t* in the words *sister, sat, cross, tar, trot*.

СЛОВО, *slo-va*, 'the word ;'

ИСТО́рія, *ès-to-rè-ya*, 'history ;'

ТРАВА́, *tra-va*, 'the grass ;'

ТО́тъ, *tot*, 'that.'

### *Accidental Sounds.*

Before *б, г, д, ж, з*, the letters *с* and *т* take the sound of their corresponding consonants *з* and *д*, as in

сбродъ, *zbrod*, 'the mob ;'  
 сговѣръ, *zga-vor*, 'the betrothal ;'  
 сдать, *zda*, 'he gave up ;'  
 сжѣгъ, *z-zhog*, 'he burnt ;'  
 сзади, *z-zadě*, 'from behind ;'  
 отдавъ, *od-dal*, 'he gave up.'

Before the hissing consonants ш and ч, the letter c is pronounced nearly like ш (*sh*), as :

съ шапкой, *sh' shap-koy*, 'with the cap ;'  
 съ часу, *sh' cha-soo*, 'from the hour.'

When *cr* is followed by *н*, the consonant *т* is not heard at all, as in the English word *listen*, when the *t*, as in Russian, is not heard :

чѣстный, *ches-nay*, 'honest ;'  
 цѣстный, *pos-nay*, 'meagre.'

## П, Ф

have corresponding sounds in the English letters *p* and *f*, as in *post*, *proper* ; *far*, *grief* :

пара, *pa-ra*, 'a pair ;'  
 проза, *pro-za*, 'prose ;'  
 франція, *fran-tsě-ya*, 'France ;'  
 фонари, *fa-na-rě*, 'the lanterns.'

## Х, х.

The sound of this letter is the same as the German *ch* :

ихъ, *ěch*—*ěkh*, 'them ;'  
 хоръ, *chor*—*chor*, 'the choir ;'  
 духъ, *dooch*—*dookh*, 'the spirit.'

NOTE.—The letter *x* will be represented by *kh*.

## III, ш.

The English double consonant *sh*, as in the words *she*, *dish*, represents this consonant:

шипъ, *shêp*, 'thorn;'

мышъ, *mysh*, 'mice;'

душá *doo-sha*, 'soul.'

## Ш, ш.

The English language has no such sound as ш. This letter, however, being composed of the two combined sounds of *sh* and *ch* (*shch*), both of which are in the English language, a little practice only is needed to acquire a perfect pronunciation of this compound consonant. Particular attention must be drawn to the fact that foreigners have always a tendency to commence this consonant with the single letter *s*, instead of the *sh*. Students should therefore be careful in the pronunciation of this letter, and avoid the simple sound of *s*.

*Proper Sound.*

щитъ, *shchêt*, 'the shield;'

пища, *pêsh-cha*, 'the food;'

тащилъ, *tash-chêl*, 'he dragged.'

*Accidental Sound.*

The consonant ш, when followed by н, is pronounced as ш (*sh*), as in

помощникъ, *pa-mosh-nêk*, 'assistant;'

овощный, *o-vash-nay*, 'vegetable.'

## Ч, ч.

*Proper Sound.*

This letter has exactly the same sound as the English double consonant *ch* in the words *church*, *chose*, *which*:

чудо, *choo-da*, 'marvel;'

лечу, *le-choo*, 'I fly;'

ночи, *no-chê*, 'nights.'



*Accidental Sound.*

Before the consonants т and н it is pronounced as ш (*sh*) :

что, *shto*, 'what ;'

нарóчно, *na-rosh-na*, 'expressly.'

## Ц, ц.

The proper sound of this consonant is the same as the German *ç* ; its sound is as *tz* in the noun *howitzer*.

цѣна, *tse-na*, 'price ;'

дворецъ, *dva-rets*, 'palace ;'

лицо, *lê-tso*, 'face.'

NOTE.—The letter ц will be represented by *ts*.

## Θ, θ.

This consonant (the English *ph*) has the same sound as *f*, but is used only in words derived from the Greek, as :

Аѳѣны, *a-phê-ny*, 'Athens ;'

Апоѳебъ, *a-po-phê-oz*, 'apotheosis ;'

Θебдоръ, *phe-o-dor*, 'Theodore ;'

каллиграѳія, *kal-lê-gra-phê-ya*, 'caligraphy.'

## Л л, М м, Н н, Р р.

These four liquid consonants have the same sound as the English *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* in the words *land*, *me*, *name*, *road* ; *ball*, *drum*, *on*, *bar* :

лѣсъ, дѣло, *less*, *dê-la*, 'the forest, business ;'

мáло, зимá, *mala*, *zê-ma*, 'a little, the winter ;'

нашъ, она, *nash*, *a-na*, 'our, she ;'

родъ, бѣря, *rod*, *boo-rya*, 'the gender, the storm.'

OBS. 1.—Before the hard vowels or strong consonants л is heard much more distinctly or much stronger than it is elsewhere ; in fact as though it were double, as in the English words *well*, *Lloyd*.

OBS. 2.—P is like the Irish *r*, i.e. the rolling produced by the tip of the tongue coming against the roof of the mouth and upper front teeth needs to be stronger than it usually is with the English *r*.

### C. THE SEMIVOWELS (Полугласныя).

#### Ъ, Ъ, and Й.

Ъ.—The hard semi-vowel *ъ* has no sound whatever when by itself; it can be placed only at the end of a syllable or word, and in that case it gives to the preceding consonant a strong harsh sound, as if the consonant were pronounced with an effort, or were doubled, as *ll* in *roll*, *ball*, or *rr* in *burr*:

полъ, *poll*, 'floor';  
 стопъ, *stop*, 'stop';  
 золь, *zoll*, 'cross';  
 нотъ, *nott*, 'of notes';  
 поръ, *porr*, 'of pores.'

Ь.—The soft semivowel *ь* gives a very soft, liquid sound to the preceding consonant, as if the latter was followed by the Russian *и* or English *e* mute. The sound of the *n* in the termination *gne*, in the French words *champagne*, *montagne*, *cigogne*, or the sound of *l* in the French words *peril*, *steril*, may approximately represent the sound of the soft semivowel *ь*:

брань, *bragne*, 'contest';  
 кинь, *kigne*, 'throw.'

OBS.—Neither of the above semivowels can be placed after a vowel or at the beginning of a word.

Ъ and Ъ can be met with in the middle of compound words and inflexions only, and in that case they are placed

to indicate that the vowel, which immediately follows, is to be pronounced separately. Thus it appears that the semi-vowels *ъ* and *ь* can be joined to consonants only, and never to vowels.

The *ъ* and *ь*, when they come after the hissing consonants ж, ч, ш, щ, sound nearly alike ; thus, in the words

ножъ, — ложъ

камышъ —мышь,

there is scarcely any difference in sound between жъ and жь, or шъ and шь.

It is well to remark that for an Englishman the hard semivowel *ъ* does not present any difficulty of pronunciation. The same cannot be said of the soft *ь*. Under careful guidance, however, of a Russian teacher, it is readily acquired. For those, however, who may have to study Russian without assistance, the following observation is of importance:—In no case should the tongue touch the front teeth or the front part of the palate; if this be done the pronunciation of any consonant, with the softness required in Russian, would be impossible. In commencing the study of the soft *ь*, the use of the English *i*, as in the word *bit*, pronounced *very* short, is advisable; and the tongue should touch only the side of the teeth, or the side of the palate or cheek :

да́нь, *dani*, ‘tribute;’

бровь, *brovi*, ‘eyebrow

честь, *chesti*, ‘honour;’

бо́ль, *boli*, ‘pain;’

ко́сáрь, *ko-sari*, ‘mower;’

ско́ръ, *scorbi*, ‘grief;’

е́сь, *yesmi*, ‘I am;’

сте́пь, *stepi*, ‘prairie;’

гря́зь, *gryazi*, ‘mud;’

бу́дь, *boodi*, ‘be;’

о́сь, *osi*, ‘axle.’



NOTE.—As the letter *e* represents the Russian letter и, the soft semivowel ь may be represented by *i*, which should however, scarcely be heard.

*Exercise on the pronunciation of the semivowels ь and ъ.*

БѢЛЪ, he beat ;  
 БЫЛЪ, he was ;  
 БЫТЬ, the state ;  
 Господѣ, of gentlemen ;  
 Данѣ, given ;  
 Жарѣ, the heat ;  
 Кровѣ, the roof ;  
 Матѣ, mate (in chess) ;  
 Парѣ, the steam ;  
 Сынѣ, the son.

БѢЛЪ, the ball ;  
 БЫЛЪ, an event ;  
 БЫТЬ, to be ;  
 Господѣ, Lord ;  
 Данѣ, the tribute ;  
 Жарѣ, fry, imp. ;  
 Кровѣ, the blood ;  
 Матѣ, the mother ;  
 Парѣ, steam out, imp. ;  
 Синѣ, blue.

## Й.

This soft semivowel, the Russian и short, has an imperfect sound by itself, and can be distinctly heard only after a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. The letter *y* in the words *may, say, way*, represents the sound of the semivowel й very well :

май, *may*, 'may ;'  
 вѣй, *vey*, 'blow ;'  
 пей, *pey*, 'drink.'

NOTE.—Й will be represented henceforth by the English letter *y*. Although the letter *y* has been already adopted to represent the hard vowel ы, there can be no confusion, as ы can only be placed after consonants, and й only after vowels.

## CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

According to the pronunciation of the letters in Rus-

sian, the vowels are divided into *hard* and *soft*. The semi-vowels are either hard or soft, and the consonants are divided into *sharp*, *flat* and *liquid*.

#### A. THE VOWELS (Гласныя Бѣквы)

1. Hard (дебѣлыя), а, э, о, у, ы.
2. Soft (тѣнкія), я, е or ѣ, и or і, ю, ё.

#### B. THE SEMIVOWELS (Полугласныя Бѣквы).

1. Hard (твѣрдая), ъ.
2. Soft (мѣгкія), ь and й.

#### C. THE CONSONANTS (Согласныя Бѣквы).

1. Sharp (твѣрдыя), ф, п, т, с, ш, к, х, ц, ч, щ, ѳ.
2. Flat (мѣгкія), б, в, г, д, ж, з.
3. Liquid (плѣвныя), л, м, н, р.

Obs.—The liquid consonants, л, м, н, р, may be also called semiconsonants; all other consonants are mute.

The consonants are also, according to their organic formation, divided into :

1. Labials (губныя), б, в, м, п, ф.
2. Palatals (поднёбныя), л, н, р.
3. Dental (зубныя) :
  - a. Linguals (язычныя), д, т, ц.
  - b. Lispings (шепелеватыя), з, с.
  - c. Hissings (шипѣщія), ж, ч, ш, щ.
4. Gutturals (гортанныя), г, к, х

## UNION AND PERMUTATION OF LETTERS.

Two hard vowels are never united together.

The vowels я, е, ю and the semivowel ь never admit before them the consonants г, к, х, nor do they in some instances even admit д, т, з, с.

In the same way the vowel и, in the formation of derivative words, never admits before it г, к, х, ц.

## A. PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

1. д, г, з	} before я, е, и, ю, ь change into	{ ж ч ш щ.
2. т, к, ц		
3. с; х		
4. ст, ск		

## B. PERMUTATION OF VOWELS.

1. я { after г, к, х, ц, ж, ч, ш, щ } а.  
ю { change into } у.
2. ы after ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, х changes into и.
3. о when unaccented after ц, ж, ч, ш, щ, changes into е.\*
4. ѣ after і changes into и

## C. PERMUTATION OF SEMIVOWELS.

1. The semivowel ь after a vowel changes into ѣ.
2. The semivowel ь before a consonant with ѣ changes into е.
3. The semivowel ѣ before two consonants changes into о.
4. The semivowel ѣ before a consonant followed by ѣ changes into е.

---

\* When е is pronounced as *yo* (ѣ) it is usually replaced by о; *аяцѣ, плечѣ*, instead of *аяцѣ, плечѣ*.



## EPENTHESIS (Вста́вка), AND PROSTHESIS (Приста́вка).

The vowels *e, o*, in accordance with the rule, when they replace the semivowels, are introduced for the sake of euphony between two consonants, as :

вѣтеръ instead of вѣтръ ;  
крѣпокъ and not крѣпкъ.

The consonant *л* is inserted after the consonants *в, ф, п, б, м* when they are followed by the vowels *e* or *ю*, thus will be :

люблю́ instead of любю́ ;  
ловлю́ instead of ловю́ ;  
куплю́ instead of купю́.

The consonants *в* and *н* are sometimes added before vowels, as :

восьмь instead of осмь ;  
на него́ instead of на егó.

## APOCOPE (Усѣ́ченіе), AND SYNCOPÉ (Изы́тіе).

1. Apocope is the shortening or the omission of a syllable at the end of a word :

мно́й instead of мно́ю ;  
что́бъ instead of что́бы.

2. Syncopé is the elision of a letter in the middle of a word, thus will be :

двѣ́нну instead of двѣ́гнну.

## THE TONIC ACCENT.

In dissyllabic and polysyllabic words one syllable is always pronounced with more marked emphasis and with greater effort of the voice than the remaining syllables in the same word. This modification of the voice is called the *tonic*

*accent* (ударѣніе). The accented syllable of a word is called long, (дóлгий), and all other syllables are short (корóткий). The tonic accent in Russian books is printed only in the case of a few homonymous words, such as :

зáмокъ, 'castle,' and замóкъ, 'lock ;'

or, in order to point out certain grammatical inflexions, as

слóва, 'of the word,' genit. sing.

слова́, 'the words,' nom. plur.

The tonic accent is indicated by a little mark ( ´ ) over the vowel. As the tonic accent in Russian words cannot be determined by any definite rule, and as moreover in the formation of derivatives and in many inflexions it changes its place from one syllable to another, the accent over the Russian words in this Grammar will generally be marked.

## FIRST LESSON. — ПЕРВЫЙ УРОКЪ.

THE SUBSTANTIVE. — Имя Существительное.

*Declension of Masculine Nouns, singular number.*

Склонѣніе единственнаго числа мѹжскаго рóда.

There are in the Russian Language seven Cases, one of which, however, the Vocative, is always the same as the Nominative, having a distinct termination of its own in a few Church Slavonic words only ; as, Бóже ! Иисѹсе Христé ! Отче !

The Nominative,

The Vocative,

The Genitive or Possessive,

The Dative,

The Accusative or Objective,

The Instrumental or Ablative,

The Prepositional or Locative,

Именительный падежъ.

Звательный падежъ.

Родительный падежъ.

Дательный падежъ.

Винительный падежъ.

Творительный падежъ.

Предложный падежъ.

## TABLE OF DECLENSION.

Таблица Склонений.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

*Termination of Masculine Gender.* — Окончания Мужескаго Рода.  
*Singular.* — Единственное Число.

Cases. Падежѣ.	<i>Regular Substantives</i> Существительныя правильныя.			<i>Adjective.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.		
	Hard Inflex.		Soft Inflex.	<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Aprosopated termination.</i>
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.		Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	Hard Declension.
Nom.	ть	й	ь	ый ой	ій іій	ть
Gen.	а	я	я	аго	яго бяго	а
Dat.	у	ю	ю	ому	ему бему	у
Acc.	like the Nom. or Gen.			like the Nominative or Genitive.		
Inst.	омъ (емъ)	емъ емъ	емъ емъ	ымъ	имъ бимъ	ымъ
Prep.	ѣ	ѣ (п) ѣ		омъ	емъ бемъ	омъ (ѣ)
						имъ емъ



<i>Nom.</i>	The fruit,	<i>Имен. падѣжъ,</i>	ПЛОДЪ.
<i>Genit.</i>	Of the fruit,	<i>Родит. пад.</i>	ПЛОДА.
<i>Dat.</i>	To the fruit,	<i>Дат. пад.</i>	ПЛОДУ.
<i>Accus.</i>	The fruit,	<i>Вин. пад.</i>	ПЛОДЪ.
<i>Instr.</i>	By the fruit,	<i>Твор. пад.</i>	ПЛОДОМЪ.
<i>Prepos.</i>	Of [about] the fruit,	<i>Предл. пад.</i>	ПЛОДѢ.

OBS. 1.—There are no Articles in the Russian Language, but in order to indicate the mutual relation of objects, the Nouns and Adjectives have different inflexions, by means of which they are declined.

OBS. 2.—The accusative case is like the genitive in the names of animate beings, and like the nominative in Nouns designating an inanimate or abstract object.

OBS. 3.—Substantives and Adjectives of hard termination are declined according to the hard declension; those of soft termination follow the soft declension.

*I, thou, he. — Я, ты, онъ.*

The court, a yard,	Дворъ.
A boy,	Мальчикъ.
The apricot,	Абрикосъ.
A fruit,	Плодъ.
A town,	Городъ.
A man,	Человѣкъ.
A house,	Домъ.
Solomon,	Соломонъ.
A prophet,	Пророкъ.
The table,	Столъ.
The bread,	Хлѣбъ.
Paris,	Парижъ.
The palace,	Дворецъ.
The castle,	Замокъ.
The lock,	Замокъ.

OBS. 4.—The present tense of the Auxiliary Verb *To be* (быть), in its proper sense, is always omitted. Thus in the phrases :

I <i>am</i> a man,	Я человекъ ;
A house <i>is</i> a building,	Домъ строеніе.

*Am* (есмы) and *is* (есть) are omitted although understood.

This, Этотъ ; Not, Не.

OBS. 5.—The negative particle *не* always precedes the word to which it refers :

Not I,	Не я ;
Not the table,	Не столъ.

### Ли.

Interrogation is rendered by the particle *ли*, which must always follow the interrogative word :

Добръ-ли мальчикъ ?	Is he a kind boy ?
Мальчикъ-ли добръ ?	Is the boy kind ?
Мальчикъ-ли онъ ?	Is he a boy ? (or a girl).
Онъ-ли мальчикъ ?	Is he a boy ? (Is it he who is a boy, or some one else) ?

When ?

Когда ?

Yes,

Да.

No,

Нѣтъ.

But,

Но.

Also, as well,

Также, и.

And,

И.

Mine,

Мой.

Mine, (my own),

Свой (when it refers to the  
subject of the phrase).

Who ?

Кто ?

Your,

Вашъ.

Your (own), yours,

Свой (when it refers to the  
subject of the phrase).

Obs.—*Ли* is not used with an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb ; as,

Who is he ?

КТО ОНЪ ?

When was he ?

КОГДА ОНЪ БЫЛЪ ?

The English *it* has no equivalent in Russian, and is therefore rendered by one of the Personal Pronouns of the third person : ОНЪ, ОНА, ОНО,—*he, she, it* ; as,

Is the house yours ?

ВАШЪ-ЛИ ДОМЪ ?

Yes, it is mine.

ДА, ОНЪ МОЙ.

### EXERCISE I.

An apricot is a fruit.—Paris is a town.—A castle is a house.—Solomon is a prophet.—He is a boy.—Is an apricot a fruit?—Yes, it is a fruit.—Is Solomon a prophet?—Yes, he is a prophet.—Is the castle a house?—Yes, it is a house. Is Paris a town?—Yes, it is a town.—Is a boy a man?—No, he is not a man, he is a boy.—The boy is not a man.—Bread is not a fruit.—He is not the prophet.—A yard is not a house. Who is he?—He is a prophet.—Is he also a prophet.—No, he is not a prophet, but this man is a prophet.—Is this house yours?—No, this house is not mine.—Who art thou? I am a man.



## SECOND LESSON—Второй Урокъ.

Have you ?      { Есть-ли у Васъ ?  
                          { Имѣете-ли Вы ?

OBS. 1.—The verb *to have* may be rendered in Russian by *есть* (*is*), followed by the preposition *у*, which governs the genitive case ; or, literally, by the verb *имѣть*, which governs the Accusative. The first mode of expressing possession is more widely used, and, owing to its being a purely Russian idiom, it has no equivalent expression in English. Therefore, for a few lessons, the verb *есть* will be treated in preference to *имѣть*.

To interrogate, the particle *ли* is added to *есть*, as in

Have you ?      Есть-ли у Васъ.

It has already been remarked that the present tense of the verb *to be* (*быть*) is rarely made use of by Russians. The first and second persons are never used, while the third person is used, as is shown above in the place of *to have* or in the sense of

There is, There are,      Есть.

OBS. 2.—*Есть*, the third person of *быть*, *to be*, in the sense of 'exist,' though the subject be in the plural, remains in the singular, as :

There is a house in the town,	Есть домъ въ городѣ.
There are houses in town,	Есть дома въ городѣ.

OBS. 3.—The third person of *To be*, *есть*, is often omitted, not only in affirmative, but even in interrogative phrases, as :

Have you the fruit ?	У васъ-ли плодъ ?
I have the fruit.	У меня плодъ.

NOTE.—У меня есть. 'I have ;' literally, 'There is to me.

OBS. 4.—As there are no Articles in Russian, “ *I have a fruit* ” and “ *I have the fruit* ” are rendered in the same way, as :

У меня плодъ.

The cheese,	Сыръ.
The sugar,	Сахаръ.
The honey,	мёдъ.
The cloak,	Плащъ.
The chair,	Стулъ.
The master,	Хозяинъ.

Have you the fruit ?

У васъ-ли плодъ ?

I have it.

У меня онъ.

OBS. 5.—*It*, referring to fruit, which is masculine, is translated by онъ (*he*).

Genders in Russian words are distinguished chiefly by their termination ; but words representing animate beings belong, as in English, to the gender of the sex they represent, irrespective of their termination ; thus the word дѣда, ‘uncle,’ although of feminine termination, is of masculine gender.

There are three Genders in the Russian Language :

1. Masculine,	Мужескій родъ.
2. Feminine,	Жёнскій родъ.
3. Neuter,	Средній родъ.

OBS. 6.—There are some Nouns ending in а, я, ъ, and designating some quality in men, which can be used with the same termination both for masculine and feminine genders, as :

Бродяга,	Vagabond,	} (man or woman).
Сиротѣ,	Orphan,	

Such words are of common gender, общій родъ.

Yours,

Вашъ.

What (sort), which ?

Какóй ?

Which (one) ?

Котóрый ?

Which cheese have you ?

Какóй сыръ у Васъ ?

I have yours.

У меня Вашъ.

I have your cloak.

У меня Вашъ плащъ.

Which table have you ?

Какóй столъ у Васъ ?

I have my table.

У меня свой столъ.

Which chair have you,

Какóй стулъ у Васъ,

Mine or yours ?

Мой или свой ?

Garden.

Садъ.

The palace,

Дворецъ, ген. дворца.

The castle,

Зáмокъ, ген. зámка.

The lock,

Замóкъ, ген. замка́.

Sir,

Сúдарь.

## EXERCISE II.

Have you the fruit?—Yes, I have the fruit.—Have you your fruit?—Yes, I have my fruit.—Have you the bread ? Yes, I have the bread.—Have you your bread?—I have my bread.—Have you the cloak?—Yes, I have the cloak.—Have you my cloak?—I have mine.—Have you the cheese and the apricot?—Yes, I have the cheese and the apricot.—Which fruit have you?—I have my fruit.—Have you my table?—I have your table.—Which table have you?—I have yours. Have you a castle?—Yes, I have a castle.—Have you also a chair?—Yes, I have also a chair.—Which chair have you?—I have yours.—Which garden have you?—My own. Have you the honey?—I have the honey.—Which honey have you?—I have my honey?—Have you your honey? I have mine.—Have you a lock?—Yes, I have a lock. Which lock have you?—I have my own.



## EXERCISE III.

What fruit have you?—I have the fruit of the garden. Which garden have you?—I have the garden of the palace. Which apricot have you?—I have the boy's apricot (the apricot of the boy.)—Have you the garden and the yard of the palace?—No, I have the lock.—Which lock have you? I have mine and also the lock of the garden.—Have you the boy's apricot and the man's bread?—No, I have the man's apricot and the boy's bread.—Which is my fruit?—This fruit is yours.—Is an apricot a fruit?—Yes, it is a fruit. Is this bread a fruit?—No, bread is not a fruit.—Who is Solomon?—He is Solomon, but I am not Solomon.—Are you a prophet?—No, but he is a prophet.—Is this boy a prophet?—No, he is not a prophet.—Is a prophet a man? Yes, a prophet is a man.—Who is a boy?—He is a boy. Who is a man?—I am a man.—Is Paris a town?—Yes, Paris is a town.—The castle and the garden of Paris.—The prophet of the town and the boy of the house.—The yard of the palace. Is a castle a town?—No, the castle is not a town.—Is he the master of the house?—No, not he, but I am the master of the house and the master of the garden also.—Who is the master of the palace?—He is the master.—Who is the master of the yard?—I am the master of the yard.—The yard of the house is mine, but the lock of the garden is yours.—Is this table yours?—No, it is not mine.

## THIRD LESSON. — Третій Урокъ.

The boot,	Сапогъ.
The shoe,	Башмакъ.
The stocking,	Чулѡкъ.
The goose,	Гусь.
The lantern,	Фонарь.
The knife,	Ножъ.

The handkerchief,	Платокъ.
The horse,	Конь.
The candlestick,	Подсвѣчникъ.
Good,	Хорошій.
Bad,	Дурной, худой.
Fine, handsome, pretty,	Красивый.
Ugly,	Некрасивый, безобразный.
Old,	Старый.
New,	Новый.
Large, big,	Большой.
Small, little,	Малый, маленький.
Beautiful, fine,	Прекрасный.
Gold candlestick,	Золотой подсвѣчникъ.
Leathern shoe,	Кожа́ный башма́къ.
The lead, свинецъ.	Leaden, adj. свинцо́вый.
The pewter, олово.	Pewter, adj. оло́вянный.
The silver, серебро.	Silver, adj. серебра́нный.

OBS. 1. — Material possessive adjectives (вещественныя) are formed from names of material objects by changing their termination into ый, ный, нный, я́ный, а́нный овый, евый, as :

Fruit, Плодъ; adj. Плодо́вый, of fruit.  
Table, Столъ; adj. Столо́вый, of table.

OBS. 2.—Many Nouns of masculine gender ending in ъ or ь, in the nominative case, have the vowel o or e inserted for the sake of euphony between the two last consonants. In declining such Nouns o or e is omitted, as :

Nominative,	The stocking,	Именительный пад.	Чуло́къ.
Genitive,	Of the stocking,	Родительный пад.	Чула́.
Dative,	To the stocking,	Дательный пад.	Чулку́.
Accusative,	The stocking,	Винительный пад.	Чуло́къ.
Instrumental,	By the stocking,	Творительный пад.	Чуло́мъ.
Prepositional,	Of the stocking,	Предложный пад.	О чулѣ́.

EXCEPTION.—In some substantives ending in окъ, the vowel o, although in the termination, is preserved in the declension, as :

Знатѣкъ, A connoisseur,	gen. Знатокá.
Игрѣкъ, A player,	gen. Игрокá.
Челнѣкъ, A boat,	gen. Челнокá.
Чеснѣкъ, The garlic,	gen. Чеснокá.
Ѣздѣкъ, The rider,	gen. Ѣздокá.
Сѣдѣкъ, A passenger,	gen. Сѣдокá.

OBS. 3.—There are also substantives ending in *окъ* in which *o*, being a radical vowel, is also preserved in all the cases, as :

Бокъ,	The side.
Рокъ,	The fate.
Урокъ,	The lesson.

OBS. 4.—By the same rule the vowel *e*, when inserted between two consonants in the words ending in *ецъ*, is left out in the declension, as :

The father,	Отѣцъ,	gen. Отцá, etc.
The merchant,	Купѣцъ,	gen. Купцá, etc.

OBS. 5.—There are, however, words which preserve the vowel *e* in all the cases, as :

The blacksmith,	Кузнѣцъ,	gen. Кузнецá, etc.
A proud man,	Гордѣцъ,	gen. Гордецá, etc.

OBS. 6.—The euphonic vowel *e* after the liquid consonants *л*, *н*, *р*, is replaced in declension by the soft semivowel *ь*, in order to preserve the soft pronunciation of these liquid consonants, thus :

The lion,	Левъ,	gen. Львá.
The polecat,	Хорѣкъ,	gen. Хорькá.

OBS. 7.—When the euphonic *e* in the nominative case is preceded by a vowel, it is changed in all other cases into *й* .

A fighter,	Боецъ,	gen. Бойцá.
The hire,	Наёмъ,	gen. Наймá.
The forehead,	Лобъ,	gen. Лбá.
An eagle,	Орѣлъ,	gen. Орлá.
The corner,	Уголъ,	gen. Углá.



Which candlestick have you ?

I have the gold candlestick.

Which shoe have you ?

I have the pretty leather shoe.

Какой у Васъ подсвѣчникъ ?

У меня золотой подсвѣчникъ.

Какой у Васъ башмакъ ?

У меня красивый кожаный башмакъ.

OBS. 8.—Adjectives of full termination are usually placed before the substantives which they qualify, and agree with them in gender, number and case.

#### EXERCISE IV.

Have you my beautiful shoe ?—Yes, sir, I have it.—Have you my old shoe ?—No, I have it not.—Have you my golden candlestick ?—No, I have it not.—Which eagle have you ? I have the big eagle.—Have you my ugly handkerchief ? No, I have (it) not.—Who has the beautiful handkerchief ? I have (it) not, I have only the old one.—Which sugar have you ?—Yours.—Which boot have you ?—I have my leathern boot.—Which goose have you ?—I have the big goose. Have you my goose ?—No, I have my own.—Have you my old knife ?—No, I have the new knife.—Have you a good knife ?—Yes, I have a good knife.—Which lantern have you ?—I have your old lantern.—Have you a handsome cloak ?—Yes, I have a handsome cloak.—Which cloak have you ?—I have the new cloak.—Have you a new table ?—No, I have the old table only.—Have you a large house ?—No, I have only a small house.—Which polecat have you ?—I have the little polecat.—Is this golden knife yours ?—No, the golden knife is not mine, but the silver knife is (mine). Which knife have you ?—I have the golden knife.—Is this yard large ?—Yes.—Which yard is small ?—Mine.—Have you a new lantern ?—No, I have an old lantern.

---

## LESSON FOURTH.—ЧЕТВЁРТЫЙ УРО́КЪ.

Nominative,	The horse,	Именительный пад.	Конь.
Genitive,	Of the horse,	Родительный пад.	Коня́.
Dative,	To the horse,	Дательный пад.	Коню́.
Accusative,	The horse,	Винительный пад.	Коня́.
Instrumental,	With the horse,	Творительный пад.	Конёмъ
Prepositional,	About the horse.	Предложный пад.	О конѣ
	A king,	Король.	
	The prince,	Князь.	
	The polecat,	Хорь, dim. Хорёкъ, gen. Хорька́.	

OBS. 1.—There are three substantives ending in екъ, which preserve in all the cases the euphonic vowel e, as :

Намёкъ, A hint.	gen. Намёка.
Упрёкъ, } The reproach.	gen. Упрёка.
Попрёкъ, }	gen. Попрёка.

Anything,	Что нибѹдь,
Something.	Что то, что нибѹдь.

Have you { Something ? }	Есть-ли у васъ что нибѹдь ?
{ Anything ? }	
I have nothing.	У меня нѣтъ ничего́.

Nothing,	Ничто́, ничего́.
I have not,	У меня нѣтъ.

OBS. 2.—Transitive verbs preceded by a negative always govern the genitive.

OBS. 3.—When ничто́ is with a prep. the latter is placed between the negative particle ни and the pronoun что, as :

Ни за что, For nothing, not for anything.

Have you a horse ?	Есть-ли у Васъ конь ?
I have no horse,	У меня нѣтъ коня́
The cord,	Шнурокъ.
The coffee.	Кофе́й.
The tea,	Чай.

Nominative,	The tea,	Именительный	пад. Чай.
Genitive,	Of the tea,	Родительный	пад. Ча́я.
Dative,	To the tea,	Дательный	пад. Ча́ю.
Accusative,	The tea,	Винительный	пад. Чай.
Instrumental,	By the tea,	Творительный	пад. Ча́емъ.
Prepositional,	Of the tea,	Предложный	пад. О ча́ѣ.

Anything good, Что нибудь хоро́шаго.

Have you anything good ? }  
 Have you something good ? } Есть-ли у Васъ что нибудь хоро́шаго ?

Nothing of bad, Ничего́ дурна́го.

I have nothing bad. У меня́ нѣтъ ничего́ дурна́го,  
 I have nothing good. У меня́ нѣтъ ничего́ хоро́шаго.

Some (*quantity*), Нѣско́лько.  
 What? Что ?

OBS.—*Some* and *any*, used in an unlimited sense, are not translated, as :

Have you any tea ? Есть-ли у васъ чай ?—I have some, У меня́ есть чай.

What have you ?	Что́ у васъ ?
What have you good ?	Что́ у васъ хоро́шаго ?
I have good tea.	У меня́ хоро́шій чай.

OBS. 4.—The impersonal verb нѣтъ is never omitted. Нѣтъ derived from the ancient Russian нѣсть or не есть, and means ‘*is not, there is not;*’ therefore, у меня́ нѣтъ, word for word, will be, ‘*there is not to me.*’

Iron,	adj.	Желе́зный.
Wooden,	adj.	Дере́вянный.
Cotton,	adj.	Бума́жный.
Paper,	adj.	
Stone,	adj.	Ка́менный.
Copper,	adj.	Мѣ́дный.
Woollen,	adj.	Суко́пный.



## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

## СКЛОНЕНІЕ ИМЁНЪ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫХЪ.

*Full Hard Termination.*

<i>Singular.</i>	ЕДИНСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО.
Nominative, Old,	Именительный, пад. Стáрый.
Genitive, Of the old,	Родительный, пад. Стáраго.
Dative, To the old,	Дательный, пад. Стáрому.
Accusative, Old,	Винительный, пад. Стáрый от стáраго.
Instrumental, By the old,	Творительный, пад. Стáрымъ.
Prepositional, Of the old,	Предложный, пад. О стáромъ.

OBS. 5.—The Adjectives in declension must follow either the hard or soft termination, according to the table at the commencement of the First Lesson.

## Only, ТОЛЬКО.

What have you ?	Что у васъ ?
I have only the cloak.	У меня только плащъ.
Have you anything good ?	Есть-ли у васъ что нибудь хорошаго
I have nothing good.	У меня нѣтъ ничего хорошаго.

Him, Ерó, (accusative and genitive of the pers. pron. онъ).

## EXERCISE V.

Have you my golden cord ?—I have it.—Have you the good sugar ?—I have (it) not. < Which sugar have you ? I have the bad sugar.—Have you your gold candlestick ? No, I have it not.—What have you ?—I have the silver candlestick.—What have you bad ?—I have nothing bad ? Have you the cheese ? > No, I have nothing.—Which cord have you ?—I have the gold c .—Have you good coffee ? I have no good coffee, I have good tea.—Which tea have you ?—I have your tea.—Have you something good ?—I

have good sugar and coffee.—What have you bad?—I have a bad shoe.—Which shoe have you?—I have your shoe. What have you handsome?—I have a handsome woollen cloak.—Have you the handsome horse?—No, I have him not.—Which boot have you?—I have the old leathern boot. Have you my good cheese?—Yes, I have it.—Have you the silver cord?—No, I have it not.—What have you?—I have my bread.—Have you the fine goose?—I have not the fine goose, I have the little polecat.)

### FIFTH LESSON.—ПЯТЫЙ УРОКЪ.

This, Этотъ,	gen. этого,	} Demonstrative pro-
That, Тотъ,	gen. того.	
		nouns.

This man,	этотъ человекъ.
That fruit,	тотъ плодъ.

OBS. 1.—Substantives having an adjectival termination are declined as adjectives :

The tailor;	Портной, gen. портнаго.
-------------	-------------------------

OBS. 2.—Some masculine nouns, ending in *ъ*, *ь*, *й* when they signify divisible matter have in the genitive case the inflexion of *у* or *ю* instead of *а* or *я*, as :

The tobacco,	табакъ,	gen. табакъ.
The glue,	клей,	gen. клею.

OBS. 3.—The same inflexion of *у* or *ю* in the genitive is also taken by some nouns of inanimate or abstract objects, which preserve in the genitive the tonic accent of the nominative case, as :

The taste,	вкусъ,	gen. вкусу.
The hour,	часть,	gen. часу.
The occasion,	случай,	gen. случаю.

Obs. 4.—All such substantives may, however, have also in the genitive their regular inflexion of а, or я.

NOTE.—The inflexion of у or ю in the genitive is used to indicate a quantity, and the inflexion of а, я in all other instances, thus will be:

A pound of tea,	Фунтъ чаю.
The aroma of tea,	Аромать чая.

Obs. 5.—There are monosyllabic and dissyllabic words which, when preceded by the preposition въ or на, take in the prepositional case the inflexion of у or ю instead of ѣ, as:

In the honey,	Въ медѹ, instead of въ медѣ.
On the bridge,	На мостѹ, instead of на мостѣ.

Obs. 6.—Many of these monosyllabic and dissyllabic words may, however, take in the prepositional case either of these inflexions, i.e. у, ю, or ѣ, as:

На домѣ,	'On the house;'	and	на домѹ,	'at home.'
Въ видѣ,	'In the aspect;'	and	въ видѹ,	'in view.'

NOTE.—In most cases, as is seen from the above examples, the nouns ending in the prepositional case in у, ю, lose their primary signification.

Obs. 7.—The tonic accent is placed on the last syllable when a noun in the prepositional case ends in у, ю, as:

на домѹ, въ клеѹ, etc.

That which,	Тотъ, которѹй.
That (person) whom,	Тотъ, котораго.
The one whom,	Того, котораго.

Obs. 8.—The English possessive case is rendered in Russian by the repetition of the noun with the genitive.



Which bread have you ?	Какой у васъ хлѣбъ ?
I have the neighbour's.	У меня хлѣбъ сосѣда.
Which cloak have you ?	Какой у васъ плащъ ?
I have the tailor's.	У меня плащъ портнаго.
I have that, which you have.	У меня тотъ, который у васъ.
Have you my horse, or my father's ?	Мой-ли конь у васъ, или конь моего отца ?
I have this horse.	У меня этотъ конь.
Have you that horse ?	У васъ-ли тотъ конь ?
I have not your father's horse.	У меня нѣтъ коня вашего отца.
Have you my tailor's velvet ?	У васъ-ли бархатъ моего портнаго
I have not the tailor's.	У меня нѣтъ бархату портнаго.

	My, mine,	Мой.
Nominative,	My, mine,	Именительный пад. Мой.
Genitive,	Of my, of mine,	Родительный пад. Моего.
Dative,	To my, to mine,	Дательный пад. Моему.
Accusative,	My, mine,	Винительный пад. Мой.
Instrumental,	By my, by mine,	Творительный пад. Моимъ.
Prepositional,	Of my, of mine.	Предложный пад. О моемъ.
	Thy, thine,	Твой.
	His,	Свой.

OBS. 9.—Твой and свой are declined like мой.

His, Ero.

Ero, as possessive pronoun, is not declined.

NOTE.—The Russian language has no possessive pronoun for the third person; it is rendered by the genitive case of the third personal pronoun :

Ero, 'his (of his),' from онъ, 'he.'

OBS. 10.—Свой may be also called a possessive reflective pronoun, as it is used for all the three persons; thus свой is used for *my, thy, his* when it refers to the subject of the phrase, and *ero* when it has no reference to the subject.

Which tobacco has your brother? Какой табакъ у вѣшего брата?

He has his (own). У него свой.

I have not my tobacco, I have his. У меня не свой табакъ, у меня его табакъ.

He has, У него.

OBS. 11.—Hego is the genitive of the third personal pronoun онъ. To this pronoun, when preceded by a preposition, the letter н is added.

But, Но, а.

The bell-ringer,	Звонарь.
The husband,	Мужъ.
The brother,	Братъ.
The cousin,	Двоюродный братъ.
The friend,	Другъ.
An enemy,	Врагъ.
The thimble.	Наперстокъ.

What sort? Какой?—Whose? Чей?

Whose horse have you? Чей конь у васъ?

I have your horse. У меня вашъ конь.

And, А (disjunctive).

OBS. 12.—*And* when used as a disjunctive, is translated *a*.

Have you the new horse, or the old one? Новый-ли у васъ конь, или старый?

I have this new horse. У меня этотъ новый конь.

Have you my horse? Мой-ли конь у васъ?

I have my brother's. У меня конь моего брата.

The ass, Осёлъ, gen. осла.

The hammer, Молотокъ, gen. молотка

A stupid man, a fool, Глупецъ, gen. глупца.

The merchant, Купецъ, gen. купца.

The old man, a monk, Старецъ, gen. старца.

Oats, (collect), Овёсъ, gen. овса.

The handkerchief, Платокъ, gen. платка.

The player, Игрокъ, gen. Игрока.

Barley, (collect), Ячмень, gen. ячмені and ячменю.

Much, plenty, many,	Много.
A little, not much,	Мало, немного.
Enough,	Довольно.

OBS. 13.—Много, мало, довольно, and несколько govern the genitive.

### EXERCISE VI.

Have you a hammer?—I have no hammer.—Has the merchant a hammer?—Yes, he has.—What (sort of a) hammer has your brother?—My brother has no hammer, but my cousin has an iron hammer.—Whose handkerchief have you?—I have my brother's handkerchief.—Whose enemy is he?—He is my enemy.—Which ass has the old man?—The old man has your old ass.—Whose horse have you?—I have the player's horse.—Whose hammer has he? He has my iron hammer.—Has he also your old leathern shoe?—No, he has it not.—Has the husband a brother? No, the husband has no brother.—Whose husband is this man?—This man is my old husband.—Has your enemy his horse?—No, sir, he has mine.—Whose thimble has the old tailor?—He has my cousin's thimble.—Have you my sugar and my honey?—No, sir, I have my honey and his sugar. Has this old player a new handkerchief?—No, he has no handkerchief, but his brother has.—Have you good tea? I have no good tea, I have good coffee.—Is this a silver thimble?—No, sir, it is an iron thimble.—Whose is this copper lantern?—Mine.—Is it not his?—No, he has no lantern.

### EXERCISE VII.

Have you some oats?—I have no oats.—What have you? I have plenty of sugar.—Has your father enough tobacco? He has not much, but enough.—Have you plenty of honey?



I have not enough honey.—Have you my tobacco?—I have no tobacco.—I have your tea, and he has your sugar. The brother has not much bread.—Has not the merchant my silver lantern?—He has not the lantern.—Has the stupid man plenty of tobacco and plenty of tea?—He has plenty of tobacco, but not much tea.—The old merchant's young son has plenty of beautiful velvet.—Has the stupid man my large knife?—He has not yours, but his own small knife.—Which merchant has fine barley?—The rich one. Has not the blacksmith the hammer?—He has not the hammer, but some oats.—Whose bread has he?—He has the old man's bread.—Has not the merchant's boy an ass?—He has no ass, but a horse.—Has the merchant my table?—Yes, he has your table.—The merchant has no bread, and the old man has no cheese.—The player has some bread, but not enough cheese.—Have you not my good friend's handkerchief? You have it.—Has he not his stocking?—He has.—Has his brother plenty of tobacco?—A little.—Has the player the white handkerchief?—Yes.—Which eagle has the boy? He has the white eagle.—Whose is the white eagle?—The boy's white eagle.

---

### SIXTH LESSON.—Шестой Урокъ.

The bootmaker,  
The shoemaker,  
The blacksmith,  
Coal,  
Charcoal,  
The stag,  
The pigeon,  
The kettle,

Савѣжникъ.  
Башмачникъ.  
Кузнѣцъ, gen. кузнеца.  
Каменный уголь.  
Уголь, gen. угля.  
Олень, gen. оленя.  
Голубь.  
Котѣль, gen. котла.

The banker,	Банкиръ.
A commission agent,	Биржевой маклеръ,
The pot,	Горшокъ, gen. горшкѣ.
A friend,	Другъ.
A friend (an acquaintance),	Пріятель.
The lead pencil,	Карандашъ.
The penknife,	Перочинный ножикъ.
The chocolate,	Шоколатъ.
A confectioner,	Кандитеръ.
A cook (man),	Поваръ.
The wax,	Воскъ, gen. воску.

Neither, nor,	Ни, ни.
At,	У.

I have neither the confectioner's chocolate nor the cook's.	У меня нѣтъ ни шоколѣта кандитера ни шоколѣта повара.
Have you the bread or the cheese?	Хлѣбъ-ли у васъ или сыръ?
I have neither the bread nor the cheese.	У меня нѣтъ ни хлѣба ни сыру.
Have you my sugar or yours?	Мой-ли сахаръ у васъ или свой?
I have neither mine nor yours.	У меня нѣтъ ни своего ни вашего.

The umbrella,	Зонтникъ.
The carpenter,	Плотникъ.
The cabinet-maker, joiner,	Столяръ.
Of the cabinet-maker,	Столярѣ.
By the cabinet-maker,	Столярѣмъ.
A mason,	Каменьщикъ.
A nail,	Гвоздь.
A morsel, piece,	Кусокъ.
What have you?	Что у васъ?
What is the matter with you?	Что съ вами?

Nothing,	Ничто, ничего.
----------	----------------

OBS.—Verbs expressing negation must in all cases be accompanied by the particle не, as :

I have nothing,	{ Я ничего не имѣю. У меня ничего нѣтъ.
Have you anything?	Есть-ли у васъ что нибудь?
He has,	{ У него есть. Онъ имѣетъ.
Nominative, He,	Имен. п. Онъ.
Genitive, Of him,	Родт. п. Его́, or (него́, <i>with a preposit.</i> ).
Dative, To him,	Дат. п. Ему́, or (нему́, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Accusative, Him,	Вин. п. Его́, or (него́, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Instrumental, By him,	Твор. п. Имъ́, or (нимъ́, <i>when with a preposition</i> ).
Prepositional, Of him.	Пред. п. Объ́ немъ́.
A Frenchman,	Францу́зъ,
A Russian,	Русскі́й.
A German,	Нѣмецъ,
An Englishman,	Англича́нинъ,
An Italian,	Италья́нецъ,
A Spaniard,	Испана́ецъ.
Also,	И, также.

## EXERCISE VIII.

What has the little boy?—He has a piece of cheese. Have you the cabinet-maker's hammer?—I have neither the cabinet-maker's nor the carpenter's hammer.—Which umbrella have you?—I have my brother's cotton umbrella. What have you?—I have nothing.—Which thimble has his diligent son?—He has my tailor's (thimble).—Has he not also my cotton umbrella?—He has neither yours nor his umbrella.—Have you the Frenchman's woollen cloak?—I have not, his brother has it.—Which and whose lead pencil have you?—I have my good friend's lead pencil.—Which nail have you?—I have the blacksmith's nail.—Have you also the bootmaker's nail?—No, I have the shoemaker's only.—What have you, chocolate or sugar?—I have neither chocolate nor sugar, but I



have plenty of bread and some honey.—Whose black horse have you?—I have not the black, but the rich banker's white horse.—Is this fine big pigeon yours?—It is not mine.—Have you not any coal?—I have some charcoal. Who has plenty of tobacco?—The carpenter and the mason have not plenty of tobacco, but they have wax.—Who has good strong tea?—The Russian or the German has it. Has the Spaniard plenty of sugar?—He has a little of it. Has the merchant enough coal?—He has not enough (of it), but the rich Englishman has plenty (of coal).—Has the carpenter the wooden hammer?—He has not.—Has not the joiner a wooden chair or a table?—He has neither the wooden chair nor the wooden table, but (he has) a good iron coffer.

---

### EXERCISE IX.

Has the Russian a good umbrella?—Yes, he has a good umbrella.—Whose good umbrella?—The German's.—Have you my brother's good lead-pencil, or this good boy's small penknife?—I have neither his lead-pencil nor the penknife. What has your friend?—He has his and my old neighbour's coal and wax.—Which old neighbour's?—The baker's. Has not the Englishman the stocking and the cord?—He has not the stocking but (he) has the Russian's golden cord. Has not the Italian a little glue?—Neither the Italian nor the Spaniard have any glue.—Have you the Frenchman's or the merchant's tobacco?—I have neither the Frenchman's nor the merchant's tobacco, I have the shoemaker's white wax only.—Has the young Englishman a silver candlestick? No, not a silver but a copper one.—Who has the blacksmith's large iron hammer?—Neither the merchant nor he

has it.—What have you?—I have nothing.—Has not the fighter a lion?—He has neither the lion nor the polecat. Has the handsome horse a white forehead?—No, he has a black forehead.—He has no good taste.—The Russian has plenty of good black tea, but the Italian has neither white nor black tea.—Have I not something good?—I have nothing good.—Have you my cotton handkerchief or the Englishman's brother's silk handkerchief?—I have neither your cotton handkerchief, nor that of the Englishman's brother's.—What have you?—I have the tailor's cloak only. Whose tea have you?—I have the commission-agent's tea. Have you not also the merchant's tea?—I have not the merchant's tea.—Has the blacksmith enough tea, sugar, cheese, wax and glue?—No, not enough, but he has plenty of black coffee.—Whose is this iron coffer?—The banker's.

---

## SEVENTH LESSON.—Седьмой Урокъ.

Our, ours, Нашъ.

Nominative,	Our, ours,	Именительный пад. Нашъ.
Genitive,	Of our,	Родительный пад. Нашего.
Dative,	To our,	Дательный пад. Нашему.
Accusative,	Our, of our,	Винительный пад. Нашъ, нашего.
Instrumental,	By our,	Творительный пад. Нашимъ.
Prepositional,	Of our,	Предложный пад. О нашемъ.

The sand,	Песокъ.
An ox,	Быкъ.
A bull, ox,	Волъ.
The biscuit,	Сухарь.
The pie,	Пирогъ.
The cake,	Прожокъ.
The captain,	Капитанъ.
The lieutenant,	Поручикъ.
The major,	Маіоръ.
A cavalry captain,	Ротмистръ.
The colonel,	Полковникъ.

Have I ?	{ Имѣю ли я ?
	{ Есть-ли у меня ?
Have I the cloak ?	У меня-ли плащъ ?
You have it.	Онъ у васъ.
You have not.	{ Онъ не у васъ.
	{ Его у васъ нѣтъ.
Have I something good ?	{ Имѣю ли я что нибудь хорошаго ?
	{ Есть ли у меня что нибудь хорошаго ?
You have nothing good.	У васъ нѣтъ ничего хорошаго.

OBS. 1.—In interrogative sentences the verb stands before the subject, but when a sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun or other interrogative word, the verb may be placed either before or after the subject, as:

Видите ли вы ?	Do you see ?
Что вы видите ?	} What do you see ?
Что видите вы ?	

OBS. 2.—As it has been already remarked, the interrogative in Russian may be rendered in four different ways :

1. Commencing a sentence with *есть-ли*, as :

Have you the bread ?      Есть-ли у васъ хлѣбъ ?

2. Commencing a sentence by a verb, followed by the interrogative particle *ли*, as :

Have you an umbrella ?      Имѣете ли вы зонтикъ ?

3. By an adverb or an adjective apocopated, followed also by *ли* :

Is this a kind man ?      Добрь-ли этотъ человекъ ?

4. By the preposition *у*, followed by a noun or pronoun with *ли*, as :

Has the father a horse ?      У отца ли конь.

Have I the umbrella ?      У меня ли зонтикъ ?



I have,	Я имѣю.
Thou hast,	Ты имѣешь.
He has,	Онъ имѣетъ.
We have,	Мы имѣемъ.
You have,	Вы имѣете.
They have,	Они имѣютъ.

What have I? { Что я имѣю?  
                  { Что у меня?

Have I the cook's knife? У меня ли ножъ повара?  
You have it not. У васъ его нѣтъ.  
Have you it? У васъ ли онъ?

I have it. { Онъ у меня.  
                  { Я его имѣю.  
I have it not. { Его у меня нѣтъ.  
                  { Я его не имѣю.  
Have I it? У меня ли онъ?

The ram, Баранъ.  
The calf, Телёнокъ.

Who? Кто?  
Which? Какóй, которóй.  
That which, Тотъ, которóй.

Fresh, new, Свѣжій.  
Dear, expensive, Дорогой.  
Bright, light, Свѣтлый.  
Dark, Тёмный.

Nominative,	Bright, light,	Именительный пад.	Свѣтлый.
Genitive,	Of bright,	Родительный пад.	Свѣтлаго.
Dative,	To bright,	Дательный пад.	Свѣтлomu.
Accusative,	Bright,	Винительный пад.	{ Свѣтлый, Свѣтлаго.
Instrumental,	By bright,	Творительный пад.	Свѣтлымъ.
Prepositional,	Of bright,	Предложный пад.	О свѣтломъ.
	The evening,		Вѣчеръ.
	To-day,		Сегодня.
	The day,		День, ден. дня.

To-day we have a very dark evening, Сегодня у насъ очень тёмный вѣчеръ.

Nominative,	Fresh,	Именительный	пад. Свѣжій.
Genitive,	Of fresh,	Родительный	пад. Свѣжаго.
Dative,	To fresh,	Дательный	пад. Свѣжему.
Accusative,	Fresh,	Винительный	пад. Свѣжій, свѣжаго.
Instrumental,	By fresh,	Творительный	пад. Свѣжнѣ.
Prepositional,	Of fresh,	Предложный	пад. О свѣжемъ.

) Steel, *adjective*, Стальной.

### EXERCISE X.

Have you my ram or that of my cook?—I have neither your ram nor your cook's.—Whose ram have you?—I have the captain's ram.—Is it big?—No, it is not big.—Has he the white biscuit and the baker's good new bread?—He has neither the white biscuit nor the baker's new bread. Has he enough cheese?—He has not enough cheese, but he has plenty of good wax.—Has not the Frenchman good taste?—The Frenchman has good taste.—Who has my leathern boot?—Neither I nor he (has it), but the poor bootmaker has it.—Have you the steel knife?—No, I have not, and he also has not (it).—Have you good tea?—Yes. Is your tea good?—No, not good, but it is new.—Whose umbrella has the banker?—He has the neighbour's brother's umbrella.—His own neighbour's?—No, not his own, but that of his neighbour.—Has he something good?—He has nothing good.—What have I?—You have nothing.—Whose penknife has this boy?—He has his father's little penknife. Has the father or the merchant the cook's knife?—The merchant has not, but the cook has it.—Has the boy the knife or the thimble?—Not the knife, but the thimble. Has this rich Englishman a wooden or stone castle?—He has neither a stone nor a wooden castle, he has only a good wooden house.—Has the boy plenty of sand and wax? Which boy?—The German's boy.—This boy has neither

sand nor wax.—Has the ass enough oats?—No, he has not enough.—Has the old bootmaker his own boot or mine? Not yours, but his (own).—Whose stag has he?—The merchant's.—Has he the stag only, or also the pigeon?—He has the stag only.—Who has no tea?—The confectioner's brother and the old joiner have (it) not.

### EXERCISE XI.

Which ox has your friend?—My kind friend has his neighbour's, the Russian's ox.—Has he also the cook's big ram?—No, he has not his ram.—Whose pigeon has that merchant?—That merchant has no pigeon.—Has the confectioner a good pie, and is he your neighbour?—The confectioner has no pie, and he is not my neighbour.—Has this poor merchant and that rich banker plenty of sugar, honey, tea and wax?—The poor merchant has only plenty of honey, and a little sugar, tea and wax; but the rich banker has nothing, neither wax nor tea.—How much black tea has this merchant's father?—He has not enough of it. Whose friend is this Frenchman? and whose friend is that German?—This Frenchman is the friend (acquaintance) of that Englishman, and that German is the friend of this Spaniard.—Is your cook a Spaniard?—He is not a Spaniard, but a Russian.—What is the matter with you?—There is nothing the matter with me.—Which piece of bread is mine?—This small piece is yours.—Has the joiner or the mason the carpenter's nail?—Neither the joiner nor the mason (has it), but his cook has it.—Has not the neighbour an iron or wooden hammer?—He has neither a wooden nor iron hammer.—Have not I good sugar or bad coffee?—You have nothing.—Have I something good?—You have good tea.—Has the prince the stone castle and the beautiful



garden?—The prince has neither a stone castle nor a beautiful garden.—Is it a wooden knife?—The knife is not a wooden but an iron one.—Has the old baker any new bread?—Which baker?—The Englishman.—The Englishman has no new bread, but the German has.—Who has neither ram nor calf?—He.—Which calf is dear?—The calf which I have.—Has he any new bread and fresh fruit?—He has.

### EIGHTH LESSON.—Восьмой Урокъ.

I give,	Я даю.
Thou givest,	Ты даёшь.
He gives,	Онъ даётъ.
We give,	Мы даёмъ.
You give,	Вы даёте.
They give,	Они дають.

OBS. 1.—There is only one form in Russian for the present tense, thus :

*I give, I am giving, I do give,* are rendered by я даю.

Who gives?	Кто даётъ?
I do not give.	Я не даю.
Do you give?	Даёте ли вы?
Do you not give?	Не даёте ли вы?
You do not give?	Вы не даёте?
Do I give?	Даю ли я?
He does not give.	Онъ не даётъ.
Does he give?	Даётъ ли онъ?
He does not give.	Онъ не даётъ.
What does he give you?	Что онъ вамъ даётъ?
He gives me nothing.	Онъ ничего мнѣ не даётъ.

OBS. 2.—Давать, 'to give,' governs, as in English, the dative of the person (indirect govern) and the accusative of the thing (direct govern).

He gives me a coffer,	Онъ даётъ мнѣ сундукъ.
To me,	Мнѣ.
To thee,	Тебѣ.
To him,	Емѹ.
To myself,	} Себѣ.
To thyself,	
To himself,	

Obs. 3.—Себѣ is the dative of the reflective personal pronoun себя, which has neither nominative case nor plural number. This reflective pronoun is used for the three persons whenever the action affects the agent, as:

I give to myself,	Я даю себѣ.
Thou givest to thyself,	Ты даёшь себѣ.
He gives to himself,	Онъ даётъ себѣ.
We give to ourselves,	Мы даёмъ себѣ.
You give to yourselves,	Вы даёте себѣ.
They give to themselves,	Они дають себѣ.

What has my friend ?	Что у моего друга.
He has nothing,	У него ничего нѣтъ.

To whom does the baker give the bread ?	Кому булочникъ даётъ хлѣбъ ?
He gives it to his neighbour.	Онъ даётъ его своему сосѣду.
To which neighbour ?	Какому сосѣду ?
To the carpenter.	Плотнику.

To whom ?	Кому (dative of кто) ?
To which ?	Какому (dative of какой) ?
To which (one) ?	Которому (dative of который) ?
To nobody,	Никому (dative of никто).
To somebody,	Кому нибѹдь (dative of кто нибѹдь).

White bread,	Бѣлый хлѣбъ.
Brown bread,	Чѣрный хлѣбъ.
Stale bread,	Чѣрствый хлѣбъ.

Diligent,	Прилежный.
Laborious, }	Трудолюбивый.
Assiduous, }	

Cotton, <i>adjective</i> ,	Бумажный.
Silk, <i>adjective</i> ,	Шёлковый.
Wooden,	Деревянный.
White,	Белый.
Black,	Чёрный.

The ham,	Окорокъ.
The sentinel,	Часовой.
The diamond,	Алмазъ.
The footman,	Лакей.
The doctor,	Врачъ.
The master (teacher),	Учитель.
The pupil,	Ученикъ.
His penknife,	Его перочинный ножикъ.
His eye,	Его глазъ.
His tea,	Его чай.

Somebody, Кто нибудь (genitive, когó нибудь).

Has somebody my penknife ? Есть ли у когó нибудь мой перочинный ножикъ ?

Nobody, } Никто (genitive, никогó).  
Not anybody, }

Obs. 4.—When there is a preposition before **никто**, it must be placed between the negative particle **ни** and the pronoun **кто**, thus :

Nobody has it, Ни у когó егó нѣтъ.

The rice,	Рисъ.
Barley,	Ячмень, gen. ячменя.
A stone,	Камень, gen. камня.
An officer,	Офицеръ.



The soldier,	Солдѣтъ.
A burgher,	Мѣщанинъ.
The citizen,	Гражданинъ.
A gentleman,	Дворянинъ.
Andrew,	Андрѣй.
Nicolas,	Николѣй.
Alexis,	Алексѣй.

## EXERCISE XII.

Who is this soldier?—He is an Englishman.—To whom does this officer give his lion?—He gives it to his father. To whom do I give my handsome horse?—You give him to nobody.—Who has my red coffer?—The kind blacksmith has it.—Do I give the diligent boy my lead-pencil? No, you give him your penknife only.—Does he not give him good vinegar?—He gives him only a little tea and sugar.—Do we not give the merchant enough velvet?—Yes, we give the rich merchant enough velvet, but little silk. To whom do you give a little silk?—To the kind brother's shoemaker.—Does the blacksmith give his iron hammer? No, he does not give it, and he has not his own hammer. Has not the burgher oats?—He has no oats, but the citizen has plenty.—Which gentleman has a stone house?—The rich gentleman.—Does not the master give tobacco to his footman?—He gives him nothing.—To whom do you give your leathern boot?—I give it to nobody.—To whom does this burgher give that ram?—He gives it to his brother. Does not he give him also his ox?—No, he has no ox.—Do I not give the pretty pigeon to his diligent son?—You do not give it to him.—Who has my white biscuit?—The baker has it.—Which baker?—The industrious baker.—Who has the black bread?—Nobody has it.—Has the peasant a cotton handkerchief?—He has not a cotton, but a silk one.

Has not the soldier rice, tea, sugar and coffee?—He has nothing, he has stale bread only.—What do I give to the sentinel?—You give him nothing.—Has the officer his (own) coffer?—He has not his own coffer.—Who is this Russian?—This Russian is the banker's doctor.—Is he a good doctor?—Yes, he is a very good one.

### EXERCISE XIII.

Has some one my cloak?—The tailor has it.—Has some one my velvet?—No, nobody has it.—Does the Englishman give his horse to this rich citizen?—He gives him his lion only.—Which Frenchman has a beautiful castle?—The rich one.—Has not Andrew his boot?—He has no boot; he has Nicolas's bad shoe.—Which Nicolas?—The one who has a pretty wooden house.—Has the kind citizen plenty of sugar and tea?—He has a little sugar, but enough tea.—Do not I give the peasant my honey?—You do not give him your honey, but you give your barley.—Who has the diligent boy's pencil?—The industrious peasant has it.—Which peasant?—The one who has a poor wooden house.—To whom do you not give your umbrella?—I do not give it to my footman.—Has not the carpenter my hammer?—He has neither yours nor his hammer.—What has he?—He has nothing.—Do you not give him something?—I give him nothing.—Has somebody my coffer?—The poor peasant has it.—Which peasant?—The one who has the handsome cock and the chicken.—Who has the white diamond?—The commission-agent has it.—Which diamond has he?—The kind Russian's diamond.—Has this player my umbrella? He has not yours, but his own.—Has he an iron nail or a wooden hammer?—He has neither nail nor hammer.—Who has the ham?—Nobody has it.—Has the boy his brother's

biscuit or Alexis's biscuit?—He has no biscuit.—Has Alexis the ham?—No, Andrew has it.—Have Andrew and Nicolas rice?—Neither Andrew nor Nicolas has any rice.—Has Alexis or this Englishman some tea?—Alexis has plenty of tea, but the Englishman a little.—Is this diamond white or yellow?—This beautiful diamond is not yellow, but black.

---

### NINTH LESSON.—Девятый Урокъ.

The sailor,	Матросъ. <i>матросову.</i>
A foreigner,	Иностранецъ.
The foreigner's garden,	Садъ иностранца.
His pocket-book,	Его бумажникъ.
His pistol,	Его пистолетъ.
An hotel-keeper,	Содержатель гостиницы.
An inn,	Трактиръ.
The inn-keeper,	Трактирщикъ.
The postman,	Почтальонъ.
The goat,	Козёлъ.
The guide,	Вожакъ.

#### *Singular.*

#### Единственное число.

I see,	Я вижу.
Thou seest,	Ты видишь.
He sees,	Онъ видитъ.

#### *Plural.*

#### Множественное число

We see,	Мы видимъ.
You see,	Вы видите,
They see,	Они видятъ.
Rich,	Богатый.
Poor,	Бѣдный.
Celebrated,	Знаменитый.
Green,	Зелёный,
Blue,	Голубой, синій.
Red,	Красный.



The man (whom) he sees is my friend.

The knife (which) he gives him is mine.

Человѣкъ, котораго онъ вѣдитъ, мой другъ.

Ножъ, который онъ даётъ ему, мой.

OBS. 1.—The relative pronoun *который* in Russian is never omitted.

## DECLENSION OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

### *Masculine Singular.*

Nominative,	This,	этотъ.	That,	тотъ.
Genitive,	Of this,	этого.	Of that,	того.
Dative,	To this,	этому.	To that,	тому.
Accusative,	This,	этотъ, этого.	That,	тотъ, того.
Instrumental,	By this,	этимъ.	By that,	темъ.
Prepositional,	Of this,	объ этомъ.	Of that,	о томъ.

OBS. 2.—The impersonal verb *нѣтъ* and the negative particle *не* before active verbs govern the genitive case, as :

I have no bread,

I do not see the garden,

У меня нѣтъ хлѣба.

Я не вижу сада.

But if *не* does not imply negation of a verb, it does not govern the genitive, as :

Have I this or that ?

You have this, but not that.

Этотъ ли у меня или тотъ ?

У васъ этотъ а не тотъ.

But,

Has the merchant the green or the red velvet ?

He has not the green, but the red.

He has this, but not that.

но, а, однако.

Зелёный ли бархатъ у купца или краснѣй ?

У него не зелёный а краснѣй.

У него этотъ а не тотъ.

Strong,

Yellow,

The ticket,

The garret,

The warehouse,

The grain,

The corn,

Крѣпкій.

Жёлтый.

Билетъ.

Чердакъ.

Амбаръ.

Зерно.

Хлѣбъ (зерновѣй).

## To love, to like, Любѣть.

Do you love ?	}	Любите ли вы ?
Do you like ?		
I love,	}	Я люблю.
I like,		

Do you like a large house ?

Любите ли вы большой домъ ?

I do not like.

Я не люблю.

What do you like ?

Что вы любите ?

I love my father and my brother.

Я люблю своего отца и своего брата.

I love, Я люблю.

We love, Мы любимъ.

Thou lovest, Ты любишь.

You love, Вы любите.

He loves, Онъ любитъ.

They love, Они любятъ.

## To see,

## Видѣть.

What ship do you see ?

Какій корабль видите вы ?

I see the rich Englishman's ship.

Я вижу корабль богатаго Англичанина

Whom do I see ?

Кого я вижу ?

What do I see ?

Что я вижу.

Whom (relative pronoun), Кого, котораго.

Who ? Кто ?

Which (relative pronoun), Который, котораго.

Obs. 3.—The relative pronoun который is used in both cases, whether the antecedent is an animate or inanimate object.

Do you see the friend whom your brother loves ?

Видите ли вы друга, котораго любитъ вашъ братъ ?

I do not see him.

Я его не вижу.

Dost thou see ?

Видишь ли ты ?

Thou dost not see

Ты не видишь

The table, which I do not give.

Столъ, котораго я не даю.

What do they see ?

Что они видятъ ?

Do you like this man ?

Любите ли вы этого человека ?

No, I do not like him.

Нѣтъ, я его не люблю.

Do you like the lemon which you have ?

Любите ли вы лимонъ, который у васъ ?

That which,	Тотъ, которъй.
That (person) whom, }	Того, котораго.
The one whom, }	

I do not like the one whom you love, Я не люблю того, котораго вы любите.

OBS. 4.—The Russian language has no word equivalent to the English auxiliary verb *to do*; therefore, whenever in English, in order to avoid repetition, the auxiliary verb *to do* is used, in Russian the verb must be repeated.

Do you see the pocket-book (which)	Видите ли вы бумажникъ, которъй я
I see ?	вижу ?
No, I do not (see it).	Нѣтъ, я его не вижу.

#### EXERCISE XIV.

What does the good father give to his diligent son?—He gives him sugar and bread.—Whose oats has the inn-keeper?—He has my neighbour's oats.—Has the foreigner my tobacco?—No, he has (it) not.—Whose sugar does the father give to his son?—He gives him the rich merchant's sugar.—Does he give oats to the ass?—He does not give them to the ass, but to the horse.—Do you like tobacco? No, I do not like it.—What do you like?—I like tea and coffee.—Do you see that green velvet, which I like?—Yes, I do see it, and I see the green stocking.—Do you not see the green stocking?—I do not see the green, but I see the white one.—What has this pretty boy's brother?—He has a steel knife.—Which knife?—That which the merchant gives him.—Has he plenty of cheese?—No, he has little cheese, but plenty of sugar and coffee.—Who has my ticket? This sailor has it.—Who has your neighbour's bread?—I have that of my neighbour, the peasant.—Do you like your



neighbour, the peasant?—I like him and he likes me.—Has the master the diligent boy's pencil?—He has not the boy's pencil, he has my friend's pencil only.—Has the peasant the ox or the ram?—He has neither the ox nor the ram, he has the goat.—Do you see the rich Englishman's garden? I see his pretty garden and his large house.—Do you see the guide's house?—I see it, and I see the young prince's large horse.—Which prince?—The one (whom) you like. Which wooden hammer do you see?—My brother's and my wooden hammer.—Does he see the great king's large town? Yes, he sees his large town, but does not see his magnificent castle.

#### EXERCISE XV.

Which castle do you see?—I see the rich prince's castle. Do you see also the king's castle?—No, I do not see his castle, but I see his beautiful garden.—Whose garden do you see?—I see the rich Englishman's garden.—Do you not see my handkerchief?—I do not see it, but I see mine. Whom do you like?—I like my friend's son and my enemy's pupil.—He likes neither your friend's son nor your enemy's pupil.—What tea do you like?—I like good tea and strong coffee.—What garden has the prince?—He has a large and beautiful garden.—Whose friend (acquaintance) is this Russian?—He is my father's friend.—Has the celebrated foreigner his own pocket-book?—No, he has (it) not.—Who has it?—My kind cousin has it.—Have I this cock or that goose?—You have neither this cock nor that goose.—What have I?—You have a large eagle.—Do you like this pie? No, I do not like this pie.—Which pie do you like?—That which you see.—I do not see the pie.—What do you see? I see nothing.

## EXERCISE XVI.

Do you give bread to your goat?—No, I give him oats only.—Does he give good oats to his (own) ass and to my goat?—He gives neither oats nor bread, but (gives) barley only.—Has the inn-keeper a red or yellow handkerchief? He has neither a red nor yellow handkerchief, but he has a white one.—Which inn do I see?—That which the kind officer, your friend, sees.—What tobacco have you?—I have the sailor's excellent tobacco.—Do you give to your brother a little tobacco?—I give him a little tobacco, but I give the sailor plenty of it.—Who gives the poor peasant a piece of stale bread?—The kind boy gives him the bread.—To whom do you give the young cock?—I give him to nobody.—Who has my old shoe?—The shoemaker has it.—Which shoemaker?—Yours.—Has he the iron hammer?—He has (it) not.—Who has it?—His carpenter has it.—Has the banker my red leather pocket-book?—No, he has not yours, but his own.—What has the rich prince's cook?—He has nothing. Has somebody my steel penknife?—Nobody has it.—Do you like your cousin?—I like him, but my brother does not. Do you not give this boy the bread?—I do not.

## TENTH LESSON.—Десятый Урокъ.

By whom? КѢМЪ?

Who has done this?

Кто это сдѣлалъ?

By whom is this done?

КѢМЪ это сдѣлано?

My father.

Мой отецъ.

By my father.

Моимъ отцомъ.

Obs. 1.—With the passive voice the agent must be in the instrumental case without a preposition; the instrumental case is also used in answer to the questions, *By whom? by what? (with what?)*

## This (thing), Это.

OBS. 2.—*This*, when not followed by a substantive, is translated *это*, neuter of *этотъ*.

I have done this,  
This is done by me,  
Have you done this ?  
Is this done by you ?

Я сдѣлалъ это.  
Это сдѣлано мною.  
Вы ли это сдѣлали ?  
Вами ли это сдѣлано ?

I have done,      Я сдѣлалъ.  
Thou hast done,    Ты сдѣлалъ.  
He has done,      Онъ сдѣлалъ.

We have done,      Мы сдѣлали.  
You have done,      Вы сдѣлали.  
They have done,    Они сдѣлали.

This is done,

Это сдѣлано.

By me,              мною.  
By thee,            тобою.  
By him,            имъ, (нимъ).

By us,              нами.  
By you,            вами.  
By them,           ими, (ними).

With whom do you speak ?  
I speak with my father.

Съ кѣмъ говорите вы ?  
Я говорю съ моимъ отцомъ.

To speak (with some one, of  
some one, of something).

Говорить, II. 10\* (съ кѣмъ,  
о комъ, о чѣмъ).

OBS. 3.—The Russians say, as the English, *to speak with* some one and *to* some one, as :

I spoke to him.  
Do you speak ?  
I speak.  
I do not speak.  
Who speaks ?  
Nobody speaks.

Я говорилъ ему.  
Говорите вы ?  
Я говорю.  
Я не говорю.  
Кто говоритъ ?  
Никто не говоритъ.

I speak,            я говорю.  
Thou speakest,    ты говоришь.  
He speaks,          онъ говоритъ.

We speak,          мы говоримъ.  
You speak,          вы говорите.  
They speak,        они говорятъ.

\* Roman figures will indicate the conjugation, Arabic the class, and asterisks irregular verbs.



*The Instrumental Case.*

By whom?	Кѣмъ?	By what?	Чѣмъ?
By nobody,	} Ни кѣмъ.	By nothing,	} Ни чѣмъ.
Not by anybody.		Not by anything.	

Who gave this?

Кто это далъ?

By whom is this given?

Кѣмъ это дано?

By this merchant,

Этимъ купцомъ.

By his father,

Его отцомъ.

By your shoemaker.

Вашимъ башмачникомъ.

By my, by mine,

Моимъ.

By thy, by thine,

Твоимъ.

By his (own),

Своимъ.

By our, by ours,

Нашимъ.

By your, by yours,

Вашимъ.

By their (own), by theirs,

Своими.

By his,

Его.

By their, by theirs.

Ихъ.

OBS. 4.—The possessive pronouns мой, твой, свой, нашъ, вашъ have only one form, whether placed before a noun or standing alone, as :

This is my house,

Это мой домъ.

This house is mine,

Этотъ домъ мой.

*The Prepositional Case.*

Of whom?	О комъ?	Of what?	О чѣмъ?
Of nobody,	} Ни о комъ.	Of nothing,	} Ни о чѣмъ.
Not of anybody.		Not of anything.	

With, Сь, со, (governs the instr.).

OBS. 5.—Сь changes into со when coming before nouns, commencing with two or more consonants, which do not easily combine with it in sound.

Of (about, concerning), О, (объ, обо).

OBS. 6.—О changes into объ before words commencing with pure vowels (а, о, у, э, и).

Of the angel,	Объ ангелѣ.
Of the father,	Объ отцѣ.
Of the beehive,	Объ ульѣ.
Of this,	Объ этомъ.
Of their,	Объ ихъ.
Of his,	О егѡ.
Of the anchor,	О якорѣ.
Of the south,	О югѣ.
Of the ride,	О ѣздѣ.
Of my, of mine,	О моёмъ.
Of thy, of thine.	О твоёмъ.

Объ occasionally becomes обо before words commencing with two consonants, as :

Of me,	Обо мнѣ.
Of everything,	Обо всѣмъ.

Of whom do you speak ?	О комъ говорíte вы ?
I speak of my kind father.	Я говорю о моёмъ добромъ отцѣ.
Of what does your brother speak ?	О чёмъ говорить вашъ братъ ?
He speaks of nothing,	Онъ ни о чёмъ не говорить.
He does not speak of anything. }	
He speaks of his old friend.	Онъ говорить о своёмъ старомъ другѣ.
Of which shoe does he speak ?	О какомъ башмакѣ говорить онъ ?
He speaks of the old leather shoe.	Онъ говорить о старомъ кожаномъ башмакѣ.

By which, (with which),	Которымъ.
Of which,	О которомъ.
By this, by that, (with this, with that), }	Этимъ, тѣмъ.
Of this, of that.	Объ этомъ, о томъ.

By whom is this made?

КѢМЪ ЭТО СДѢЛАНО?

By this man.

ЭТИМЪ ЧЕЛОВѢКОМЪ.

Of which man do you speak?

О КАКОМЪ ЧЕЛОВѢКѢ ГОВОРИТЕ ВЫ?

Of that man.

О ТОМЪ ЧЕЛОВѢКѢ.

With whom is your brother?

СЪ КѢМЪ ВАШЪ БРАТЬ.

He is with his father.

ОНЪ СО СВОИМЪ ОЦОМЪ.

## EXERCISE XVII.

With whom is your brother?—He is with my father.—Is the modest pupil with the master?—No, he is not with him, but with his own brother.—Do you see the bootmaker with my new boot?—I do not see him, but my brother does. With whom does the kind prince speak?—He speaks with my kind old father.—Whom do you see?—I see my cook with a piece of bacon.—Whose bacon has he?—He has that of my neighbour, the baker.—By whom is this table made? It is made by this honest joiner.—What has this boy?—He has a pie with cheese.—With whom does he speak?—He speaks with the kind master's modest pupil.—Do you see the baker with the white bread?—I do not see the baker with the white bread, but I see the young man with the pie. With which pie?—With the confectioner's pie.—Has he not my wooden coffer?—He has (it) not.—Do you not see the carpenter with the iron hammer?—I see him with his brother.—Which sack has the peasant?—He has the miller's new sack.—Of which boy do you speak?—I speak of that pretty boy, whom you see.—Of which ship does the captain speak?—He speaks of his neighbour's pretty ship. Which neighbour?—The rich banker.—Do you speak of your shoe or of mine?—I speak neither of mine nor of yours, but of my shoemaker's shoe.—Which polecat has he?—He has the miller's polecat.



## EXERCISE XVIII.

Which tea do you like?—I like black tea.—Which tea do you speak of with the merchant?—Of mine.—Of what does he speak with that rich merchant?—He speaks with him of his son, who is his clerk.—Does he speak with him also?—No, he does not speak with him.—Has he the white bread with cheese?—With what?—With the young merchant's good cheese?—He has no bread with cheese, but has a pie with honey.—By whom is the steel nail given to thee? By the industrious blacksmith.—Does he see the eagle? He sees the boy with the eagle.—Has not the blacksmith a new iron nail and an old wooden hammer?—He has nothing.—Of which lantern do you speak?—I speak of that of the king's sentry.—With which sentry is your brother? With the kind king's sentry.—Do you see me with my young brother?—I see you, but do not see your brother. To whom does he give his large house with the beautiful garden?—He gives his (own) house with the garden to his son.—Of which son do you speak?—Of the one who has a castle with a large yard.—Are your new houses large?—No, they are not, but those of my brother are. By whom is this castle given to the prince?—It is given to the prince by the king.—I speak of his garden, but he speaks of his house.—Thou speakest of the castle, of the yard, and his ship.—The house is mine, but the garden is his; the garden is thine, but the castle is his.—These houses are yours, but those are mine.—Has he your hammers?—No, he has his own hammers only.

---

## ELEVENTH LESSON.

Одѣнадцатый Урокъ.

Masculine Plural, Множественное Число Мужскаго  
Рода.

There are two numbers in the Russian language :—

The Singular, Единственное Число.  
The Plural, Множественное Число.

Masculine Substantives have in the plural, as in the singular, two declensions—hard and soft.

Nominative, { Old gardens.	Nom. { Ancient kings,	Heroes.
{ Стѣрые сады.	{ Дрѣвнѣ королѣй,	Герои.
Genitive,       Стѣрыхъ садовъ.	Gen.     Дрѣвнихъ королѣй,	Героевъ.
Dative,         Стѣрымъ садамъ.	Dat.     Дрѣвнимъ королѣмъ,	Героямъ.
Accusative,     Стѣрые сады.	Acc.     Дрѣвнихъ королѣй,	Героевъ.
Instrumental, Стѣрыми садами.	Inst.     Дрѣвними королѣми,	Героями.
Prepositional, Стѣрыхъ садахъ.	Prep.     Дрѣвнихъ королѣхъ,	Герояхъ.

According to the above examples are declined all regular masculine nouns in the plural, subject however to the rules of permutation of vowels, of which the following are the most important :

1. Substantives ending in ѣ, preceded by г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, form their nominative plural in и instead of ѣ.

2. Substantives in ѣ, preceded by ж, ч, ш, щ, take in the genitive plural the inflexion of ей instead of овъ.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

## TABLE OF DECLENSIONS.—Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падежѣ.	<i>Substantive.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjective.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.		
	Имя Существительное. Hard Inflex.      Soft Inflex.		<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Aposcopated termination.</i>
			Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	
Nom.	ы (и, а).	и, (я) и.	ые.	іе, ыи.	и.
Gen.	овъ (ей).	евъ, ей.	ыхъ.	ихъ, ыхъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	амъ.	ямъ, ямъ.	ымъ.	имъ, ымъ.	имъ.
Acc.	Like the Genitive or the Nominative.				
Inst.	ами.	ями, ями.	ыми.	ими, ыми.	ими.
Prep.	ахъ.	яхъ, яхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ, ыхъ.	ихъ.



I have,	У меня́ есть.
We have,	У насъ есть.

Obs. 1.—Есть, when expressing possession, is used also for the plural, as :

Have the merchants ships ?	Есть ли у купцовъ кораблѣ ?
They have ships.	У нихъ есть кораблѣ.

They, Онѣ.

Obs. 2.—Онѣ, when with a preposition, takes the letter н in oblique cases.

The masters (teachers),	Учителѣ and Учѣтели.
The candlesticks,	Подсвѣчники.
The booksellers,	Книгопродавцы.
The cloaks,	Плащѣ.
The neighbours,	Сосѣди, gen. сосѣдей.
The merchants,	Купцы.
The umbrellas,	Зонтники.
The hammers,	Молотки.
The joiners,	Столярѣ.
The oxen,	Быки.
The captains,	Капитаны.
The bakers,	Булочники.
The knives,	Ножи.
The smokers,	Курильщики.

Obs. 3.—Substantives ending in ѣ, which take in the nominative plural а or я instead of ы, have the accent generally on the last syllable, as :

The house,	Домъ, plur. домá.
The sleeve,	Рукавъ, plur. рукава́.
The doctor,	До́кторъ, plur. докторá.
The bell,	Колоко́лъ, plur. колоколá.
The cook,	По́варъ, plur. поварá.
The town,	Го́родъ, plur. городá.

OBS. 4.—Some homonymous words have more than one termination in the nominative plural, *i.e.* **Ы**, **а** and **Я**, as :

The tooth,	<u>Зубъ</u> ,	plur.	{ ЗУБЫ (of animate beings). ЗУБЫА (of combs, saws, etc.).
The leaf, sheet,	Листъ,	plur.	{ ЛИСТЫ (of paper). ЛИСТЯ (of plants).
The man,	} Мужъ,	plur.	{ МУЖИ, men, (Slavonic). * МУЖЬЯ, the husbands.
The husband,			
The bellows,	} Мѣхъ,	plur.	{ МѢХИ, the bellows. МѢХА, the furs.
The fur,			
The son,	Сынъ,		{ СЫНЫ (Slavonic). * СЫНОВЬЯ, the sons.
The bread,	} Хлѣбъ,	plur.	{ ХЛѢБЫ, the loaves of bread. ХЛѢБА, corn.
The corn,			
The flower,	} Цвѣтъ,	plur.	{ ЦВѢТЫ, the flowers. ЦВѢТА, the colours.
The colour,			
The scull,	} Черепъ,	plur.	{ ЧЕРЕПЫ, the sculls. ЧЕРЕПЬЯ, the shells.
The shell,			

OBS. 5.—Some substantives take for the plural both **Ы** and **а**, without affecting the meaning, as :

The houses,	{ ДОМЫ, ДОМА.
-------------	------------------

OBS. 6.—Some substantives, employed in a collective sense, take **а** or **Я** for the plural, as :

The root,	Корень, plural коренья.
The house,	Домъ, plural дома.
The hair,	Волосъ, plural волоса.

OBS. 7.—Collective nouns, whether animate or inanimate, have always the accusative like the nominative: **вѣйско**, 'army,' accusative **вѣйско**.

How many sons have you ? СКОЛЬКО у васъ сыновей ?

---

\* As 'sons of the country,' } СЫНЫ отѣчества.  
children of the soil, }

OBS. 8.—Most substantives ending in ёнокъ form their plural in ята or ата, as :

The child,	ребёнокъ ;	plural,	ребя́та.
The calf,	телёнокъ ;	plural,	теля́та.
The bear's cub,	медвѣжёнокъ ;	plural,	медвѣжа́та.

OBS. 9.—In the declension of the plural of substantives ending in анинъ or янинъ, аринъ or яринъ, the last syllable ин is omitted, and they take for the plural e instead of ы.

The citizen,	граждани́нъ ;	plural,	гражда́не.
The gentleman,	дворяни́нъ ;	plural,	дворя́не.
The peasant,	крестья́нинъ ;	plural,	крестья́не.
A Bulgarian,	Болга́ринъ ;	plural,	Болга́ре.
A lord, gentleman,	бо́яринъ ;	plural,	бо́яре.
A gipsy,	цыга́нъ ;	plural,	цыга́не.

OBS. 10.—The substantive сосѣдь, ‘the neighbour,’ and холо́пъ, ‘the servant,’ have for the plural сосѣди, холо́пи.

OBS. 11.—The substantives братъ, ‘the brother;’ хозяи́нъ, ‘the master;’ другъ, ‘the friend;’ сынъ, ‘the son;’ шу́ринъ, ‘the brother-in-law;’ have for the plural бра́тья, хозя́ева, друзья́, сыновья́, шу́рыя.

The sentry,	часово́й ;	genitive, часова́го ;	plural, часовы́е.
The tailor,	портно́й ;	genitive, портна́го ;	plural, портны́е.
The waiter,	полово́й ?	genitive, полова́го ;	plural, половы́е.

OBS. 12.—Substantives ending in жъ, чъ, шъ, щъ, take ей for the genitive plural, as :

The husband,	мужъ ;	plural, мужа́ ;	genitive, муже́й.
The cloak,	плащъ ;	plural, плащú ;	genitive, плаще́й.
The key,	ключъ ;	plural, ключи́ ;	genitive, ключе́й.
The cabin,	шалашъ ;	plural, шалашú ;	genitive, шалаше́й.



OBS. 13.—Some few words take, in the genitive plural, the inflexion of the nominative singular, as :

The hair,	вѳлосъ ;	plural, вѳлоса́ ;	genitive, вѳло́съ.
The soldier,	солда́тъ ;	plural, солда́ты ;	genitive, солда́тъ.
A pood (weight),	пудъ ;	plural, пуды́ ;	genitive, пудъ.
One time (once),	разъ ;	plural, разы́ ;	genitive, разъ.
The boot,	сапогъ ;	plural, сапоги́ ;	genitive, сапо́гъ.
The eye,	глазъ ;	plural, глаза́ ;	genitive, глазь.

OBS. 14.—Substantives forming their plural irregularly will be enumerated hereafter.

The friends,	Друзья́.
The good friends,	Дѳбры́е друзья́.
Russians,	Ру́сскіе.
Frenchmen,	Францу́зы.
I speak of Frenchmen,	Я говорю́ о Францу́захъ.
Englishmen, }	Англича́не.
The English, }	

Whom did you see ?	Кого́ вы ви́дѳли ?
I saw Englishmen.	Я ви́дѳлъ Англича́нъ.
Of whom do you speak ?	О комъ говори́те вы ?
Of peasants.	О крестья́нахъ.

The pencils,	Кара́ндаши́.
The noses,	Носы́.
The fire, the fires,	Огѳнь, огни́.
The castles,	За́мки.
The locks,	Замки́.
The hammers,	Молотки́.
Black horse,	Воронѳй конь.
Grey horse,	Сѳрый конь.
The ships,	Корабли́.

Have you my old cloaks ?	У васъ ли мои́ стары́е плащи́ ?
I have not yours, I have my new cloaks.	У меня́ нѳтъ вашихъ, у меня́ свои́ новы́е.

*Singular.**Masculine.*

My, mine, мой, свой.

Thy, thine, твой, свой.

His, *ero*,\* (feminine *ея*), свой.

Our, ours, нашъ, свой.

Your, yours, вашъ, свой.

His cloaks,

Our houses,

Their gardens,

*Plural.**Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

My, mine, мой, свой.

Thy, thine, твой, свой.

Our, ours, наши, свой.

Your, yours, ваши, свой.

Their, theirs, ихъ, свой.

Его плащѣ.

Наши домѣ.

Ихъ садѣ.

Where? Гдѣ?

Where are your candlesticks?

Which candlesticks?

The golden ones.

Гдѣ ваши подсвѣчники?

Какіе подсвѣчники?

Золотые.

What? (plural),

Какіе?

Which?

{ Какіе?  
Которые?

These, those,

Эти, тѣ.

What sort of eyes has this young man?

He has blue eyes.

The eye, the eyes.

Has the rich inn-keeper large gardens?

No, he has (them) not.

Какіе глаза у этого молодого человека?

У него голубые глаза.

Глазъ, глазѣ.

Есть ли у богатаго трактирщика большіе садѣ.

Нѣтъ, у него ихъ нѣтъ.

OBS. 15.—*It* being rendered in Russian by the third personal pronoun онъ, *them* will be ихъ.

*Those of*, as *that of*, is rendered by the repetition of the substantive, as:

Have they the horses of the Russians?

No, they have those of the English.

У нихъ ли лошади Русскихъ?

Нѣтъ, у нихъ лошади Англичанъ.

\* The possessive pronoun *ero*, 'his,' must not be confounded with *ero* the genitive and accusative of the third person. pron. онъ.

## Whose? (plural), Чьѣ.

Whose loaves (of bread) have you ?	Чьѣ у васъ хлѣбы ?
I have those of the rich bakers.	У меня хлѣбы богатыхъ булочни- ковъ.
Which shoes have you, these or those ?	Какіе башмаки у васъ, эти или тѣ ?
I have neither these nor those.	У меня нѣтъ ни этихъ ни тѣхъ.

They, them,

Онѣ, ихъ (нихъ).

These ones, those ones,

Эти, тѣ.

Genitive,	Of these, of those,	Этихъ, тѣхъ.
Dative,	To these, to those,	Этимъ, тѣмъ.
Accusative,	Like the genitive or the nominative.	
Instrumental,	By these, by those,	Этими, тѣми.
Prepositional,	Of these, of those,	Объ этихъ, о тѣхъ.
Nominative,	Which, (plural),	Которые, какіе.
Genitive,	Of which,	Которыхъ, какиихъ.
Dative,	To which,	Которымъ, какимъ.
Accusative,	Which,	Like the genitive or the nominat.
Instrumental,	By which,	Которыми, какими.
Prepositional,	Of which,	О которыхъ, какиихъ.

NOTE.—Men,

Люди.

People,

{ Народъ.  
Люди.

Obs. 16.—The word 'man,' человекъ, forms an irregular plural—люди, genitive людей, etc.

Of which men do you speak ?	О какиихъ людяхъ говорите вы ?
Of the ones, whom you see.	О тѣхъ, которыхъ вы видите.

Those which,

Тѣ, которые.

The ones whom,

Тѣ, которыхъ.

To seek,

Искать. I. 2.

To be seeking, }

Whom are you seeking ?

Кого вы ищете ?

I am seeking these men.

Я ищу этихъ людей.



I seek, } я ищу.  
 I am seeking, }  
 Thou seekest, ты ищешь.  
 He seeks, онъ ищетъ.

We seek, мы ищемъ.  
 You seek, вы ищете.  
 They seek, они ищутъ.

Have you many horses ?  
 I have not many.

Много ли у васъ коней ?  
 У меня не много.

### EXERCISE XIX.

What has the shepherd ?—He has oxen, goats and asses. What oxen has he ?—He has large and young oxen.—Have the merchants velvet ?—They have no velvet, but the merchants, who have the beautiful stockings, have good velvet also.—Do not you see those geese with the beautiful young pigeons ?—I do not see them, but I see here the old eagles, which he sees also.—What do you seek ?—I seek my pencils.—With whom do you speak ?—I speak with my friends.—Do you like your friends ?—Yes, I do (like them). Have the tailors their own thimbles ?—They have their own.—Where have you my knives ?—I have them not, I seek them.—What have the carpenters ?—They have the joiners' iron hammers.—Do you not seek the asses of the Italian ?—No, I seek those of the miller.—Do you like horses ?—I do.—Have the rich tailors the cloaks ?—No, they have them not, the inn-keepers have them.—What have the brave captains ?—They have good soldiers.—What does the rich banker seek ?—He seeks his leather shoes.—Has he many brothers ?—He has many (of them).—Has he not your pretty handkerchiefs ?—He has not mine, but his own. What handkerchiefs have the merchants ?—They have the bad handkerchiefs of the foreigners.—Which foreigners ? Those whom you do not like.—Have the sailors good ships ?—The sailors have no good ships.—Who has them ? The rich captains have them.—Have the boys pretty umbrel-

las?—Yes, they have.—What have your booksellers?—They have fine houses.—What are their houses?—Their houses are large.

### EXERCISE XX.

Has the joiner iron nails?—No, he has not nails.—What houses have they?—They have pretty houses.—What castles have the Frenchmen?—They have no castles, but have houses with yards.—Whose iron hammers has he? He has those of the joiners.—Have these pupils good masters?—They have excellent masters.—Whose biscuits has the baker?—He has those of his neighbours, the confectioners.—Have your friends my fine knives?—They have not your knives, they have those of the cooks only.—Whose cooks are these men?—Mine.—Has he wooden tables? Yes, he has plenty of them.—Who has the rich merchants' gold candlesticks?—Nobody has them.—They have them. What horses does your friend like?—He likes black horses, but does not like grey ones.—Who gives him the pies? The rich merchant's cooks.—What have their brothers? They have wooden coffers, large copper lanterns and pretty silver candlesticks.—What bags have these peasants? These peasants have no bags, but our cooks have (some). Are you seeking the soldier's tobacco or the smoker's?—I seek neither the soldier's nor the smoker's tobacco, I seek my own.—Have you many boots?—I have no boots, I have shoes only.—Have the cocks and the pigeons barley? They have a little barley.—What has this officer?—Which officer?—The one whom the colonel does not like.—He has nothing.—Has he his own boots?—He has not his own, he has the bootmaker's boots only.—Have you any shoes? Yes, I have.

## TWELFTH LESSON.—Двѣнадцатый Урокъ.

*Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns.*

OBS. 1.—Masculine augmentative nouns have the termination in *ище* or *ина*, which represent the object in a magnified form, sometimes also express contempt for, or deformity in the object, as :

Мужикъ, a peasant,	{ Мужичище, a big peasant.
	{ Мужичина, a big, coarse peasant.
Домъ, a house,	{ Домище, a big house.
	{ Домина, a big, ugly house.

As the above terminations are not of the masculine gender, they will be treated hereafter.

Masculine diminutives have the following terminations :

икъ, окъ, екъ, ецъ,

which represent the object diminished in size, as :

A table, столъ,	diminutive	Столикъ,	little table.
A shed, сарай,	„	Сараецъ.	little shed.
A horse, конь,	„	Конёкъ,	little horse.
A town, городъ,	„	Городокъ,	little town.
A man, человекъ,	„	Человѣчекъ,	{ a little man, a manikin.

OBS. 2.—The diminutive full terminations for adjectives are : *енькій* or *енькой*, and *онькій* or *онькой*. These terminations indicate a diminution of quality or a softening of the force of their primitives.

More detailed explanations of augmentative and diminutive nouns will be given further on.

Nominative,	We, you, they,	Мы, вы, онѣ.
Genitive,	Of us, of you, of them,	Насъ, васъ, ихъ (нихъ).
Dative,	To us, to you, to them.	Намъ, вамъ, имъ (нимъ).
Accusative,	Us, you, them,	Насъ, васъ, ихъ (нихъ).
Instrumental,	By us, by you, by them,	Нѣми, ва́ми, ими (ни́ми).
Prepositional,	Of us, of you, of them,	О насъ, о васъ, о нихъ.



OBS. 3.—То ихъ, имъ, ѣмн, when with a preposition, the letter н is prefixed, as нихъ, нимъ, ѣмнн

Both, (the one and the	{ Оба.
other),	{ Тотъ и другой.
One, the one,	Однѣ.
The other, another,	Другой.

Have you the gold or silver thimble ? Золотой ли напѣрстокъ у васъ или серебряный ?

I have both, { У меня тотъ и другой.  
У меня оба.

Both, plur. (those and	{ Оба.
the others),	{ Тѣ и другіе.
Neither (neither that	{ Ни тотъ ни другой.
nor the other),	{
Neither, plur. (neither	{ Ни тѣ ни другіе.
those nor the others),	{

*Singular.*—The other.

Nominative,	Другой.
Genitive,	Другаго.
Dative,	Другому.
Accusative,	Другой, другаго.
Instrumental,	Другимъ.
Prepositional,	О другомъ.

*Plural.*—The others.

Nominative,	Другіе.
Genitive,	Другихъ.
Dative,	Другимъ.
Accusative,	Другіе, другихъ.
Instrumental,	Другими.
Prepositional,	О другихъ.

Красивый садъ,

A pretty garden.

*Singular.*

Nominative,	Красивый садъ.
Genitive,	Красиваго сада.
Dative,	Красивому саду.
Accusative,	Красивый садъ.
Instrumental,	Красивымъ садомъ.
Prepositional,	О красивомъ садѣ.

*Plural.*

Nominative,	Красивые сады.
Genitive,	Красивыхъ садовъ.
Dative,	Красивымъ садамъ.
Accusative,	Красивые сады.
Instrumental,	Красивыми садами.
Prepositional,	О красивыхъ садахъ.



OBS. 4.—According to the above example are declined all regular substantives and adjectives of hard termination. In names of animate beings, however, the accusative is like the genitive, as :

Ан ох, БЫКЪ ; accusative singular, БЫКА́ ; accusative plural, БЫКО́ВЪ.

### *Exceptions.*

The following substantives—зубъ, ‘a tooth ;’ чéрепъ, ‘a scull ;’ клинъ, ‘a wedge ;’ колъ, ‘a stake ;’ стулъ, ‘a chair ;’ о́бодъ, ‘a felly ;’ братъ, ‘a brother ;’ листь, ‘a leaf ;’ лоску́тъ, ‘a rag, scrap ;’ пру́тъ, ‘a twig ;’ по́люзъ, ‘a slide ;’ брусь, ‘a beam ;’ ко́лосъ, ‘an ear (of corn) ;’ бато́гъ, ‘a rod ;’ кло́къ, ‘a tuft ;’ крю́къ, ‘a hook ;’ су́къ, ‘a knot (in wood) ;’ ка́мень, ‘a stone ;’ ко́рень, ‘a root ;’ у́голь, ‘coal ;’ волды́рь, ‘a boil’—form their plural irregularly, *i.e.* nom. in я, gen. ьевъ, dat. ямъ, inst. я́ми, prep. яхъ. The gutturals г, к, before ь, changing into ж, ч, as : бато́жья, кло́чья, крjóчья, сýчья.

OBS. 5.—In all the above substantives the accent, if on the first syllable, passes to the middle one, except in the word у́голь, which preserves the accent on the first syllable, as :

у́голь, plural у́голья.

OBS. 6.—In a partitive sense, бато́гъ, крю́къ, ка́мень, ко́рень, form also their plural in и, as батогí, крюкí, камни.

OBS. 7.—Братъ, сватъ, сынъ, for the gen. and acc. plur. have also бра́тíи, сватовéи, сынóвъ. Листы́, sheets (of paper), gen. листóвъ.

What does the banker seek ?  
He is seeking his pocket-book.

Что и́щетъ банкíръ ?  
Онъ и́щетъ свой бума́жникъ.

Why?	Зачѣмъ?
Wherefore?	Почему?
Because.	Потому что.

Obs. 8.—Потому́ что—literally, ‘for that that.’

Why does he seek him?	Зачѣмъ онъ его ищетъ?
Because he wants him.	Потому́ что онъ ему́ ꙗ́добенъ (нуженъ).

Obs. 9.—Нáдобенъ, нýженъ,—literally means ‘necessary.’

I want, I need, (It is necessary to me). }	Мнѣ ꙗ́добно.
---	--------------

There are,	Есть, (impers. verb.)
<i>There are</i> many men, whom no one likes.	(Есть) мно́го люде́й, кото́рыхъ ни- кто́ не лю́битъ.

Obs. 10.—Есть, ‘there are,’ is usually omitted, although understood.

I was speaking,	Я говори́лъ.	We were speaking,	Мы говори́ли.
I did speak,	Я говори́лъ.	We did speak,	Мы говори́ли.
I spoke,	Я говори́лъ.	We spoke,	Мы говори́ли.
I have or had spoken,	Я говори́лъ.	We have or had spoken,	Мы говори́ли.

I saw,	Я ви́дѣлъ.	We saw,	Мы ви́дѣли.
I did see,	Я ви́дѣлъ.	We did see,	Мы ви́дѣли.
I have seen, etc.	Я ви́дѣлъ.	We have seen, etc.	Мы ви́дѣли.

I was giving,	Я дава́лъ.
We were giving,	Мы дава́ли.

I gave,	Я далъ.
Thou gavest,	Ты далъ.
He gave,	Онъ далъ.
We gave,	Мы дали.
You gave,	Вы дали.
They gave,	Они́ дали.

OBS. 11.—There is only one past tense in the Russian verbs. Thus, ‘I did see, I saw, I have seen this man,’ are rendered in Russian by

Я видѣлъ этого человека.

OBS. 12.—The three persons of the past tense in the singular end in *лъ* (fem. *ла*, neut. *ло*), and the three persons of the plural, for all genders, end in *ли*: the person is distinguished by the personal pronoun which precedes the verb.

The shepherd,	Пасту́хъ.
Merchandise (goods),	Това́ръ.
The emperor,	Импера́торъ.
The czar,	Ца́рь.
A count,	Гра́фъ.
The baron,	Ба́ронъ.
The mendicant, beggar,	Ни́щій.
The market,	Ры́нокъ, genitive, ры́нка.

John,	Ива́нъ.	Peter,	Пе́тръ.
Charles,	Карлъ.	Andrew,	Андре́й.
Alexis,	Алексе́й.	Joseph,	Ю́сифъ, Осипъ.
Basil,	Васи́лій.	Constantine,	Константи́нъ.
Alexander,	Алекса́ндръ.	Paul,	Па́велъ.

Grand duke,	Вели́кій князь.
Hemp, конопель ;	genitive, конопля́.
Curious, inquisitive,	Любопы́тнѣй.
The flax, лёнъ ;	genitive, льну́, and льна́.
Wise,	Му́дрый.

Where did you see his brothers ?    Гдѣ вы видѣли его братьевъ ?  
 I saw them in the market.        Я видѣлъ ихъ на рынкѣ.

OBS. 13.—The preposition *въ*, ‘in,’ having the strict meaning of ‘inside,’ the Russians say, *on the market* instead of *in the market*.

## EXERCISE XXI.

Are you seeking your boots or mine?—I seek neither yours nor mine, I seek those of the count.—Which count? The one who has excellent gardens.—What have these beggars?—They have old shoes.—What tickets does he seek?—He does not seek tickets, he seeks his pocket-books. Do you like this kind prince?—I like not only this kind prince, but his sons also.—Does he like this merchant's sons?—Yes, he likes them.—To whom did you give your pencils, to masters (teachers) or pupils?—I gave them neither to masters nor pupils, I gave them to my diligent brother.—Did you speak with the baron?—No, I did not speak with him, but I spoke with the count.—Does not he see you?—He does not see me.—Does his brother see my steel knives?—No, he does not (see them).—What oxen have the shepherds?—The shepherds have no oxen, they have rams and asses only.—Have you blue or red velvet? I have neither blue nor red velvet, I have green satin only. Did you not see the banker's beautiful horses?—I did not see his horses.—Do you see the masters (teachers) with their diligent pupils?—I do not see the masters, but I see their sons and their brothers.—Which is your tea?—My tea is that with sugar.—Have you my cloaks or those of the tailor?—I have neither.—What has he?—He has the old boots of the young sailor.—What umbrellas have you? I have blue, black, white and yellow silk umbrellas.

## EXERCISE XXII.

Of which emperor were you speaking?—I spoke of the emperor who has many brave soldiers.—What did the industrious sailors see?—They saw fine ships with white



sails.—With whom did you speak?—I spoke with the sons of the rich merchants.—Have you seen this merchant's pretty houses?—I saw only those of his neighbours.—Did you speak with father Constantine?—No, but I spoke with his sons.—Why did you not speak to either Alexander or Constantine?—Because they did not speak to his father. What have their friends?—They have his brother's young pigeons.—Who has spoken to the brothers of your friends? Nobody has spoken to them.—What oxen has the butcher? Which butcher?—The one whom you do not like.—The butcher, whom I do not like, has no oxen; he has rams only.—Where did he see the emperor with the sons of the grand duke?—He saw them in the king's palace.—Does he like eagles and pigeons?—No, he does not like eagles, but pigeons only.—Where does he see the peasants?—He sees them in (на) the market.—What merchandise have these rich merchants?—They have tea, sugar, coffee, honey, wax, flax and hemp.—Have they plenty of flax and hemp?—They have enough flax, but little hemp.—Why did you not give them a little tobacco?—Because they do not like it.

---

### THIRTEENTH LESSON.—Тринадцатый Урокъ.

The belt,	Поясъ.
The comb,	Гребень.
A small comb,	Маленькій гребень, гребешокъ.
The glass, tumbler,	Стаканъ.
The mouth (of animals),	Ротъ, genitive, рта.
The nose,	Носъ.
The eye,	Глазъ, plur. глаза́, gen. plur. <i>глазъ</i> .
The forest, wood,	Лѣсъ, plural, лѣса́.
The horseman	Всадникъ.

Obs. 1.—It has already been remarked that many substantives ending in *ъ*, *ь*, *и* form their plural in *а*, *я*, instead of *ы*, *и*, as :

Домъ, ‘the house ;’ Якорь, ‘the anchor ;’ Край, ‘the edge.

*Plural.*

Nominative,	домá,	якоря́,	край.
Genitive,	домо́въ,	якорей,	краёвъ.
Dative,	дома́мъ,	якоря́мъ,	краймъ.
Accusative,	домá,	якоря́,	край.
Instrumental,	дома́ми,	якоря́ми.	крайм.
Prepositional,	о дома́хъ,	якоря́хъ,	крайхъ.

Obs. 2.—According to the above examples are declined the following substantives, of which nearly all, as shown in brackets, have also in the nominative plural their regular termination in *ы* or *и* :

A boar,	Боровъ, (ы and а).
A millstone,	Жерновъ.
A pannier,	Кузовъ.
A sleeve,	Рукавъ.
A woodcock,	Тетеревъ.
An island,	Островъ.
A stall,	Хлѣвъ.
A gutter, spout,	Желобъ, (ы and а).
A hamper,	Коробъ, (ы and а).
A cellar,	Погребъ.
The bread,	Хлѣбъ, (ы and а).
A vulture,	Ястребъ, (ы and а).
The farming,	Откупъ, (ы and а).
A whip,	Шелепъ, (ы and а).
A room, attic.	Тѣмь, (ы and а).
An order (decoration),	Орденъ, (ы and а).
A midshipman,	Мичманъ, (ы and а).

and other dissyllabic foreign nouns ending in *манъ*.

The bell,	Колоколъ.
A cupola,	Куполъ, (ы and а).
A ramrod,	Шомполъ, (ы and а).
The evening,	Вечеръ.
A cook,	Поваръ.

and foreign words, having an unaccented termination in еръ, оръ, as :

Кáтеръ, 'a cutter;'    дóкторъ, 'doctor;' etc.

The year,	Годъ, (ы and а).
The town,	Гóродъ.
The honey,	Мёдъ, (ы and а).
The cold,	Хóлодъ.
The age,	Вóзрастъ, (ы and а).
A flower, colour,	Цвѣтъ, (ы and á).
A form, shape, image,	Образъ, (ы and а).
The voice,	Гóлосъ.
A body, corps,	Кóрпусъ, (ы and а).
A forest,	Лѣсъ.
A sail,	Пáрусъ, (ы and а).
The belt, girdle,	Пóясъ, (ы and а).
A guard, watchman,	Стóрожъ.
The shore,	Бéрегъ.
A meadow,	Лугъ.
A curtain,	Пóлогъ.
The horn,	Рогъ, (и and а).
The snow,	Снѣгъ, (и and а).
A rick (of hay),	Стогъ, (и and а).
The plane, barge,	Стругъ, (и and а).
The side, flank,	Бокъ.
A century, age,	Вѣкъ, (и and а).
The fur, bellows	Мѣхъ, (и and а).
The bowels, intestines,	Пóтrophъ, (и and а).
An edge, country,	Край.
A bill of exchange,	Вѣксель, (и and я).
A monogram,	Вѣнзель, (и and я).
A cracknel,	Крѣндель, (и and я).
A stamp,	Штѣмпель, (и and я).
Wing of a house,	Флигелъ, (и and я).
A surgeon,	Лѣкарь, (и and я).
A writer,	Писаръ, (и and я).
An anchor,	Якоръ, (и and я).
A hunter,	Егеръ, (и and я).

Have the cooks my knives ?	У поваровъ ли мой ножъ ?
They have them not.	Онѣ не у нихъ.
Have they seen the boars ?	Видѣли ли онѣ борововъ ?
Where are the boars ?	Гдѣ боровы ?
I see only one boar.	Я вижу только одного борова.

A German,	Germans,	Нѣмецъ,	нѣмцы.
A Turk,	Turks,	Турокъ,	тѣрки.
An Italian,	Italians,	Итальянецъ,	итальянцы.
A Spaniard,	Spaniards,	Испанецъ,	испанцы.
A Russian,	Russians,	Русскій,	русскіе.
An American,	Americans,	Американецъ,	американцы.

OBS. 3.—The Russians do not commence the names of nations with capital letters.

Give (imperative),	Дай, plural, дайте.
Give me the cloak.	Дайте мнѣ плащъ.

If you please, (pray),	Пожáлуйста, пожелуйте.
To grant, to confer, }	Пожáловать.
To present, to give, }	

Give me this, if you please.	Дайте мнѣ это пожелуйте.
(Pray, give me this).	Пожáлуйте мнѣ это.
Give me some sugar, if you please.	{ Дайте мнѣ, пожелуйте сахару.
	{ Пожелуйте мнѣ сахару.

OBS. 4.—Пожáлуйте, imperative from пожеловать, is used extensively by Russians for politeness' sake, in place of *to give, to come, etc.*, and also in order to avoid a lengthy phrase with пожелуйте, thus :

Come to me if you please, or }	Приходите пожелуйте ко мнѣ,
pray come to me,	

may be just as well rendered by пожелуйте ко мнѣ.

Will you have a piece of ham ?	Хотите ли вы кусокъ окорока ?
✓ Yes, if you please.	Да, пожелуйте.



To will,	}	Хотѣть.
To wish, to want,		
To have a mind to,		
To know,		Знать.

Conjugation of the present tense of the verbs Я хочу́, 'I want;' and Я знаю́, 'I know:'—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Я хочу́,	Я знаю́.	1. Мы хотимъ,	Мы знаемъ.
2. Ты хочешь,	Ты знаешь.	2. Вы хотите,	Вы знаете.
3. Онъ хочетъ,	Онъ знаетъ.	3. Они хотятъ,	Они знаютъ.
He has no cloth.		У него́ нѣтъ сукна́.	
Have you good velvet?		Есть ли у васъ хоро́шій ба́рхатъ ?	
I have no good velvet.		У меня́ нѣтъ хоро́шаго ба́рхату.	

OBS. 5.—НѢТЬ, 'no,' placed before a substantive, governs the genitive.

There,	Тамъ.
Thence,	Туда́.

### THE CARDINAL NUMERALS.—Коли́чественныя Числа.

One, the one, a	}	Оди́нъ.
Alone,		
Ones, the ones,	}	Однѣ́.
Alone,		

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nominative,	Оди́нъ.	Nominative,	Однѣ́.
Genitive,	Одногó.	Genitive,	Однѣ́хъ.
Dative,	Одному́.	Dative,	Однѣ́мъ.
Accusative,	Оди́нъ, одногó.	Accusative,	Однѣ́, однѣ́хъ.
Instrumental,	Однѣ́мъ.	Instrumental,	Однѣ́ми.
Prepositional,	Объ однóмъ.	Prepositional,	Объ однѣ́хъ.
Some say this, and others that.		Однѣ́ говорѣ́тъ э́то а другі́е то.	

How much ? } How many ? }	СКОЛЬКО, governs genitive.
Some, others,	Одні́, другі́е.
How many tables have you ?	СКОЛЬКО столо́въ у васъ ?
I have one table.	У меня́ оди́нь столъ.
How many men (persons) do you see ?	СКОЛЬКО челове́къ ви́дите вы ?
I see one man.	Я ви́жу одно́го челове́ка.

Two, ‘два ;’ three, ‘три ;’ four, ‘четы́ре.’

OBS. 6.—The numerals два, три and четы́ре, when in the nominative, are always followed by substantives in the genitive singular.

How many writers have you ?	СКОЛЬКО у васъ писа́рей ?
I have two writers.	У меня́ два пи́саря.
I have as many as you have.	У меня́ сто́лько ско́лько у васъ.

As much as, } As many as, }	СТО́лько, ско́лько.
Three pieces,	Три куса́.
Four pieces,	Четы́ре куса́.

OBS. 7.—Substantives following any of the above three numerals never have the inflexion у or ю in the genitive, but always а or я.

OBS. 8.—When a substantive with два, три, четы́ре, is preceded by an adjective, the latter may be in the nominative or genitive plural, as :

Three good men spoke.	{ Три хоро́шіе челове́ка говори́ли.
	{ Три хоро́шихъ челове́ка говори́ло.

OBS. 9.—The nominative, as shown in the above example, is used with personal, and the genitive with impersonal verbs.

There were three good tables	{ Бы́ли три хоро́шіе стола́.
	{ Бы́ло три хоро́шихъ стола́.
They have four houses.	У нихъ четы́ре до́ма.

Both, Оба.

The Declension of the numerals два, три, четы́ре, and the definite pronoun оба :—

Nominative,	два,	три,	четы́ре,	оба.
Genitive,	двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ,	обоихъ.
Dative,	двумъ,	трѣмъ,	четыремъ,	обоимъ.
Accusative,	Like the nominative or genitive,			
Instrumental,	двумя́,	трёмя́,	четырьмя́,	обоими́.
Prepositional,	о двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ,	обоихъ.

I see both your friends.

Я ви́жу обо́ихъ ва́шихъ друзе́й.

Do you see the shepherd with the three oxen ?

Ви́дите ли вы пастуха́ съ трё́мя быка́ми.

On both shores.

На обо́ихъ берега́хъ.

The painter,

Живопи́сецъ.

The sculptor,

Ва́итель.

The shore, bank,

Бе́регъ.

The dinner,

Обѣ́дъ.

The breakfast,

За́втракъ.

The supper,

Ужи́нъ.

The luncheon,

По́лдни́къ.

Rouble,

Рубль.

Do you know your lesson ?

Зна́ете ли вы свой у́рокъ ?

We know it.

Мы его́ зна́емъ.

Who knows ?

Кто зна́етъ ?

Nobody knows.

Ни́кто не зна́етъ.

A Dane, Danes,

Да́тчани́нъ, да́тчана.

A Swede, Swedes,

Шве́дъ, шве́ды.

A Swiss, Swiss,

Швейца́рецъ, швейца́рцы.

A Norwegian, Norwegians,

Норве́жецъ, норве́жцы.

Five, пять ; six, шесть ; seven, семь ; eight, во́семь, (о́семь) ;  
nine, де́вять ; ten, де́сять.

Obs. 10.—The cardinal numbers пять, шесть, etc., govern the genitive plural, and are declined as follows :

Nom.	пять,	шесть,	семь,	восемь,	девять,	десять.
Gen.	пяти́,	шести́,	семи́,	восьми́,	девяти́,	десяти́.
Dat.			Like the genitive,			
Acc.			Like the nominative,			
Inst.	пятью́.	шестью́,	семью́,	восемью́,	девятью́,	десятью́.
Prep.			Like the genitive.			

Have you five oxen ?

I have only one.

{ Имѣете ли вы пять быко́въ ?  
{ Пять ли быко́въ у васъ ?  
У меня́ только одинъ.

Only,  
Nothing but, }  
From,

ТО́лько.

О́тъ (governs the genitive).

Actual, present, }  
True, real, }  
Genuine,  
Faithful, true, correct,  
False,  
An acquaintance,

Насто́ящій.

Вѣ́рный.

Фальши́вый, ло́жный.

Знако́мый.

Under,

Подъ (governs the instr.).

Where is the boy ?

He is under the table.

Гдѣ ма́льчикъ ?

Онъ подѣ сто́ломъ.

*Singular.*

Nom.	вѣ́рный,	насто́ящій.
Gen.	вѣ́рнаго,	насто́ящаго.
Dat.	вѣ́рному,	насто́ящему.
Acc.	Like the nomin. or genit.	
Inst.	вѣ́рнымъ,	насто́ящимъ.
Prep.	вѣ́рномъ,	насто́ящемъ.

*Plural.*

Nom.	вѣ́рные,	насто́ящіе.
Gen.	вѣ́рныхъ,	насто́ящихъ.
Dat.	вѣ́рнымъ,	насто́ящимъ.
Acc.	Like the nomin. or genit.	
Inst.	вѣ́рными,	насто́ящими.
Prep.	вѣ́рныхъ,	насто́ящихъ.

EXERCISE XXIII.

How many anchors have your brothers?—They have two only, but this sailor has seven anchors.—Have their brothers true friends?—They have acquaintances only, but no true



friends.—Who has the beautiful tumblers?—The hunters have them.—Have you not the fine horses of the Englishmen?—I have (them) not.—How many bills of exchange has the banker?—He has eight bills of exchange.—Do you want a piece of cheese?—No, I do not.—Do you not want some tea?—No.—Has the painter's boy any pencils?—He has some.—From whom did he have them?—From the painter.—From which painter?—From my neighbour. What belts have these soldiers?—They have leathern belts. How many horsemen and hunters do these watchmen see? They see five horsemen and three hunters.—Did he see also one or two asses?—He saw one ass and two horses.—Do you see the anchors of this fine ship?—I do not see the anchors, but I see the sails.—What do you see there?—I see white snow.—How many ricks have these peasants?—They have eight ricks.—How many cooks have you?—I have as many as you.—What furs have the blacksmiths?—They have no furs, but bellows.—How many horns has this ram? He has two horns.—What colour are your flowers?—My flowers are (of) yellow and blue (colour).—Which colours do you like?—I like red and blue (colours), but dislike (do not like) black.—Have his sons good voices?—They have excellent voices.—Who has my son's comb?—Nobody has it.—Has he (it) not?—No, he has not your son's comb, he has his own.—Whose is this magnificent palace?—This is the palace of the king's sons.—Have you not good coal? I have neither good nor bad.—How many roubles did the father give to his sons?—He gave the one (whom) he likes nine roubles and to his other son he gave only two roubles.—With whom is this celebrated painter?—He is with the king's sculptor.—Have the citizens of this rich town pretty houses?—The citizens have large, but not

pretty houses.—Have the rich Germans and their neighbours, the industrious Dutchmen, many ships?—The Dutch have many ships, but the Germans have only three or four ships.

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

Why is he not in the king's palace?—Because there are three emperors there, four grand dukes, and seven princes. Has the baron, your neighbour, forests?—He has no forests, but has excellent meadows.—What do you give him?—I gave him three woodcocks, four hares, five stags and three geese.—Who gave you the ham?—The grand duke's cook gave it me.—How many umbrellas have you?—I have two (of them).—How many new cloaks have you?—I have seven (of them).—Of which new cloaks are you speaking? I am speaking of the seven new cloaks, which the tailors gave you.—Who has seen the waistcoats of their brothers? I saw your waistcoats, but have not seen those of your brothers.—With whom hast thou spoken?—I spoke with the celebrated master's diligent pupils.—Of what were you speaking with them?—I was speaking with them of the beautiful town of the mighty king.—How many vultures did you see in the forest?—I saw there ten vultures and three woodcocks.—Of which vultures are you speaking?—I am speaking of the three large vultures.—Has your cousin's surgeon (врачъ) his own house?—The surgeon has no house of his own, but the doctor has (his own house).—Has this old man good teeth?—He has good teeth, and his comb has also good teeth.—Do you want to give him three roubles?—Yes, I want to give them to him.—Have you my keys and my hammer?—I have neither (neither that nor the other).—Do you like Spaniards or Turks?—I like

neither.—Where have you seen white and grey geese?—I saw them on both the banks.—Who is your true friend, this painter or that sculptor?—Both are my friends.—With whom do you wish to speak?—I wish to speak with his brother.—Will you speak with the captain of this fine ship?—I will speak with him.

---

# FOURTEENTH LESSON.—Четы́рнадцатый Уро́къ.

This, that,	}	Онѣй.
This one, that one,		
It,		

Obs. 1.—The pronoun *онѣй* is declined as an adjective, *i.e.* genitive *о́наго*, dative *о́ному*, etc. This pronoun is rarely used, the repetition of the substantive or the use of the pronoun *онѣ* being preferable, as :

Have you a pocket-book ?	Есть ли у васъ бума́жникъ ?
I have (it).	{ Есть.
	{ У меня́ о́нѣй (онѣ).
I have it not.	{ У меня́ нѣтъ бума́жника.
	{ У меня́ нѣтъ о́наго (его́).

Very,	Очень, вѣсьма́.
Have you sugar ?	Есть ли у васъ са́харъ ?
I have very good sugar.	У меня́ о́чень хоро́шій са́харъ.
Very large, big,	О́чень большо́й.
Very young,	О́чень молодо́й.

Many, much, several,	Мно́го, with the gen.
Little, but little,	Ма́ло, „
Not much, few,	Немно́го, „

Enough, sufficiently,	Довольно, with the gen.
Very few,	Очень мало, „
Too,	Слишкомъ.
Too much,	{ Слишкомъ много. Черезъ чуръ.

We have but few houses.	У насъ мало домовъ.
They have very few friends.	У нихъ очень мало друзей.
Have you enough tobacco?	Довольно ли у васъ табакъ?
I have too much of it.	У меня его слишкомъ много.
I have too little of it.	У меня его слишкомъ мало.
How many houses has this merchant?	Сколько домовъ у этого купца?
He has many (of them).	У него ихъ много.
He has not any.	У него ихъ нѣтъ.
He has few shoes.	У него мало башмаковъ.

Why, (from what),      Отъ чего.

The hatter,	Шляпочникъ.
The gunmaker,	Оружейникъ.
A wine-merchant,	Виноторговецъ.
A butcher,	Мясникъ.
A sausage-maker,	Колбасникъ.
The masters,	Хозяева.

Totally, quite,	Вовсе.
Not at all,	Вовсе не, совсѣмъ не.
Not many, } plur.	Не много.
Few,	
But, only,	Только.

I have no horses at all.	У меня вовсе нѣтъ коней.
Has he many friends?	Много ли у него друзей.
He has very few (of them).	У него ихъ очень мало.
He has but (only) two (of them).	У него ихъ только два.



Very much,      Очень много.

If used adverbially, '*very much*' is rendered by *очень*, without the word *много*, as :

I like him very much.      Я его *очень* люблю.

Why ?      { *Зачѣмъ*.  
                 { *Почему*.

OBS. 2.—*Зачѣмъ* is indicative of object, purpose, as :

Why did you come ?  
(What was your object in coming) ? }      *Зачѣмъ* вы пришли ?

*Почему* is indicative of cause, as :

Why is your house empty ?  
(What is the cause of your  
house being empty) ? }      *Почему* вашъ домъ пустой ?

To be,      БЫТЬ.

He is,      Онъ есть.  
They are,      Они суть.

OBS. 3.—*Есть*, 'is,' and *суть*, 'are,' may be used when a particular emphasis or importance is to be expressed.

I was,	я былъ.	We were,	мы были.
I have been,	я былъ.	You were,	вы были.
I had been,	я былъ.	They were,	они были.

OBS. 4.—*Было*, neuter of *былъ*, is the past tense of the impersonal verb *есть*.

*Future tense of the auxiliary verb БЫТЬ.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
я буду,	I shall, or will be.	Мы будемъ,	We shall, or will be.
ты будешь,	Thou shalt, or wilt be.	Вы будете,	You shall, or will be.
онъ будетъ,	He shall, or will be.	Они будутъ,	They shall, or will be.

OBS. 5.—There is only one future tense in Russian verbs.

OBS. 6.—Будеть and будутъ, the third persons of the future tense of the verb быть, 'to be,' when expressing possession, may be used in place of the future tense of the verb имѣть, 'to have,' as:

<i>Present</i> , I have,	У меня есть.
<i>Past</i> , I had,	У меня былъ, а, о.
<i>Future</i> , I shall have,	{ У меня будетъ. У меня будутъ.

He will have a house.	У него будетъ домъ.
They will have houses.	У нихъ будутъ дома.
There will be a holiday.	Будетъ праздникъ.
There will be rain.	Будетъ дождь.

Eleven,	одинадцать.	Thirty,	тридцать.
Twelve,	двенадцать.	Forty,	сорокъ.
Thirteen,	тринадцать.	Fifty,	пятьдесятъ.
Fourteen,	четырнадцать.	Sixty,	шестьдесятъ.
Fifteen,	пятнадцать.	Seventy,	семьдесятъ.
Sixteen,	шестнадцать.	Eighty,	восемьдесятъ.
Seventeen,	семнадцать.	Ninety,	девяносто.
Eighteen,	восемнадцать.	Hundred,	сто.
Nineteen,	девятнадцать.	Hundred and one,	сто одинъ.
Twenty,	двадцать.	Two hundred,	двести.
Twenty-one,	двадцать одинъ,	A thousand,	тысяча.
Twenty-two,	двадцать два.	Million,	миллионъ.

The day,	день, gen. дня.	Monday,	понедѣльникъ.
The evening,	вѣчеръ,	Tuesday,	вторникъ.
Mid-day,	полдень, gen. полудня.	Wednesday,	среда, среда. (fem.)
The hour,	{ часъ.	Thursday,	четвергъ.
(One o'clock),		Friday,	пятница. (fem.)
The watch,	{ часы.	Saturday,	суббота. (fem.)
The clock,		Sunday,	воскресенье (neuter).

OBS. 7.—For the days of the week, the preposition *въ* ‘in,’ with the accusative is used, as :

On Monday,	Въ понедѣльникъ.
On Tuesday,	Во вторникъ, etc.
What have you <i>for</i> breakfast ?	Что у васъ на завтракъ ?
I will have <i>for</i> breakfast ham, bread and coffee.	У меня будетъ на завтракъ окорокъ, хлѣбъ и кофеи.

### EXERCISE XXV.

Did you not speak with the masters of these houses ? No, sir, we have not seen the masters, but only their sons-in-law.—Have not the Swedes good cheese?—They have (it) not, but the Swiss have plenty of it.—Have the Dutch plenty of cheese?—They have too much of it.—What are the peasants seeking?—They seek the sacks of (with) coals. Of which coals are you speaking?—I am speaking of the coals, (which) your coal-dealer (угольщикъ) gave me.—Have these young scholars steel knives?—These scholars have not steel, but iron knives.—What bread hast thou, stale or new ? I have neither (that nor the other).—Has he much bread ? He has very little (of it).—Who has a little tea?—My cousin has too little of it.—Has this merchant one son only?—He has six sons.—Is the pocket-book (which) I gave him good?—The pocket-book is of leather and a very good one, but you did not give it to him.—How many brothers has this Swede?—He has two (of them) only. With which brother did you speak?—I spoke with both. Has the father spoken with his parents?—He has not spoken with them.—Who has spoken with them?—Nobody. Where were your brothers on Monday?—They were in the grand duke’s fine castle.—Which grand duke?—The one whom I like.—Does the master like his (own) scholars?

He likes them very much.—Do not you want some coffee? No, I do not like coffee.—What captain have the sailors? They have a very good one.—Has he good sailors?—They were good, but now they are bad.—Why are they bad? Because their captain is too kind.—Will your friend (acquaintance) be here on Thursday?—No, he will not be. Why?—Because he will be on that (этот) day at his friend's, the American.—Have the Italians good painters? They have many.—Are the painters rich?—They were rich, but now they are poor.—Have these merchants good merchandise?—The merchandise of these merchants is very good.

#### EXERCISE XXVI.

How many pieces of velvet have they?—They have nineteen (of them).—How many soldiers did you see?—I saw forty-four soldiers.—Who has seen these four men? Both the watchmen of this garden.—What has this hatter? He has nothing.—Has the cook plenty of pepper?—Not much, but enough.—Has the butcher coffee?—He has (it) not, but he has many oxen and rams.—Has the blacksmith hammers?—He had, but now he has (them) not.—What sort of hair have these old men?—They have grey hair.—Have you any breakfast?—I have not.—Who has it?—My friend, the Englishman, has an excellent one.—What (sort of a) breakfast have you?—I have tea, cheese, ham and new white bread.—What breakfast will you have on Tuesday? It will be a good one.—Does the master speak of the theatre?—He does not speak of the theatre.—Why does he not speak of it?—Because he does not like it.—Have the citizens of this town good gardens?—They have, and very good ones.—What have these soldiers?—They have very



good steel pistols.—Who has given them to them?—The brave lieutenant.—Who has real friends?—My brother has many real friends.—Who has a good wooden coffer?—My attendant has a very good one.—What barley have these peasants?—These peasants have very good, but those very bad.—Who has spoken to you of me?—My son-in-law has spoken much of you to me.—How many oxen has the butcher?—He has three good oxen.—Were you in the palace on Monday?—No, but I was there on Tuesday and on Thursday.—Have you a good attendant?—I have many and they are very good and faithful.

# FIFTEENTH LESSON.—Пятнадцатый Урокъ

To be afraid, to fear,

Боя́ться.

To be afraid of,

Боя́ться.

Is this boy afraid?

Бой́тся ли э́тотъ ма́льчикъ?

He is afraid of his father.

He fears (dreads) his father. }

Онъ бой́тся своего́ отца́.

Obs. 1.—The verb боя́ться governs the genitive.

Always, ever,

Всегда́.

Never,

Никогда́.

Sometimes,

Иногда́.

Have you bread always?

Всегда́ ли у васъ хлѣ́бъ?

I never have it.

У меня́ его́ никогда́ нѣ́тъ.

Has he good friends?

Есть ли у него́ хоро́шіе друзья́?

He has them sometimes.

Онъ ихъ иногда́ имѣ́етъ.

Brave, valiant,

Хра́брый, а́роч. хра́бръ.

He is a very brave soldier.

Онъ о́чень хра́брый солда́тъ.

The valiant captain of this ship.

Хра́брый капита́нъ э́того́ кора́бля́.

Obs. 2.—Adjectives connected by means of the auxiliary verb 'to be,' *i.e.* when used as predicate of a proposition, have an apocopated termination, as :

Is this soldier brave ?

He is brave.

He was brave.

Храбръ ли этотъ солдатъ ?

Онъ храбръ.

Онъ былъ храбръ.

But few,

Almost,

Hardly any, }

Scarcely any, }

Not at all, }

Not any, none, }

A great deal,

Только мало.

Почтí.

Почтí вóвсе не.

Вóвсе не.

Очень много.

He is not at all brave.

I have scarcely any socks.

Have you any tobacco ?

Sometimes I have, and sometimes

I have not.

Who has the vinegar ?

My brother always has it.

Have you always good tea ?

I have always.

Pepper,

Vinegar,

Онъ вóвсе не храбръ.

У меня почтí вóвсе нѣтъ чулокъ.

Есть ли у васъ табакъ ?

Иногда у меня есть, а иногда нѣтъ.

У кого уксусъ ?

Мой братъ его всегда пьетъ.

Всегда ли у васъ хорошій чай ?

Всегда есть.

Перецъ (gen. перца and перцу).

Уксусъ (gen. уксуса and уксусу).

Я хочу, I want, I will.

Ты хочешь, Thou wantest, wilt.

Онъ хочетъ, He wants, will.

Мы хотимъ, We want, will.

Вы хотите, You want, will.

Они хотятъ, They want, will.

Я могу, I can.

Ты можешь, Thou canst.

Онъ можетъ, He can.

Мы можемъ, We can.

Вы можете, You can.

Они могутъ, They can.

Obs. 3.—The object of a proposition may be used in the

genitive instead of the accusative, when it is required to express not the whole, but only part of a thing, as :

Do you want the tea ? }  
 (Will you have the tea) ? }  
 Do you want (some) tea ?  
 Can you give me some vinegar ?  
 I can, but I will not.  
 Who wants this, of this ?  
 Nobody wants this.

Хотите ли чай ?  
 Хотите ли чаю ?  
 Можете ли вы мнѣ дать уксусу ?  
 Я могу, но не хочу.  
 Кто хочетъ это, этого ?  
 Никто не хочетъ этого.

To speak, Говорить.  
 To give, Давать, дать.

To see, Видѣть.  
 To take, Взять.

To whom do you want to speak ?  
 I want to speak to the artist.  
 Of what do you wish to speak to him ?  
 I wish to speak to him of the temple.

Съ кѣмъ хотите вы говорить ?  
 Я хочу говорить съ художникомъ  
 О чѣмъ хотите вы говорить съ нимъ ?  
 Я хочу говорить съ нимъ о храмѣ.

An artist,  
 The temple,  
 Have you much velvet ?  
 I have scarcely any.

Художникъ.  
 Храмъ.  
 Много ли у васъ бархату ?  
 У меня его почти вовсе нѣтъ.

Out, out of, from,  
 From,  
 Whence ? }  
 Where from ? }

Изъ, governs the genitive.  
 Отъ, governs the genitive.  
 Откуда ?

Where are you coming from ?  
 I am coming from the castle.  
 He took this out of his coffer.  
 He goes out of the house.

Откуда вы идёте ?  
 Я иду изъ замка.  
 Онъ взялъ это изъ его сундука.  
 Онъ идётъ изъ дому.

*Singular.*

Я иду, I am going.  
 Ты идёшь, Thou art going.  
 Онъ идётъ, He is going.

*Plural.*

Мы идёмъ, We are going.  
 Вы идёте, You are going.  
 Они идутъ, They are going.

To go,	}	Идти.
To walk,		

What are these people ?	Какіе это люди ?
These are Christians.	Это христіане.
These are peasants.	Это крестьяне.

OBS. 4.—Substantives ending in *нинъ* form their plural in *не*, genitive in *нъ*, dative *намъ*, etc.

The master (lord),	Бáринъ, plural бáра.
Mister N. (Mr. N.).	Господи́нъ N. (Гнъ. N.).
Master (of a servant),	Господи́нъ, plural господа́
A Tartar,	Тата́ринъ, plural тата́ра.

OBS. 5.—Some Substantives forming their nominative plural in *а*, are declined according to the second declension, as :

Nominative plural,	Ба́ра,	Господа́,	Тата́ра.
Genitive plural,	Ба́ръ,	Госпо́дъ,	Тата́ръ, etc.
A lord, nobleman,	Бо́йринъ,	plural бо́йре,	ген. бо́йръ

OBS. 6.—Бо́йринъ was formerly a title of nobility, and is now superseded by the word ба́ринъ.

Су́дарь, ‘sir,’ is used when addressing a person, or *госуда́рь мой*, ‘dear sir,’ and often *милостивый госуда́рь*, ‘my dear sir,’ (respected sir), when more politeness is required. The last is used in correspondence, being equivalent to the English ‘dear sir.’

Господи́нъ, abr. Гнъ., ‘mister,’ is placed before proper names, and some military grades or official titles, as : Гнъ. Горчако́въ, Гнъ. Поручи́къ, ‘lieutenant ;’ Гнъ. Почме́йстеръ, ‘postmaster.’ Господи́нъ is used also for ‘gentleman,’ in the sense of person, as :

‘I know this gentleman,’ Я знаю́ этого господа́ина.



Госудáрь, ‘sire,’ must be used when addressing a monarch.

Судáрь and госудáрь мой are seldom used in ordinary conversation. Russians, in preference to these words, make use of the Christian with the patronymic name, as :

Пáвель Петрóвичъ,	Paul, son of Peter.
Андрéй Алексéевичъ,	Andrew, son of Alexis.

Obs. 7.—The substantives, сосéдь, ‘neighbour ;’ холóпъ, ‘serf ;’ чéртъ or чортъ, ‘devil,’ have for the plural сосéди, холóпи, чéрти ; the first two, however, may be also declined regularly, viz. холóпы, сосéды.

Obs. 8.—The genitive plural is like the nominative singular in the words :

Гренадёръ,	A grenadier.	Глазъ,	The eye.
Драгúнь,	A dragoon.	Тýрокъ,	A Turk.
Солдáтъ,	A soldier.	Сапогъ,	The boot.
Кадéтъ,	A cadet.	Чулóкъ,	The stocking.

In the word вóлосъ, ‘hair,’ which has in the genitive plural the accent transfered to the last syllable, as, nom. sing. вóлосъ ; genit. plur. волóсъ ; and in the following words when preceded by any of the cardinal numbers :

Алты́нь,	Altin (a coin).
Разъ,	Time (one time).
Человѣ́къ,	Man.
Арши́нь,	Arshin (measure).
Пудъ,	Pood (weight).

Obs. 9.—The ‘rouble,’ рубль ; genitive, рублѣ and рублѣи.

Two roubles,	два рублѣ, and	два рублѣи.
Two days,	два дня, and	два дни.

NOTE.—Два дни and два рублі are only used in conversation.

OBS. 10.—Adjectives having an accented termination end in ой, instead of ый or ій, as :

Bad,	Дурнóй.
Simple,	Простóй.
Woollen,	Шерстянóй.

As—as,	{ Такъ—какъ.
	{ Также—какъ и.
May I ? can I ?	Могú ли ?
At,	У, governs the genitive.

At Peter's (house),	У Петра́.
At our house,	У насъ.

Good many,	Мнóго.
Some,	{ Не мнóго.
	{ Нѣско́лько.
Nothing else,	Ничегó другáго.
What else,	Что другáго.

He gave me some tea. Онъ далъ мнѣ немно́го чаю.

### EXERCISE XXVII.

Has this gentleman (person) many real friends?—He has but few.—Has this master (teacher) twenty pupils? He has scarcely (hardly) any pupils.—How many ships has this rich merchant?—He has many.—Is your garden good? It is as good as yours.—Do not you want (wish) to take (взять) these boots?—No, I do not want to take them, but

my shoemaker does (want).—Have you new bread?—I have plenty (great deal) of new bread, but he has neither new nor stale.—How many horses have the rich Tartars? They have forty-three (of them).—Of which Tartars are you speaking?—Of the ones (whom) you do not like.—Are his pies as good as those of the confectioner?—Yes.—How much pepper has he?—He has thirty-four sacks of it. Have these peasants enough bread?—They have enough of it.—Of which bread do you speak?—I am speaking of the white and brown bread.—Give me, please, some honey. I cannot give you any honey, but he can.—Who does not like vinegar?—Nobody likes it.—May I take (ВЗЯТЬ) some vinegar?—You may take it.—Who cannot take it?—My brother cannot take it.—How many iron coffers has he? As many as you.—Are they as good as mine?—No.—Have you three hundred roubles, and can you give them to him? I have (a) hundred and twenty-two roubles only, and I can give them to nobody.—How many arshines of velvet have you?—I have ninety-four arshines of it.—Who has too few biscuits?—The sailors have too few (of them).—Has the watchman of your garden many locks?—He has no locks at all.—Have these peasants a great deal of barley?—They have only a little (of it).

#### EXERCISE XXVIII.

Can you give me this fine horse?—No, I cannot.—Why? Because he is not mine, but my master's.—Is your master kind?—Yes, he is very kind.—Has this sausage-maker sufficient ham?—He has not sufficient.—Do you see the large horns of this goat?—This goat has no horns, but those ten oxen have very large and fine horns.—I do not see the ten

oxen you are speaking of.—The ten oxen I speak of are in (na) the meadow.—Has the shepherd many geese?—He has only a few.—Have the English many ships?—They have many.—Has the Frenchman many francs?—He has only a few, but he has enough.—Who has a good many roubles?—The Russians.—Have you no other tea?—I have no other.—Have you any other cheese?—I have another. Have the shoemakers no other shoes?—They have no others. Have you no other attendant?—I have no other.—Has the blacksmith other bellows?—No, he has no others.—Which fur is yours, this or that?—Both are mine.—What hair has the old man?—He has no hair on his head at all.—What do you see in your father's warehouse?—I see two sorts of corn, barley and oats, but I see nothing else.—What else do you see in his garden?—I see only the gardener with fruits, but I see nothing else.—What day of the week is it?—It is Monday.—No, not Monday, but Tuesday. Can you be at our house with your brother on Thursday? I can and will.—Has your son many combs?—He has five (of them).—Who is brave, the soldier or the sailor?—Both (of them) are brave.—Which lemons are you seeking?—I seek the lemons, (which) you like.—Do you like also pies and cakes?—I like them also.—Is there any thing bad in this young man?—There is much that is bad in him, but also much that is good.—Do you see our godfathers? Yes, I see them and I see also your faithful friends.—How many soldiers do you see?—I see five grenadiers, thirty hussars, and four hundred lancers.—How many poods of honey have you?—I have eleven poods of it.



## SIXTEENTH LESSON.—Шестна́дцатый Уро́къ.

A few,	}	Нѣско́лько.
Some,		
Some, а,	}	Нѣкото́рый, plur. нѣкото́рые.
Certain,		

Have you a few pencils ?

Есть ли у васъ нѣско́лько карандаше́й ?

He has a few.

У него́ ихъ нѣско́лько.

OBS. 1.—The adverb нѣско́лько governs the genitive.

None, not one,	Ни оди́нъ.
Nobody, no one,	Никто́.

Have you a few shillings ?

Есть ли у васъ нѣско́лько ши́ллинговъ ?

I have a few, but he has none.

У меня́ ихъ нѣско́лько, а у него́ нѣтъ ни одно́го.

How many of them have you ?

Ско́лько ихъ у васъ ?

I have a great many of them.

У меня́ ихъ о́чень мно́го.

Thou hast none.

У тебя́ нѣтъ ни одно́го.

A thaler,	Та́леръ.		A franc,	Франкъ.
A sovereign (coin),	Черво́нецъ.		A sou,	Су.

OBS. 2.—The word cy is indeclinable.

OBS. 3.—The following words ending in объ, овъ, омъ, онъ, олъ, оръ, орь, отъ, drop the euphonic o in the declension:

A call,	Зовъ,	gen.	зва, etc.
The forehead,	Лобъ,	gen.	лоба.
A psalm,	Псаломъ,	gen.	псалма́.
Sleep,	Сонъ,	gen.	сна.
An ambassador,	Посолъ,	gen.	посла́.
An angle, corner,	Уголъ,	gen.	угла́.
A goldfinch,	Щего́ль,	gen.	щегла́.
A cover, case,	Чахо́ль,	gen.	чахла́.

A harpoon,	Багѡръ,	gen.	багрá.
A hillock, heap,	Бугѡръ,	gen.	бугрá.
A father-in-law,	Свѣкоръ,	gen.	свѣкра.
A whirlwind,	Вѣхоръ,	gen.	вѣхрá.
The fringe,	Мохѡръ,	gen.	мохрá.
The mouth,	Ротъ,	gen.	рта.
Fire,	Огѡнь,	gen.	огнá.

There are exceptions to this rule, as there are some words in which the o, being a radical vowel, cannot be left out, as :

A thief, Воръ,	gen.	вѡра.	A roof, Кровъ,	gen.	крѡва.
A bolt, Запѡръ,	gen.	запѡра.	A forest, Боръ,	gen.	бѡра.

OBS. 4.—In the declension of the following words the euphonic vowel e is omitted.

A lion,	Левъ,	gen.	лѡва.
A morsel,	Кусѡчекъ,	gen.	кусѡчка.
A goat,	Козѡлъ,	gen.	козлá.
The Ram (Aries),	Овѡнъ,	gen.	овпá.
The wind,	Вѣтеръ,	gen.	вѣтрá.
Ice,	Лѡдъ,	gen.	лѡдá.
Oats,	Овѡсъ.	gen.	овсá.
A ridge,	Хребѡтъ,	gen.	хребтá.
An elm-tree,	Илемъ,	gen.	илъма.
A stone,	Кáмень,	gen.	кáмнá.

Of the sixteen words ending in енъ, in which the e cannot be left out, the most useful are :

A stag,	Олѡнъ,	gen.	олѡнá.
A seal,	Тюлѡнъ,	gen.	тюлѡнá.
Rhubarb,	Рѡвень,	gen.	рѡвенá.
Barley,	Ячмѡнъ,	gen.	ячменá.
The ash-tree,	Ясѡнъ,	gen.	ясенá.

OBS. 5.—Some words ending in ецъ, preserve in the declension the euphonic e, when preceded by two consonants, as :

A flatterer,	Лъстѡецъ,	gen.	лъстѡецá.
A proud man,	Гордѡецъ,	gen.	гордѡецá.
A deserter,	Бѣглѡецъ,	gen.	бѣглѡецá.

OBS. 6.—In the following nouns ending in емъ, preceded by the vowel а, the е of the nominative changes into й in all the other cases, as :

The hire,	Наёмъ,	gen. найма.
The loan,	Заёмъ,	gen. займа.
The cessation,	Уёмъ,	gen. уйма.

OBS. 7.—In the following nouns ending in ей, the vowel е of the nominative changes into ь in all the other cases, as :

A sparrow,	Воробей,	gen. воробья, etc.
A nightingale,	Соловей,	gen. соловья.
An ant,	Муравей,	gen. муравья.
A beehive,	Улей,	gen. улья.
A boil,	Чирей,	gen. чирья.
A brook,	Ручей,	gen. ручья.

The number,	} Числѳ.
The date,	

What day of the month is it ?

Какѳе у насъ числѳ ?

The first.

Первое числѳ.

It is the second of November.

У насъ второе ноябръ.

It is the first of May.

У насъ первое мая.

OBS. 8.—For the days of the month, the Russians, like the English, use the ordinal numerals, and the name of the month must be in the genitive.

The corkscrew,

Прѳбочникъ.

The handle,

Черенѳкъ, gen. черенка.

At one time—at another,

То—то.

First,	Первый,	plur. первые.
Second,	Второй,	plur. вторые.
Third,	Третий,	plur. третьи.
Fourth,	Четвертый,	plur. четвертые.
Fifth,	Пятый,	plur. пяты.
Sixth,	Шестой,	plur. шестые.
Seventh,	Седьмой,	plur. седьмы.
Eighth,	Осьмой,	plur. осьмы.
Ninth,	Девятый,	plur. девятые.

Tenth,	Деся́тый,	plur. деся́тые..
Eleventh,	Оди́надцатый,	plur. оди́надцатые.
Twelfth,	Два́дцатый,	plur. два́дцатые.
Thirteenth,	Три́дцатый,	plur. три́дцатые.
Fourteenth, etc.	Четы́рнадцатый,	plur. четы́рнадцатые.
Twentieth,	Два́дцатый,	plur. два́дцатые.
Twenty-first, etc.	Два́дцать пе́рвый,	plur. два́дцать пе́рвые.
Thirtieth,	Три́дцатый,	plur. три́дцатые.
Fortieth,	Сороко́вый,	plur. сороко́вые.
Fiftieth,	Пятидеся́тый,	plur. пятидеся́тые.
Fifty-first, etc.	Пятидеся́ть пе́рвый,	plur. пятидеся́ть пе́рвые.
Sixtieth,	Шестидеся́тый,	plur. шестидеся́тые.
Seventieth,	Семидеся́тый,	plur. семидеся́тые.
Eightieth,	Осьмидеся́тый,	plur. осьмидеся́тые.
Ninetieth,	Девяно́бый,	plur. девяно́бые.
Hundredth,	Сото́й,	plur. со́тые.
Hundred and first,	Сто пе́рвый,	plur. сто пе́рвые.
Two hundredth,	Двухсо́тый,	plur. двухсо́тые.
Thousandth,	Ты́сячный,	plur. ты́сячные.
Millionth,	Миллио́нный,	plur. миллио́нные.

## Which one ?

## Ка́кой.

Have you the first or the second horse ?

Пе́рвый ли конь у васъ или второ́й ?

I have the third one.

У меня́ тре́тій.

My two horses were the third ones.

Мои́ два коня́ были тре́тьи.

Which one of the pupils is he

Ка́кой онъ учени́къ ?

He is the fifth.

Онъ пя́тый.

January,	Январь.
February,	Февраль.
March,	Мартъ.
April,	Апрѣль.
May,	Май.
June,	Іюнь.

July,	Іюль.
August,	Августъ.
September,	Сентябрь.
October,	Октябрь.
November,	Ноябрь.
December,	Декабрь.

OBS. 9.—‘ Month of January,’ ‘ month of February,’ etc. are translated Январь мѣсяцъ, Февраль мѣсяцъ, etc.

OBS. 10.—In the compound ordinal numerals the last number only, as in English, has an ordinal termination ;



all foregoing ones remain cardinal. Care must be taken to observe that the copulative conjunction *and* must not be translated, as :

Three hundred and fifth.

Триста пятый.

The year one thousand eight hundred  
and seventy-six.

Тысяча восемьсотъ семьдесятъ шестой  
годъ.

Four and twenty.

Двадцать четыре.

Yet, still,

Ещё, всё ещё.

More,

Бóльше, ещё.

More than,

{ Бóльше нежели.  
Бóльше чѣмъ.

OBS. 11.—Бóльше, ‘more,’ comparative of *много*, ‘much,’ governs the genitive.

More than this one.

{ Бóльше чѣмъ этотъ.  
Бóльше этого.

More than two months.

Бóльше двухъ мѣсяцевъ.

More than one.

Бóльше одного.

You have more than I.

У васъ больше моего.

I have one more.

У меня ещё одинъ.

He has two more.

У него ещё два.

Which of?

Котóрый изъ?

Very many,

Очень много.

On the ice,

На льду.

In the ice,

Во льду.

A little more.

Еще немно́го.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

What have you seen to-day in the market?—I have seen two goldfinches, three nightingales and four hares.—Are there many hares in your garden?—There are very few hares in my garden, but plenty of sparrows.—What handles have the king’s knives and those of the prince?—Both

have silver handles.—Who is the master of this inn?—The master of this inn is that handsome gentleman, whom you see in the garden.—Has the shepherd many goats?—He has a few.—Which of these goats is yours?—The first and the second one.—Which of these pencils did this painter give you?—He gave me the red pencil.—Has the painter many red and green pencils?—He has but few red, but plenty of green ones.—How many ducats (sovereigns) has this German?—He has not many, he has only a few.—Who says this?—Certain gentlemen say this.—Have the French many ships?—They have a great many, but the rich English have still more than the French.—Where has this boy been?—He has been on the ice.—Has the confectioner plenty of ice?—He has now but a little of it.—Have these Germans a good many thalers?—They have only a few (not many).—Have they enough of them?—No, they have not enough.—How many days are there in this month? There are only thirty days in this month.—What day of the month is it?—To day is the fifth of September, of the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six.—How many months are there in a year?—The year has twelve months.—(There are twelve months in a year).—And days? At one time three hundred and sixty-five, at another three hundred and sixty-six.—How many days are there in the months?—Some months have thirty days, some thirty-one; February alone has at one time twenty-eight and at another twenty-nine days.—In which year are there twenty-nine days?—In leap year (высоко́сный годъ).—How many beehives has this gardener?—He has forty-four beehives, he has more than that gardener.

## EXERCISE XXX.

Which one of these horses is yours?—The fourth and the seventh one.—Which months of the year (in the year) do you like?—I like the months of May and June very much, but I do not like the months of September and October. To which father-in-law did you speak of your son?—I spoke with this rich bookseller's father-in-law.—What do you see on this goat's forehead?—I see on his forehead large horns.—How many corners are there in the yard?—Only three corners.—What has this ram in his mouth.—He has some barley in his mouth.—Give me a light (fire). What is this boy afraid of?—He is afraid of the fire. Where do you see the fires?—I see them in the meadow. Where do you see those two elms.—I see them on the hillock.—How many covers have you?—I have thirty-three new covers and nineteen old.—Has Mr. N. good and faithful attendants?—He has many attendants, but few good and faithful.—What knives has this master's pupil?—He has two knives, one with a wooden and the other with a silver handle.—Have you seen the new stone bridge?—No, I did not (see it), but I saw the old iron bridge.—How many bridges have you?—We have four wooden and three stone ones.—Have you any other bridges?—No, we have no others, we have no more bridges.—Have you spoken to him?—No, I have not yet.—Have you some other shoes also?—I have no other shoes (also).—Who has no houses here?—Certain citizens have not houses here of their own (their own houses).—Have we another cheese?—No, we have no other.—How many stags has this hunter?—He has more than ten.—How many steel corkscrews has this merchant?—He has no steel corkscrews, but he has plenty

of iron ones.—Which soldier has no pistol?—The hundred and fifth one.—Have you a little more tea?—I have no more tea, but I have plenty of coffee.

# SEVENTEENTH LESSON.—Семнадцатый Урокъ.

The former, (first),	Первый, прежній.
The latter, last,	Послѣдній.

How many roubles did you give him ?

Сколько вы дали ему рублей ?

I gave him my last rouble.

Я далъ ему свой послѣдній рубль.

Have you as much good tea as bad ?

Есть ли у васъ столько же хорошаго чаю какъ и дурнаго ?

I have as much of the one as of the other.

У меня столько же одного какъ и другаго.

Have your sons as many pencils as knives ?

Есть ли у вашихъ сыновей столько же карандашей какъ и ножей ?

They have more of the former than of the latter.

У нихъ болѣе первыхъ нежели (чѣмъ) послѣднихъ.

Yet, still, as yet,	Ещё.
There, here (is),	Вотъ.

Some more, any more (of),

Ещё.

There is some more bread.

Вотъ ещё хлѣба.

There (here) is some more tea.

Вотъ ещё чаю.

To-day,

Сегодня.

Yesterday,

Вчера.

The day before yester-

третьяго дня.

day,

To-morrow,

Завтра.

After to-morrow,

Послѣ завтра.

On the eve,

На канунѣ.

Did you give him some more of this ?

Дали ли вы ему еще этого ?

I gave him some more.

Я далъ ему ещё.

Have you another loaf ?

Есть-ли у васъ ещё другой хлѣбъ ?

I have two more loaves.

У меня есть ещё два хлѣба.



No more than that,      Не бѣе того.

*Of words defective in number.*

OBS. 1.—Proper names, and certain classes of other words, are used only in the singular, as : ‘ John,’ Ивѣнъ ; ‘ gold,’ зѣлото ; ‘ attention,’ внимѣнїе.

There are, on the other hand, some substantives in which the singular is altogether wanting, or is used in a different sense from the plural. Of such a nature, for instance, are :

Twins,	Близнецы.	Pincers,	Клѣщи.
A pair of scales,	Вѣсы.	Persons born in	Одногодки.
Diamonds (on cards),	Бубны.	the same year.	
Fetters,	Капалы, (окб- вы).	Sawdust,	Опилки.
People,	Люди.	Spectacles,	Очки.
Wall paper,	Обои.	Gallery,	Переходы.
Vegetables,	Овощи.	A watch, }	Часы.
Cream,	Сливки.	A clock, }	
Twilight,	Сумерки.	A screw-vice,	Тиски.
Firewood,	Дрова.	Trowsers,	{ Панталоны.
White lead,	Бѣлила.		{ Брюки.
Bran,	Отруби.	A pitchfork,	Вилы.
Alum,	Квасцы.	A sledge,	Сани.
Coach box,	Козлы.	A mouth,	Уста. (slavon.)
Slops,	Помои.	A cruet-stand,	Судки.
Whims,	Причуды.	Banisters,	Перила.
Embroidery frame,	Пильцы.	Characters,	Письмена.
Funeral,	Пѣхороны.	Ink,	Чернила.
Trouble,	Хлѣпоты.	Yard-gate,	Ворота.
Church calendar,	Святцы.	Post fare,	Прогоны.
Counting-board,	Счеты.	One's saint's day,	Имянины.
		Tongs, snuffers,	Щипцы.

One more,  
Quite as much, }  
Quite as many, }  
Just as much, }  
Just as many, }

Еще одинъ.  
Столько же.  
  
Столько же.

Seldom,

Рѣдко.

Already,

Ужé, ужъ.

No more, }

Ужé не, бóлѣе не.

No longer, }

Have you already seen your brothers ?

Видѣли ли вы ужé своихъ братьевъ ?

I have not seen them yet.

Я ещё не видѣлъ ихъ.

Has the watchmaker still your watch ?

У часовщика ли ещё ваши часы ?

He has it no more.

У него ихъ ужé нѣтъ.

We have two more pencils.

У насъ есть ещё два карандаша.

How many pairs of scissors have  
these tailors ?

Ско́лько побѣицъ у ѣтихъ портвѣихъ ?

They have as many as you have.

У нихъ стóлько же, ско́лько у васъ.

Too,

Слишкомъ, чéрезъ чуръ.

Too little, }

Слишкомъ ма́ло, не мно́го.

Too few, }

Are you often at your cousin's ?

Ча́сто ли вы у своего двоюроднаго  
брáта.

I am there very seldom.

Я тамъ весьма рѣдко.

So much,

Стóлько.

As much as,

Стóлько-же какъ н.

As many as,

Стóлько-же ско́лько.

Is he still here ?

Здѣсь ли онъ ещё ?

He is no longer here.

Его́ ужé здѣсь бóлѣе нѣтъ.

The peasants have too much oats  
and too little barley.У крестьянъ сли́шкомъ мно́го овса́, а  
сли́шкомъ ма́ло ячменя́.

We saw as many soldiers as you did.

Мы видѣли стóлько же солáдтъ какъ  
и вы.

Often,

Ча́сто.

A few more,

Еще нѣсколько.

Have you many more good screw-  
vices ?Есть ли у васъ ещё мно́го хоро́шихъ  
тискóвъ ?

I have a few more.

У меня́ есть ещё нѣсколько.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

Who sees my embroidery frame?—We see it.—Who has not yet seen it?—Your neighbour's sons have not yet seen it.—What has the poor blacksmith?—He has a hammer and pincers, but has no screw-vices.—Has the kind monk (монахъ) a psalter and a church calendar?—He has neither one nor the other, he has only the beautiful new spectacles. Have not you a new pair of trowsers?—I have them no more, this poor boy has them now.—Has he still his four beautiful nightingales?—He has them no more.—What do you see there?—We see two large lions there.—Do you see any thing else (besides)?—No, we see nothing else.—Has the boy still his pencil?—He has it no longer, but he has another.—Have these people still pigeons and geese?—They have no more, either pigeons or geese.—How many pliers has the locksmith?—He has forty-eight (of them).—Where is his gardener?—He is in your garden.—Do you like vegetables?—Yes, very much.—How many soldiers are there in your regiment?—There are in my regiment three thousand four hundred and seventy-five men.—That is too many.—What are these writers seeking?—They are seeking the ink.—Where is my pocket-book?—Here it is.—Are these boys twins?—No, they are not twins, but they are of the same year.—Have we any more sugar?—We have some more.—Have the sailors some more biscuits?—They have not any more.—Has the young man any more friends? He has no more (of them).—Has our neighbour one more garden?—He has one more.—Has my friend one more umbrella?—He has no more.—Have his sons a few more cakes?—They have a few more.—What else have you? We have a few more ships and a few more good sailors.

Have you a little more of honey?—We have a little more.

### EXERCISE XXXII.

Have you not a little (some) more tobacco?—I have already no more tobacco, but these merchants have a good deal of good tobacco and as much of good tea.—Have you already seen these beautiful furs?—No, sir, I have not yet seen them.—Has the captain of this ship enough coffee? Yes, sir, but he has little (not much) sugar and pepper, too many biscuits and too little honey.—Has not the sailor another pair of trowsers?—He has another pair of trowsers.—Do you speak with the Englishmen as much as with the Russians?—I speak as much with the former as with the latter.—Do you see another ship?—I see one ship only, but my brothers see six large ships of that rich Dutchman, whom you see on that stone bridge with the young Englishmen.—Have you already seen the beautiful flowers in (на) that green meadow?—No, I have not yet seen them.—Are you a peasant, my friend, or a lord?—I am neither peasant nor a lord, but a merchant.—Have you a few roubles more?—I have a few more.—Have these Englishmen a few shillings more?—They have some more, but a very few.—What day of the month is it to-day?—It is (we have) the twenty-eighth of September, of the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six.—What has this boy given to this beggar?—He gave him his last franc. Have you more cheese than bread?—We have as much of the former as of the latter.—Who has more tea than you?—This merchant has more tea than I (have), but I have as much sugar as he (has).—How many friends have you?—I have one good friend only.—Has the peasant too much of corn?



He has not enough.—Have we as much bread as tea?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Has the banker as many friends as enemies?—He has more friends than enemies, but I have plenty of both.

## EIGHTEENTH LESSON.—Восемнадцатый Урокъ.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

#### *Declension of Neuter Substantives and Adjectives.*

Склонёніе имёнъ существительныхъ и прилагательныхъ среднего рода.

*Singular.*—Единственное число.

Cases.	<i>Substantives.</i>			<i>Adjectives.</i>			
	<i>Inflexions.</i>			<i>Full terminations.</i>		<i>Apocopated.</i>	
	Hard.	Soft.		Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.
Nom.	о.	е.	мя.	ое.	ее.	о.	е.
Gen.	а.	я.	ени.	аго.	яго.	а.	я.
Dat.	у.	ю.	ени.	ому.	ему.	у.	ю.
Acc.	Like the nominative.						
Inst.	омъ.	емъ.	енемъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	ымъ.	имъ.
Prep.	ѣ.	ѣ, (и).	ени.	омъ.	емъ.	омъ, (ѣ).	емъ.

From the above table it will be seen that the first two

terminations of both substantives and adjectives have the same inflexions as those of masculine nouns, observing however that the accusative of neuter substantives in the singular is always like the nominative.

OBS. 1.—Of the few neuter substantives ending in я, to which in declension the syllable ят is added, only the word дитя, ‘child,’ preserves its singular inflexions; as genitive, dative and prepositional дитяти, instrumental дитяю. All other such words in я, as осля, ‘young ass;’ теля, ‘a calf;’ поросля, ‘young pig,’ are obsolete; these diminutives being superseded in the language of the present day by masculine forms ending in ёнокъ, as ослёнокъ, ‘young ass;’ телёнокъ, ‘a calf;’ поросёнокъ, ‘little pig.’ All these words, however, resume in the plural their original Slavonic inflexions with the syllable ят; as, nominative plural, ослята, телята; genitive, ослятъ, телятъ, etc.

There are only ten substantives ending in мя :

Время,	Time.	Стремя,	Stirrup.
Бремя,	Burden.	Тёмя,	Crown of the head.
Имя,	Name.	Вьмя,	Udder.
Знамя,	Standard.	Пламя,	Flame.
Плѣмя,	Tribe.	Сѣмя,	Seed.

OBS. 2.—Вьмя and знамя are declined also irregularly; as, genitive and accusative, вьмя, знамя; dative, вьмю, знамю; instrumental, вьмемъ, знамемъ; prepositional, вьмѣ, знамѣ.

Пламя or пламень is used only in the singular.

This regiment has no standard.      У этого полка нѣтъ { знаменцъ,  
знамя.

Business, }	Дѣло.	A mirror,	Зѣркаю.
Affair, }		A family,	Семѣйство.
A building,	Строѣніе.	Butter,	Масло.
Meat,	Мѣсо.	Medicine,	Лѣкарство.
Wine,	Вино.	Beer,	Пиво.
Grief,	Горе.	The sea,	Море.
The field,	Поле.	The light,	Свѣтъ.
Iron,	Желѣзо.	Woollen cloth,	Сукно.
Gold,	Золото.	Milk,	Молоко.
Silver,	Серебро.	Linen,	Полотно.

It, Онó, neuter (declined like онъ).

Does this child see my mirror ?  
No, it does not see it.  
Do you see the blue sea ?  
I do not (see it).

Видитъ ли это дитя моё зѣркаю ?  
Нѣтъ, онó его не видитъ.  
Видите ли вы синее море ?  
Я его не вижу.

This, Сіе, это, } neuter.  
That, То, }

OBS. 3.—Это and то are declined like этотъ and тотъ ;  
сіе, 'this,' follows the same inflexions as сей, i.e. genitive  
серó, dative семý, instrumental симъ, prepositional сѣмъ.

Does he see this building ?  
He does not see this building.  
Have you this wine or that ?  
I have neither (this nor that).  
Give me a piece of bread and butter.  
On that shore of the sea.

Видитъ ли онъ это (сіе) зданіе ?  
Онъ не видитъ этого зданія.  
Это ли вино у васъ или то ?  
У меня ни этого ни того нѣтъ.  
Дайте мнѣ кусокъ хлѣба съ масломъ.  
На томъ берегу моря.

To buy, Купить.  
To receive, Получить.

I have bought.  
Have you bought ?  
He has received.  
We did not receive.

Я купилъ.  
Купили ли вы ?  
Онъ получилъ.  
Мы не получили.

One, Одно, neuter (declined like оди́нь).

The one and the other, То и друго́е.

Hast thou meat or butter ? ЕСТЬ ли у тебѣ́ мя́со или ма́сло ?  
 I have the one and the other, } У меня́ то и друго́е.  
 I have both. }

Both, Оба, } masc. and neut., de-  
 Two, Два, } clined like masc.  
 Whose, Чьё, neuter (plural чьи).

Obs. 4.—Чьё is declined like чей, *i.e.* genitive чьего́, lative чьему́, instrumental чьимъ, prepositional чьёмъ.

Whose milk hast thou ? Чьё молоко́ у тебѣ́ ?  
 I have the child's milk. У меня́ молоко́ дитя́ти.

Distant,	далёкѣй, ое.	Dear, expensive,	дорого́й, ое.
Great,	вели́кѣй, ое.	Cheap,	дешёвы́й, ое.
Linен, <i>adj.</i>	полотня́нный.	Incautious,	неосторо́жный.

Roast meat,	Жарко́е.
Icees,	Моро́женое.

Obs. 5.—Neuter substantives ending in ое are declined like adjectives.

My, mine,	Моё, } neuter, declined like Твоё, } мой, твой, свой. Своё, }
Thy, thine,	
His (own),	

Whose is this incautious child ?	Чьё́ это неосторо́жное дитя́ ?
This is our neighbour's child.	Это дитя́ на́шего сосѣ́да.
The child has no milk.	У дитя́ти нѣтъ молока́.
Who has my wine ?	У когó моё вино́ ?
I have my own wine.	У меня́ своё вино́.
He has thy beer.	У него́ твоё пиво́.



I shall or will have,	Я буду имѣть.
Thou shalt or wilt have,	Ты будешь имѣть.
He shall or will have,	Онъ будетъ имѣть.
We shall or will have,	Мы будемъ имѣть.
You shall or will have,	Вы будете имѣть.
They shall or will have,	Они будутъ имѣть.

What shall we have for dinner ?  
We shall have for dinner goose,  
meat and beer.

Что будетъ у насъ за обѣдомъ ?  
Мы будемъ имѣть за обѣдомъ гуся,  
мясо и пиво.

Whither, where to ?  
In, into (at, to),

Кудá ?  
Въ (во), gov. accus. and  
prepositional.

Obs. 6.—The prep. въ governs the accusative in answer to the question *whither?* or when indicating movement, and the prepositional when there is no motion indicated from one place to another.

To do,	}	Дѣлать.
To make,		
To go,	{	Идти. Ходить.
Towards, to,		
		Къ (ко), governs the dat.

Obs. 7.—The verb идти, 'to go,' denotes an action at some given moment, as :

I am going now.	Я идѹ теперь.
He is going to-morrow.	Онъ идѣтъ завтра

Ходить, 'to go,' expresses an action without reference to any particular time, a habit or power of performing the action, as :

I go there every day.	Я хожу туда каждый день.
He often goes with him.	Онъ часто ходитъ съ нимъ.
Men can walk.	Люди ходятъ.

*Present Tense of the Verb Ходить, 'to go.'**Singular.*

Я хожу́.

Ты ходи́шь.

Онъ ходи́тъ.

*Plural.*

Мы ходи́мъ.

Вы ходи́те.

Онѣ ходя́тъ.

Where are you going ?

I am going to my brother's.

Do you go often to him ?

No, I go seldom.

With whom is he going to-morrow ?

He is going with my brothers.

He goes backwards and forwards.

Куда вы идёте ?

Я иду́ къ своему́ брату́.

Часто ли вы къ нему́ ходите ?

Нѣтъ, я хожу́ рѣдко.

Съ кѣмъ онъ идётъ завтра ?

Онъ идётъ съ моими́ братьями́.

Онъ ходитъ взадъ и впередъ.

*To trade in,*

I trade in tea.

He trades in coal.

Where is he going ?

He is going into the garden.

Where is the child ?

It is in the garden.

He goes often to the temple.

The image is in the temple.

Hungry,

Health,

Healthy,

*Торговать, gov. instr.*

Я торгую́ чаемъ.

Онъ торгуетъ углемъ.

Куда онъ идётъ ?

Онъ идётъ въ садъ.

Гдѣ дитя́ ?

Онѣ въ саду́.

Онъ ходитъ часто въ храмъ.

Образъ въ храмѣ.

Голодный, ое.

Здоровье.

Здоровый, ое.

I am well, Я здоровъ.

I am unwell, Я не здоровъ.

I am hungry, Я голоденъ.

The child is hungry, Дитя́ голодно.

Is he hungry ?

Is he quite well ?

No, he is unwell.

But he is not ill ?

He is only unwell.

I do not feel well.

The child does not feel well.

I feel thirsty.

Голоденъ ли онъ ?

Здоровъ ли онъ ?

Нѣтъ, онъ не здоровъ.

Но онъ не боленъ ?

Онъ только нездоровъ.

Мнѣ не здоровится.

Дитяти не здоровится.

Я чувствую жажду, (жажда,  
'thirst,' fem.)

How do you do ?

Very well, thank you.

What do you think ?

What are you thinking of ?

Какъ ваше здорѣе ?

Благодарю васъ, довольно хорошо.

Что вы думаете ?

О чёмъ вы думаете ?

To think,      Думать.

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

Where is the peasant with the seed going ?—He is going to his master's barn.—Where are you going ?—I am going to our rich butcher.—Has he good meat ?—He has plenty of good and fresh meat.—Is his meat cheap ?—No, his meat (meat he has) is very dear, but he has plenty of cheap butter.—In which building do you see the large, beautiful mirror ?—I see neither the building nor the beautiful mirror, I see only the beautiful green field.—Whose field do you see ?—I do not know whose it is.—Where are the industrious mowers ?—They are in (on) the field, in which you see so many beautiful flowers.—Has your cook time ?—He has no time, but our peasant has.—What do these surgeons see ?—They see a bad medicine.—What did he buy ?—He bought a good medicine.—What business have the brothers of this kind German ?—They have no business.—What are these boys speaking of ?—They speak of the two ships on the sea.—Do they not see the boats of both the Russians, whom we see on the other (that) shore of the sea ?—They see them also.—How much milk, butter, wine, beer and meat have you ?—I have a great deal of butter and meat, a little milk and wine, and plenty of beer.—Do you give your child any beer ?—I do not give it beer, but I give it plenty of milk.—How many

pieces of bread and butter has your child?—It has three pieces of bread and butter and also a very large piece of meat.

#### EXERCISE XXXIV.

Do you like that poor but industrious family, which has neither bread nor meat?—No, I do not like it.—To whom are you going so often, my friend?—I do not go often to anybody.—To whom are you going now, my friend?—I am going to (na) the field, where you see our lazy mowers.—Are we not going to that magnificent building with the handsome gate?—We are not going to that building, but to the other one.—Do you like roast meat?—No, I do not like it.—Do you want some butter and cheese?—No, thank you, I am not hungry.—Give me, if you please, a little beer.—Of which beer are you speaking?—Of that which he gave me. Has he plenty of time?—He has not any time at all. With whom and where are they going?—They are going with my kind friend's family into the garden.—To whose garden are they going?—To our neighbour's garden.—Is his family now in town?—No, sir, they are no longer in town.—Were this family in town yesterday?—They were not in town yesterday.—Have you already given the little boy some beer and bread and butter?—I gave him plenty of both (the one and the other), and I gave him also some wine and meat.—Were you at the theatre yesterday?—I was not there yesterday.—Where and with whom are you going to-day?—I am going to-day with the kind master (teacher) of the grand duke, but to the temple, and not to the play.—To which temple?—To the one (which is) in the market of our large town.



## EXERCISE XXXV.

To whom are you going?—I am going to him.—Has this old peasant a large field?—No, sir, he has no large field, but he has good meadows and forests.—Has this peasant's son-in-law plenty of white linen and yellow flax? He has plenty of both, but he has only a few cotton handkerchiefs and woollen cloaks.—Has he much business in town?—He has no business in town.—Does this child like milk?—Yes, very much.—What merchandise has your son-in-law?—He has the goods which he bought in Paris. What does this child dislike?—It dislikes medicine.—Did you see this young man the day before yesterday?—I saw him to-day with my own eyes.—Where will you be to-morrow?—I do not know yet.—Will you be in your garden to-day?—No, we will be (there) where we were yesterday. Are all the flowers green?—No, some of them are white. What has this joiner bought?—He has bought a few beams.—What for?—For stakes.—When will your brother be at your house?—In the month of February.—How many pounds of black tea did my cousin buy from you?—He bought three pounds only from me.—Who bought the alum?—The chemist bought it.—What does this peasant trade in?—He trades in meat, butter, onions, garlick, milk and bread.

---

## NINETEENTH LESSON.—Девятнадцатый Урокъ.

*Neuter Plural.* — Множественное число среднего рода.

The words,	слова.	The seas,	моря.
The windows,	окна.	The fields,	поля.
The rings,	кольца.	The buildings,	строения.
The mirrors,	зеркала.	The calves,	телята.

Nominative,	{ The times,
Genitive,	{ Времена.
Dative,	Временъ.
Accusative,	Временамъ.
Instrumental,	Времена.
Prepositional,	Временами.
	Временахъ.

All neuter substantives in *мя* are declined in the plural, according to the above example.

OBS. 1.—The word *сѣмя*, ‘the seed,’ retains in the gen. plural the Slavonic inflexion *сѣмянъ*, instead of *сѣмёнъ*, in order to distinguish it from the proper name *Семёнъ*, ‘Simeon.’

OBS. 2.—To the ten substantives ending in *мя*, must be added two words used only in the plural: *письмена*, ‘characters,’ and *памена*, ‘shoulders,’ which have in Slavonic the nominative singular *письма*, *рамо*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падежѣй.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.			<i>Adjectives.</i> — Имя Прилагательное.		
	<i>Full terminations.</i>			<i>Apocopated terminations.</i>		
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.		Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	Soft Declension.
Nom.	а	я.	мена.	бя.	ія.	и.
Gen.	ъ.	ей, (й, ій).	ень.	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	амъ.	ямъ.	енамъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	имъ.
Acc.	like the Genitive or the Nominative.					
Inst.	ами.	ями.	енами.	ыми.	ими.	ими.
Prep.	ахъ.	яхъ.	енахъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ихъ.

Few, some,  
Some, certain,

Нѣсколькіе. } plural.  
Нѣкоторые. }

Our father is going to the castle  
with a few friends.

Нашъ отецъ идѣтъ въ замокъ съ нѣ-  
сколькими пріятелями.

They are going to some (certain)  
friends.

Онѣ идуть къ нѣкоторымъ пріате-  
лямъ.

A dish, блюдо.  
A ring, кольцо, перстень.  
A treasure, сокровище.  
A monster, чудовище.

An egg, яйцо, gen. plur. яицъ.  
Pewter, олово.  
A herd, стадо.

German, нѣмецкій.  
English, англійскій.  
Dutch, голландскій.  
London, Лондонъ.  
St. Petersburg, Санктъ-Петербургъ,  
or simply Петербургъ.

Russian, русскій, російскій.  
Slavonic, славянскій.  
Turkish, турецкій.  
Paris, Парижъ.

These,  
Those,

Сіи, эти. } Masculine and  
Тѣ. } neuter.

OBS. 3.—The following, having two consonants before  
the final vowel, take the euphonic e or o in the genitive  
plural, as :

A letter, писѣмѣ, писемъ.  
A beam, бревнѣ, бревенъ.  
A grain, зернѣ, зеренъ.  
Linen, полотнѣ, полотенъ.  
A saddle, сѣдлѣ, сѣделъ.  
An oar, веслѣ, веселъ.  
An easy chair, креслѣ, креселъ.  
The bottom, дно, донъ.  
A window, окнѣ, оконъ.  
Woolen cloth, сукнѣ, суконъ.  
An oar, греблѣ, гребель.  
Little window, окѣшко, окѣшекъ.  
Little ring, колѣчко, колѣчекъ.

A spot, пятнѣ, пятенъ.  
A trade, ремеслѣ, ремеселъ.  
A number, числѣ, чиселъ.  
A ring, кольцѣ, колецъ.  
The heart, сѣрдцѣ, сѣрдечъ.  
Door-steps, крыльцѣ, крылецъ.  
A towel, полотѣнце, полотѣ-  
нецъ.  
A rib, ребрѣ, реберь  
and ребрь.  
A pail, ведрѣ, ведеръ  
and ведръ.  
A kernel, ядрѣ, ядеръ  
and ядръ.



All words having an unaccented termination in *чко, шко*, take the vowel *e* before the final consonant in the genitive plural, as :

Колѣчко, little ring, genitive plural, колѣчекъ.  
Окошко, little window, genitive plural, окошекъ.

Obs. 4.—Дѣрево, 'a tree;' полѣно, 'a log;' звѣно, 'a link;' крыло, 'a wing;' помело, 'a besom;' шило, 'an awl;' перо, 'a feather, a pen;' дно, 'the bottom,' form their plural irregularly, in *ья, бевъ, ямъ*, etc., as :

Дерѣвья, trees; genitive, дерѣвьевъ, dative, дерѣвьямъ, etc.  
Крылья, wings; genitive, крыльевъ, dative, крыльямъ.

Obs. 5.—The word колѣно, according to its meaning, is declined in the plural in three different ways :

Колѣно,	{	A tribe,	plural, колѣна, gen. колѣнъ, etc.
		The knee,	plural, колѣни, gen. колѣней.
		A joint (of a plant),	plural, колѣнья, gen. колѣньевъ.

The word дитя, 'child,' is declined in the plural irregularly: nominative дѣти, genitive дѣтей, dative дѣтямъ, instrumental дѣтьми, prepositional дѣтяхъ.

Кольцо, a ring, nominative plural, кольца and кольца.  
Плечо, the shoulder, nominative plural, плечи, and плеча.

Obs. 6.—Words forming their plural in *ята* or *ата*, end in the singular in *енокъ*, as :

Гусёнокъ, a gosling,	plural, гусята.
Утёнокъ, a duckling,	plural, утята.
Цыплёнокъ, a chicken,	plural, цыплята.
Ребёнокъ, a child,	plural, ребята.
Мышёнокъ, little mouse,	plural, мышата.

OBS. 7.—All neuter substantives ending in *ко*, except the word *во́йско*, ‘an army,’ and *о́блоко*, ‘a cloud,’ form their plural in *ки* instead of *ка*, as :

*Око́шко*, a window, plural, *око́шки*, gen. *око́шекъ*, etc.  
*Дре́вко*, a spear-shaft, plural, *дре́вки*, gen. *дре́вockъ*.

All words having an accented termination in *ко*, as *очко*, ‘a point ;’ *ушко*, ‘small ear ;’ and also the word *я́блоко*, ‘an apple,’ take, in the plural, masculine inflexions, as :

Nominative, *Очкѣи*, *ушкѣи*, *я́блокѣи*.  
 Genitive, *Очко́въ*, *ушко́въ*, *я́блокoвъ*.

OBS. 8.—The words *о́ко*, ‘the eye’ (Slavonic), and *у́хо*, ‘the ear,’ form an irregular plural :

Nominative, *Очи*, *у́ши*,  
 Genitive, *Оче́й*, *уше́й*, etc.

OBS. 9.—Augmentatives ending in *ище*, formed of neuter nouns, are declined in the plural regularly, as, *окно*, ‘a window,’ augmentative *окни́ще*, plural *окни́ща*, genitive *окни́щъ*, etc.; but those formed of masculine nouns take in the plural *ищи*, *ищей*, etc., as, *сто́лъ*, ‘a table,’ augmentative *столи́ще*, plural *столи́щи*, genitive *столи́щей*, etc.

OBS. 10.—The following nouns are declined in two different ways :

- |    |                 |               |                          |                                 |
|----|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. | <i>Су́дно</i> , | { a chalice,  | plural, <i>су́дна</i> ,  | genitive, <i>су́денъ</i> , etc. |
|    |                 | { a ship,     | plural, <i>суда́</i> ,   | genitive, <i>судо́въ</i> .      |
| 2. | <i>Чу́до</i> ,  | { a wonder,   | plural, <i>чудеса́</i> , | genitive, <i>чуде́съ</i> , etc. |
|    |                 | { a monster,  | plural, <i>чуда́</i> ,   | genitive, <i>чудъ</i> .         |
| 3. | <i>Не́бо</i> .  | { heaven,     | plural, <i>небеса́</i> , | genitive, <i>небе́съ</i> , etc. |
|    |                 | { the palate, | plural, <i>не́ба</i> ,   | genitive, <i>не́бъ</i> .        |

OBS. 11.—Nouns ending in *ство*, *здо*, *ско*, *сто*, although

having two or more consonants before the final vowel, are declined regularly, without the insertion of any euphonic vowel, as :

БОГАТСТВО, wealth,	plural, богатства,	genitive, богатствъ, etc.
ВѢЙСКО, army,	plural, войскá,	genitive, вѢЙСКЪ.
ГНѢЗДО, nest,	plural, гнѢзда,	genitive, гнѢЗДЪ.
МѢСТО, place,	plural, мѢстá,	genitive, мѢСТЪ.

Upon, on,

На, (governs prepositional).

A village, село ; plural, сѣла.  
The mouth (of a river), устье.  
Oil, мáсло.  
Salad oil, деревáнное мáсло.

Opinion, мнѣнiе.  
Domicile, жильѣ.  
A dress, плáтье.  
A lance, копѣе.

Good day, sir.

Здрáвствуйте, сýдарь, (first в is not pronounced).

How are you getting on ?

Какóбъ поживáете ?

Very well, thank you.

Благодарю, доволъно хорошó.

Good evening !

Дóбрый вѣчеръ.

Good bye.

Прощáйте.

What sort of a mirror ?

Какóбъ зѣркало ?

What have you got ?

Что у васъ ?

I have nothing.

У менá ничегó нѣтъ.

OBS. 12.—The verb ‘to get,’ when meaning possession, is not translated.

Nobody’s, }  
No one’s, }

Ничѣй, neuter ничѣе.

### EXERCISE XXXVI.

Has the child any rings ?—The child has no rings, but his father has plenty of silver and gold rings.—How much butter has your cook got ?—He has a piece of fresh butter and two pots of milk.—Has he an iron or pewter pot ?—He has a good pewter pot.—Of which pewter are you speak-



ing?—Of English pewter.—Give them the dishes, which you see there, on the table.—I do not see any dishes on this wooden table.—I am not speaking of this, but of that table, upon which there are so many dishes with meat, butter and milk.—Whose are these six large and beautiful mirrors? I see two large mirrors only, the other four are small and ugly mirrors.—Where are your brothers going?—They are going into the garden.—With whom are they going into the garden?—With a few true friends and with their own children.—Where is the young player going?—He is going to the ball.—Who are at (on) the ball?—There are a few of (изъ) his friends and acquaintances.—Where is the ball you speak of?—It is at (in) our young king's theatre. How many wings has a nightingale?—It has as many wings as a sparrow; it has two wings.—Has it also two or three feathers only?—No, it has a great many feathers. Have you my steel pens?—I have them not.—How many apples do you see upon those trees?—I see only a few apples on the trees, but I see plenty of them on these dishes.—Where are the fields of these big peasants?—These big peasants have no fields.—Whose are these hovels (домишко)?—They are this big peasant's.—How many ears has a man?—A man has two ears and as many eyes.—How many trees are there in that forest?—In that forest there are many fine old and young trees.—Do you not see any fine trees and new buildings in our prince's garden?—I see neither.—Does not this thief see our clothes, or those of our pupils (воспитанникъ).—He sees neither (those nor the others), he sees only his own.



## EXERCISE XXXVII.

Have you seen old sparrows' nests on those high trees? I did not see any nests.—Where did you see these large grey eggs?—I saw them in the field, in the old eagle's nest. In whose palace are the treasures?—In no one's; there are no treasures in the palace.—Have you any other affairs here?—We have other affairs in town, but we have no affairs here.—What does this labourer give to his five sons?—He gives them five hares, some meat, three pots of milk, five chickens, ten ducklings, three young pigs and a few pounds of honey.—Where are you going?—I am going to the village.—What did these peasants see in the rich villages?—They saw there rich and poor men, many brave soldiers, also many monks, beggars, thieves and other people.—Have they not seen also young asses, calves and other animals?—The blacksmiths on your estate have seen them, but the peasants saw nothing.—I have no estates; Noblemen only have estates, and I am not a Nobleman, I am a Priest.—To whom did you give your counting board? I gave it to my clerk.—Have you bought pincers?—I did not buy any pincers.—Are you going home?—No, I am going to (Бѣ) the play.—Will you be at home to-day?—I am already at home.—How many months have you been in London?—I have been there three months already.—Do the soldiers like the sea?—The soldiers do not like the sea. What seeds have his peasants?—They have plenty of good seeds.—With whom art thou going into the garden? With a few companions.—Is the bottom of this sea deep? The bottom of this sea is very deep.—How many ears has a man?—A man has two ears, two eyes, one mouth, one nose and one forehead.—Are the windows of this house

high?—The windows of this house are not high.—How many pails of wine have you?—I have three pails of German wine.—Who bought this fine estate?—My cousin bought it.—Is your cousin rich?—I have a very rich cousin. Has your butcher many calves?—My butcher has six calves and twenty-three oxen.

## TWENTIETH LESSON.—Двадцатый Урокъ.

To thank, благодарить.	To draw, рисовать.
To give, давать, дать.	To fade, вянуть.
To sting, колоть.	To wish, желать.
To order, велѣть.	To go, идти.
To rub, тереть.	To lead, вести.

To be able, can, Мочь.

To burn, Жечь.

OBS. 1.—The usual ending of the infinitive mood of almost all Russian verbs is *ть*, which is the contraction of the Slavonic termination *ти*. There remain in modern Russian only a few verbs ending in *ти*, as :

Везти, 'to carry ;' трести, 'to shake ;

and only seventeen verbs with infinitive in *чь*, as :

Стеречь, 'to guard ;' стричь, 'to shear.'

OBS. 2.—Verbs ending in *ти* are accented on the last syllable.

The following neuter nouns are used only in the plural :

The yard-gate,	Воротá.
The hand-rail,	Пери́ла.
The mouth,	Уста́, (Slavonic).
Ink,	Черни́ла.
An arm-chair,	Кресло́.
Fire-wood,	Дрова́.

Have you a little ink ?

We have plenty of it.

The cabinet-maker has no arm-chairs,  
but he has plenty of firewood.

Есть ли у васъ немного чернилъ ?

У насъ ихъ очень много.

У столярá нѣтъ кресель, но у него  
много дровъ.

Such,

Такóй, genitive тако́го ;  
plural такіе, такія.

Such as,

Такóй, какóй.

The same as, }  
As good as, }

Такóй-же, какъ и.

What dress have you ?

I have such a dress.

They have no such dresses.

Neither of you has such a ring as I  
have.

No, sir, we have the same as you  
have (as good as you have).

Какое платье у васъ ?

У меня такое платье.

У нихъ нѣтъ такихъ платьевъ.

Ни у одного изъ васъ нѣтъ тако́го  
перстня какъ у меня.

Нѣтъ, сударь, у насъ есть такой же  
какъ и у васъ.

After, for,

За (governs the instr.).

To go for,

Идти за.

Is he going for any thing ?

What is he going for (after) ?

He is going for some wine.

What is your servant going for ?

He is going for some tobacco.

Whom is he going to fetch ? . }

Whom is he going after, for ? )

After no one.

Is he going for some meat ?

No, for some milk.

Идѣтъ ли онъ за чѣмъ нибудь ?

За чѣмъ онъ идѣтъ ?

Онъ идѣтъ за виномъ.

За чѣмъ идѣтъ вашъ слуга ?

Онъ идѣтъ за табакомъ.

За кѣмъ онъ идѣтъ ?

Ни за кѣмъ.

Идѣтъ ли онъ за мясомъ

Нѣтъ, за молокомъ.

Every thing,

Всё.

Everybody, all,

Всѣ.

I like every thing here, and every-  
body, but he likes nothing  
and no one.

Я люблю здѣсь всё и всѣхъ, а онъ не  
любитъ ничего и никого,

I gave them every thing (that) I had.

Я далъ имъ всё что имѣлъ.

Obs. 3.—The relative pronoun что, 'which,' 'that,' is never omitted in Russian.

The owner,	владѣлецъ.
The room,	покой, комната.
The ring,	пѣрстень.
The promenade,	гулянье.
The edge,	лезвѣе.
Rags,	рѣбище.
A big table,	столище.
Well,	хорошѣ.

Young pigeon,	голубѣнокъ.
Glass, pane,	стекло.
Roasted,	жареный.
Boiled,	вареный.
Blunt, dull,	тупой.
Sharp,	острый.
Coarse,	грубый.
Badly,	дурно.

Many (plural),

Многіе, многія.

A few (plural),

Немногіе, немногія.

Many of our friends are in the garden already.

Многіе изъ нашихъ пріятелей уже въ саду.

Only a few houses here are good, all the others are bad.

Только немногіе дома здѣсь хороші, все другіе дурны.

Obs. 4.—*Many* and *few* in the singular can be used only in neuter, when there is no subject mentioned to denote the gender, as :

We spoke of many things.  
A few things here are good.

Мы говорили о многомъ.  
Не многое здѣсь хорошо.

To play (a game).

Играть въ (with the accus.).

To play cards.

Играть въ карты.

What game are you playing ?

Во что вы играете.

We are not playing any game.

Мы ни во что не играемъ.

To play at whist.

Играть въ вистъ.

To play at skittles.

Играть въ кегли.

Without,

Безъ (governs the genitive).

What will you take ? }

Что, or чего вамъ угодно ?

What would you like ? }

What you like. }

Что вамъ угодно.

Anything you like. }



Do as you please.  
Which would you like ?  
Whichever you like.  
They do not like this.

Дѣлайте какъ вамъ угодно.  
Который вамъ угодно ?  
Какъ бы вамъ угодно.  
Имъ не угодно этого.

OBS. 5.—With *угодно*, the subject must be used in the dative, as :

Мнѣ угодно,  
Ему́ угодно,

I should like.  
He should like, etc.

Will you take some pie ?  
Thank you, I am not hungry.  
Have you been long in London ?  
Since yesterday.  
It is the same to me.

Не угодно ли вамъ пирога ?  
Благодарю, я не голоденъ.  
Давно ли вы въ Лондонѣ ?  
Со вчерашняго дня.  
Мнѣ всё равно.

### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

What is the cook going to the shed for?—He is going for a few logs of wood.—Into whose shed is he going for firewood?—He goes always into the shed of the owner of those beautiful buildings.—Has Andrew got my ink and steel pens?—I think that he has neither (those nor the others).—Of which teacher's son are you speaking?—I speak of the one, to whom I am going.—Have you such a good easy-chair as my father has?—No, we have not as good, but we have some others.—They have very good new chairs and easy-chairs.—Are you going to the ball with many or only with a few friends?—I am going only with three friends, with my master (teacher) and his modest sons. Where did you see the English artist?—Not I, but my brother saw him at the promenade in the forest.—Where are the nice walks, to which the artists go so often?—They are in those blooming (цвѣтущіи) meadows and fields, to which (or whither) these young men are going.—The

windows of these new houses are still unglazed (without panes), but the windows of this magnificent building are glazed (with panes).—Do you not see those pails with beer or with wine?—I see neither the pails, nor the beer nor wine; I see only the cook, (who is) going to the yard of that building for a few young pigeons, goslings and ducklings. Of what and with whom did this old soldier's children speak?—They spoke with us of their poor father.—You have too little roast chicken.—I have as much as you have. Who sees the iron gate of this fine palace?—Some see it, and others do not.

#### EXERCISE XXXIX.

What a high gate!—Yes, it is a very high one.—What gate is it?—It is a wooden gate.—Have you bought much firewood of the peasant?—I bought very little.—What sort of ink did you give your clerk?—I gave him the black and blue, but did not give the red.—Why did you not give him the red ink?—Because he has red.—Are not the banker's children ill?—Yes, they are very ill.—How long have they been ill?—They have been ill since yesterday. What handkerchiefs did you buy from the rich merchant? I bought from him such a handkerchief, as you have not got.—How many logs of wood have you in the yard?—I do not know, but I think (that) I have still a good deal of firewood.—How long have you been here?—Already three hours, already six hours.—Where are the young officers? I think (that) they are either at the ball or in the theatre. Who says this?—Many say this.—Does everybody say this?—No, not everybody.—Where are the young grey asses?—They are either in (на) the yard or in (на) the field.—Are there many mirrors in the grand duke's palace?

The grand duke has many large and magnificent mirrors. Is this child hungry?—No, I have already given it some milk with sugar.—Did you not give it also something else?—No, I gave it nothing else.—What should you like to have?—Give me a little roast meat, if you please. What roast meat would you like?—Any you like, I do not care (it is the same to me).—Give me some roast goose. Would you not like also some roast chicken?—Yes, and give me also a piece of ham, if you please.—Where and with whom are your children playing?—They are playing in the yard with our neighbours' children.—What game are they playing?—They are playing at skittles.—What game is the banker playing with the merchants?—He is playing at whist.—Does he play well at whist.—Everybody plays well here.—Would they like to play with us at whist? No, they would not like, they do not want to play with you.

# TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.—Два́дцать пе́рвый Уро́къ.

I must,	}	Я до́лженъ.
I have to,		
I am obliged,		
Thou must,		Ты до́лженъ.
He must,		Онъ до́лженъ.
We must,		Мы должны́.
You must,		Вы должны́.
They must,		Они́ должны́.
I had to, I was to, <i>or</i>	}	Я до́лженъ былъ.
I was obliged.		
I shall have to,	}	Я до́лженъ бу́ду.
I shall be obliged,		



What has he to do to-day ?	Что онъ долженъ дѣлать сегодня ?
He has to go to the castle.	Онъ долженъ идти въ замокъ,
To whom had you to give all your money ?	Кому вы должны были дать всё свои деньги.
I had to give it to poor peasants.	Я долженъ былъ дать ихъ бѣднымъ крестьянамъ.
Who will have to go with the children ?	Кто долженъ будетъ идти съ дѣтьми ?
I shall have to go with them.	Я долженъ буду идти съ ними.

OBS. 1.—Some words ending in *енокъ*, take in the plural masculine inflexions in *и*, *овъ*, etc., as well as in *ята*, *ятъ* etc., as :

Мышенокъ,	little mouse ;	plur. мышѣнки and мышата.
Медвѣженокъ,	bear's cub ;	plur. медвѣжѣнки and медвѣжата.
Щенокъ,	pup ;	plur. щенки and шенята.
Галченокъ,	young jackdaw ;	plur. галчѣнки and галчата.
Лвенокъ,	lion's whelp ;	plur. львѣнки.

Usually,	Обыкновенно.
To be (indefinite),	Быва́ть.
What news ?	Что новаго ?
Have you something new ?	Есть ли у васъ что новое ?

OBS. 2.—After the interrogative pronoun *что* the neuter adjective is used in the genitive, but when *что* signifies ‘something,’ the adjective agrees with it in case.

Something (a certain thing),	Нѣчто, } demonstr.pronouns,
Nothing,	Ничто́, } declined like что.

I see there something white.	Я вижу тамъ нѣчто бѣлое.
He sees nothing good in that.	Онъ ничего хорошаго въ томъ не видитъ.



Tallow,	Сало.
A herd, flock,	Стадо.
A stud,	Табу́нъ.
Hay,	Сѣно.
Soap,	Мыло.
Mahogany,	Красное дерево.
Sky-blue,	Голубой.
Playful,	Рѣзвый.
Little Jew,	Жидёнокъ.
	A goldsmith,

## Both,

Have you got good hay here ?  
We have *both* good and bad.

Every kind, }  
All sorts, }

What sort of people are in this suburb ?  
All sorts of people are in it.  
He gave the peasants every kind of grain.

To warm,

To warm one's self,

I warm myself.  
Thou warmest thyself,  
He warms himself.  
We warm ourselves.  
You warm yourselves.  
They warm themselves.

Glass (material),	Стекло.
A pane,	Стекло.
Thrashing floor,	Гумно.
An outskirt,	Предмѣстье.
A foal,	Жеребёнокъ.
The soup,	Супъ.
High,	Высокій.
Low,	Низкій.
Little Turk,	Турченокъ.
	Золотыхъ дѣлъ мастеръ.

## II.—II.

Есть ли здѣсь хорошее сѣно ?  
У насъ есть и хорошее и дурное.

Всякій.

Какіе люди въ этомъ предмѣстьи ?

Всѣякіе въ нёмъ люди.

Онъ далъ крестьянамъ всякаго зерна.

Грѣть I. 1.

Грѣться.

Я грѣюсь.  
Ты грѣешься.  
Онъ грѣется.  
Мы грѣемся.  
Вы грѣетесь.  
Они грѣются.

OBS. 3.—Reflective verbs are formed of active verbs by adding the syllable *ся* (contracted reflective pronoun *себя*, 'self'). This syllable *ся* in conjugation, when coming after a vowel, is contracted into *сь*.

I wash myself.	Я моюсь.
They wash themselves.	Они моются.

You wash yourself.  
 We wash ourselves.  
 I warmed myself.  
 We warmed ourselves.

Вы моетесь.  
 Мы моемся.  
 Я грѣлся.  
 Мы грѣлись.

To fry, to roast, } жарить.  
 To be frying, }  
 To cook, } варить.  
 To be cooking, }

To fry (thoroughly), изжарить.  
 To boil (thoroughly), сварить.

Cook, there is goose, fry it for me.  
 Who cooked those eggs ?  
 Fry a few eggs.  
 Yes, sir.

Поваръ, вотъ гусь, изжарь мнѣ его.  
 Кто сварилъ эти яйца ?  
 Изжарьте нѣсколько яицъ.  
 Слушаю-съ.

OBS. 4.—Слушаю-съ means 'I obey, sir.' This expression is generally used by subordinates answering their superiors.

### EXERCISE XL.

Will you have chickens for dinner to-day?—We will have for dinner to-day, not only chickens, but also two pies ; one large for the guests, and another small one for the children.—Have you in your stud many foals and young asses?—I have not a single (ни одинъ) young ass in my stud, but I have twenty-three foals.—What do you see in this sack?—I see two pretty pups.—What has this merchant new?—He has fresh butter, fine white woollen cloth and a great many new mahogany chairs.—Has he not also tumblers (made) of (изъ) red and blue glass?—No, he has no other goods.—Are there little mice in your father's house?—There are no little mice in our house, but in our barn there are plenty of them.—Are the trees in your forest high?—There are both high and low trees.—Have you something new?—I have nothing new, I have only (that) what you have seen already.—Did I see every thing?—I think (that) you did.—Does his child wish to see the pretty

kittens and the little mice?—It wishes to see only the kittens.—And why does it not wish to see the little mice? Because it is afraid of them.—Is that old man with his family going to the play or to the ball?—He is going neither to the play nor to the ball, but to (на) the seashore (shore of the sea).—Do you see something black on those high trees?—We see a few nests with young jackdaws. Has anybody any tobacco and soap?—Nobody here has either tobacco or soap.—Has not anybody here something magnificent?—We have a magnificent pond.—He wants to give to these two lion's whelps some meat, and to this playful kitten a few little mice.—Do you not want to go with him to the kind prince, to his magnificent castle?—No, I do not want to go to the prince, I am going into the low barn, to the old beggar.—Have you seen in the village the poor little Jews in black coats and bad trousers?—No, because there are no little Jews in our villages.—Do the peasants see something on that field?—They see nothing. Do you not see something?—We see high corn in (on) the fields of the rich proprietor.—What sort of eyes have these inquisitive children?—One has grey eyes, and the other blue.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

Have I to speak with him?—No, you must not speak with him.—Who has to do this?—No one has to do this. Have not we to give you something?—You have to give us some money.—Do you want much tallow?—I do not want much of it, give me some of it.—Have the joiners enough mahogany (wood)?—No, they have too little of it. Will you not take a little more meat?—No, I have enough meat, but give me another little piece of chicken.—In

whose village have the boys been?—They were not in the village, but in the yard.—Who says that his tailor has good taste?—Nobody says this, because his tailor has very bad taste.—Is he often at (въ) the grand duke's palace? No, he is very seldom there.—To whom do they want to give these ducklings?—They want to give them to their cook.—Has he made the soup already?—No, he has not yet.—Did you see in (on) the meadows herds of oxen? I did not see the herds of oxen, but I saw three studs of horses (лошадь).—Has the locksmith much iron?—He has plenty, but not so much as the blacksmith has.—Is your gold good?—It is as good as yours.—Where are they warming themselves?—They are warming themselves at the fire.—Who else is warming himself at the fire?—The kittens are also warming themselves at the fire.—Are you often at St. Petersburg?—No, I am seldom there, but I am often in Paris and in London.—What kind of people are (usually) here?—All kinds: rich and poor, good and bad. Do you prefer (предпочитаете) the stag to the hare?—I prefer the hare to the stag, but I like also the meat of a young stag.—What kind of bread has the baker?—He has every kind of bread.

---



TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.—Два́дцать Вто́рой Уро́къ.

*Feminine Gender.*—Жѣ́нскій Родъ.

A wife,	же́на, супру́га.	A cell,	кѣ́лія.
A woman,	же́нщина.	A bible,	би́блія.
A fly,	му́ха.	A mouse,	мышь, f.*
A hat,	ша́пка.	A net,	сѣть, f.
A maid-servant,	служанка.	A horse,	ло́шадь, f.
A sister,	сестра́.	A bed,	постѣ́ль, f.
A candle,	свѣ́ча.	A seal,	печа́ть, f.
A widow,	вдова́.	A mill,	ме́льница.
A mistress (of a } хозяйка, servant), } ба́рыня.		A cup,	ча́шка.
Madam,	судары́ня.	A bench, shop,	ла́вка.
		A glove,	перча́тка.

OBS. 1.—Masculine nouns ending in a or я follow the inflexions of feminine nouns, as :

Мужчи́на, 'man.'	gen. мужчи́ны,	dat. мужчи́нѣ, etc.
Судья́, 'a judge.'	gen. судьи́,	dat. судьи́, etc.

It must be observed here that adjectives qualifying such nouns follow the masculine and not the feminine inflexions, as :

До́брого мужчи́ны,	Of the kind man.
Му́дрому судьи́,	To the wise judge.

OBS. 2.—Nouns ending in жа, ча, ша or ща, form the instrumental singular in ею, instead of ою, as :

Сту́жа, a cold,	instrumental сту́жею.
Ту́ча, a cloud,	instrumental ту́чею.
Кры́ша, a roof,	instrumental кры́шею.
Ро́ща, a grove,	instrumental ро́щею.

---

\* Nouns in ѣ, which are feminine, will be marked with f.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

## Таблица Склонения.

*Singular.*—Единственное Число.

Cases. Падежѣ.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjectives.</i> —Имя Прилагательное.		
	Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflexion.	<i>Full termination.</i>		<i>Asyncretized termination.</i>
			Hard Inflex.	Soft Inflex.	
Nom.	а.	я.	ая.	яя.	я.
Gen.	ы.	и.	ой.	ей.	ей.
Dat.	ѣ.	ѣ.	ой.	ей.	ей.
Acc.	у.	ю.	ую.	юю.	ю.
Inst.	ою.	ею.	ою.	ею.	ею.
Prep.	ѣ.	ѣ, и.	ой.	ей.	ей.

ОBS. 3.—The inflexions *ою* and *ею* of the instrumental case, of all substantives in *а* or *я*, can be shortened into *ой* or *ей*, as :

Жено́й, with the wife, instead of *женѡю*.  
Недѣ́лей, by the week, instead of *недѣ́лею*.

Care must be taken not to use the abridged inflexion *ей* in those substantives which have already their genitive plural in *ей*, as, for example :

Юноша, ‘a youth,’ genitive plural *юношей*.

In such words the inflexion *ею* must remain unaltered, as :

Юношею, ‘by the youth,’ and not *юношей*, ‘of youths.’

On the other hand, the inflexion *ью* of the instrumental case of feminine nouns in *ь* may be replaced by *ию*, which is however only used in formal language, as,

Вла́стью, ‘by the power,’ instead of *вла́стью* ;

and in ordinary conversation, after letter *щ*, in order to facilitate the pronunciation, as :

Вѣщи́ю, ‘by the thing,’ instead of *вѣщью*.  
Помощи́ю, ‘by the help,’ instead of *помощью*.

This, that (fem.)      Эта, та, сія.

She, it,                      Она́.

*Singular.*

Nominative,	This,	Эта,	Сія.	That,	Та.
Genitive,	Of this,	Этой,	Сей.	Of that,	Той.
Dative,	To this,	Этой,	Сей.	To that,	Той.
Accusative,	This,	Эту,	Сію.	That,	Ту.
Instrumental,	By this,	Этою, ой,	Сею.	By that,	Тѡю, той.
Prepositional,	Of this,	Этой,	Сей.	Of that,	Той.

Nominative,	She,	она́.	My, mine,	мо́я, f.
Genitive,	Of her,	ея́, (её).	Of my,	моей.
Dative,	To her,	ей.	To my,	мо́ей.
Accusative,	Her,	её.	My,	мою́.
Instrumental,	By her,	ею́.	By my,	моёю, ей.
Prepositional,	Of her,	о ней.	Of my,	о мо́ей.

Obs. 4.—The third personal pronoun она́, ‘she,’ when preceded by a preposition, takes an н in all the cases, as :

Для нея, ‘for her ;’ къ ней, ‘to her.’

Thy, thine (fem.)	Тво́я.
Thy, (own) (fem.)	Сво́я.
Her, her own (fem.)	Ея́, сво́я.

Obs. 5.—The possessive pronoun тво́я and the reflective possessive pronoun сво́я are declined like мо́я.

Which (fem.)	{ Какáя, } declined like an
	{ Котóрая, } adjective.
One, alone (fem.)	Однá, (declined like éта).

Who has my hat ?

У когó мо́я шля́па ?

I have mine.

У меня́ сво́я.

To whom did she give the hat ?

Кому́ дала́ она́ шля́пу ?

To her mother.

Своей ма́тери.

Which hat did you give her ?

Котóрую шля́пу вы ей да́ли ?

I gave her my daughter's silk hat.

Я далъ ей шёлковую шля́пу мо́ей дóчери.

Does she see our servant ?

Ви́дитъ ли она́ нашего слугу́ ?

She does not see the servant.

Она́ не ви́дитъ слуги́.

With whom is thy wife going ?

Съ кѣмъ идѣтъ тво́я жена́ ?

She is going with my mother and thy daughter.

Она́ идѣтъ съ моёю ма́терью и твоёю дóчерью.

I see the mother and the daughter.

Я ви́жу мать и дочь.

Of which hat is the servant-maid speaking ?

О какой шля́пѣ говори́тъ горничная́ ?

Of this man's hat.

О шля́пѣ э́того мужчи́ны.



OBS. 6.—The following feminine nouns—

любо́вь, 'love ;' ло́жь, 'a lie ;' це́рковь, 'a church ;' ро́жь, 'rye,

op the vowel o in all the cases, except in the instrumental singular, as :

Любо́вь, genitive, любви́, instrumental, любо́вью.  
Ло́жь, genitive, жи́, instrumental, ло́жью, etc.

OBS. 7.—The word мать, 'a mother,' and дочь, 'a daughter,' take in declension, before the final vowel, the syllable ep, as :

Мать, дочь ; genitive, матери́, дочери́, etc.

OBS. 8.—The accusative of all feminine nouns in ь is in the singular *always* like the nominative :

OBS. 9.—Substantives ending in ая or яя are declined like adjectives :

Дѣтская, a nursery.	Столовая, a dining-room.
Прихожая, an ante-room.	Конная, a horse-market.
Спальная, a bed-room.	Горничная, a maid-servant.

To burn,  
To be burning, }  
To sing,

Горѣть, II. 9.

Пѣть,\* I. 1.

I am burning, я горю́.  
Thou art burning, ты горѣ́шь.  
He is burning, онъ горѣ́тъ.  
We are burning, мы горѣ́мъ.  
You are burning, вы горѣ́те.  
They are burning, они горѣ́тъ.

I sing, я пою́.  
Thou singest, ты поѣ́шь.  
He sings, онъ поѣ́тъ.  
We sing, мы поѣ́мъ.  
You sing, вы поѣ́те.  
They sing, они пою́тъ.

I was burning, я горѣ́лъ, а, о, etc.  
I shall be burning, я бу́ду горѣ́ть.

I sang, я пѣ́лъ, а о, etc.  
I will sing, я бу́ду пѣ́ть.

What is burning ?  
The wood is burning.

Что горѣ́тъ ?  
Дрова́ горѣ́тъ.

Is not the candle burning also ?	Не горѣтъ ли тоже и свѣча.
Yes, the candle is burning also.	Да, и свѣча тоже горѣтъ.

A salmon, лѣсось.	A carp, карпъ.
An eel, ѳгорь.	A sturgeon, осетѣрь.
A pike, щѳка.	A crawfish, ракъ.
A sterlet, стѣрлядь.	A partridge, куропа́тка.

## EXERCISE XLII.

Did she see his wife?—Yes, she saw his wife, and her sister also.—Did his wife speak to her (own) sister?—Yes, she spoke to her.—Where is your old servant going?—He is going to the ante-room.—What for?—He is going there for his mistress's hat.—With whom is he speaking in the ante-room?—He is speaking with the old maid-servant. Of what is he speaking?—He is speaking with her of his kind master.—What does the mother order her daughter to do?—She orders her to cook one fowl and five eggs. The lazy cook's wife wants to speak to the rich merchant's mother.—About what?—About the poor widow and her little daughter.—How many children has this poor widow got?—She has got three daughters and five sons.—Where is our kind judge?—He is in the old monk's cell.—Where is the kind mother with her modest daughter going?—She is going with her daughter to church.—Where is the lazy child?—It is in bed.—Why?—Because it is ill.—Is your sister still in the church?—She is no longer there, I think she is now at home.—Did you speak yesterday with his pretty daughter?—No, I did not speak with her; I did not see her.—Did you see the master's handsome sister? Yes, sir; I have to go with her to the church to-day.—To which church?—To the Russian church.—What has this

kitten got in its mouth?—It has a mouse in his mouth. In which cupboard are the eggs and the roast chickens? In the (that) cupboard which is in the ante-room.—Has the peasant any rye?—No, he has not any rye.—Do you see that hen?—I see the black hen with the black chickens. Do you see the wise judge there, on that bench?—I see him, and his brother the great orator also.—Have you a good herring?—I have a herring, but it is not good.—Has not the servant my seal and my steel pen?—He has neither.

### EXERCISE XLIII.

Is not the servant going for my seal and my pens?—She is not going for the seal, but for the red ink.—Where is this woman going after my servant?—She is going after him to our nursery.—Will you have some Dutch herring? No, thank you, but give me a piece of cheese and some white bread, if you please.—Have you to go with him to Nicolas' shop?—No, I have not.—Do the children want to take tea?—They want to take coffee.—What kind of hat has he bought at that shop?—He bought a black silk hat. Were you at the English church?—I have not been at church, but at (на) the horse-market.—What did you see at the horse-market?—I saw an excellent young horse. To whom is this nurse speaking?—She is speaking to her mistress's child.—Would you like some beer?—No, I do not drink beer; give me a glass of wine, if you please.—Do you want a cup of tea or coffee?—No, I take neither tea nor coffee.—By whom was this steel key given to you?—It was given to me by my faithful servant.—With whom is your brother Andrew going?—He is going with your sister.—Were are they going?—They are going to that magnificent church.—How many millstones are there in



this mill?—There are four millstones in this mill.—Whose is this rick?—This is the poor widow's rick.—In whose yard is there plenty of snow?—In our neighbour's yard. Is the wood in the nursery burning well?—The wood in the nursery burns well, but in the dining-room the coals are burning badly.—Who was singing in the church to-day? My sister sang there, and many children sang also.—With whom sang your sister?—She sang alone, but the children sang with their teacher and with the priest.—Will they sing also to-morrow?—They will sing to-morrow at the king's castle.

## TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.—Два́дцать трéтій Урóкъ.

Whose,	Чья, fem.
Nobody's, }	Ничья́, fem.
No one's, }	

OBS. 1.—Чья and ничья́ follow the same inflexions as мой, viz., genitive, dative and prepositional, чьей; accusative, чью; instrumental, чьею (or чьей).

Whose is this glove ?	Чья́ эта перчатка ?
It is my sister's.	Она́ моёй сестры́.
Whose mother did you see yesterday ?	Чью́ мать вы ви́дели вчера́ ?
Whose sister is this girl ?	Чья́ сестра́ эта́ дѣвица́ ?
No one's, this girl has neither brothers nor sisters.	Ничья́, у́ этой дѣвицы́ нѣтъ ни брать- евъ ни сестѣрь.

It, (she),	Она́.
------------	-------

OBS. 2.—*It*, when referring to feminine nouns, is rendered by the third personal pronoun она́, 'she,' as :

Have you the glove ?	У васъ ли перчатка ?
I have it.	Она́ у меня.



To whom did you give the candle ?	Кому́ вы дали́ свѣчу́ ?
I gave <i>it</i> to the servant.	Я далъ её слугѣ.
Did you speak of the glove ?	Говорили ли вы о перчаткѣ ?
I spoke of <i>it</i> .	Я говорилъ о ней.

Her ( <i>poss. pronoun</i> ),	Ея́, pronounce её.
Her ( <i>own</i> ),	Сво́я.
Our, ours, <i>fem.</i>	На́ша, сво́я.
Your, yours, <i>fem.</i>	Ва́ша, сво́я.

OBS. 3.—The third feminine possessive pronoun ея́, ‘her,’ and its plural ихъ, ‘their,’ have no declension of their own, and they do not take an н when used with a preposition, as :

At her house.	Въ ея́ до́мѣ.
I am going to her mother.	Я иду́ къ ея́ ма́тери.
In their room.	Въ ихъ ко́мнатѣ.
I spoke of their daughters.	Я говори́лъ объ ихъ доче́ряхъ.

OBS. 4.—Cardinal numerals ending in ь follow the same mode of inflexion as feminine nouns in ь, and when used in the nominative they govern the genitive plural, but in all the other cases they agree in case with the substantive, as :

Five tables.	Пять сто́ловъ.
Six sisters.	Шесть сесте́ръ.
To the seven brothers.	Къ семи́ бра́тьямъ.
With six children.	Съ шестью́ дѣ́тьми.
In ten houses.	Въ десяти́ дома́хъ.
We spoke of twelve towns.	Мы говори́ли о двѣ́надцати горо́дахъ.

To be able, (can),	Мочь.
One can,	Мо́жно, } impersonal verbs.
One cannot,	Нельз́я, }

<i>Personal Form.</i>	<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Я могу́,            I can.	Мнѣ́ мо́жно.
Ты мо́жешь,      Thou canst.	Тебѣ́ мо́жно.

<i>Personal Form.</i>		<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Онъ, она мѡжетъ,	He, she can.	Емѹ, ей мѡжно.
Мы мѡжемъ,	We can.	Намъ мѡжно.
Вы мѡжете,	You can.	Вамъ мѡжно.
Онѣ, онѣ мѡгутъ,	They can.	Имъ мѡжно.
Я могъ,	I could.	Мнѣ мѡжно было.
Я могла, }		
Я могло, }		
Мы могли,	We could.	Намъ мѡжно было.

I cannot,      { Я не могу.  
                         { Мнѣ нельзя.

<i>Personal Form.</i>		<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Я не могу,	I cannot.	Мнѣ нельзя.
Ты не можешь,	Thou canst not.	Тебѣ нельзя.
Онъ не мѡжетъ,	He cannot.	Емѹ нельзя.
Мы не мѡжемъ,	We cannot.	Намъ нельзя.
Вы не мѡжете,	You cannot.	Вамъ нельзя.
Онѣ, онѣ не мѡгутъ,	They cannot.	Имъ нельзя.
Я не могъ,	I could not.	Мнѣ нельзя было.
Мы не могли.	We could not.	Намъ нельзя было.

\* OBS. 5.—The impersonal verbs мѡжно and нельзя require the subject to be in the dative, as:

Сестрѣ мѡжно а матери нельзя.      The sister can, but the mother cannot.

The same,      Тотъ-же, та-же, то-же.  
The same thing,      То-же.  
So,      Такъ,

OBS. 6.—Adjectives following the word такъ, 'so,' must be apocopated, as:

Онъ такъ добрѣ.      He is so kind.  
Это такъ хорошѣ.      This is so good.

The same (kind)—as,

{ Такой-же—какъ и.  
Такъ-же—какъ и.

He gave her the same book.

Онъ далъ ей ту же книгу.

He gave her the same kind of  
book as I gave.

Онъ далъ ей такую же книгу какъ я  
далъ.

A girl,	дѣвица.
A cousin,	двоюродная сестра.
A coach,	карета.
A coach-house,	каретникъ.
A stable,	конюшня.
A youth,	юноша.
A singer (fem.),	пѣвица.
A room,	комната.
A road,	дорога.
A dog,	собака.
A kitchen,	кухня.
A drop,	капля.
To say,	сказать.
To sow,	сѣять.

Cold,	холодный.
Warm,	тѣплый.
Amiable,	любезный.
Well built,	стройный.
Dark,	тѣмный.
Tidy, neat,	опрятный.
Clean, pure,	чистый.
Bold,	отважный.
Wax, <i>adj.</i> ,	воскрѣй.
Tallow, <i>adj.</i> ,	сальный.
Dirty,	грязный.
A cook, (fem.),	кухарка.
To read,	читать.
To write,	писать.
To answer,	отвѣчать.

What did he say to her mother?

Что сказалъ онъ ей матери?

He said to her that his sister could  
not go to church to-day.

Онъ сказалъ ей что ея сестрѣ нельзя  
было идти сегодня въ церковь.

To whom are you writing?

Кому пишете вы?

I am writing to her sister.

Я пишу ей сестрѣ.

What did you answer him?

Что вы отвѣчали ему?

I answered him that I have to write  
to my mother.

Я отвѣчалъ ему, что я долженъ пи-  
сать моей матери.

Not a,

Ни—не, (for numerals).

I have not a single friend.

У меня ни одного друга нѣтъ.

I do not see a single fly.

Я ни одной мухи не вижу.

He has not a copper in (his) pocket.

У него нѣтъ ни копѣйки въ карманѣ.

To need, to want, }  
To be in need of, }

Пуждаться въ, (with the pre-  
positional case).

*Personal Form.*

*Impersonal Form.*

Я нуждаюсь, I need.

Мнѣ пужно.

Ты нуждаешься. Thou needest.

Тебѣ пужно.

<i>Personal Form.</i>	<i>Impersonal Form.</i>
Онъ нуждается, He needs.	Ему́ нужно.
Мы нужда́емся, We need.	Намъ́ нужно.
Вы нужда́етесь, You need.	Вамъ́ нужно.
Они́ нужда́ются, They need.	Имъ́ нужно.

I am in need of *daily* bread.

Я нужда́юсь въ пасу́щномъ хлѣбѣ.

We are in want of clothes.

{ Мы нужда́емся въ пла́тьѣ.  
{ Намъ́ нужно пла́тьѣ.

She is in need of money.

{ Она́ нуждается въ деньга́хъ.  
{ Ей нужны́ деньгн.

This rich banker is in need of a  
servant,

Этому́ богáтому банкиру́ ну́женъ слуга́.

OBS. 7.—The accented termination *ею* of the instrumental case, when preceded by *ж, ч, ш, or щ*, must have the sound of *ою*, and in the language of the present day it is usually written *ою* instead of *ею*, as :

Душо́ю, 'with the soul,' instead of душѣю.

Свѣчѣ́ю, 'with the candle,' instead of свѣчѣю.

#### EXERCISE XLIV.

Whose wife did she see?—She saw the rich banker's young wife.—Where did she see her?—She saw her at (въ) church.—Has she a coach?—She has a very good new coach.—Where did you see this new coach?—In the old wooden coach-house, which is in the clean yard of this fine building.—Are there many foals in that stable?—There are no foals in that stable, there are horses only.—With whom do you want to go to the rich merchant's stable? With the well-built youth.—With which youth?—With the one of whom I spoke to you yesterday.—Who has my pens, my ink and seal?—I have not got them, your servant has got all these things.—What is the cook going to the



kitchen for?—She is going to the kitchen for some fresh water.—Is she not going there also for something else? She is going there for the roast chickens also.—What sort of candle has that girl?—She has a wax candle.—Has she not also a tallow candle?—She has not a single tallow candle.—Whose ring has the girl?—She has her own. How many pups has this dog?—It has four pups.—Has she that woman's hat.—She has her own, and not that woman's hat.—How many pails of water has she?—She has five pails of fresh water.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

Can you give this wax candle to that amiable girl?—No, I cannot give her the wax candle.—Why?—Because I have not got a wax candle.—Does this girl want to eat and drink?—Yes, she wants to eat and drink.—Would she like some bread and butter?—Yes, she would; and give her, please, also some cheese and a glass of beer or wine.—You have to give me five roubles.—That (this) is too much, I cannot give you so much, I can give you only two roubles. What does he want to go to (на) the field for?—He wants to sow corn (plural).—What sort of corn?—Oats, barley and other kind of corn.—In whose field will he sow them? In his own.—Does any one want to write to the modest Englishman?—No, but the Russian wants to buy some ink and write a letter to his mother, and not to the Englishman.—The rich owners of the ships are in need of sails and anchors.—Can one buy in the market bills of exchange? One could yesterday, but one cannot to-day.—This nobleman's wife wants to go to the merchant's shop?—Why?

She wants to buy at the merchant's shop some coffee, tea, sugar, cheese and some pepper.—With whom is she going to that shop?—With her servant.

### EXERCISE XLVI.

Good day, madam! how do you do?—Thank you, I am quite well.—Your cousin (fem.) told me that you were ill. Yes, I was ill yesterday and the day before, but now I am well.—Where were you yesterday?—I was on (EN) the estate of Mr. N.—Has he as laborious and honest labourers as you have?—No, his labourers are very lazy.—In which street is your house?—It is in the same street as (where) yours.—Is your house as dark as mine?—Yes, it is as dark as yours.—Do you want to eat?—Give me a piece of boiled salmon.—Do not you want some boiled crawfish (plur.)? No, thank you.—Which wine would you like?—Give me a glass of red wine.—What times have we now?—We have now very bad times, every thing is very dear.—Which is dearer, pewter or silver?—Silver, but gold is still dearer. How many eggs did you give to your cook?—I gave her three eggs.—Of what colour is the sky?—The sky is blue and the clouds in it are grey.—What is that man's trade? He is by trade a boot and shoe maker.—Good bye, my good friend, I have to go to my sisters.—The banisters of this wooden staircase are (made of) iron.

---

## TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### Два́дцать Четвёртый Уро́къ.

OBS. 1.—Nouns ending in а, preceded by ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, or х, form their nominative plural in и instead of ы, as :

Ту́ча, 'a cloud ;'	plural, ту́чи,	genitive, ту́чь.
Соха́, 'a plough ;'	plural, со́хи,	genitive, сохъ.

Nouns ending in жа, ча, ша, ща, when preceded by another consonant, form their genitive plural in ей instead of ѣ, as :

Вожжа́, 'a rein ;'	plural, во́жжи,	genitive, во́жжей.
Парча́, 'a brocade ;'	plural, парчи́,	genitive, парче́й.

OBS. 2.—The vowel я, after the consonants ж, ч, ш, щ, is replaced in the plural by а, in the dative, instrumental and prepositional case, as :

Ночь, 'a night ;' dat. plur. но́чамъ, instr. но́чами, prep. но́чахъ.

The word це́рковь, 'a church,' also changes its soft inflexions into hard in the dative, instrumental and prepositional plural, as :

Dative, церкв́амъ ; instrumental, церкв́ами ; prepositional, церкв́ахъ.

# THIRD DECLENSION.

## DECLENSION OF FEMINE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Таблица Склонений.

*Plural.* — Множественное Число.

Cases. Падежъ.	<i>Substantives.</i> Имя Существительное.		<i>Adjectives.</i> —Имя Прилагательное.		
	Имя Существительное.		<i>Full terminations.</i>		<i>Ascorporated terminations.</i>
			Hard Declension.	Soft Declension.	
Nom.	ы.	и.	ыя,	ія.	и.
Gen.	ъ.	ь, (и, ей).	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ихъ.
Dat.	амъ.	ямъ.	ымъ.	имъ.	имъ.
Acc.	Like the Nominative or the Genitive.				
Inst.	амъ.	ямъ.	ыми.	ими.	ими.
Prep.	ахъ.	яхъ.	ыхъ.	ихъ.	ихъ.



Obs. 3.—The following nouns, having two or more consonants before the final vowel, take the euphonic e in the genitive plural:

Сва́дьба,	'a wedding ;'	gen. plur.	сва́дебъ.
Судьба́,	'fate ;'	gen. plur.	суде́бъ.
Тѣ́жба,	'a law-suit ;'	gen. plur.	тѣ́жебъ.
Царе́вна,	'a princess (Royal) ;'	gen. plur.	царе́венъ.
Кня́жнѣ,	'a princess (unmarried) ;'	gen. plur.	кня́женъ.
Копна́,	'a rick ;'	gen. plur.	копе́нъ.
Сосна́,	'a fir ;'	gen. plur.	со́сенъ.
Овца́,	'a sheep ;'	gen. plur.	ове́цъ.
Крѣ́постца́,	'a small fortress ;'	gen. plur.	крѣ́постѣцъ.
Серьга́,	'an ear-ring ;'	gen. plur.	серѣ́гъ.
Ложка́,	'a spoon ;'	gen. plur.	ложе́къ.
Ручка́,	'a handle ;'	gen. plur.	ру́чекъ.
Ко́шка,	'a she-cat ;'	gen. plur.	ко́шекъ.
Лю́лька,	'a cradle ;'	gen. plur.	лю́лекъ.
Шайка́,	'a band, (troop) ;'	gen. plur.	ша́екъ.

And also other substantives ending in йка, ька, жка, чка, шка.

If, however, the first of the two consonants be one of the gutturals г, к, or х, the genitive plural takes о instead of е, as:

Игла́,	'a needle ;'	gen. plur.	и́голъ, иглѣ.
Ку́кла,	'a doll ;'	gen. plur.	ку́колъ.
Игра́,	'a game ;'	gen. plur.	и́горъ, игрѣ.
Икра́,	'roe ;'	gen. plur.	и́коръ, икрѣ.

Obs. 4.—All nouns ending in ка, preceded by any consonant, except ж, ч, or ш, take the euphonic о in the genitive plural as:

Тру́бка,	'a pipe ;'	gen. plur.	тру́бокъ.
Дѣ́вка,	'a girl ;'	gen. plur.	дѣ́вокъ.
Палка́,	'a stick ;'	gen. plur.	па́локъ.
Куропа́тка,	'a partridge ;'	gen. plur.	куропа́токъ, etc.

Obs. 5.—The following feminine nouns: рѣчь, ‘a speech ;’ кость, ‘a bone ;’ and страсть, ‘passion ;’ end in the instr. plural either in ями or ѣми ; as, рѣча́ми, стра́стями, ко́стями, or рѣчѣ́ми, страстьѣ́ми, ко́стьми.

Obs. 6.—Nouns ending in я, preceded by two consonants, take an e in the genitive plural, as :

Дерѣвня,	‘a village ;’	gen. plur.	деревѣнь.
Хлѣбня,	‘a bakehouse ;’	gen. plur.	хлѣбень.
Рудокѡня,	‘a mine ;’	gen. plur.	рудокѡпень.
Камелолѡня,	‘a quarry ;’	gen. plur.	каменолѡмень.
Земля,	‘a land ;’	gen. plur.	земель.
Капля,	‘a drop ;’	gen. plur.	капель.

NOTE.—The words ноздря́, ‘a nostril,’ and дѣ́дя, ‘uncle,’ have for the genitive plural ноздрѣ́й and дѣ́дей.

Obs. 7.—The following nouns ending in ня, preceded by another consonant, or by the semivowel ь or ѣ, form their genitive plural in ѣ instead of ѣ, as :

Кухня,	‘a kitchen ;’	gen. plur.	кухонѣ.
Спальня,	‘a bed-room ;’	gen. plur.	спаленѣ.
Обѣдня,	‘a mass ;’	gen. plur.	обѣденѣ.
Басня,	‘a fable ;’	gen. plur.	басенѣ.
Бѣйня,	‘a slaughter-house ;’	gen. plur.	бѣенѣ.
Тамѡжня,	‘a custom-house ;’	gen. plur.	тамѡженѣ.
Ба́шня,	‘a tower ;’	gen. plur.	ба́шенѣ.

And other nouns ending in шня.

NOTE.—The word сажѣнь (Russian measure, equal to seven feet), when preceded by a cardinal numeral from five and upwards, forms its genitive plural in ѣ instead of еѣ ; as, пять сажѣнь, instead of пять сажѣнеѣ.

Obs. 8.—The inflexion ями of the instrumental case in

the words дочь, 'a daughter;' дверь, 'a door;' лошадь, 'a horse;' and плеть, 'a whip;' is abridged into *ymi*, as:

Instrumental plural,	дочерьми́,	instead of дочеря́ми.
Instrumental plural,	дверьми́,	instead of дверя́ми.
Instrumental plural,	лошадьми́,	instead of лошады́ми.
Instrumental plural,	плетьми́,	instead of плетя́ми.

OBS. 9.—Nouns ending in *я* preceded by *i* or *ья* unaccented form the genitive plural in *ий*, as:

Линія,	'a line;'	gen. plur. лині́й.
Келья,	'a cell;'	gen. plur. келі́й.
Армія,	'an army;'	gen. plur. армі́й.

OBS. 10.—If the two last consonants are *зд* or *ст*, no euphonic vowel is inserted in the genitive plural, as:

Звѣзда́,	'a star;'	gen. plur. звѣздъ.
Невѣста́,	'a bride;'	gen. plur. невѣстъ.

The following words, although having two or more consonants before the final vowel, do not take any euphonic vowel in the genitive plural.

Бѣздна́,	an abyss.	Яства́,	food, (plural).
Вербá,	a willow.	Бóмба,	a bombshell.
Враждá,	enmity.	Волнá,	a wave.
Искра́,	a spark.	Пзбá,	a hut.
Кáрта,	a card.	Казáрма,	barracks.
Пáльма,	a palm-tree.	Лáмпа,	a lamp.
Прóсьба,	a petition.	Пуждá,	necessity.
Арфа́,	a harp.	Прáвда,	truth.
Пóльза,	advantage.	Сérна,	a chamois.
Убійца́,	an assassin.	Укорі́зна,	a reproach.
Лихвá,	usury.	Яхта́,	a yacht.

Before, in front of,

About,

They, (fem. plur.)

Предъ, governs the instr.

Около, governs the genitive.

Онѣ, declined like онѣ.

Alone, (fem. plur.)	Однѣ, genitive однѣхъ, dative однѣмъ, etc.
Two, (fem. plur.)	Двѣ, declined like два, i.e. genitive двухъ, etc.
Both, (fem. plur.)	Обѣ, genitive обѣихъ, dative обѣимъ, etc.

Obs. 11.—Двѣ and обѣ, when used in the nominative, govern the genitive singular.

Who sees me?	Кто меня видитъ?
Both sisters see thee.	Обѣ сестры тебя видятъ.
I see two stars.	Я вижу двѣ звѣзды.
Did you speak with his daughters?	Говорили ли вы съ его дочерями?
I spoke with both his daughters.	Я говорилъ съ обѣими его дочерями.
He gave my two daughters two books.	Онъ далъ моимъ двумъ дочерямъ двѣ книги.

Some, others, (fem. plur.)	Однѣ, другія.
Some read and others write.	Одни читаютъ а другіе пишутъ.
What do those women say?	Что тѣ женщины говорятъ?
Some say one thing and some another.	Однѣ говорятъ одно, а другія другое.

Both,	Обѣ.
The one and the other, }	Та и другая, plural тѣ и
Both, (fem.) }	другія.

Have you seen my sister and his wife?	Видѣли ли вы мою сестру и его жену?
I saw them both.	{ Я видѣлъ обѣихъ, Я видѣлъ и ту и другую.
His two daughters were in the room alone.	Его двѣ дочери были однѣ въ комнатѣ.



Sight, зрѣніе.  
 Little girl, дѣвочка.

A fair, ярмарка.  
 A violin, скрипка.

To play (an instrument),  
 To present with, }  
 To give, }

What did you present this boy with ?  
 I presented him with an Italian  
 violin.

But he plays on the piano.

Yes, but he wants to play the violin  
 also.

Bright, яркій.  
 Better, лучше (governs the  
 genitive).

Of this place, здѣшній.  
 A piano, фортепіано.

Играть на (with the prepositional).  
 Подарить (governs the accusative  
 and the dative).

Что вы подарѣли этому мальчику ?  
 Я подарилъ ему итальянскую скрип-  
 ку.

Но онъ играетъ на фортепіано.\*

Да, но онъ хочетъ играть тоже и на  
 скрипкѣ.

To rule, графить.  
 To catch, поймать.  
 To light, зажечь.  
 I lighted, я зажѣгъ.  
 She lighted, она зажгла.  
 It lighted, оно зажгло.

Astrachan, Астрахань, f.  
 Moscow, Москвѣ.  
 England, Англія.  
 We lighted, мы зажгли  
 You lighted, вы зажгли.  
 They lighted, они зажгли.

Of this place,  
 Of that place,

Здѣшній.  
 Тамошній.

## EXERCISE XLVII.

How many sisters and brothers has this little girl?—She has two sisters and as many brothers.—Have those assassins any sisters?—They have five sisters.—Do you see the stars in the sky?—I see only two large bright stars. Why do you not see the others also?—Because I have very weak sight.—Do your daughters play the piano?—Yes, both my daughters play the piano.—Did your brother play

---

\* The word фортепіано, 'a piano,' is indeclinable.

the violin yesterday?—Yes, he played the violin yesterday. Has this girl's uncle many coaches?—He has two coaches only, but they are very good ones.—What do the sisters of those girls want to buy?—They want to buy a few dolls. What did your aunt present her servant with?—She presented her with a pair of gold ear-rings and a few silver spoons.—At which church were you yesterday, the French or the Russian?—We were at both churches.—Have these two princesses (unmarried) plenty of money?—Yes, they are very rich.—How many sheep has this young shepherd? He has twenty-five sheep.—Have you seen the villages in which there are mines and quarries?—I saw neither the villages, nor the mines, nor the quarries.—How many barracks are there in your town?—There are no barracks at all in our town.—Has he many lands?—He has as many lands as his mean neighbour.—Has your good king faithful and brave subjects?—Good kings always have plenty of faithful subjects and brave soldiers.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

Are there many firs and willows in your forest?—There are plenty of firs in our forest, but there is not a single willow.—Has your master (lord) only one forest?—He has three large forests, with many trees, stags and hares.—Are there not any partridges in those forests?—There are no partridges at all.—What sort of rooms have the princess's daughters?—They have large and warm rooms, but our neighbours, the poor clerks, have only one small and cold room.—Do you want to buy a few apples?—No, we have plenty of apples in our garden.—What good things have they?—They have many good bake-houses, five tidy

kitchens, three cellars with red and white wines, six good slaughter-houses, two custom-houses, enough rye, barley and flax, and twenty-five new wooden huts.—The pretty little girl says that her father wants to take the firewood, which is in the yard of that hut.—You may give it to her; this girl's father is a poor beggar.—I want to go home. Why?—I have to speak to my father about my business. Have you bought many books at the fair?—I bought a great many (of them) there.—Why do you want (is it necessary to you) so many books?—I want to present them to my sister's master.—Were the waves high?—Yes, they were very high.—How much firewood did you buy in the market?—I bought very little of it.—Which horses are better, English or Russian?—English horses are much better than Russian.—Have you lighted the candle already? Yes, I have lit it.—Why did you do it?—I lit it, because I wanted to write.—Where did you eat better roe, than that of this place?—I have eaten much better roe in Astrachan, than that of this place.—Give her the ruler, she wants to rule.—Both her daughters play the harp.—Did your cook buy much fish?—She bought three salmons, five carps, two pikes and a few herrings.—What do you see before you?—I see in front of me an abyss.

---

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Двадцать Пятый Урокъ.

Obs. 1.—The following, used only in the plural, are of feminine gender.

Money,	дѣньги.	Cannæ,	Канны.
Yeast,	дрожжи.	A pair of scissors,	ножницы.
A rake,	грабли.	A sheath,	ножны.
A bosom,	грудь.	A litter,	носи́лки.
A funeral,	по́хороны.	A music-book,	но́ты.
A gallery,	хо́ры.	Fetters,	око́вы.
A rosary,	че́тки.	Pranks,	прока́зы.
Trousers,	шарава́ры.	Rouge,	рума́ны.
Pincers,	клѣщи.	Cream,	сли́вки.
Relics,	мо́щи.	Tittle-tattle,	сплѣтѣнн.
Guard-room bed,	на́ры.	Twilight,	су́мерки.
A peasant's sledge,	дровни.	A day (24 hours),	су́тки.
Darkness,	потѣмки.	A vestibule,	сте́ни.
Dreams,	брѣдни.	A sledge,	са́ни, санки.
Droshky (a carriage),	дрожки.	Sweetmeats,	сла́сти.
Footboard (behind a carriage),	запа́тки.	A carrier's sledge,	ро́звальни.
Devices,	загѣи.	Ties,	узы́.
A dulcimer,	гу́сли.	Tapestry,	шпала́ры.
False pearls,	бу́сы.	A manger,	я́сли.
Prayers for the dead.	помя́нки.	Combings,	вычески.
Diamond (in playing cards),	бу́бны.	Dregs,	выки́дки.
Spade,	пи́ки.	Trouble,	хло́поты.
Athens,	Аѳѣны.	Cabbage-soup,	щи́.
		Hearts } (in play-	че́рви.
		Clubs } ing cards),	тре́фы.
		Thebes,	ѳѣвы.
		Jassy,	Я́ссы.

The names of some Russian towns are also wanting in the singular, as :

Алѣшки.	Печѣры.
Бендѣры.	Пружа́ны.
Боровичи́.	Росси́ены.



Врѣнницы.  
Вѣлки.  
Валѹнникъ.  
Велікіе лѹки.

Холмогоры.  
Чебоксары.  
Крестцы.  
Вязники.

OBS. 2.—Some nouns of this class are used also in the singular, but with a different meaning, as :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Прокáза, leprosy.	Прокáзы, pranks.
Рѳзвалень, a loiterer.	Рѳзвальни, a peasant's sledge.
Деньгá, half a copeck.	Дѣньги, money.
Часъ, an hour.	Часы, a watch, clock.
Two,	Дво́е, два.
Three,	Тро́е, три.

OBS. 3.—The numerals два, 'two ;' три, 'three ;' четы́ре, 'four,' etc., in the case of a substantive of which the singular is wanting, are replaced by collective numerals, дво́е, 'two ;' тро́е, 'three ;' четы́веро, 'four ;' etc., and the substantive must be in the genitive, as :

Two sledges,	Дво́е санѣй.
Three pairs of scissors,	Тро́е но́жницъ.
Four days,	Четы́веро су́токъ, etc.

OBS. 4.—The English preposition *of*, when it does not denote the true genitive, is not translated, as :

The City of London.	Горо́дъ Лондо́нъ.
All of us,	Всѣ мы.
Five of us,	Насъ пя́теро.
The linen, бѣльѣ.	A bottle, буты́лка.
A fork, ви́лка.	A hen, { ку́рица (plur. ку́-
A cork, про́бка.	ры, gen. ку́ръ, etc.
A laundress, пра́чка.	A hayloft, сѣ́нникъ.
A sword, шпа́га.	A sabre, са́бля.

Half a score,	десятокъ.	A dozen,	дюжина.
A hundred,	сотня.	Half a hundred,	полсотни.
Old (worn out),	худой.	Lively ( <i>adj.</i> )	живой.
Dirty (for linen),	чёрный.	Clean,	чистый.
Dirty linen,	чёрное бельё.	Fat,	жирный.
A fish,	рыба.	Awkward,	неловкий.

OBS. 5.—Рыба, ‘a fish,’ in a collective sense as in English, is used in the singular instead of the plural, as :

Я купилъ эту рыбу.	I bought this fish.
Тамъ нѣтъ рыбы.	There is no fish

OBS. 6.—Nouns ending in я, preceded by a vowel, form their genitive plural in й, as :

Струя,	‘a current ;’	gen. plur. струй.
Змѣя,	‘a serpent ;’	gen. plur. змѣй.
Швей,	‘a sempstress ;’	gen. plur. швей.

Those ending in бя form their genitive plural in ей, as :

Скамья,	‘a bench ;’	gen. plur. скамей.
Семья,	‘a family ;’	gen. plur. семей.

If the termination бя be an abridged termination of ія, the genitive plural is in ій instead of ей, as :

Игуменья, (игуменія),	‘an abbess ;’	gen. plur. игуменій.
Келья, (келлія),	‘a cell ;’	gen. plur. келій.

This, that, it, Это, то (neuter).

OBS. 7.—*This, that* and *it*, when not referring to a noun, are translated это, as :

Я уже читалъ это.	Я уже читалъ это.
Have you told it to me ?	Сказали ли вы мнѣ это ?
I have told it to you.	Я вамъ сказалъ это.
Who is it ?	Кто это ?
It is my brother.	Это мой братъ.
What is it ?	Что это ?

But, then,                    Же.

OBS. 8.—Но, 'but,' may sometimes be replaced by же, which however must be placed after the word to which it refers, as :

I was there, but he was not.

{ Я былъ тамъ, но онъ не былъ,  
Я былъ тамъ, онъ же не былъ. .

Where is he then ?

Гдѣ же онъ ?

To whom did he give it then ?

Кому же онъ далъ это ?

To wash,

Мыть.\*

To wash (linen),

Стирать I. 1.

Did your maid-servant wash the floor ?

Мыла ли ваша служанка полъ ?

No, she was washing the linen.

Нѣтъ, она стирала бѣлье.

To harness,

Запрячь.

To be diligent, }

Стараться.

To endeavour, }

Выиграть.

To gain,

Проиграть.

To lose,

I wash,            я мою,            стираю.

I fry,                    я жарю.

Thou wasthest, ты моешь,    стираешь.

Thou fryest,           ты жарышь.

He washes,        онъ моетъ,    стираетъ.

He fries,                онъ жаритъ.

We wash,           мы моемъ,    стираемъ.

We fry,                   мы жаримъ

You wash,        вы можете,    стираете.

You fry,                вы жарите.

They wash,        они моютъ,    стираютъ.

They fry,                они жарятъ.

Somebody, something,    Кто нибудь, что нибудь.

OBS. 9.—The word нибудь, when forming a part of the words кто нибудь or что нибудь, is often omitted, as :

Have you not seen some one ?

Не видѣли ли вы кого (нибудъ) ?

Has he something ?

Есть-ли у него что ?

## EXERCISE XLIX.

Who is this woman?—She is my laundress.—Of what did your mother speak with this laundress?—She spoke

with her of the linen.—Did she not speak with her of something else also?—No, she spoke with her of linen only, which she gave her the day before yesterday.—Do you give this laundress your linen to wash?—No, she washes badly; we give our linen to another laundress, who washes well. Did you see that grand funeral?—We did not see it.—How many pairs of scissors have these sempstresses?—They have only three pairs of steel scissors, but they are very good.—The maid-servant gave the cook (fem.) too much yeast.—Has the cook enough wood in the kitchen?—He has not enough of it.—Is the hay in the manger?—No, it is in a rick.—Who is going for my tea, and for the cream? The maid-servant is going for one, and the servant for the other.—What have these two monks got in their hands? They have two rosaries.—Are there any relics in this church?—No, there are no relics in this church.—What sort of corn have these peasants on the large sledges, which we see on that road?—They have on the sledges not corn, but fish.—Where is the laundress going?—She is going to (вѣ) the wash-house, to wash the linen.—Has the laundress to wash the maid-servant's linen also?—No, she has not to wash it.—The cook (fem.) is in the kitchen already.—What has she to cook and fry for your dinner?—Nothing, I will not be at home, I am dining at a friend's.—Where are the silver spoons and forks?—The first ones are on the table, and the last ones are in the cupboard.—Do not you see the laundress with my linen?—I see her and her two daughters.—Have your horses some bran?—They have only a little bran, but plenty of oats and enough hay and fresh water from (изъ) the new well, which you see in that garden under the high fir-tree.—What has the maid-servant got, whom you see on that peasant's sledge?—She has got three



rakes and four pitchforks.—How many pairs of breeches has your neighbour got?—He has three pairs of cloth breeches, but these poor little Jews have neither breeches, nor boots, nor coats; they have only got bad stockings, old shoes and dirty linen.—Whose are these silk gloves? These gloves are mine, but they are leathern and not silk. With whom are you speaking?—With no one.—How many soldiers are there in this village?—Two hundred and seventy-five men.—Where is my music?—It is on the piano.

#### EXERCISE L.

Are you not in need of something?—Yes, I am in need of money.—Where is then your money?—I lost it at cards. Did you lose much money at cards?—Yes, I have lost very much.—Where did your sisters pass (провели) their time yesterday?—They passed the whole day in the village. What did she cook for dinner?—She made an excellent cabbage-soup.—Are these bottles with corks?—No, they are without corks.—What sort of hens are these?—They are Dutch hens.—Can your daughters go to-day to my aunt's? No, they cannot go to her to-day, they have no time, but they can to-morrow.—Are your pupils diligent?—Yes, they are very diligent.—We endeavoured to do this, but could not. How many lessons did you give them?—I gave them forty-three lessons.—This crawfish has got large claws.—Can one see live fish in the market?—No, there are no live fish in the market.—How many horses did you order the coachman to harness?—I ordered him to harness six for the king, four for the prince, three for the courier, and a pair for me. How many apples did you buy?—I bought one hundred of apples and half a hundred of pears.—What are these little

girls thinking of?—They are thinking of their dolls.—How many roubles did you receive from your advocate?—I received from him twenty-four roubles and fifty copecks. How many workmen (подмастерье) has this boot-maker got?—He has six (of them).—What sort of sheath is this? This is a leathern sheath.—But where is the sword?—It is in the sheath.

---

## TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Два́дцать Шесто́й Уро́къ.

### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

Augmentatives and Diminutives are derivative substantives, which by some change in the termination of the primitive express the object as larger or smaller.

#### I. AUGMENTATIVES.—Увели́чительныя.

##### *Formation of Augmentatives.*

a. Masculine augmentatives are formed by changing the terminations **ъ**, **ь** or **й** into **ище** or **ина** :

До́мъ,	a house ;	{ доми́ще,	a large house,
		{ доми́на,	a large, ugly house.
Ко́нь,	a horse ;	кони́ще,	a big horse.
Са́раиъ,	a shed ;	сара́ище,	a large shed.

b. Neuter nouns form augmentatives in **ище** :

Окно́,	a window ;	окни́ще,	a large window.
Ли́цѣ,	a face ;	личи́ще,	a large face.

c. Feminine nouns form augmentatives by changing the terminations **а**, **я**, or **ь**, into **ища** :

Ла́па,	a paw ;	лапи́ща,	a large paw.
Гру́дь,	a breast ;	груды́ща,	a large breast.

d. Substantives which are only used in the plural form their augmentatives in ищи :

Часы́,	a watch ;	augmentative, часи́щи.
Са́ни,	a sledge ;	augmentative, сани́щи.

OBS. 1.—If the last consonant of the primitive be one of the gutturals г, к, or х, it must be changed into its corresponding consonant ж, ч, or ш, as :

Сапо́гъ,	a boot ;	augmentative, сапожи́ще.
Рука́,	a hand ;	augmentative, ручи́ща.
Брю́хо,	a belly ;	augmentative, брюши́ще.

## II. DIMINUTIVES.—Уменьшительныя.

OBS. 2.—Diminutive substantives, which represent the objects diminished in size, are generally of the same gender as their primitives.

The diminutive terminations are :

In the masculine,	икъ, окъ, екъ, ецъ.
In the neuter,	ко, цо, (це).
And in the feminine,	ка, ица.

Сто́ликъ,	a little table.	Ушко́,	a little ear.
До́микъ,	a little house.	Сло́вцо́,	a little word.
Горо́докъ,	a little town.	Зерка́льце,	a little mirror.
Конё́къ,	a little horse.	Жё́нка,	a little wife.
Ручеё́къ,	a little brook.	Постё́лка,	a little bed.
Заво́децъ,	a little manufactory.	Ро́щица.	a little grove.

OBS. 3.—From the above diminutives other secondary or intensified diminutives are formed, ending in чекъ, чка, чко, plural чки, which represent the object as being still smaller. These secondary diminutive terminations take before them the euphonic o, or e, according to the termination of the first diminutives, as :

Сто́ликъ,	a little table ;	сто́личекъ,	a very small table.
Тру́бка,	a little pipe ;	тру́бочка,	a very small pipe.

Лапка,	a little paw ;	лапочка,	a very small paw.
Окѣно,	a little window ;	окѣшечко,	a very small window.
Сани,	a little sledge ;	саночки,	a very small sledge.

Obs. 4.—All nouns are not susceptible of both diminutive forms, and there are even some which take only the secondary diminutive, as :

Платѣкъ,	a handkerchief ;	diminutive, платѣчекъ.
Лента,	a ribbon ;	diminutive, ленточка.
Звѣзда,	a star ;	diminutive, звѣздочка.

### FORMATION OF DIMINUTIVES.

A. Masculine diminutives are formed in the following manner :

a. The termination **икъ** (**чикъ**), and its second diminutive termination **ичекъ**, are added to names of animate beings, nouns ending in **лъ** preceded by a consonant, and also to those in **ъ** preceded by **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, or **т** :

Козѣлъ,	a goat ;	diminutive, козликъ, козличекъ.
Купецъ,	a merchant ;	diminutive, купчикъ.
Дворянинъ,	a nobleman ;	diminutive, дворянчикъ.
Корабль,	a ship ;	diminutive, корабликъ.
Ножъ,	a knife ;	diminutive, ножикъ, ножичекъ.
Мячъ,	a ball ;	diminutive, мячикъ.
Карандашъ,	a lead pencil ;	diminutive, карандашикъ.
Плащъ,	a mantle ;	diminutive, плащикъ.

Obs. 5.—The following are exceptions to this rule :

Быкъ,	an ox ;	diminutive, бычѣкъ, бычѣчекъ.
Баранъ,	a ram ;	diminutive, барашекъ.
Конь,	a horse ;	diminutive, конѣкъ, конѣчекъ.
Человѣкъ,	a man ;	diminutive, человѣчекъ.
Бархатъ,	velvet ;	diminutive, бархатечъ.
Барышъ,	profit ;	diminutive, барышѣкъ.
Цвѣтъ,	a flower ;	diminutive, цвѣтокъ, цвѣточекъ.



NOTE.—The diminutive termination **икъ** is never accented, and therefore is easily distinguished from the radical accented termination **икъ**, as in **старѣикъ**, ‘an old man;’ **парѣикъ**, ‘a wig,’ etc.

b. The terminations **окъ**, **очекъ**, are added to nouns ending in **бъ**, **въ**, **мъ**, **нъ**, **пъ**, **съ**, and also to those in **бъ**, **дъ**, and **тъ** :

Погребъ,	a cellar ;	diminutive, погребѣокъ, погребѣчекъ.
Хлѣвъ,	a sty ;	diminutive, хлѣвѣокъ, хлѣвѣчекъ.
Умъ,	intellect ;	diminutive, умѣокъ, умѣчекъ.
Голубъ,	a pigeon,	diminutive, голубѣокъ, голубѣчекъ.
Груздь,	a brown mushroom ;	diminutive, груздѣокъ, груздѣчекъ.
Ноготь,	a finger-nail ;	diminutive, ноготѣокъ, ноготѣчекъ.

OBS. 6.—The following are exceptions :

Хлѣбъ,	bread ;	diminutive, хлѣбикъ and хлѣбецъ.
Ровъ,	a ditch ;	diminutive, рѣвѣикъ.
Гвоздь,	a nail ;	diminutive, гвоздикъ and гвоздѣокъ.
Рукавъ,	a sleeve ;	diminutive, рукавѣокъ and рукавчикъ.

c. Nouns ending in **й** or **ь**, as also those ending in **гъ**, **къ** or **хъ**, form their diminutives in **екъ** (**окъ**), **ечекъ**, changing the gutturals into their corresponding consonants :

Рай,	a paradise ;	diminutive, раѣкъ, раѣчекъ.
Пузырь,	a bladder ;	diminutive, пузырѣкъ, пузырѣчекъ.
Пирогъ,	a pie ;	diminutive, пирожѣкъ, пирожѣчекъ.
Сукъ,	a knot (of a tree) ;	diminutive, сучѣкъ, сучѣчекъ.
Порохъ.	a powder ;	diminutive, порошѣкъ, порошѣчекъ.

OBS. 7.—The following form their diminutives irregularly :

Сараѣи,	a shed ;	diminutive, сараѣецъ and сараѣйчикъ.
Покѣи,	a room ;	diminutive, покѣецъ and покѣйчикъ.
Камень,	a stone ;	diminutive, камышекъ.
Кремень,	a flint ;	diminutive, кремешѣкъ.
Ремѣнь,	a strap ;	diminutive, ремешѣкъ and ремѣшикъ.

d. Nouns ending in нъ, дъ, лъ or зъ, having the accent on the last syllable, change the final vowel into ецъ, чикъ:

Кафтáнъ,	a coat ;	dim., кафтáнецъ, and кафтáнчикъ.
Завóдъ,	a manufactory ;	dim., заводéцъ.
Камзóлъ,	under waistcoat ;	dim., камзóлецъ, and камзóльчикъ.
Образъ,	an image ;	dim., образéцъ, and образчикъ.

OBS. 8.—Some monosyllabic words deviate from the above rule :

Бли́нъ,	a pancake ;	dim., блино́къ, блино́чекъ.
Кли́нъ,	a stake ;	dim., клино́къ, клино́чекъ.
Сто́лъ,	a table ;	dim., сто́ликъ, сто́личекъ.
Глазъ,	the eye ;	dim., глазо́къ, глазо́чекъ, гла́зникъ.
Са́дъ,	a garden ;	dim., са́дикъ, садо́чекъ, садо́къ.

e. The secondary diminutive termination of words in енокъ is еночекъ :

Мышь,	a mouse ;	dim., мышёнокъ, мышёночекъ.
Козёлъ,	a goat ;	dim., козлёнокъ, козлёночекъ.

Червь, 'a worm,' forms an irregular diminutive, червя́къ, червячёкъ.

## B. NEUTER DIMINUTIVES ARE FORMED :

a. By changing the final o, or e, into цо, or це, ечко :

Дéрево,	a tree ;	dim., деревцо́.
Слóво,	a word ;	dim., словцо́, словéчко.

OBS. 9.—The following form their diminutive irregularly :

Бревéно,	a beam ;	dim., бревéшко.
Зерно́,	grain ;	dim., зёрнышко.
Пятно́,	a spot ;	dim., пята́шко.
Судно́,	a vessel ;	dim., суднышко.
Дно́,	a bottom ;	dim., дóнышко.

b. The terminations *цо* and *це* are also added to nouns ending in *ie* or *ье* :

Ружьё,	a gun ;	dim., ружьёцѣ.
Имѣнье,	an estate ;	dim., имѣньице.

c. By changing the termination *ло*, into *льце* :

Дѣло,	an affair ;	dim., дѣльце.
Зѣркало,	a mirror ;	dim., зѣркальце.

Лицѣ, ‘a face ;’ and плечѣ, ‘a shoulder ;’ take *ко* instead of *цо* ; as, diminutive личико, плѣчико.

d. Nouns ending in *о* preceded by *г*, *к*, or *х*, form their diminutives in *чко*, *шко*, *чечко* :

Око,	the eye ;	dim., очкѣ.
Ухо,	the ear ;	dim., ушкѣ.
Яйцѣ,	an egg ;	dim., яйчко.

e. Nouns ending in *ро*, take *рецо* :

Серебрѣ,	silver ;	dim., серебрецѣ.
----------	----------	------------------

OBS. 10.—The following, in *ро* and *ло*, form their diminutives irregularly :

Ведрѣ,	a pail ;	dim., ведерцѣ, and ведѣрко.
Ребрѣ,	a rib ;	dim., ребрышко.
Перѣ,	a pen ;	dim., пѣрышко.
Крылѣ,	a wing ;	dim., крылышко.
Стеклѣ,	glass ;	dim., стѣклышко.
Маслѣ,	oil ;	dim., маслицѣ.

OBS. 11.—Nouns in *мя*, form their diminutives in *мечко* :

Время,	time ;	dim., времечко.
Сѣмя,	seed ;	dim., сѣмечко.

OBS. 12.—Diminutives of nouns having two or more consonants before the final vowel take the euphonic *e*, or *о* :

Сердце,	the heart ;	dim., сердѣчко.
Сѣдлѣ,	a saddle ;	dim., сѣдѣльце.
Стеклѣ,	glass ;	dim., стекѣльце.

## C. FEMININE DIMINUTIVES ARE FORMED AS FOLLOWS :

a. Nouns in a or ь, preceded by a consonant, except ж or щ, take ка, очка.

Голова́,	a head ;	dim., голо́вка, голо́вочка.
Жена́,	a wife ;	dim., же́нка, же́ночка.
Ша́пка,	a hat ;	dim., ша́пка, ша́почка.

Obs. 13.—The following are exceptions :

Вода́,	water ;	dim., води́ца, води́чка.
Пы́ль,	dust ;	dim., пы́льца and пы́линка.
Ве́твь,	a branch ;	dim., ве́тка, ве́точка.

b. Nouns in a, preceded by г, к, х, form their diminutives in жка, чка, шка, жечка, чечка, шечка ; the last ц of the primitive changes into ч .

Кни́га,	a book ;	dim., кни́жка, кни́жечка.
Рука́,	a hand ;	dim., ру́чка, ру́чечка.
Руба́ха,	a shirt ;	dim., руба́шка, руба́шечка.
Пти́ца,	a bird ;	dim., пти́чка, пти́чечка.

c. Nouns in я, preceded by a consonant or a vowel, form their diminutive in ька or йка ; those ending in ья, take ейка, all having for their secondary diminutives ечка :

Ги́ря,	a weight ;	dim., ги́рька, ги́речка.
Зме́я,	a serpent ;	dim., зме́йка, зме́ечка.
Скамья́,	a bench ;	dim., скаме́йка, скаме́ечка.

Obs. 14.—Diminutives of feminine nouns ending in а, or ь, preceded by two consonants, take the euphonic е, or о :

Метла́,	a besom ;	dim., мете́лка, мете́лочка.
Игла́,	a needle ;	dim., иго́лка, иго́лочка.
Палка́,	a stick ;	dim., па́лочка.
Трость,	cane ;	dim., тросто́чка.



d. Nouns in a or ь, preceded by ж, or щ, form their diminutives in ица, ичка :

Кожа,	a skin ;	dim., ко́жица, ко́жичка.
Роща,	a grove ;	dim., ро́щица, ро́щичка.
Вещь,	a thing ;	dim., ве́щица, ве́щичка.

OBS. 15.—Diminutive terminations are sometimes added to words, which by their nature cannot be diminished in size, as :

День,	a day ;	dim., денё́къ, денё́чекъ.
Вода́,	water ;	dim., води́ца, води́чка.
Солнце́,	the sun ;	dim., со́лнышко.

To plough,

Паха́ть, I. 2.

To sow,

Сѣ́ять, I. 2.

For, to (in order to),

Что́бы, что́бъ.

Who is ploughing ?

Кто па́шетъ ?

The peasants are ploughing.

Крестья́не па́шутъ.

Where did they plough yesterday ?

Гдѣ́ онѣ́ вчера паха́ли ?

They were not yesterday ploughing, but sowing.

Вчера́ онѣ́ сѣ́яли, а не паха́ли.

What does he want the seed for ?

Для́ чего́ ему́ ну́жно сѣ́мя ?

He wants it for sowing (to sow).

Ему́ оно́ ну́жно что́бы сѣ́ять.

Why art thou not ploughing ?

Почему́ ты не па́шешь ?

I am not ploughing, because I am sowing.

Я не па́шу, потому́ что́ сѣ́ю.

I sow, я сѣ́ю.

I plough, я па́шу.

Thou sowest, ты сѣ́ешь.

Thou plougest, ты па́шешь.

He sows, онъ сѣ́етъ.

He ploughs, онъ па́шетъ.

We sow, мы сѣ́емъ.

We plough, мы па́шемъ.

You sow, вы сѣ́ете.

You plough, вы па́шете.

They sow, онѣ́ сѣ́ютъ.

They plough, онѣ́ па́шутъ.

I was sowing, я сѣ́ялъ, etc.

I ploughed, я паха́лъ, etc.

I will sow, я бу́ду сѣ́ять, etc.

I will plough, я бу́ду па

To gallop,

Скакать. I. 2.

To trot.

{ Идти, }  
{ Бѣжать, } рысью.

Does your horse gallop well ?

Хорошо ли ваша лошадь скачетъ ?

Yes, but he trots still better.

Да, но она ещё лучше бѣжить рысью.

I gallop, etc., я скачу, ты скачешь,  
онъ скачетъ.We gallop, etc., мы скачемъ, вы ска-  
чете, онъ скачутъ.

I was galloping, я скакалъ.

We were galloping, мы скакали.

I will gallop, я буду скакать.

We will gallop, мы будемъ скакать.

An apple-tree, яблонь, f.

A lamb, ягнёнокъ.

A trot, рысь, f.

Quarrelsome, сварливый.

A trotter, рысакъ.

Beloved, возлюбленный.

A maker, мастеръ.

Pale, блѣдный.

A lucifer-match, спичка.

Respectable, почтенный.

A segar, сигара.

To smoke, курить.

To light (a pipe), закурить.

Charming, nice, милый.

Dear, дорогой, любезный.

Very charming, прелестный.

My dear child,

Моё дорогое дитя.

My dear Mr. N.,

Любезный Гнъ. Н.

My dear Mrs. N.,

Любезная госпожа (Гжа.) Н.

His sister is a very charming girl.

Его сестра прелестная дѣвушка.

If,

Если.

I like, I am fond of,

Я охотникъ до.

Is your brother fond of horses ?

Охотникъ ли вашъ братъ до лошадей ?

Yes, he is very fond of them.

Да, онъ до нихъ большой охотникъ.

Do you like to play at cards ?

{ Любите ли играть въ карты ?

We are not fond of cards.

{ Охотникъ ли вы до картъ ?

Мы не охотники до картъ.

## EXERCISE LI.

With whom is he speaking in the *little* meadow, under the *little* tree?—He is speaking with four gay youths, and two *little* girls.—He sees his *little* wife in the *little* garden, with two children, who have *little* leathern balls.—This

*little* man has a restive *little* horse.—Her father bought for his *little* son a pretty *little* saddle.—This *little* knife is on that *little* bench, which you see there in that *little* corner. These *little* birds have a few white *little* feathers on their black *little* wings.—Who has neither *little* book nor *little* pencils?—The *little* pupils have neither.—The *little* old woman gave to the *little* pigeons a few *little* grains.—I saw our prince's *little* garden and *little* grove.—We see the *little* windows of this low *little* house, and also we see the *little* nuts and fresh *little* branches of those *little* apple-trees in the rich neighbour's *little* garden.—From whose shoemaker did this *little* girl buy these *little* silk shoes?—From yours.—I saw on the *little* table two *little* pens and five *little* penknives. The *little* cook boiled three *little* eggs.—Whose *little* forest is this?—It is my *little* forest.—This *little* man has bought in the market a *little* hare, two *little* pigeons and a *little* goose. The *little* maid-servant wants to give some fresh hay to the *little* goat, the *little* lamb and to the *young* calf.—What money have you?—I have roubles and some shillings.—What cards have you in your hand?—I have only diamonds and spades, but this *little* man has only hearts and clubs.—Have you already paid for your *little* room?—Yes, I have already paid for it.—Does your sister's *little* horse gallop well?—Yes, he does gallop well, but he trots still better.—Do you want to buy this *little* house?—I wanted to buy it, but now I do not.

## EXERCISE LII.

Who wants to buy this *little* cock?—This kind *little* old man wants to buy it.—What for?—He wants to give it to this *little* girl.—Have these *little* peasants many *little* horses? They have only three *little* horses.—Have you been in that



*little* village?—I have not been, but my *little* wife was there.—What did this *little* old woman buy at (въ) that *little* shop?—She bought two *little* handkerchiefs and five *little* ribbons.—Whose *little* ram is this?—It is the *little* shepherd's *little* ram.—This *little* cat has pretty *little* paws. This young *little* tree has no *little* knots.—Did the *little* soldier buy the *little* gun from the *little* merchant?—No, but he bought from him a *little* sabre and a few *little* straps. The gardener gave some *little* grass to the *little* goat and the *little* calf.—This *little* girl has pretty *little* hands and *little* *white* shoulders.—This charming *little* child has got two *little* needles and three *little* pencils.—The *little* servant has got three *little* pails and five *little* besoms.—This boy's *little* horse gallops well.—Did the peasants sow corn already? No, they did not sow it yet; they did not yet plough. Will your *little* peasants sow and plough?—Yes, they will both sow and plough if they (will) have seed and two or three *little* ploughs.—Where is the *little* child?—It is on the *little* bench in the *little* garden.—Our *little* horses trot very well.—It is the *little* merchant's *little* trotter.—Did he buy this *little* trotter in the *little* market?—No, he bought it at the fair from the *little* gentleman.—The *little* merchant has some *little* business in the *little* town.

---

## TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Двадцать Седьмой Урокъ.

*Diminutives—continued.*

OBS. 1.—To express some tender feeling toward a person Russians have other terminations, quite different from the



before mentioned physical diminutives. These terminations are—in the masculine, ушка, юшка, and енька ; in the neuter, ушко ; and in the feminine, ушка, енька, as :

Дѣдушка, dear grandfather.	Бабушка, dear grandmother.
Батьюшка, dear father.	Папенька, dear papa.
Дядюшка, dear uncle.	Маменька, dear mamma.
Тётушка, dear aunt.	Нянюшка, dear nurse.

OBS. 2.—These terms of endearment are often added to nouns of favourite animals, and even to inanimate objects, as :

Лошадюшка, dear little horse.	Сердечушко, dear little heart.
Волюшка, dear liberty.	Рученька, dear little hand.
Травушка, dear little grass.	Душенька, dear little soul.

OBS. 3.—The following form their diminutives of endearment irregularly :

Братъ, brother ;	diminutive, братецъ.
Сестра, sister ;	diminutive, сестрица.
Дитя, a child ;	diminutive, дитятко.
Кумъ, a Godfather ;	diminutive, куманёкъ.
Мужъ, a husband ;	diminutive, муженёкъ.
Дѣва, a girl ;	diminutive, дѣвица.

Голубъ, 'a pigeon,' forms its diminutives of endearment—голубчикъ, feminine голубушка—which express, 'my dear,' 'dearest,' as :

Голубчикъ Андрей,	My dear Andrew.
Голубушка Марья,	Dearest Mary.

OBS. 4.—Diminutive terminations which express contempt, or denote the object as an insignificant one, or unworthy of notice, are—in the masculine, ишко, ишка ; in the neuter, ишко ; and in the feminine, ишка, енька.

Человѣчишко,	A miserable little man.
Домишко,	A miserable little house.

Зѣркаишко,	A miserable little mirror.
Землишка,	A miserable little land.
Лицѣишко,	A miserable little face.
Лавчѣнка,	A miserable little shop.
Собачѣнка,	A miserable little dog.

Besides the above terminations, there is also another, expressive of contempt, *енцо*, which is used in all genders, as :

Старикъ, an old man ;	diminutive, старичѣнцо.
Баба, a woman ;	diminutive, бабѣнцо.
Пиво, beer ;	diminutive, пивѣнцо.

OBS. 5.—Christian names form also diminutives, both of endearment and contempt, or disrespect, as :

<i>Diminutive of Endearment.</i>		<i>Diminutive of Contempt.</i>
Андрей, Andrew,	{ Андрюша Андрюшенька ;	Андрюшка.
Николай, Nicolas,	{ Коля ; Коленька ;	{ Колька. Николка.
Иванъ, John,	{ Ваня ; Ваничка ; Ванюша ;	Ванька.
Марія, Mary,	{ Маша ; Машинька ;	Машка.

As the diminutives of Christian names are formed not only by an addition to the termination of the primitive, but are also often shortened, or even changed altogether, no definite rule as to their formation can be given, and therefore they can be learnt only by practice. A list of most useful diminutives of Christian names will be given further on.

OBS. 6.—Nouns used only in the plural form their dimi-

natives in ки, цы, or ца, having for the secondary diminutive очки, ечки, or ички :

a. Сани, a sledge ;	diminutive, сáнки, сáпочки.
Вѣсы, a pair of scales ;	diminutive, вѣскі́, вѣсочкі́.
b. Конькі́, skates ;	diminutive, конёчки.
Пяльцы, an embroidery frame ;	diminutive, пѣлечкі́.
c. Ножницы, a pair of scissors ;	diminutive, ножничкі́.
Щипцы, pincers ;	diminutive, щипчкі́.
d. Пері́ла, banisters ;	diminutive, пері́льцы, пері́лочкі́.
Воротá, a yard gate ;	diminutive, воротца́, вороточки́.

OBS. 7.—Diminutives formed of nouns having two consonants before the final vowel take the euphonic e :

Кóзлы, a coach-box ; козельцы́.  
 Бубны́, diamonds ; бубёнцы́.  
 Ясли́, a manger ; ясельцы́.

OBS. 8.—Diminutives of contempt in nouns used only in the plural end in ишки or енкі, as :

Часы́, a watch ; часи́шки.  
 Сани́, a sledge ; сани́шки.  
 Сливки́, cream ; сливчѣнкі́.

Augmentatives and diminutive terms of endearment or contempt are seldom used, and then only in familiar discourse ; but the diminutives proper, implying smallness merely, are employed extensively in Russian, even in formal styles of speaking and writing.

To go (on foot),	{ Идти́, (пѣшкомъ). Ходить,
To go (in a vehicle), }	Ѣхать, ѣздить,
To ride,	
To eat,	Ѣсть.

OBS. 9.—‘To go,’ in the sense of being carried in a

vehicle, must be translated *ѣхать*, as *идти* and *ходить* are used for 'to go on foot.'

Obs. 10.—*ѣхать* and *ѣздить*, like *идти* and *ходить*, denote—the first, an action taking place at some given moment; and the second, an action without reference to any particular time.

Where is he going?

He is going to Paris.

Do you go often to London and St. Petersburg?

Yes, I go often to both these towns.

Is he going with you on foot, or is he going to ride with him?

He is going with me in my new coach.

His dear grandfather never goes on foot.

He always rides in a carriage.

What are you eating?

I am eating pears, but these children are eating apples.

I ride, я *ѣду*, *ѣзу*.

Thou ridest, ты *ѣдешь*, *ѣдишь*.

He rides, онъ *ѣдетъ*, *ѣдитъ*.

We ride, мы *ѣдемъ*, *ѣдимъ*.

You ride, вы *ѣдете*, *ѣдите*.

They ride, они *ѣдутъ*, *ѣдятъ*.

I rode, я *ѣхалъ*, *ѣздила*.

We rode, мы *ѣхали*, *ѣздили*.

I will ride, я *бѣду* *ѣхать*, я *бѣду* *ѣздить*, etc.

Куда онъ *ѣдетъ*?

Онъ *ѣдетъ* въ Парижъ.

Часто ли вы *ѣздите* въ Лондонъ и Петербургъ?

Да, я часто *ѣзжу* въ эти оба города.

Идѣтъ ли онъ съ вами или *ѣдетъ* съ нимъ?

Онъ *ѣдетъ* со мною въ моей новой каретѣ.

Его дѣдушка никогда не *ходитъ* пѣшкомъ.

Онъ всегда *ѣздитъ* въ каретѣ.

Что вы *ѣдите*?

Я *ѣмъ* груши, а эти дѣти *ѣдятъ* яблоки.

I eat, я *ѣмъ*.

Thou eatest, ты *ѣшь*.

He eats, онъ *ѣстъ*.

We eat, мы *ѣдимъ*.

You eat, вы *ѣдите*.

They eat, они *ѣдятъ*.

I was eating, я *ѣлъ*.

We were eating, мы *ѣли*.

I will eat, я *бѣду* *ѣсть*, etc.

He is going with his sister.

She is going with her brother.

They are going with their brother.

Онъ идѣтъ съ своею сестрою.

Она идѣтъ съ своимъ братомъ.

Они идѣтъ со своимъ братомъ.

Obs. 11.—The possessive pronouns in Russian agree in



gender, number and case with the substantive to which they belong, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

He gave me his book.

She gave me her pen.

They are going into their garden.

Онъ далъ мнѣ свою книгу.

Она дала мнѣ своё перо.

Они идѣтъ въ свой садъ.

When,

Just (now),

I have just dined.

He has just said that she cannot go to church.

The cook has just boiled the ham.

Variegated, пестрый.

A ploughman, пахарь.

Когда.

Только что.

Я только что обѣдалъ.

Онъ только что сказалъ что она не можетъ идти въ церковь.

Поваръ только что сварилъ ветчину.

Awkward, неуклюжий.

Agile, проворный.

To till,

To work,

The peasant and his son were ploughing, but the gardener and our workman were tilling in the garden.

My brother and sister were in town yesterday.

Ора́ть, I. 2.

Рабо́тать, I. 1. (like знать).

Крестьянинъ и его сынъ пахали, а садовникъ и нашъ работникъ орали въ саду.

Братъ и сестра мои были вчера въ городѣ.

OBS. 12.—An adjective or a pronoun, referring to more than one substantive, must be in the plural; the verb is, in the same manner, in the plural when referring to more than one subject.

The book and the pencil are mine.

The boy and the girl are reading.

This table and that chair are thine.

Whose are this paper and this little penknife?

They are ours.

The kind brother and sister gave the beggar some money.

Кни́га и каранда́шъ мой.

Ма́льчикъ и де́вочка чита́ють.

Этотъ столъ и тотъ стулъ твой.

Чьи э́та бума́га и э́тотъ перо́чипи́сный но́жичекъ?

Они́ на́ши.

Добры́е братъ и сестра́ да́ли ни́щему де́негъ.

I till, etc., я орю, ты орёшь, онъ  
орётъ.

I tilled, я ора́лъ, etc.

I will till, я буду ора́ть, etc.

We till, etc., мы орёмъ, вы орёте,  
они́ ору́тъ.

We tilled, мы ора́ли, etc.

We will till, мы будемъ ора́ть, etc.

### EXERCISE LIII.

Did your dear mother receive the large eel that (ко́то-  
рый) the fisherman sent her?—She has received it; it  
was a fine eel.—Is the paper in this *little* room good?—The  
paper in this *little* room is very good.—How many *little*  
handkerchiefs did you buy?—I bought two dozens and a  
half (with a half) of them.—Where are your *dear* brother  
and your *dear* sister going?—They are going to the *little*  
grove, but our *dear* mother is going to the little church.  
Whose *big* houses with *big* windows do you see there on  
that little bank?—We see the great sovereign's castles.  
Do you not see our *beloved* aunt with her *dear* sister?—I  
see neither the one nor the other.—Whom do you see, my  
*dear* little heart?—I see here the *dear* grandfather, and  
there under the little tree, on the *tiny little* bench, a *miserable*  
*little* old man with his *miserable little* dog.—What sort of  
mirror has your *dear* brother got?—He has not got a very  
good one, he has got only a *miserable little* mirror.—Has  
this *big* peasant got a sledge?—He has got one big  
sledge, two *miserable little* sledges and three *wretched little*  
horses.—Have you enough cream, sir?—I have got only  
*miserable* cream, and not enough of it.—They see in that  
*little* room a poor little girl, who has neither *dear* father,  
*dear* mother, *dear* brother, nor *dear* sister; she has not got  
even a single little friend—Do you see that *miserable little*  
merchant in that *miserable little* shop?—I saw him in the  
*little* market, where he had to buy some honey, wax, pepper,

vinegar, tea, sugar and tobacco.—Have you been a long time in England?—Yes, I have been in England a very long time.—Have you received your *little* sledge from the maker?—Yes, I received it yesterday.—What has this monk got in his hands?—He has got a *little* rosary.—Did he buy it?—No, his friend the priest gave (подарить) it to him.—This poor man has got a great deal of trouble and very little money.—Where is his money?—The usurer has got it.—Who is there in the vestibule?—There is no one in the vestibule.—Is your friend hungry?—No, he has just dined.

#### EXERCISE LIV.

When were your *dear* brother and *dear* sister at her grandmother's?—They were at her *little* house the day before yesterday.—Do they ride (in a vehicle) to her house often? They do not ride, but go to her always on foot; they have neither coach nor sledge.—With whom does your *dear* sister go (in a carriage) so often?—She goes (in a carriage) at one time with her mamma and at another with her papa. Where are your *dear* father and your dear mother going? They are going to Paris.—Do you like boiled ham?—No, I never eat ham.—What are these boys eating?—They are eating *little* pies with *little* apples.—Do you want to know the news?—No, I know it already.—Give me a match, if you please, I want to light my pipe.—Do you not want a *little* cigar?—I have excellent ones here, on that *little* table, which you see in that *little* corner.—No, thank you, I prefer a pipe to a cigar.—Have you received a *little* letter from your *dear* sister?—Yes, I received from her two *little* letters the day before yesterday.—I see *little* stones on the *little*



bank of this *little* stream.—With whom is your *dear* uncle riding?—He is riding with his charming daughter.—Dear Mr. N., will you take some of this *little* white wine?—No, thank you, I do not drink wine, I drink only English beer. Give me a cup of tea with cream and two or three little biscuits, I want to breakfast.—To whom did you say that her *dear* sister is going to the village?—I said this only to my *dear* aunt.—Who gave you this *little* gold watch, my *dear* child?—Our *dear* aunt gave it to me.—Has the little girl a pair of *little* scissors?—Yes, she has two pairs of *little* scissors and four *little* penknives.—When will your peasants plough, till and sow?—In the month of March they will plough and till, and in April they will sow.—Do you see on that *little* hillock a *little* white house with a *little* garden? No, I see neither.—When did he buy that *miserable little* house?—He has just bought it.

## TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

### Двадцать восьмой Урокъ.

Nouns signifying natives of different countries, towns etc., such as ‘Englishman,’ ‘German,’ ‘Parisian,’ etc., are formed by adding to the names of countries or places the terminations ецъ, анинъ (янинъ) or итанинъ.

#### I. The termination ецъ, take—

a. Names of places ending in ѣ, ъ, (лъ), й: Берли́нъ, ‘Berlin;’ Берли́нецъ, ‘a native of Berlin.’

Алжі́ръ, Algiers; алжі́рець.  
Кита́й, China; кита́ецъ.

Бресла́въ, Breslau; бресла́вецъ.  
Ревель, Reval; ре́велець.



b. Names of places ending in *ia*, *a*, or *y* :

Австрія, Austria ; австріецъ.  
 Баварія, Bavaria ; баварецъ.  
 Голландія, Holland ; голландецъ.  
 Ирландія, Ireland ; ирландецъ.  
 Генуя, Genoa ; генуэзецъ.  
 Ямайка, Jamaica ; ямаецъ.  
 Абиссинія, Abyssinia ; абиссинецъ.  
 Испанія, Spain ; испанецъ.

Норвѣгія, Norway ; норвежецъ.  
 Черногорія, Montenegro ; черногорецъ.  
 Гавана, Havannah ; гаванецъ.  
 Корѣя, Corea ; кореецъ.  
 Женѣва, Geneva ; женевецъ.  
 Швейцарія, Switzerland ; швейцарецъ.

OBS. 1.—Some names in *a*, or *ia*, take *анецъ* or *янецъ* :

Африка, Africa ; африканецъ.  
 Америка, America ; американецъ.  
 Италія, Italy ; итальянецъ.

Спарта, Sparta ; спартанецъ.  
 Мексика, Mexico ; мексиканецъ.  
 Кастилія, Castille ; кастиліанецъ.

II. The following names of places in *a*, *ъ*, *ія*, take *анинъ* or *янинъ*, instead of *ецъ* :

Калуга, Kaluga ; калужанинъ.  
 Рига, Riga ; рижанинъ.  
 Смоленскъ, Smolensk ; смолянинъ.  
 Римъ, Rome ; римлянинъ.  
 Англія, England ; англичанинъ.

Арменія, Armenia ; армянинъ.  
 Парижъ, Paris ; парижанинъ.  
 Кіевъ, Kief ; киевлянинъ.  
 Египетъ, Egypt ; египтянинъ.  
 Данія, Denmark ; датчанинъ.

III. Some take *итянинъ*, as—

Аравія, Arabia ; аравитянинъ.

OBS. 2.—The following Russian towns take, in the singular *итинъ*, and in the plural *итѣнинъ* :

Москва, Moscow ; москвитинъ, plural москвитяне.  
 Псковъ, Pseof ; псковитинъ, plural псковитяне.  
 Тверь, Tver ; тверитинъ, plural тверитяне.  
 Кострома, Kostroma ; костромитинъ, plural костромитяне.

The following names of natives are formed irregularly :

Азія, Asia ; азіагецъ.

Сибірѣ, Siberia ; сибирякъ.

Германія, Germany ; нѣмецъ.

Польша, Poland ; полякъ.

Татарія, Tartary ; татаринъ.

Богемія, Bohemia ; чехъ, богемецъ.

Греція, Greece ; грекъ.

Франція, France ; французъ.

Турція, Turkey ; ту́рокъ.

Европа, Europe ; европеецъ.

Пруссія, Prussia ; прусса́къ.

Time, season,

It is time,

Пора́.

Пора́ (есть), impersonal verb,  
governs the dative.

Is it already time for you to go ?

No, it is not yet time for me, but  
for him it is already time to go.

Пора́ ли вамъ уже́ иди́ти ?

Нѣтъ, мнѣ́ еще́ не пора́, но ему́ уже́  
пора́ иди́ти.

Since that time, }

Since then, }

Till now, to this time,

Till then, to that time.

Съ тѣхъ поръ.

До сихъ поръ.

До тѣхъ поръ.

Where have you been till now ?

I was abroad.

Гдѣ́ вы́ были́ до́ сихъ поръ ?

Я́ былъ́ за́ грани́цею.

Since what time? }

Since when? }

Since (the time when),

Съ кото́рыхъ поръ ?

Съ тѣхъ поръ́ какъ́.

How long is it since you have seen  
him ?

Not since he went abroad.

Since I saw you (since I did not see  
you) I have been in many towns  
abroad.

Съ кото́рыхъ поръ́ вы́ не́ ви́дѣли́  
его́ ?

Съ тѣхъ поръ́ какъ́ онъ́ уѣ́халъ́ за́  
грани́цу.

Съ тѣхъ поръ́ какъ́ я́ васъ́ не́ ви́-  
дѣ́лъ я́ былъ́ во́ мно́гихъ горо́-  
да́хъ за́грани́цею.

OBS. 3.—Russians express such sentences in a contrary sense to the English, *i.e.* they mean the time that has elapsed since the moment in question, and therefore they use the negative form instead of the affirmative.

## THE ASPECTS OF VERBS.

The Russian verb, by a change in its termination, or by prefixing a preposition, acquires a new signification as regards the duration or accomplishment of action. These modifications, these variations in the meaning of the original verb, are called *Aspects*, Видъ.

There are three principal aspects of Russian verbs :

1. The 'imperfect aspect,' неокончательный видъ, which denotes the action indeterminately with regard to its completion ; that is, without intimating whether the action is being, has been, or will be begun or finished, as :

Я читаю,	I am reading.
Я читалъ,	I was reading.
Я буду читать,	I shall read.

2. The 'perfect aspect,' совершенный видъ, which denotes that the action has been or will be accomplished thoroughly, as :

Я прочиталъ,	I have read
Я прочтѹ,	I shall read

3. The 'iterative aspect,' многократный видъ, indicates that the action has been frequently repeated long ago, and at some indefinite time, as :

Я читывалъ,	I used (in my life) to read.
-------------	------------------------------

OBS. 4.—If the repeated action, although long passed, took place at a time which can be defined, the past tense of the imperfect aspect is used, instead of the iterative aspect, as :

Я читалъ неоднократно,	I have read more than once.
------------------------	-----------------------------

To read,	Читáть.
To count, to consider,	Считáть.

OBS. 5.—All verbs to which a preposition is prefixed do not become verbs of perfect aspect; there are some which change only their meaning, remaining as before verbs of imperfect aspect, as :

Ходíть, to walk ; находíть, to find.	
Игрáть, to play ; выигрáть, to gain.	
Быть, to be ; прибыть, to arrive, etc.	

OBS. 6.—Concerning the verbs of imperfect aspect which have both the definite and the indefinite form, the following rule is to be observed : The prepositional verbs formed of the definite ones become verbs of perfect aspect, while those formed of the indefinite remain of imperfect aspect, as :

Идти́, 'to go ;' def. imperf. ; уйди́, 'to go away,' perf. aspect.	
Ходíть, 'to walk ;' indef. imperf. ; уходи́ть, 'to go away,' imperf. aspect.	

OBS. 7.—There are only a few verbs, such as идти́, ходíть, 'to go ;' вести́, водíть, 'to lead,' etc., with a distinct form for the definite and indefinite imperfect aspect ; all other Russian verbs are of the indefinite imperfect aspect, expressing the definite meaning without undergoing any change, as :

Онъ читáетъ тепѣрь.	He is reading now.
Онъ читáетъ всѣя́я кни́ги и хоро́шя и дурны́я.	He reads all kinds of books, good and bad.

дѣлать, to do ; perfect aspect, сдѣлать.	
Читáть, to read ; perfect aspect, прочитáть.	
Рѣшáть, to decide ; perfect aspect, рѣши́ть.	
Повторя́ть, to repeat ; perfect aspect, повтори́ть.	

OBS. 8.—Verbs of perfect aspect have no present tense ; their past tense has the same inflexions as that of verbs of



imperfect aspect, *i.e.* **лѣ, ла, ло**, plural **ли**; but the future tense is like the present, without the aid of the auxiliary:

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Я дѣлалъ, I was doing.  
 Я читалъ, I was reading.  
 Я рѣшалъ, I was deciding.  
 Я повторялъ, I was repeating.  
 Я буду дѣлать, I shall be doing.  
 Я буду читать, I shall be reading.  
 Я буду рѣшать, I shall be deciding.  
 Я буду повторять, I shall be repeating.

*Perfect Aspect.*

Я сдѣлалъ, I have done.  
 Я прочиталъ, I have read.  
 Я рѣшилъ, I have decided.  
 Я повторилъ, I have repeated.  
 Я сдѣлаю, I shall do.  
 Я прочитаю, I shall read.  
 Я рѣшу, I shall decide.  
 Я повторю, I shall repeat.

Obs. 9.—Verbs with a prefix are called ‘prepositional verbs,’ **предложный глаголъ**.

To lead, to take to,

{ Вести, I. 7. (definite).  
 { Водить, II. 10. (indefinite)

Where is he taking his little son ?  
 He is taking him to school.  
 Does he take him there often ?  
 He takes him to school twice a week.

Куда ведётъ онъ своего сынка ?  
 Онъ его ведётъ въ школу.  
 Часто ли онъ его туда водить.  
 Онъ его водить въ школу два раза  
 въ недѣлю.

Where does the coachman lead the horse ?

Куда кучеръ ведётъ лошадь ?

He leads him to the field.

Онъ её ведётъ на поле.

*Definite.*

Я веду, I lead ;  
 Ты ведёшь, Thou leadest ;  
 Онъ ведётъ, He leads ;  
 Мы ведёмъ, We lead ;  
 Вы ведёте, You lead ;  
 Они ведутъ, They lead ;  
 Я вёлъ, I was leading ;  
 Я буду вести, I will lead ;

*Indefinite.*

Я вожу.  
 Ты водишь.  
 Онъ водитъ.  
 Мы водимъ  
 Вы водите.  
 Они водятъ.  
 Я водилъ.  
 Я буду водить.

Obs. 10.—In the same manner are conjugated :

Провести́, проводитьъ, To lead through, to pass (time).

Привести́, приводитьъ, To lead up to, to take to.

Увести́, уводитьъ, To lead away, to take away.

Отвести́, отводитьъ, To lead away from.

In (on, movement about), По, governs the dative.

He is walking *in* the street.

Онъ идётъ по улицѣ.

He leads his horse (to and fro) *in* the yard.

Онъ водить лошадь по двору.

I travelled *in* Italy, France and Russia.

Я путешествовалъ по Италиі, Франціи и Россіи.

They were riding *in* the fields and meadows.

Они ѣздили по полямъ и лугамъ.

Behind,

За, governs the instr.

For,

За, governs the accusative.

Abroad,

{ Заграницу.

{ Заграницею.

From abroad,

Изъ заграницы.

Obs. 11.—‘Abroad,’ when denoting movement, is translated заграницу, and when rest заграницею.

Where is your brother now?

Гдѣ вашъ братъ теперь?

He is now abroad.

Онъ теперь заграницею.

Where is your wife (spouse) going?

Куда ѣдетъ ваша супруга?

She is going abroad.

Она ѣдетъ заграницу.

Did you live abroad long?

Долго ли вы жили заграницею?

I lived abroad two years.

Я жилъ заграницею два года.

Where did she come from?

Откуда она пріѣхала?

She came from abroad.

Она пріѣхала изъ заграницы.

To travel, путешествовать.

We travel, мы путешествуемъ.

I travel, я путешествую.

You travel, вы путешествуете.

Thou travellest, ты путешествуешь.

They travel, они путешествуютъ.

He travels, онъ путешествуетъ.

I travelled, я путешествовалъ.

We travelled, мы путешествовали.

Where did you travel this year?

Гдѣ вы путешествовали въ нынѣш-  
немъ году?

I travelled abroad.

Я путешествовалъ заграницею.

To return, возвратиться.

A limit, frontier, граница.

My late father, мой покойный отецъ.

Tolerably well, порядочно.

His late mother, ея покойная мать.

Order, порядокъ.

A benefactor, благодѣтель.

Disorder, безпорядокъ.

### EXERCISE LV.

Are you not going to the Austrian for the silk handkerchiefs?—I am not going for them to the Austrian, but to the Bavarian or Belgian.—Whom did you see last week at the rich Pole's?—I saw at his house three Frenchmen, two Englishmen and one German.—Did you see there any Asiatics also?—Yes, I saw one Chinaman, one Armenian and two Persians.—May Europeans have as many wives as Asiatics?—No, Europeans may not have as many wives as Asiatics; Europeans have better laws than Asiatics.—With whom are the rich Parisians speaking?—They are speaking with the Swiss, who has such pretty daughters.—From whom did you buy these excellent linens and those iron goods?—I bought the first from Irishmen, and the latter from their rich neighbours, the English.—Is it already time for this Scotchman to go (in a vehicle) to the Dane?—It is already time for him to go.—Is it time for the children to dine?—No, it is not yet time for them to dine, they have only just breakfasted.—What sort of goods have these Turks and Greeks?—The Turks have good furs, and the Greeks have nuts and olive-oil.—In whose coach are these Italians going?—They are going in the coach of their friend, the Spaniard.—What do you think of the Spaniards and their neighbours the Portuguese?—I think (that) they



are very proud.—But I do not think so (this).—Whom do the Montenegrins and the Bulgarians dislike?—They do not like the Austrians and the Turks.—Whose horse is the servant of this Milanese leading?—He leads his master's horse.—Who takes this little girl to school?—Nobody takes her to school, she goes there by herself (самá).—Have you been long abroad?—I was there two months.—Has your wife been abroad also?—No, she has not been yet, she is going abroad to-morrow.—Since we saw him we have received from him three letters.

#### EXERCISE LVI.

How have you passed your time since I saw you?—I travelled abroad.—Where did you travel?—I travelled in France, Russia and Sweden.—When did you return from thence?—I returned last week.—How do you pass your time now?—Thank you, tolerably well.—Have the peasants abroad as good little stone houses as we have?—No, the peasants abroad have little wooden houses, with warm rooms and light cellars.—Who is there walking in the street?—It is our benefactor.—Have you read already the book (which) I gave you the day before yesterday?—No, I have not read it yet.—In that case (такъ) read it, it is a very good book. Where are the children?—They are walking in the garden. Who took them away?—The old maid-servant took them away.—Where did he take the horse from?—He led him away from the well.—Is it time for the children to go to church?—No, it is not yet time for them, but for the singer it is already time to go there.—Whose calf is this butcher leading?—He is leading his own calf.—Where is he leading it?—He is leading it to the shed.—Where is the olive



oil, which you bought of the Greek?—It is now in the little lamp, which you see there, in the little corner before the Holy Image.—What have you on your finger?—It is a ring of my late uncle's.—How many stars and little stars are there in the sky?—I do not know, I did not count (считать) them and nobody can count (сосчитать) them.—What is this little town by that river.—It is not a town, it is a village.—What is in this bottle?—There is wine in it.

## TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

### Два́дцать девя́тый Уро́къ.

Masculine nouns designating animate beings form their feminine according to the following rules:

#### I. The termination *ица* is added to :

##### a. Nouns ending in *икъ* :

ПОЛКОВНИКЪ, a colonel ; полковница, a colonel's wife ;

Родственникъ, a relative ; грѣшникъ, a sinner.

*Exceptions.*—Старикъ, 'an old man,' and мельникъ, 'a miller,' form their feminine irregularly : старуха, 'an old woman ;' мельничиха, 'a miller's wife.'

##### b. Nouns ending in *ецъ* :

Старецъ, a monk ; старица, a nun ;

Вдовецъ, a widower ; вдовица (соч. вдова), a widow ;

Самодержецъ, an autocrat ; fem. сомодержица.

*Exception.*—Швецъ, a sewer ; швей, a sempstress.

##### c. Some names of animals :

Левъ, a lion ; Львица, a lioness.

Волкъ, a wolf ; волчица.

Орёлъ, an eagle ; орлица.

Осёлъ, an ass ; ослица.

Голубъ, a pigeon ; голубица.

## d. And also the following:

Императоръ, an Emperor ; императрица.

Царь, the czar ; царица.

Мастеръ, a master ; мастерица.

Діаконъ, a deacon ; діаконица.

Карликъ, a dwarf ; карлица.

Пѣвецъ, a singer ; пѣвица.

## OBS. 1.—Nouns ending in тель, take ница :

Учитель, a schoolmaster ; учительница, a schoolmistress.

Пріятель, a friend.

Читатель, a reader.

Правитель, a ruler.

Зритель, a spectator.

## II. The termination ка is added to :

a. Nouns designating natives of towns or countries,  
and also some other words ending in ець, инъ :

Итальянецъ, an Italian ; Итальянка, an Italian woman.

Европеець, an European ; европѣйка.

Англичанинъ, an Englishman ; англичанка.

Китаецъ, a Chinese ; китаѣнка.

Парижанинъ, a Parisian ; парижанка.

Торговецъ, a dealer ; торговка.

Хозяинъ, a master ; хозяйка,

Знакомецъ, an acquaintance ; знакомка.

Гражданинъ, a citizen ; гражданка.

Самецъ, a male ; самка.

Дворянинъ, a nobleman ; дворянка.

b. Nouns of natives of towns or countries, and also  
some other words, with various endings :

Шведъ, a Swede ; шведка.

Турокъ, a Turk ; турчанка.

Арапъ, a Negro ; арапка.

Черкесъ, a Circassian ; черкешенка.

Полякъ, a Pole ; полька.

Грѣкъ, a Greek ; гречанка.

Калмыкъ, a Kalmoock ; калмычка.

Сосѣдъ, a neighbour ; сосѣдка.

Цыганъ, a Gipsy ; цыганка.

Злодѣй, a villain ; злодѣйка.

Пастухъ, a shepherd ; пастушка, a shepherdess.

OBS. 2.—Monosyllabic nouns have the syllable ов inserted before the termination ка :

Жидъ, a Jew ; жидовка, a Jewess.

Мотъ, a spendthrift ; мотовка.

Воръ, a thief ; воровка.



Лѣкаръ, a doctor ;	{ лѣкарша, a doctor's wife. лѣкарка, a woman who practices medicine.
Дворникъ, a door-porter ;	{ двѣринчиха, a door-porter's wife. двѣрница, a female door-porter.
Испѣкторъ, an inspector ;	{ инспѣкторша, an inspector's wife. инспектриса, an inspectress.
Дирѣкторъ, a director ;	{ дирѣкторша, a director's wife. директриса, a directress.

VI. Nouns designating a person exercising some civil or military employment form their feminine in *ша* :

Секретарь, a secretary ; секретарьша, a secretary's wife.	
Офицеръ, an officer ; офицерша.	Генералъ, a general ; генеральша.
Опекунъ, a guardian ; опекунша.	Судья, a judge ; судейша

The following form their feminine irregularly :

Господинъ, master ;	госпожа, mistress.
Дуракъ, a fool ;	дура, a foolish woman.
Король, a king ;	королева, a queen.
Царевичъ, a czar's son ;	царевна, a czar's daughter.
Пасынокъ, a stepson ;	падчерица, a stepdaughter.
Зять, a brother-in-law ;	золовка, a sister-in-law.
Зять, a son-in-law.	невѣстка, a daughter-in-law.
Свѣкоръ, a father-in-law ;	свекровь, a mother-in-law.
Слуга, a servant ;	служанка, a maid-servant.
Козёлъ, a goat ;	коза, a she-goat.
Павлинъ, a peacock ;	пава, a pea-hen.
Баронъ, a baron ;	баронесса, a baroness.
Принцъ, a prince ;	принцесса, a princess.

To throw out,

Выкидать, выкинуть.

The workmen threw out of the garden all the stones.

Работники выкидали изъ саду все камни.

He threw out of the window a pot of flowers.

Онъ выкинулъ изъ окна горшокъ цвѣтовъ.

OBS. 4.—The perfect aspect of verbs is subdivided into :

a. Perfect aspect of duration (длительный), which in-



dicates that the action has been or will be performed in many movements, or that it will require a certain time for its thorough accomplishment, as :

I came to church in two hours.

Я дошёлъ до церкви въ два часа.

I can get to the church in two minutes.

Я могу дойти до церкви въ двѣ минуты.

I sang the song over twice.

Я пропѣлъ пѣсню два раза.

Can you sing this song over again ?

Можете ли вы пропѣть эту пѣсню ещё разъ ?

b. Perfect aspect of unity (однократный), which indicates that the action has been or will be thoroughly accomplished in one movement, or suddenly, as :

He threw the stone very high.

Онъ кинулъ камень очень высоко.

He touched (once) the spring.

Онъ тронулъ пружину.

He looked at him (he glanced at him).

Онъ взглянулъ на него.

OBS. 5.—The infinitive of verbs of the perfect aspect of unity ends in нуть.

It is true,

Правда.

Is it true that his house has been burnt ?

Правда-ли что его домъ сгорѣлъ ?

No, it is not true.

Нѣтъ, неправда.

It is true.

Правда.

Is it not true ?

Не правда ли ?

You are right.

† Ваша правда.

Self,

Самъ, самый.

Selves,

Сами, самые, самья.

Myself, я самъ.

Ourselves, мы сами.

Thyself, ты самъ.

Yourselves, вы сами.

Himself, онъ самъ.

Themselves, они, онѣ сами.

Herself, она самá.

Oneself, { самаго себя.

Itself, оно самó.

{ plur. самихъ себя.

OBS. 6.—The pronoun самъ is used with the personal

pronouns and names of animate objects, and the pronoun *самый* with the demonstrative pronouns and names of inanimate or abstract objects.

He himself has told me of it.

Онъ самъ мнѣ сказаль объ этомъ.

She herself has told it to me.

Она сама сказала мнѣ это.

He is satisfied with himself.

Онъ доволенъ самимъ собою.

He praises himself.

Онъ хвалить самаго себя.

It is the very same man, whom we  
saw here last year.

Это тотъ самый человекъ, котораго  
мы видѣли здѣсь въ прошломъ  
годѣ.

Death itself would not frighten him.

Самая смерть не устрасила бы его.

Obs. 7.—The determinative pronouns *самъ* and *самый* have the same meaning, and are declined in all the genders like adjectives.

Note.—*Самъ*, and neuter *само*, in the instrumental singular, and in all the cases in the plural, take *и* instead of *у*, as :

Instrumental, *самимъ* ; plural, *сами* ; genitive, *самихъ*, etc.

What is his age ?

{ Сколько ему лѣтъ ?  
{ Какихъ онъ лѣтъ ?

He is five years old.

{ Ему пять лѣтъ.  
{ Онъ пяти лѣтъ.

Obs. 8.—From the above examples it will be seen that the Russian language has two different ways to express such sentences ; one with the subject in the dative, and another with the subject in the nominative.

He is two years old.

{ Ему два года.  
{ Онъ двухъ лѣтъ.

He is ten years of age.

{ Ему десять лѣтъ.  
{ Онъ десяти лѣтъ.

Obs. 9.—The numeral is in the nominative when the subject is in the dative, and in the genitive when the subject is in the nominative.

## Years,                      Гóды, лѣтъ.

OBS. 10.—Годъ, ‘a year,’ when used to denote age, period, etc., has for the plural лѣтъ, genitive plural of лѣто, ‘summer;’ in its proper sense, however, it has also its regular plural, гóды, годóвъ, etc., as :

Years passed rapidly.

All years are not alike.

The years 1856 and 1857 were  
unlucky for us.

Быстро гóды проходили.

Не всѣ гóды одинаковы

1856 и 1857 гóды были для насъ  
несчастливы.

To see off, to accompany,

In the time of, during,

In good time,

For a time,

From time to time,

During (in time of) harvest.

Did he come in time ?

No, he came, but not in good time  
(inopportunately).

A work (literary), сочинёніе.

A shopkeeper, лавочникъ.

An author, писатель.

An amateur, любитель.

Ferocious, { свирѣпый.  
                  { лю́тый.

A clergyman, попъ.

Elm-tree, вязъ.

Fir-tree, ель.

Birch, берёза.

To receive, получать, imp. asp.

I will receive, я буду получать.

{ Провожать, imp. asp.

{ Проводить, perf. asp.

Во время.

Во́ время.

На время.

Отъ в́ремени до в́ремени.

Во время жатвы.

† Во время ли онъ пришёлъ.

† Нѣтъ, онъ пришёлъ не во время.

A composer, сочинитель.

A market-woman, торговка.

An authoress, писательница.

Talkative, болтливый.

Happy, lucky, счастливый.

Unhappy, unlucky, несчастливый.

A clergyman's wife, попадьа.

Pine-tree, сосна́.

Oak-tree, дубъ.

A pear-tree, гру́ша.

To receive, получить, perf. asp.

I will receive, я получу́.

To take care of somebody  
or something,Беречь, I. 7, governs the  
accusative.

To take care of oneself,	Берёчься, governs the gen.
To keep on one's guard against	Остерегаться кого или чего,
some one or something,	governs the genitive.

I keep on my guard, etc., я остерегаюсь, ты остерегаешься, онъ остерегается.	We keep on our guard, etc., мы остерегаемся, вы остерегаетесь, онъ остерегаются.
--	--

Keep on your guard, against that man.	Остерегайтесь этого человека.
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------

There is no need for me to keep on my guard against him.	Мнѣ нечего его остерегаться.
--	------------------------------

I take care, etc., я берегу, ты бережѣшь, онъ бережѣтъ.	We take care, etc., мы бережѣмъ, вы бережѣте, онъ бережѣтъ.
I took care, я берѣгъ.	We took care, мы берѣгли.
She took care, она берѣгла.	I will take care, я буду беречь.
It took care, оно берѣгло.	Take care, береги, plural, берѣгите.

## EXERCISE LVII.

Did you see at the rich princess's ball the wife of colonel N., and her relative Mrs. D. ?—No, I saw neither the wife of colonel N. nor her relative Mrs. D.—Who is this girl ? It is my sister's faithful friend.—Did your acquaintance Mrs. T. receive a new silk hat from her milliner ?—She has not yet received it.—When will she receive it ?—She will receive it the day after to-morrow.—With whom is the pale nun speaking ?—She is speaking with the proud countess.—To whom did the young princess present the new gold ring ?—She presented it to her friend (acquaintance), the captain's pretty wife.—Where is the baker's wife going with her children ?—She is going with them to her neighbour, the tailoress.—From whom did you buy these knives and forks ?—I bought them from the old market-woman (торгóвка).—Did not you buy from the shopkeeper (female)



also something else?—I bought of her a pair of sharp scissors, a pair of gold spectacles, and other goods of iron, steel and glass.—Where did you see the black she-bear with her two cubs?—I saw them in the gipsy's shed.—This lioness is as ferocious as that lion.—Can you tell me where his excellent dog is?—Yes, I see him there, in the forest, on the grass under the high pine-tree.—It is an oak, and not a pine. What is this boy's age?—It is not a boy, it is a dwarf, who is twenty-seven years old.—How old are these two little girls?—They are not little girls, but female dwarfs, and one of them is forty-five and the other fifty-three years of age. And I thought they were little girls.—No, as you see, they are already old women.—Where have your nieces been yesterday.—They were at their schoolmistress's yesterday. With whom are the young lady pupils going?—They are going with the daughters of the shoemaker's wife.—To whom is the mistress of this house going?—She is going to the clergyman's young wife.—With whom is the general's wife going?—She is going (in a vehicle) with the countess's daughters.—Can you tell me where they are going?—Yes, they are going to the rich merchant's wife's ball.

#### EXERCISE LVIII.

Where are these rich Englishwomen going with their French lady friends?—They are going abroad.—Did you see yesterday at the theatre the pretty Swedish women, of whom I spoke to you?—Yes, I saw them there with one German, one Polish and two Italian women.—To whom does the widow want to write?—To the kind abbess.—Is it true that this pretty Englishwoman is an excellent authoress?—There are many who say that she writes well,

but I myself have never read her works.—What does this Frenchman want to describe?—He wants to describe the life of the peasants in Turkey.—Does the handsome Greek woman go often to her neighbour, the talkative female friend?—Yes, very often.—Where has this Frenchwoman been?—She was at the house of the rich American woman, who has just come from abroad.—Has the extravagant old woman still her rings and her new gold watch?—She has them no longer.—Where are these things now?—I think the cunning old Jewess has got them now.—What sort of shoes have the Chinese women?—They have very small shoes.—Where are the peasant women with the shepherdesses going?—The peasant women are going to the forest, and the shepherdesses are going to the field to their flocks. Did the maid-servant give some bread to the children of the female slave?—Yes, but they do not want to eat the bread, they ask for some butter and cheese.—To whom did this burgher's wife give away (отдать) her grey cat?—She did not give her cat away, but lent her only for a time to her neighbour, the miller's wife.—Who told you that the pretty Circassian woman is very hospitable?—All her acquaintances say so (this).—To whose room is the princess going?—She is going to the empress's room.—Is she going with the queen or with the grand-duchess?—She is going with both, and her friend the countess is also going with them.

#### EXERCISE LIX.

Whose funeral is it?—It is the funeral of the rich Jew, the first banker in our town.—Who has bought the rouge? The maid-servant of the celebrated lady singer bought it. Is the gallery of this church high?—Yes, it is very high

Who has lost this little needle?—The poor sempstress lost it.—For whom did you buy this little saddle?—I bought it for my *little* son's *little* horse.—How old is your little son? He will be eight years old soon.—Have you been long in Russia?—I was there three years, six years.—Do you want to go into the garden?—No, I do not want to go into the garden now, I like to go there after dinner or after tea. Have you received already Mrs. B's. new work?—No, I have not yet.—When will you receive it?—I do not know. Who paid for your dinner?—I paid for it myself.—Have you ever been in Egypt or in Algiers?—No, I have not been yet in Africa, but I have been already in Asia and America. Who has bought of the Persian the handsome Turkish shawl?—The rich merchant's wife bought it from him. Have you already seen your sister-in-law off to Paris? No, I have not yet seen her off, and she is not going to Paris, but to Berlin.—With whom is she going abroad? She is going with her friend, the rich major's wife.—Have they caught the deserter already?—No, they did not catch the deserter, but they caught the female thief.—How is your wife's health?—Thank you, she is quite well.—Whom do you see there in the green meadow?—I see a young shepherdess.—With whom is she there?—There is no one with her there.—Take care of your money.—I do take care of it, but your brother takes very bad care of it.—You are right, he does not take any care of it at all.—Keep on your guard against this gambler.—There is no necessity for me to keep on my guard, I never play at cards.

---



## THIRTIETH LESSON.—Тридцáтый Урѳкъ.

Whose garden is this ?	Чей ѳто садъ ?
It is the grandfather's garden.	ѳто дѣдовъ садъ.
Whose book is this ?	Чья ѳто кнѳга ?
It is the sister's book.	ѳто сѣстрина кнѳга.
It is the uncle's book.	ѳто дѣднина кнѳга.

OBS. 1.—The possessive case of nouns in English is rendered by an adjective termination added to the nominative, as :

John's garden,	{ Садъ Ивана, or Ивановъ садъ.
----------------	-----------------------------------

These are termed in Russian *Possessive Adjectives*, “прѳтяжáтельныя,” and are divided, according to their termination, into :

I. *Personal* (лѳчныя), formed from proper and common names of persons, and inanimate objects treated as animated beings, ending in овъ, евъ, инъ, цыпъ ; (feminine а, neuter о).

a. Possessive adjectives in овъ are formed from names ending in ѳ, о :

Пѣтръ, Peter ;	Петрѳвъ, Peter's.
Мáрко, Mark ;	Мáрковъ, Mark's.

b. Adjectives in евъ are formed from nouns in й, ѳ, е :

Андрѣй, Andrew ;	Андрѣевъ, Andrew's.
Учѳтель, a schoolmaster ;	учѳтелевъ, schoolmaster's.
Царъ, the czar ;	царѣвъ, czar's.
Сѳлнце, sun ;	сѳлнцевъ, sun's.

OBS. 2.—Possessive adjectives in ѳ, жъ, чъ, are met with only in the church Slavonic and old Russian, as :

Господъ, Lord, God ;	Господень, Lord's.
----------------------	--------------------



c. Adjectives ending in *инъ* are formed from nouns in *а*, *я* ; those in *цынъ* from nouns in *ца* :

Лука́, Luke ; Луки́нъ, Luke's.

Дѣ́дя, uncle ; дѣ́динъ, uncle's.

Корми́лица, a nurse ; корми́лицы́нъ, nurse's.

Peter's house,

Петро́въ домъ.

Andrew's sister,

Андре́ева сестра́.

The uncle's field,

Дѣ́дино по́ле.

The brothers Petrov,

Бра́тья Петро́вы.

The uncle's fields,

Дѣ́дины поля́.

Obs. 3.—Personal possessive adjectives, like all other adjectives, agree in number, gender and case with the substantive to which they refer, and are declined according to the following table.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	For all genders.
Nom.	ѣ.	а.	о.	ы.
Gen.	а .	ой.	а.	ыхъ.
Dat.	у.	ой.	у.	ымъ.
Acc.	Like the nom. or the gen.	у.	like the nom.	like the nom. or the gen.
Instr.	ымъ.	ою.	ымъ.	ими.
Prep.	омъ.	ой.	омъ.	ыхъ.

I see the uncle's daughter with the  
master's son in the neighbour's  
garden.

Я вижу дядину дочь съ сыномъ учи-  
телевымъ въ сосѣдовомъ саду.

Have you the sister's gloves ?

У васъ ли сестрины перчатки ?

I have not the sister's gloves.

У меня нѣтъ сестриныхъ перчатокъ.

OBS. 4.—Family names, as also names of towns or places in овъ, евъ, and инъ (ынъ), are declined in the same way as personal possessive adjectives, except the prepositional case, which takes in the masculine and neuter ѣ instead of омъ.

I was speaking with George Petrov  
and Miss Ivanov about Mr.  
Orlov.

Я говорилъ съ Егѳромъ Петровымъ  
и дѣвицей Ивановой о Гнѣ. Ор-  
ловѣ.

I have not been in the village of  
Maxina, but I have been in  
Kiev and Pskov.

Я не былъ въ деревнѣ Максимой, но  
былъ въ Кіевѣ и Псковѣ.

OBS. 5.—In official documents, and sometimes in com-  
mon discourse, the words дочь, 'daughter,' and сынъ, 'son,'  
are used with the patronymic, as :

Peter son of John Orlov,

Пѣтръ Ивановъ сынъ Орловъ.

Mary daughter of John Romanov,

Марья Ивановъ дочь Романова.

But in the language of the present day, in patronymic  
names, the terminations овъ, евъ, ова, ева are replaced by  
овичъ, евичъ (ичъ), овна, евна, and the terminations инъ,  
ина, by ичъ, инишна (ишна), as :

Peter son of John Orlov,

Пѣтръ Ивановичъ Орловъ.

Mary daughter of John Romanov,

Марья Ивановна Романова

Sergius son of Elie Petrov,

Сергѣй Ильичъ Петровъ.

Sophia daughter of Elie Petrov,

Сѳья Ильинишна Петрова.

OBS. 6.—Friends and acquaintances are familiarly ad-  
dressed by their Christian and patronymic instead of by  
their family names.

II. Generic adjectives (родовыя), formed chiefly from names of animals ending in *ий*, *овий*, *евий*.

a. Adjectives in *ий* are formed from masculine and feminine nouns in *ъ*, *ь*, *а*, and from neuter nouns in *до*, *ята*.

Баранъ, a ram ; бараний рогъ, ram's horn.

Соболь, a sable ; соболій мѣхъ, sable-fur.

Коза, a goat ; козий сыръ, goat-cheese.

Телята, calves ; телячий хвостъ, calf's-tail.

OBS. 7.—In the formation of these adjectives the radical consonants *д*, *т*, *ц*, *г*, *к*, *х*, before *ий*, change into *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, as :

Медвѣдь, a bear ; медвѣжий, bear's.

Овца, a sheep ; овечій, sheep's.

Ребѣта, children ; ребячий, child's, etc.

b. The terminations *овий* and *евий* are added to monosyllabic nouns in *онъ*, *онь*, *олъ*, *онь*, as :

Клопъ, a bug ; клоповій.

Слонъ, an elephant ; слоновій.

Конь, a horse ; коневій.

Волъ, an ox ; волбвій.

OBS. 8.—Generic adjectives in *ий* are also formed from some nouns signifying a human being in his physical attributes, different stations of life, sex, age, etc., as :

Человѣкъ, man ; человѣчий глазъ, man's eye.

Пастухъ, a shepherd ; пастушій.

Баба, a woman ; бабій.

Вдова, a widow ; вдовій.

Дѣвица, a girl ; дѣвичій, etc.

And also from the following :

Богъ, God ; Божій.

Врагъ, enemy ; вражій.

OBS. 9.—English compound words and nouns in apposition are rendered in Russian after the above manner, thus :

A horse-shoe,

A tea-tray,

A brick-house,

A water-spout,

Лошадіная подкова,

Чайный подносъ.

Кирпичный домъ.

Дождевой жболовъ.

OBS. 10.—The following adjectives are formed irregularly :

Братъ, brother ; брѣтннѣ.  
Мужъ, husband ; мѣжннѣ.  
Яковъ, Jacob ; ѣковлевъ.

Зять, brother-in-law ; зѣтннѣ.  
Мать, mother ; мѣтерннѣ.  
Дочь, daughter ; дѣчеринѣ.

To hope, to expect,

Надѣяться.

To rely, to depend upon.

Надѣяться на (with the acc.)

I hope, я надѣюсь.  
Thou hopest, ты надѣешься.  
He hopes, онъ надѣется.  
I hoped, я надѣялся, лась, etc.

We hope, мы надѣемся.  
You hope, вы надѣетесь.  
They hope, они надѣются.  
We hoped, мы надѣялись.

Hope, надѣйся, (imperative); plural, надѣйтесь.

Does he hope to receive a letter  
to-day ?

Надѣется ли онъ получить письмо  
сегодня ?

Do you expect to find her at home !  
I do not expect it.

Надѣетесь ли вы застать её дома ?  
Я не надѣюсь.

Could one rely upon him ?

Можно ли на него надѣяться ?

You may rely upon him.

Вы можете надѣяться на него.

She relies upon him.

Она надѣется на него.

He depends upon it.

Онъ надѣется на это.

To find at home.

† Застать дома.

To laugh,

Смѣяться, conjugated like

надѣяться.

He laughs, онъ смѣется.

| We laugh, мы смѣемся.

OBS. 11.—The *e* accented in the terminations of the present indicative is always pronounced *ë* (*yo*).

Beef, говѣдина.  
Ox flesh, говѣжье мѣсо.  
Mutton, барѣнина.  
Sheep's flesh, барѣнье мѣсо.  
Ox fat, бычѣй жиръ.  
Cow's fat, корѣвѣй жиръ.  
Isinglass, рѣбѣй клей.  
Roast veal, телѣчье жаркѣе.  
Wolf's den, волчѣй ѣма.

Sheep-skin, овѣчья шкурѣ.  
Hare-skin, зѣячѣй шкурѣ.  
Sable collar, собѣлій воротникъ.  
A comb-maker, гребенщикъ.  
A knife-maker, пожевщикъ.  
Help, assistance, помѣощъ.  
Fur coat, шубѣ.  
Bear-skin, медвѣжья шкурѣ.  
A fox, лисѣца, лисѣ.



A coat lined with bear-skin.	{ Шуба на медвѣжьемъ мѣху. Медвѣжья шуба.
A coat lined with sable.	{ Шуба на собольемъ мѣху. Соболья шуба.
A coat lined with fox-skin.	Лісья шуба.

OBS. 12.—Generic adjectives follow the same declension as qualifying adjectives, taking however in all the cases *ь* before the termination; as *рыбій*, ‘of fish;’ genitive *рыбьяго*, dative *рыбьему*, etc.

The brother's book.	Братнина книга.
My brother's book.	Книга моего брата.

OBS. 13.—Possessive adjectives are not used after possessive pronouns.

To teach,	Учить, gov. the acc. and dat.
To learn (by heart),	Учить, gov. the acc.
To learn, to study,	Учиться, gov. the dat.

What do you teach him ?	Чему вы его учите ?
I teach him the grammar.	Я учу его грамматикѣ.
He is learning his lesson.	Онъ учиться свой урокъ.
He was learning the French and English languages.	Онъ учился французскому и английскому языкамъ.
To learn to read and write.	Учиться грамотѣ.
He can read and write. }	Онъ грамотный. }
He is a learned man. }	

To praise, хвалить (like любить).	To play tricks, } шалить (like лю- To joke, } бить).
-----------------------------------	---

I teach, я учу.	We teach, мы учимъ.
Thou teachest, ты учишь.	You teach, вы учите.
He teaches, онъ учитъ.	They teach, они учатъ.
I taught, я училъ, а, о.	We taught, мы учили.

Do teach, учи; plural учите.

## EXERCISE LX.

What kind of fur is this?—It is the fur of a beaver.

From whom did Peter's son buy it?—He bought it from Constantine's brother.—Who was at the uncle's house? The neighbour's daughter, with the sister's maid-servant, were there.—Where are the master's children?—They are in the brother's room.—What are they doing there?—They are learning their lessons.—Do you like bear's flesh?—No, I do not like bear's flesh, but I like veal and mutton. Whom do you see on that stone bridge, and whom under those trees?—I see the husband's sister and the sister's son.—What do you expect to receive from Peter's niece? I expect to receive a letter from her.—Do not rely upon him, because one could not rely upon him.—Where is the wife's friend (fem.) going?—She is going to the brother's room, for the father's hat.—Do you know the Lord's Prayer? Yes, I do, and I hope (that) all Christians know and read the Lord's Prayer.—Have you not the master's ink?—I have not, I have the uncle's red ink.—Are the Sparrow-hills high?—Yes, one could see from the Sparrow-hills all (весь) Moscow.—What are these Chinese eating?—They are eating swallows' nests.—To whom are you going?—I am going to Peter, son of John Souvarov.—Have you read Krylov's fables?—No, I have not read the fables of John, son of Andrew Krylov, but I have read Solovyev's and Karamzin's History of Russia.—Where were you on Sunday morning?—I was at Saint Michael's Church.—Where were John's sons?—They were in Saint Nicholas's Church, and saw there the miracle-working (чудотворный) image of this saint.—With whom is Mary, daughter of Peter, going in a coach?—She is going with her friend the Countess Alexandra, daughter of Nicholas.—Are sheep-skins dear?—Yes, but not so dear as ox-skins.—Were you speaking with Elizabeth, daughter of John, and her cousin Andrew, son of

Nicholas?—I spoke neither with the one nor the other, but with Alexandra, daughter of Nicholas.—What did the uncle's maid-servant give to the cat?—She gave to the cat some fish bones, and the dog a few beef bones.

### EXERCISE LXI.

Whose coach do you see?—I see the brother's coach.—Is this my sister's umbrella?—No, it is not the sister's, but the master's umbrella.—Who is laughing so loudly?—It is we who laugh.—You must not laugh so, it is unbecoming. We are laughing because what you say is very funny.—It is not true, you are laughing because you like to joke (play tricks).—You are mistaken, sir, we never joke.—Where were you last year?—I was in Siberia, where a Siberian gave me a few excellent reindeers' horns.—Upon whom and what do you rely?—I rely upon God and God's help only.—Does Jacob's master teach your children well?—He teaches them well, and my children do not learn badly. What have you in your hands?—It is a bird's nest.—What are these combmakers doing?—They are making combs. What are they making them from?—From ox horns. What did you buy in the market the day before yesterday? I bought two pood of sheep's fat and five poods of cow's fat.—Of what do the knifemakers make knife handles? They make them of reindeers' horns.—Do you prefer roast beef to roast veal?—Yes, I prefer the former to the latter. Which people prefer horse flesh to any (всякій) other? Calmuks and some other Asiatics.—Have you many male relations?—I have many male, and still more female relatives.—Have you seen in Russian forests lions and lionesses?—One can see these wild beasts in Asia and Africa



only, but not in Europe; and therefore I have not seen in Russia either lions or lionesses.—Where did you pass last winter?—I passed it in a village.—And I thought you were in Italy.—No, my parents could not give me any money this year, and therefore I could not go (поѣхать).—What kind of fur-coat did he buy at the fair?—He bought a coat lined with beaver, with a sable collar.

### THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.—Тридцать пѣрвый Урокъ.

Is the master kind ?  
The master is kind.  
Is the pupil diligent ?  
The pupil is diligent.

Добръ ли учитель ?  
Учитель добръ.  
Прилеженъ ли ученикъ ?  
Ученикъ прилеженъ.

OBS. 1.—An adjective when used as a predicate changes its full termination into an apocopated one. The apocope is made by changing the masculine terminations *ый, ий*, into *ъ, ъ*, and in the feminine and neuter by cutting off the final vowel, as :

Добрый, good ; апосопated, добръ, добра́, добро́.

Синій, blue ; апосопated, синь, сини́, синё.

Долгій, long ; апосопated, долго́, долги́, долго́.

Горькій, bitter ; апосопated, горекъ, горька́, горько́.

Спокойный, tranquil ; апосопated, спокоенъ, споко́йна, споко́йно.

OBS. 2.—Apocopated adjectives in *ъ*, preceded by two or more consonants, take the euphonic *o* or *e*.

The vowel *o* is inserted :

a. Before *къ*, preceded by *б, в, п, м, н, л, р, д, т, з, с, г*, as :

Ловкій, clever ; ловко́.

Робкій, timid ; робко́.

Крѣпкій, strong ; крѣпо́къ.

Гро́мкій, loud ; гро́мокъ.

То́нкій, thin ; то́нокъ.

Сла́дкій, sweet ; сла́докъ, etc.



*Exception.*—Adjectives in **кѣ**, preceded by **ж**, take **е**, instead of **о**, as :

**Тѣжкій**, heavy ; **тѣжекѣ**.

**б**. And in the following :

**Рѣзвый**, playful ; **рѣзовѣ**.

**Злой**, wicked ; **зълѣ**.

**Полный**, full ; **полонѣ**.

**Долгий**, long ; **долгоѣ**.

The vowel **е** is inserted :

**а**. In adjectives ending in **нѣ**, preceded by any consonant except **л**, as :

**Красный**, red ; **красенѣ**.

**Честный**, honest ; **честенѣ**.

**Вѣрный**, true ; **вѣренѣ**.

**Свободный**, free ; **свободенѣ**.

**б**. In those in **нѣ**, which are preceded by **л** soft (**лѣ**), as :

**Сильный**, strong ; **силѣнѣ**.

**Обильный**, abundant ; **обилѣнѣ**.

**с**. In the following :

**Тёплый**, warm ; **тѣпелѣ**.

**Свѣтлый**, bright ; **свѣтелѣ**.

**Острый**, sharp ; **остѣрѣ**.

**Хитрый**, cunning, **хитѣрѣ**.

**Кислый**, sour ; **киселѣ**.

**д**. And in those which have **ь** or **й** before the termination, as :

**Горькій**, bitter ; **горекѣ**.

**Бойкій**, bold ; **боекѣ**.

**Вольный**, free ; **воленѣ**.

**Спокойный**, quiet ; **спокоенѣ**.

*Exception.*—**Достойный**, worthy ; **достойнѣ**.

**OBS. 3.** All other apocopated adjectives, although having two or more consonants before the termination, do not take any euphonic vowel.

**Толстый**, thick ; **толстѣ**.

**Вѣтхій**, old ; **вѣтхѣ**.

**Гордый**, proud ; **гордѣ**.

**Добрый**, kind ; **добрѣ**.

**Мёртвый**, dead ; **мёртвѣ**.

**Твёрдый**, hard ; **твёрдѣ**.

**OBS. 4.**—Apocopated adjectives when joined to a substantive by means of the auxiliary verb **быть**, ‘to be,’ have

all the genders and both numbers, but one case only—the nominative, as :

Я добръ, добра́, добрѣ.	I am kind.
Я былъ добръ, добра́, добрѣ.	I was kind.
Я буду добръ, добра́, добрѣ.	I will be kind.
Мы добры́.	We are kind, etc.

OBS. 5.—When, however, an apocopated adjective is used in place of a qualifying adjective, it is declinable, as :

Свѣтелъ мѣсяцъ, bright moon ;	genitive, свѣтла мѣсяца, etc.
Бѣлы руки, white hands ;	genitive, бѣлыхъ рукъ, etc.

OBS. 6.—Qualifying adjectives in apocopated form are used in poetry only, and are distinguished from *indeclinable* ones by the tonic accent, which in the latter is generally changed, as :

Бѣлы́ ру́ки, white hands.
Ру́ки бѣлы́, the hands are white.

OBS. 7.—Compound words formed of two substantives, or of a substantive and an apocopated adjective, although written together, have a distinct declension for each word ; as Царьгра́дъ, ‘Constantinople,’ genitive Царягра́да, dative Царюгра́ду, etc. ; Но́вгородъ, ‘Novgorod,’ genitive Но́ва-города, dative Но́вугороду, etc.

I am diligent.	Я приле́женъ.
Are you diligent ?	Приле́жны ли вы ?
She is modest.	Она́ скромна́.
He is not poor.	Онъ не бѣденъ.
Is he proud ?	Гордъ ли онъ ?
Who is happy ?	Кто сча́сливъ ?
We are happy.	Мы сча́сливы.

OBS. 8.—The present tense of the auxiliary verb *быть*, ‘to be,’ is always omitted, although understood.

Lofty, высо́кій.	Exacting, тре́бовательный.
Frank, откровенный.	Domestic, дома́шний.

Healthy, здоровый.  
 Severe, strict, строгий.  
 Kind, кроткий.  
 Content, довольный.  
 Air, воздухъ.  
 To sell, продава́ть (imperf. asp.).  
 To jump, прыга́ть.  
 To dance, танцова́ть.  
 To ride, ѣзди́ть верхомъ (definite).

I could,

We could, мы могли.

I shall be able.

We shall be able.

Is it far to ?

From here,

From there,

What kind, what sort ?

What sort of a horse is yours ?

He is very good.

What sort of friend have you ?

He is an excellent man.

How is your linen ?

Our linen is very durable.

What sort of new teacher have  
 you got ?

To dare,

I dare, etc., я смѣю, ты смѣешь,  
 онъ смѣетъ.

I dare not.

Who dares ?

I dare say.

I dared, я смѣлъ, смѣла, смѣло.

Strong,

The ox is strong.

The horse is strong.

Fertile, плодородный.

Nutritious, пита́тельный.

Clever, иску́сный.

Liberal, ще́дрый.

Sonorous, зву́чный.

To sell, прода́ть (perf. asp.).

To run, бѣга́ть.

To know, знать.

To ride, ѣзди́ть верхомъ (indef.).

Я могъ, могла, могло.

They could, они могли.

Я буду въ состояніи.

Мы будемъ въ состояніи.

Далеко́ ли до ?

Отсю́да.

Отту́да.

Како́въ, (каковѣй) ?

Какова́ ваша лошадь ?

Она́ очень хороша́.

Како́въ вашъ прі́ятель ?

Онъ отличны́й челове́къ.

Каковы́ ваши поло́тна ?

Наши поло́тна очень прочны́.

Како́въ вашъ но́вый учи́тель ?

Смѣть. I. 1.

We dare, etc., мы смѣемъ, вы смѣете,  
 они́ смѣютъ.

Я не смѣю.

Кто смѣетъ.

Смѣю сказа́ть.

We dared, мы смѣли.

Сильны́й, крѣпкі́й.

Быкъ си́ленъ.

Лошадь си́льна́.

Ice is strong.

This tobacco is strong.

Лёдъ крѣпокъ.

Этотъ табакъ крѣпокъ.

OBS. 9.—‘Strong,’ implying physical strength, is rendered by сильный, and in other cases by крѣпкій.

To bloom,

Цвѣсти, цвѣсть.\*

I bloom, etc., я цвѣту, ты цвѣтѣшь,  
онъ цвѣтѣтъ.

I bloomed, я цвѣлъ, цвѣла, цвѣло.

I shall bloom, я буду цвѣсти.

We bloom, мы цвѣтемъ. вы цвѣте-  
те, онѣ цвѣтутъ.

We bloomed, мы цвѣли.

We shall bloom, мы будемъ цвѣсти.

What flowers bloom in your garden ?

Какіе цвѣты цвѣтутъ въ вашемъ  
садѣ ?

Various flowers bloom in our garden.

Разные цвѣты цвѣтутъ въ нашемъ  
садѣ.

To be in flower.

Быть въ цвѣтѣ.

All the trees are in flower.

Все деревья въ цвѣтѣ.

A rose, роза.

A forget-me-not, незабудка.

A violet, фиалка.

A lily, лилія.

A tulip, тюльпанъ.

A clove, гвоздика.

To carry, to take to,

{ Нести, definite.

{ Носить, indefinite.

What are you carrying ?

Что вы несете ?

I carry now the flowers.

Я несу теперь цвѣты.

Do you carry them often ?

Часто ли вы ихъ носите ?

I carry them to him twice a day.

Я ношу ихъ ему два раза въ день.

To wear clothes.

Носить платье.

To wear out clothes.

Износить платье.

*Defin. Imperf. Asp.**Indefin. Imperf. Asp.*

Я несу,

I carry ;

я ношу.

Ты несешь,

Thou carriest ;

ты носишь.

Онъ несётъ,

He carries ;

онъ носитъ.

Мы несёмъ,

We carry ;

мы носимъ.

Вы несёте,

You carry ;

вы носите.

Онѣ несутъ,

They carry ;

онѣ носятъ.



Я не́съ, несла́, несло́, I carried ;

Я бу́ду нести́, I shall carry ;

Неси́, несите́, carry ;

я носи́лъ, носи́ла, носи́ло.

я бу́ду носи́ть.

носи́, носите́.

OBS. 10.—In the same manner are conjugated the following prepositional verbs formed from нести́ and носи́ть.

To bring, принести́, понести́, приноситьъ.

To carry away, унести́, уноситьъ.

To carry out, вынести́, выноситьъ.

To carry from, отнести́, относитьъ.

OBS. 11.—The prefix при with verbs of motion generally indicates ‘towards,’ and по, ‘from,’ with reference to the place of the speaker.

I came hither.

I went thither,

I brought,

I took to,

Я пришёлъ сюда́.

Я пошёлъ туда́.

Я принёсъ.

Я понёсъ.

## EXERCISE LXII.

Have your sons a kind master (teacher)?—The master of my sons is very kind, but he is not strict enough, and therefore my sons are inattentive and lazy.—What animals are useful to man?—All domestic animals are useful to man.—Do you want to buy that house with the garden?—No, I do not, because although the house is fine and lofty, yet (но) the rooms in it are small and low.—Is the garden large?—No, the garden also is not large.—Is it far from here to uncle’s fields?—No, it is near to them from here.—Do you want to ride to the village of the countess B.?—No, I do not want to ride, because it is too far from here to the countess’s village.—How are these wines?—These wines have a very good flavour (вкусный) but they are also very expensive.—Is the princess happy? She is very happy ; her husband is kind and amiable, and

her children are charming and obedient.—Is the school-mistress's friend sincere?—Yes, she is sincere, faithful and kind, and both her daughters are intelligent and amiable. Is the bread new at your old baker's?—His bread is not as new as his neighbour's, and the rye bread he has is too stale and too black.—What kind of sugar has your new merchant?—It is white and cheap, but not sweet enough. What does the teacher say?—He says that learning is bitter, but its fruits are sweet.—Are your rooms warm? One is warm and the other cold, but the air in both is fresh and pure.—Is your brother still ill?—No, he is well, but my sister is very ill.—Does this little girl want to work, to read and to write?—No, she wants only to run, to jump and to dance.—What sort of oats have these peasants? Their oats are large (крупный) and cheap, but their hay is bad and not fresh.—Is your new clerk experienced?—Yes, he is experienced and diligent, but he is very poor.—Whose horse is weak and lazy?—Ours.—Is the winter in Italy warm?—Yes, but this year the winter there was very cold.—Are men immortal?—No, all men are mortal.

### EXERCISE LXIII.

Is this painter clever?—He is very clever and very modest.—Is your coffee sweet?—No, it is bitter.—Is the water in that pot warm?—No, the water of which you speak is not warm; it is still cold.—How is the edge of your penknife?—It is sharp, but the edge of my other knife is blunt.—Is the knife sharp?—Not very.—What sort of a master is your new one?—He is kind and liberal, but my new mistress is wicked and mean.—Art thou faithful to thy new masters?—Yes, but they are too severe and

too exacting.—Are your scissors sharp?—They are blunt, but the tailoress's scissors are sharp.—What is the gardener carrying?—He is carrying the rake and the pitchfork. Where does he carry them to?—He is carrying them into the garden.—Are not your candlesticks new?—No, they are already old.—Are they of silver or of pewter?—They are of English pewter.—Give me a sharp fork, this one is too blunt.—I have no sharp forks, all my forks are blunt. Do you know this gentleman?—Yes, I know him; he is very insolent and sly, and therefore no one likes him. What did you want to say?—I wanted to say, that I shall not be able to give you any flowers.—Are the flowers in your garden blooming already?—No, not yet, but they will be blooming soon.—What colours do you prefer?—I prefer the blue and green colours to all others.—Have you many flowers in your garden?—No, not many, we have only roses, forget-me-nots, violets, lilies, cloves and a few other flowers.—Which trees in Northern Russia are green even in winter?—Firs and pines only are green in winter. Where does the cook take the firewood to?—He takes it to the kitchen.—Does he take it often thither?—He carries it only when his master orders him.—Waiter, bring me a glass of wine.—Yes, sir.—Can you go (in a vehicle) with us to-day to the play?—No, I cannot go with you, I have to be at home to-day.

---



## THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.—Тридцать второй Урокъ.

## OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

## О неопредѣлённомъ наклонѣніи.

In order to conjugate Russian verbs it is essential to know beforehand their two fundamental forms, viz. the infinitive and the third person plural of the present indicative; and in verbs wanting the present tense, the third person plural of the future.

There are in Russian two conjugations only, which embrace all the regular verbs, with all their so-called aspects (видъ). These conjugations are distinguished by the inflexions of the second person singular and the third person plural of the present.

*a.* The first conjugation comprises the verbs having the second person singular ending in *ешь* and the third person plural in *утъ* or *ютъ*, as :

Идёшь, thou goest ; идутъ, they go.

Читаешь, thou readest ; читаютъ, they read.

*b.* The second conjugation comprises the verbs having the second person singular in *ишь* and third person plural in *атъ* or *ятъ*, as :

Лежишь, thou liest down ; лежатъ, they lie down.

Говоришь, thou speakest ; говорятъ, they speak.

All regular verbs, according to the termination of the infinitive, and the inflexion of its first person singular of the present indicative, are subdivided into ten classes ; of which the first eight belong to the first, and the two last (the ninth and tenth) to the second conjugation.



CLASS 1 has the infinitive in **тъ**, and the first person in **ю**, preceded by a vowel, which is preserved in conjugation.

ДѢЛА-ТЬ, to do ; дѢЛА-Ю, I do.

МѢНЯ-ТЬ, to change ; мѢНЯ-Ю, I change.

ИМѢ-ТЬ, to have ; ИМѢ-Ю, I have.

ГНИ-ТЬ, to rot ; ГНИ-Ю I rot.

ДУ-ТЬ, to blow ; ДУ-Ю, I blow.

CLASS 2 has the infinitive in **ать** preceded by a consonant, and in **ять** after a vowel, having the first person in **ю**, as :

ОРАТЬ, to plough ; ОРЮ, I plough.

СѢЯТЬ, to sow ; СѢЮ, I sow.

To shake,

To slumber, to doze,

To drip,

Колебáть. }

Дремáть. } I. 2.

Кáпать. }

I shake, etc., я колеблѹ, ты колеблешь, онъ колеблетъ.

I shook, я колебалъ.

I will shake, я бѹду колебáть.

We shake, etc., мы колеблемъ, вы колеблете, онѣ колеблѹтъ.

We shook, мы колебали.

We will shake, мы бѹдемъ колебáть.

OBS. 1.—Verbs of the second class in **ать**, preceded by **б**, **п**, or **м**, take in the first person an **л** before **ю**.

It drips, кáплетъ.

It dripped, кáпало.

It rains, дождь идѣтъ.

It was raining, шѣлъ дождь.

Rain, дождь.

Hail, градъ.

Thunder, громъ.

Thunderstorm, гроза.

It lightens (the lightning flashes),

We shall have rain.

It has left off raining.

It drizzles, крáплетъ.

It drizzled, крáпало.

It snows, снѣгъ идѣтъ.

It was snowing, шѣлъ снѣгъ.

Snow, снѣгъ.

It hails, градъ идѣтъ.

It thunders, громъ гремитъ.

Lightning, молнiя.

Молнiя сверкаетъ.

Бѹдетъ дождь.

Дождь прошѣлъ.

To swallow,

To gnaw,

Глотáть. I. 1.

Глодáть. I. 2.

I gnaw, я гложѹ, ты глѹбѣшь, онъ глѹбѣтъ.

I gnawed, я глодáлъ.

We gnaw, мы глѹбѣмъ, вы глѹбѣте, онѣ глѹбѹтъ.

We gnawed, мы глодáли.

OBS. 2.—The consonants д, т, з, с, г, к, х, in verbs of the second class, change into ж, ч, or ш.

To wave, to brandish,	Махáть.	} I. 2.
To breathe,	Дышáть.	
To cut,	Рѣзáть.	
To write,	Писáть.	

I breathe, я дышú, etc.

I breathed, я дышáлъ.

I shall breathe, я бúду дышáть.

Breathe, дышú, дышúте.

I wave, я машú, etc.

I waved, я махáлъ.

I will wave, я бúду махáть.

Wave, машú, машúте.

Both,

{ Какъ—такъ и.  
{ И—и.

And,

И.

Both (the one and the other), И тотъ, и другой.

OBS. 3.—Two or more subjects in the singular, connected by either of the above copulative conjunctions, require the verb or the attribute in the plural.

John and Nicholas are ill.

Ивáнъ и Николáй больны.

The Apostles Peter and Paul.

Апóстолы Пётръ и Пáвелъ.

Both Mary and Laura are my pupils.

Какъ Марíя такъ и Лау́ра мои учени́цы.

Both Moscow and London are cities.

И Москвá и Лондо́нъ города́.

Both are immortal.

И тотъ и другой безсмер́тны.

Either one or the other will be at our house.

Либо тотъ, либо другой бúдетъ у насъ.

Neither one nor the other will be here.

Ни тотъ, ни другой не бúдетъ здѣсь.

OBS. 4.—The predicate is put in the singular when two or more subjects in the singular, and of the same gender, are connected by a conjunction, denoting an exclusive

action attributed either to one of the two subjects, or to each alternatively. The following conjunctions are of this class :

Either,—or,

Лѣбо,—лѣбо.

Neither,—nor,

Ни,—ни.

Not only,—but,

Не то́лько,—но и.

First one,—then,

То,—то.

Either one or the other will be re-compensated.

Лѣбо тотъ, лѣбо другой бѣдетъ на-  
гражденъ.

Neither cold nor heat acts upon him.

Ни х́лодь, ни жаръ не дѣйствуетъ  
на него.

Not only you, but I also was not there.

Не то́лько вы, но и я не былъ тамъ.

First one and then another was asking about you.

То одинъ, то другой спрашивалъ о  
васъ.

**OBS. 5.**—When, however, the subjects connected by alternative conjunctions are of different gender, and have for their predicate an adjective or a verb in the past tense, the predicate is put in the plural.

Heat or cold is injurious.

Жаръ или стѣжа вредны.

Neither he nor she was there.

Ни онъ, ни она не были тамъ.

Either the brother or the sister will be recompensed.

Лѣбо братъ, лѣбо сестра бѣдутъ на-  
граждены.

**OBS. 6.**—An adjective referring to two nouns of different gender agrees in gender with the masculine, and is put in the plural.

The kind king and queen.

Добрыя король и королева.

The industrious father and mother are poor.

Трудолюбивые отецъ и мать бѣдны.

**OBS. 7.**—A common noun, referring to two or more proper names, or to adjectives, must be in the plural.

The rivers Dnieper and Volga are navigable.

Рѣки Днѣпръ и Волга судоходны.

Nicholas and Andrew are brothers.  
The Black and Caspian Seas abound  
in fish.

Николай и Андрей братья.  
Моря Чёрное и Каспійское изоби-  
люють рыбой.

Recompensed, награждённый.  
Conscience, совѣсть, f.  
A table-napkin, салфетка.  
A table-cloth, скатерть.

To act, дѣйствовать.  
Sealing-wax, сургучъ.  
A wafer, облатка.  
To seal, печатать.

Out,

На дворѣ.

How is it out of doors ?  
It is very dark out.  
A heavy storm.

Каковъ на дворѣ ?  
На дворѣ очень темнѣ.  
Сильная гроза.

#### EXERCISE LXIV.

Does your brother or sister know where our school-mistress is now?—No, neither my brother nor my sister knows where she is now.—Are the plate and the dish clean?—No, neither the plate nor the dish is clean.—Is this good?—Neither this nor that is good.—Who told her that the kind father and mother are ill?—Either Nicholas or his brother said so.—Is there not some one ill in this house?—Either the father or the son is ill.—Are the brother and sister well?—Neither the brother nor the sister is well.—Had you many brothers?—I had (было) two brothers and one sister.—Is the city of Moscow pretty?—Yes, the city of Moscow is large and fine. Has your niece been in the fine city of Moscow?—No, but she was in the city of Athens.—Where are this monk and that clergyman going?—They are going into the temple.—What are you cutting?—I am cutting bread. What are this tailor and that bootmaker cutting?—The tailor is cutting red and blue cloth, and the bootmaker is cutting yellow and black leather.—Will they both be



recompensed?—Either he or his son will be recompensed. Will the brother or sister be recompensed also?—Neither the brother nor the sister will be recompensed.—Is Athens now rich?—I can say that the ancient (древний) city of Athens was great and rich, but modern (новый) Athens is small and poor.—Does he or his brother see on that little table the new works of the celebrated authoress?—Neither he nor his brother see on that little table any books.—Where have the boy and the little girl been with their poor sick little dog?—They were in their parents' warm little room. Who wanted to give you a new linen napkin?—The faithful servant of my good friend Alexander, son of Peter. Who has been reading this book?—The master and his lady pupil were reading it.—Did your servant bring a tumbler and a wine-glass?—Yes, she did, but neither were clean.—Who is there dozing in the uncle's easy-chair? The old nurse is dozing.—Could she come to you yesterday?—She could, but she would not.—Do you see the table and all that is on it?—I see the table, but I see nothing on it.

#### EXERCISE LXV.

Was it raining or snowing yesterday?—No, there was no rain or snow yesterday, but the day before yesterday and on Wednesday last week the weather was very bad. Has it left off raining?—No, it has not yet left off raining, and therefore we cannot go for a walk.—Does the countess like to ride on horseback?—Yes, she does very much. Who likes to read and to write?—The diligent lady pupil. Does she write well already?—No, she does not write well yet.—Had this servant something new?—She had a new dress and a handkerchief, which her kind mistress gave

(подарить) her.—Has our old laundress brought the linen already?—No, she will bring it to-morrow.—Who carried away from here the table-cloth, which the servant brought? No one carried it away, it is here on the table.—Where is that dragoon galloping to?—He is not galloping, but is going at a trot.—Where did the maid-servant carry away my yellow dress to?—She has taken it to the bed-room. Happy is one whose conscience is pure.—Who took my steel pens?—Either the master or his pupil took them. Has the servant brought the new tumblers and wine-glasses already?—Not yet, but there he is coming himself, and is carrying not only the new tumblers and wine-glasses, but also a table-cloth and a few knives, forks, spoons and table-napkins.—To whom are you writing this letter?—I am writing to my daughter.—Do you not want some wafers?—No, I do not want any wafers, I always seal my letters with red or black sealing-wax; but light this wax candle, if you please, for me.—There it is, I have lit it.—I thank you then very much, I want nothing more.—Where did the maid-servant go?—She went into the garden for the children, because it is already time for them to take tea.—Go to the garden and bring (привести) the children here, because it thunders and lightens.—But they are not afraid of thunder or lightning.—I know that, but the governess says that in such weather they should be in the room and not out.—Is the storm outside heavy? The storm is not very heavy.—Is the sky clear?—No, there are still thick clouds passing (ходить), so that I think we shall have a thunderstorm.

---

## THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

Три́дцать трѣтій Уро́къ.

*Of the Infinitive (continued).*

CLASS 3 has the infinitive in *оть*, preceded by *о*, *оп*, first person in *ю* :

Колѣть, to prick ; колѣю, I prick.

OBS. 1.—There are but five verbs with this ending.

CLASS 4 has the infinitive in *вать*, preceded by *е*, *о*, first person in *ю*, before which *е* is changed into *ю* (*же*, *че*, *ше* are changed into *жу*, *чу*, *шу*), and *о* into *у*.

Горе-ва́ть, to grieve ; гор-ю́-ю, I grieve.

Же-ва́ть, to chew ; ж-у́-ю, I chew.

Сове́то-ва́ть, to advise ; сове́т-у́-ю, I advise.

I was writing, я писа́лъ.

I was ploughing, я паха́лъ.

I was drinking, я пи́лъ.

I was working, я рабо́талъ.

I led, я ве́лъ.

I did, я дѣла́лъ.

I grieved, я горева́лъ.

I advised, я сове́това́лъ.

I read, я чита́лъ.

I rode, я ѣ́халъ.

OBS. 2.—Russian verbs have one past tense only; thus, “I was working,” “I did work,” “I worked,” etc., are rendered Я рабо́талъ.

Where have you been ?

I was at Calais.

Гдѣ вы бы́ли ?

Я бы́лъ въ Калѣ.

OBS. 3.—Foreign nouns ending in *о*, *е*, *у*, *и* are indeclinable.

The weather.

How is the weather ?

It is fine weather.

It is bad weather.

Пого́да.

Како́ва пого́да ?

Пре́красная пого́да.

Дурна́я пого́да.



OBS. 4.—‘It is,’ being the present tense of the impersonal verb *есть*, is not translated:

It is cold.	Холодно.
It is warm.	Тепло.

OBS. 5.—‘It is,’ *есть*, when referring to an indefinite adjective, is not translated, and the adjective is put in the neuter.

These indefinite adjectives in the neuter, used with the impersonal verb *есть*, ‘it is,’ form compound impersonal verbs, which govern the dative:

I am cold.	Мнѣ (есть) холодно.
I was cold.	Мнѣ было холодно.
I shall be cold.	Мнѣ будетъ холодно.
Who will be pleased?	Кому́ будетъ приятно?
He will be pleased.	Ему́ будетъ приятно.
It will be cold.	Будетъ холодно.
Were you warm?	Было ли вамъ тепло?
I was very hot.	Было очень жарко.
Who feels very hot?	Кому́ очень жарко?

Out (of doors),	На дворѣ.
How is it out of doors?	Какое на дворѣ?
It is very damp out.	На дворѣ сыро.
It is foggy.	Туманно.
It is dry.	Сухо.
Dull, пасмурный.	Damp, wet, сырой.
Dry, сухой.	Clear, bright, ясный.
Hot, жаркий.	Dark, тёмный.
The weather, погода.	Bad weather, непогода.

OBS. 6.—When the subject consists of a proper and common noun the predicate agrees in gender with the latter:

The city of Riga is rich.	Городъ Рѣга богатъ.
The river Dnieper is deep.	Рѣка Днѣпръ глубока.



OBS. 7.—Two or more adjectives in the singular, when used in the genitive, dative, instrumental, or prepositional case, require the noun to which they refer to be put in the plural:

I do not like white and black (colours).	Я не люблю чёрнаго и бѣлаго цвѣтъ.
In the high and low houses the rooms are small.	Въ высокомъ и низкомъ домахъ комнаты малы.

OBS. 8.—In the nominative case, however, after a few adjectives in the singular, the substantive is put in the singular and not in the plural.

The red and white houses are high.	Красный и бѣлый домъ высокъ.
White and black colours are opposites.	Бѣлый и чёрный цвѣтъ противоположны.
The first and second hours are spent.	Первый и второй часъ проведены.

### To feel,

### Чувствовать, I. 4.

I feel, я чувствую.  
 Thou feelest, ты чувствуешь.  
 He feels, онъ чувствуетъ.  
 I felt, я чувствовалъ, а, о.  
 I shall feel, я буду чувствовать.

We feel, мы чувствуемъ.  
 You feel, вы чувствуете.  
 They feel, они чувствуютъ.  
 We felt, мы чувствовали.  
 We shall feel, мы будемъ чувствовать.

Feel, чувствуй; plural, чувствуйте.

How do you feel?

Какъ вы себя чувствуете?

Less, fewer,

Мѣнѣе.

Less, fewer—than,

Мѣнѣе—нежели.

He has fewer horses than I.

У него мѣнѣе лошадей нежели у меня.

He has less cloth than you.

У него мѣнѣе сукна нежели у васъ.

OBS. 9.—‘Less’ and ‘fewer’ are rendered by мѣнѣе, which governs the genitive.

Much,  
 Much better.  
 Much worse.  
 Much stronger.  
 Much weaker.

Горáздо.  
 Горáздо лúче.  
 Горáздо хúже.  
 Горáздо сильнѣе.  
 Горáздо слабѣе.

OBS. 10.—‘Much,’ before a comparative, is translated горáздо.

Do you drink wine ?	Рáзвѣ вы пьёте вино ?
Does he not speak ?	Рáзвѣ онъ не говоритъ ?
Was then the house his ?	Рáзвѣ домъ былъ его ?
Yes, it was his.	Да, ёто былъ его домъ.

OBS. 11.—English interrogative sentences expressing doubt, or in which ‘do’ is used with a certain emphasis, are rendered by рáзвѣ.

To draw,	Рисовáть.
To fret,	Тосковáть.
To fret after,	Тосковáть по (with the prepositional).

To draw a picture.	Нарисовáть картинy.
To draw a picture (likeness).	Нарисовáть портрётъ.
He drew a picture.	Онъ нарисовáлъ картинy.
He was drawing.	Онъ рисовáлъ.

It hails,	Градъ идётъ.
It freezes,	Морóзить (impersonal verb).

To-day the weather is fine, but the day before yesterday we had rain.	Сегóдня прекрасная погóда, но третьяго дня шёлъ дождь.
---	--

It was damp yesterday, but to-morrow it will be dry.	Вчера было сыро, но завтра будетъ сýхо.
--	---

It rains fast.	Идётъ сильный дождь.
----------------	----------------------

We shall have rain.	Будетъ дождь.
---------------------	---------------

The thunderstorm has ceased.	Гроза прошла.
------------------------------	---------------

Storm, бýря.

Sleet, гололедица.

Warmth, тепло.

Frost, морóзъ.

Hail, градъ.

The cold, холодъ.

## EXERCISE LXVI.

What are you doing there?—I am drawing.—What are you drawing?—I am drawing a little horse for my sister. Does this officer's sister dance well?—She dances excellently.—With whom did your niece dance at the countess's ball?—She did not dance with anybody, she never dances. Whom is this little girl kissing?—She kisses her kind nurse.—After whom is this unfortunate widow fretting? She is fretting after her son.—Where is her son?—He is abroad.—Who has fewer friends than we?—We have fewer friends than you.—Has the German as much of your money as of his own?—He has less of his own than of ours.—What have you seen in Riga?—I saw there many lofty houses and many broad streets, but few large gardens, and not a single park.—Have I taken your gloves, or my own?—You have taken your own, and my sister took mine.—What kind of weather had you yesterday in the village?—It was very cold there the day before yesterday, but yesterday it was warm.—Which dresses did she bring?—She brought the white and yellow dresses.—*Did not* she bring the red also?—No, she did not bring it.—How is the road?—The road is very bad.—Has their neighbour as many dogs as horses?—He has fewer of the latter than of the former. Has the merchant as many ships as we?—He has fewer ships than we, and we have less corn than he.—Is it hot out?—No, it is raining.—Were the peasants sowing barley yesterday?—No, the whole of yesterday it was snowing and hailing.—It has left off snowing now, and therefore go and tell the peasants that they may sow the corn.—How are your meadows?—They are already green.—Why did you not come to us yesterday?—I did not come to you



because the weather was too bad.—Does this Italian draw well?—Yes, but that Frenchman draws still better.—Did the German describe France well?—He described it much better than the Italian.—Which pen had you and which had he?—I had the pen you see here, and he had my sister's pen.—Does your sister write as well as you?—She writes much better than I.—Did the laundress wash your linen? What kind of wreath had the charming bride on her head? She had a wreath of real flowers.

### EXERCISE LXVII.

Is her dress as pretty as mine?—Her dress is much prettier than yours.—How is the weather to-day out?—The weather to-day is much better than yesterday.—Is it raining?—No, it has left off raining, only it is a little dull. You are pale to-day, are you ill then?—No, I am not ill, but I do not feel quite well.—How did you feel (yourself) yesterday?—I felt much better than to-day.—Is the cold great to-day?—No, it is not cold to-day, one may even say that it is warm, but the weather is disagreeable.—Has the cook brought the boiled eggs?—Yes, she has brought them already.—Are you going on foot to the railway?—No, I do not like to go on foot, I am going in a carriage, and I have already sent my servant for one.—Did she cook to-day?—Yes, she made a soup with greens, and roasted a fat turkey, which I will eat at my dinner with some salad. How many times have you been this year to the French plays?—Only three times; only five times.—How many horses have you got?—I have a pair only, but they gallop excellently.—Who is this woman?—It is the woman who washes our linen.—Does she wash also the floors?—She



does not wash any floors, she washes linen only.—Whose is that charming child that plays at ball in the garden yonder?—It is the rich banker's little son.—Where did you bring these fruits from?—I brought them from the garden. Are they ripe?—They are riper than those which our kind aunt brought for us yesterday.

---

### THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

Три́дцать четвёртый Уро́къ.

*Of the Infinitive (continued).*

CLASS 5 has the infinitive in **ать** preceded by a consonant, first person in **у** :

Рв-ать, to tear ; рв-у, I tear.

Жд-ать, to wait ; жд-у, I wait.

CLASS 6 the infinitive in **ть** preceded by a vowel, first person in **у, му, ну** :

Жи-ть, to live ; жи-у́, I live.

Плы-ть, to swim ; плы-у́, I swim.

OBS. 1.—Of the twelve verbs belonging to this class, six only preserve the vowel in the indicative ; the other six have the vowel before **м, н**, either changed or left out, as :

Жать, to squeeze ; жму, I squeeze.

Ять, to take ; яму́, I take.

CLASS 7 has the infinitive in **ть** or **ти́**, first person in **у** after consonants **б, д, т, з, с, р, г, к** :

Вес-ти́, to lead ; ве-ду́, I lead.

Грес-ти́, to row ; гре-бу́, I row.

CLASS 8 has the infinitive in нуть, first person in ну preceded generally by a consonant :

Зѣб-нуть, to feel cold ; зѣб-ну, I feel cold.

Лѣп-нуть, to adhere ; лѣп-ну, I adhere.

To take,	Брать, }	I. 5.
To call,	Звать, }	

OBS. 2.—Some monosyllabic verbs of the fifth class take the euphonic e or o :

I take, etc., я берѹ, ты берёшь, онъ берётъ.

We take, etc., мы берёмъ, вы берёте, онѣ берѹтъ.

I call, etc., я зовѹ, ты зовёшь, онъ зовётъ.

We call, etc., мы зовёмъ, вы зовёте, онѣ зовѹтъ.

I called, я звалъ, звали, звалб.

We called, мы звали.

I will call, я буду звать.

We will call, мы будемъ звать.

Call, зовѣ, зовите.

To take,	{ Брать, imperfect aspect.
	{ Взять, perfect aspect.

I took, я бралъ.

We took, мы брали.

I will take, я буду брать, etc.

We will take, мы будемъ брать, etc.

I have taken, я взялъ.

Take, бери, берите.

We have taken, мы взяли,

I will take, etc., я возьмѹ, ты возьмёшь, онъ возьмётъ.

We will take, etc., мы возьмёмъ, вы возьмёте, онѣ возьмѹтъ.

Take, возьми, возьмите.

Not long ago, lately,

The other day, lately,

He was at home not long ago.

We saw him the other day.

In summer, лѣтомъ.

In spring, весною.

In the morning, утромъ.

Давеча.

Намѣдни.

Онъ давеча былъ дома.

Мы видѣли его намѣднѣ.

In autumn, осенью.

In winter, зимою.

At night, ночью.

**OBS. 3.**—Times of the day or seasons, in answer to the question ‘when?’ ‘at what time?’ when standing alone, are put in the instrumental case; but when they are in conjunction with some determinative word they are put in the accusative, with the preposition **въ**.

It is warm in summer, but cold in autumn and winter.

This winter is extremely cold.

Last summer we had very little fruit.

Last night he came to us.

He came at night.

I am a man and she is a woman.

ЛѢТОМЪ жарко, но осенью и зимою холодно.

Нынѣшняя зима чрезвычайно холодна.

Въ прошлое лѣто у насъ было очень мало плодовъ.

Въ прошлую ночь онъ пришёлъ къ намъ.

Онъ пришёлъ ночью.

Я мужчи́на а она́ же́нщина.

**OBS. 4.**—A substantive predicate is put in the nominative when connected with the subject of the proposition by the present tense of the verb ‘to be,’ **БЫТЬ**.

A man is a sensible being.

London and Moscow are cities.

Both the horse and the ass are domestic animals.

Both Andrew and Nicholas were uncle’s children.

Adam was the first husbandman.

Человѣкъ есть существо разумное.

Лондонъ и Москва суть города.

И лошадь и осёлъ суть домашнія животныя.

Андрей и Николай были дѣдины дѣти.

Адамъ былъ первымъ земледѣльцемъ.

**OBS. 5.**—A substantive predicate connected with the subject by the past tense of the verb **БЫТЬ**, ‘**БЫЛЪ**,’ is put in the nominative when it denotes some natural state of the subject, and in the instrumental when it denotes some state dependent on some act of the subject; in the latter case the verb **БЫЛЪ** becomes a predicate, and the substantive its complement.

Cain was Adam’s son.

Каинъ былъ сынъ Адама.

Cain was the murderer of his brother Abel.

He was my brother.

He was a diligent boy, but now he is lazy.

Intolerable, нестерпимый.

Suffocating, душной.

Dusty, пыльный.

Windy, ветряный.

Witty, остроумный.

To write, написать, perf. asp.

A criminal, преступникъ.

Кáинъ былъ убійцею брата своего Авеля.

Онъ былъ мой братъ.

Онъ былъ прилежнымъ мальчикомъ, а теперь лѣнивъ.

Heat, жаръ, жарá.

Sultriness, зной.

Temperate, умеренный.

Overwhelmed, сокрушённый.

Still, calm, тихий.

To finish ploughing, вспахать.

An evil-doer, злодѣй.

Rough sea, бурное море.

Pleased, glad,

Радъ, а, о, (gov. the dat.).

OBS. 6.—The adjective радъ has the apocopated form only.

Who is glad to see you?

I am glad.

Is she glad?

He is glad you came.

I am glad of it.

Good morning.

I wish you good health.

Кто радъ видѣть васъ?

Я радъ.

Рада ли она?

Онъ радъ что вы пришли.

Я этому радъ.

Здравствуйте.

† Добраго здорóвья (желаю вамъ).

OBS. 7.—Желаю вамъ, 'I wish you,' is usually omitted.

Other (the rest),

Прóчий.

Peter and John had some tobacco, but all the others had none.

Only this river is navigable, all others are not.

Summer, *adjective*, лѣтний.

Winter, *adjective*, зимний.

The learning, study, учéние.

Abraham, Авраáмъ.

Abel, Авель.

У Петра и у Пв́ана былъ табáкъ, но у всѣхъ прóчихъ не было.

Только эта рѣ́ка судоходна, всѣ прóчія не судоходны.

Spring, *adjective*, весéнный.

Autumn, *adjective*, осéнный.

Morning, *adjective*, ў́тренний.

Adam, Ада́мъ.

Eve, Ева.

Et cætera, и прóчее.



## EXERCISE LXVIII.

Who were the first people?—Adam and Eve were the first people.—Has your friend always been a master?—No, he was formerly a military man.—Who was the murderer of Abel?—His brother Cain.—Were you at the grand duchess's ball?—Yes, but only a few guests danced at that ball, all the others played at cards.—Was your school-mistress with you at the theatre?—She was not there, but her husband was there with me; he felt cold, but I felt warm.—Did you go to the village on horseback or in a carriage?—The road was very dusty, and therefore I went on horseback, and not in a carriage.—We had a fine, light coach and four excellent horses.—How was the road in spring?—Extremely muddy.—And the weather?—It was frightfully cold, and our fur-coats were not warm enough. How is the climate in Russia?—It is very hot and dusty there in summer, in winter very cold and dry, in spring it is temperate, but muddy, and in autumn, although not cold, yet very damp.—With whom are you going home in the evening?—With Captain Petrof.—How many sisters had your neighbour, the tailoress?—She had five sisters. Had not she three little girls and two boys?—No, all her children were girls.—Are the horse and the ass useful animals? Both the horse and the ass are useful animals.—How is the country in which you passed all last summer?—It is a charming one.—You see there large forests, with old high pines, fertile fields, luxuriant green meadows; you see there healthy people only, men and women, old men and children, and not a single pale or unhealthy face.—Did the young Frenchmen that were with you on the steamer eat much?—They ate little, but they drank much.—Did the

pretty Frenchwomen drink much also?—They did not eat, did not drink, and did not talk with anybody.—Was the sea calm?—During the day it was calm, but in the evening, at night, and early in the morning it was very stormy. How are the summer days in Siberia?—The summer days in that country are tolerably warm, but the long winter nights are very cold.

### EXERCISE LXIX.

Who is calling you?—The gardener is calling me.—Did the gardener's wife call you also?—No, she did not call me.—Do you take your son with you to the theatre?—No, I never take him with me, because he is still too young. Whom are they calling?—They call nobody.—What are you taking there?—I take the book which you have ordered me to take.—Call your brother and tell him that it is time to dine, and that all in the dining-room are already dining.—I called him twice, but he says that he cannot come, because he has to learn his lessons.—Have you seen in the prison the obstinate criminal, who has fetters on his hands and feet?—I saw him, but he is not obstinate now, but overwhelmed with grief and misfortune; he is now no longer an evildoer, but an unfortunate man. Why do you tear this velvet?—I do not tear it, but cut it.—Where do you live in winter?—We live in winter and autumn in town, and in summer and spring in the village. Do you feel cold in winter?—I feel cold when out, but I do not feel cold in the room.—Have you taken a cigar already?—No, I have not yet, but I will take one.—When was your brother at the banker's?—He was at the banker's the other day.—Is it windy out of doors?—The weather is fine to day, but it was very windy yesterday.—To whom

were you speaking this morning?—I spoke to a friend of mine, an Englishman; but do you not know him?—No, I have not the honour.—Have you written the letter? No, I have not written it yet, but I will write it.—When will you write it?—To-morrow morning or after dinner, when I shall have time for it.—Are your peasants ploughing already?—They have already finished ploughing and are now sowing wheat, oats and barley.—Good morning, my dear Basil, son of Peter, I am very glad to see you and (all) yours in good health.—Where are you leading your little daughter?—I am leading her to the school.—Do you take her there often?—I take her there every day.—Did not the seamstress lose something?—Yes, she lost a little needle.—Is your sister pleased that we take her with us this evening to the theatre?—Yes, she is very pleased.

---

### THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Тридцать пятый Урокъ.

#### *Of the Infinitive (continued).*

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS 9 has the infinitive in *ѣть*, preceded by the radical consonants *б, п, м, н, л, р, д, т, с*; the first person is like that of the second class, *i.e.* *ю, (жу, чу, шу, шу).*

Скорбѣть, to sorrow; скорбѣ-ю, I sorrow.

Велѣть, to order; велѣ-ю, I order.

Сидѣть, to sit; сидѣ-ю, I sit.

OBS. 1.—The euphonic *л* is inserted after *б, м, п, and д, т, с* are changed into their corresponding consonants *ж, ч, ш* in the first person *only*.

Терпѣть, to endure; терпѣ-ю, терпишь, etc.

Видѣть, to see; видѣ-ю, видишь, etc.



To this class must be added :

*a.* Verbs in ять, preceded by a radical vowel, as :

Сто-ять, to stand ; сто-ю, I stand.

*b.* And those verbs in ать, preceded by ж, ч, ш, in which ѣ after these consonants is changed into а for euphony, as :

Леж-ать, to lie down ; леж-у, I lie down.

CLASS 10 has the infinitive in ить, first person in ю, (жу, чу, шу, щу).

Стр-ить, to build ; стр-ю, I build.

Цѣн-ить, to value ; цѣн-ю, I value.

Люб-ить, to love ; люб-л-ю, I love.

Ход-ить, to walk ; хо-ж-у, I walk.

ОBS. 2.—The insertion of an л after б, п, м, as also the change of consonants for euphony, is made in the first person only.

NOTE.—Verbs of the first eight classes belonging to the first conjugation have the second person singular of the present indicative in ешь ; and the last two classes belonging to the second conjugation, have the second person of the present indicative in ишь.

To endure, to bear,

To be hanging,

To make a noise, to bluster,

Терп-ѣть.

Вис-ѣть.

Шум-ѣть.

} II. 9.

I endure, etc., я терп-лю, ты терпишь, онъ терпитъ.

We endure, etc., мы терпимъ, вы терпите, они терпятъ.

I endured, я терп-ѣлъ.

Endure, терпи, терпите.

I am hanging, etc., я вис-ю, ты вис-ишь, онъ вис-итъ.

We are hanging, etc., мы висимъ, вы висите, они висятъ.

I was hanging, я вис-ѣлъ.

Be hanging, вис, висите,



To fly,                    Летѣть, definite II. 9.  
To fly,                    Летать, indefinite I. 1.

*Defin. Imp. Asp.*                    *Indefin. Imp. Asp.*

Летѣть, to fly ;	летать.
Я летѣю, I fly ;	я летаю.
Ты летѣшь, thou flyest ;	ты летаешь.
Онъ летѣтъ, he flies ;	онъ летаетъ.
Мы летѣмъ, we fly ;	мы летаемъ.
Вы летѣте, you fly ;	вы летаете.
Онѣ летѣтъ, they fly ;	онѣ летаютъ.
Я летѣлъ, I was flying ;	я леталъ.
Летѣи, летѣте, fly ;	летай, летайте.

To hear,                    Слышать, II. 9.  
To listen to,               Слушать, I. 1.  
To obey,                    Слушаться, I. 1.

Obs. 3.—Слушать governs the accusative, and слушаться, the genitive.

Do you hear the singing of the nightingale ?	Слышите ли вы пѣніе соловья ?
Yes, I do.	Да, слышу.
Whom are you listening to ?	Кого вы слушаете ?
I am listening to the master.	Я слушаю учителя.
She is listening, but does not hear.	Она слушаетъ, но не слышитъ.
Do you obey your master ?	Слушаетесь ли вы своего учителя ?
Yes, I do obey him.	Да, я его всегда слушаюсь.

Or (otherwise), or (if not),	А то, не то.
Do not make a noise, or you will wake the sick mother.	Не шумѣте, а то разбудите больную мать.
Give this beggar some money, or he will die of hunger.	Дайте этому нищему денегъ, не то онъ умрѣтъ съ голоду.

#### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

#### Степени Сравненія.

The adjective in Russian, as in English, possesses three

degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative and the superlative.

Adjectives denoting quality or quantity, as also adverbs derived from adjectives, form the comparative by a change in the termination of the positive, as :

Добрый, kind ; добрейшій, добрѣе, kinder.

Сильный, strong ; сильнѣйшій, сильнѣе, stronger.

There are two different forms of the comparative : one declinable, ending in *ѣйшій*, *айшій*, *шій*, formed of adjectives with full termination, and another indeclinable, ending in *ѣе*, *е*, formed of apocopated adjectives.

Добрѣйшая женщина. Kinder woman.

Добрѣйшіе люди. Kinder people.

OBS. 4.—The declinable comparatives have all the genders and both numbers, and are generally placed before a noun, while the indeclinable ones, like the apocopated adjectives they are derived from, are invariable, and are put after a noun, as :

Человѣкъ добрѣе, The man is kinder.

Жена добрѣе, The wife is kinder.

Люди добрѣе, People are kinder.

The termination *ѣйшій* is placed after the radical consonants *в*, *б*, *п*, *м*, *н*, *л*, *р*, *д*, *т*, as :

Дешёвый, cheap ; дешевѣйшій, cheaper.

Слабый, weak ; слабѣйшій, weaker.

*Exceptions :* Молодой, young ; младшій, younger.

Худой, bad ; худшій, worse.

OBS. 5.—Adjectives in *зый*, *сый*, *жій*, *щій*, have no declinable comparative.

Adjectives in *гій*, *кій*, *хій*, form the comparative in *жайшій*, *чайшій*, *шайшій*, as :

Строгий, severe ; строжайшій, more severe.

Крѣпкій, strong ; крѣпчайшій, stronger.

Вѣтхій, old ; ветшайшій, older.

Obs. 6.—Most adjectives in *гій, кій, хій*, have no declinable comparative.

Obs. 7.—The following entirely alter their form in the comparative.

Великій, great; большій, greater.  
Хорошій, good; лучшій, better.  
Малый, small; меньшій, smaller.

Obs. 8.—The following adjectives in *кій*, preceded by a consonant, and in *окій*, form their comparatives in various ways, dropping at the same time *к, ок*.

Краткій, } short; кратчайшій, shorter.  
Короткій, }  
Близкій, near; ближайшій, nearer.  
Низкій, low, vile; нижайшій, lower.  
Широкій, broad; ширшій, broader.  
Высокій, high; вышій, higher.  
Глубокій, deep; глубочайшій, deeper.  
Тонкій, thin; тончайшій, thinner.  
Долгий, long; дольшешій, longer.  
Далекій, distant; дальнейшій, more distant.

Obs. 9.—Adjectives wanting either of the above comparatives express the comparative by adding *болѣ*, 'more,' as:

Болѣ узкій, More narrow.  
Болѣ радъ, More glad.

Obs. 10.—The declinable comparative is used instead of the superlative when *изъ всѣхъ*, 'of all,' (than any) is understood, as:

Легчайшій (изъ всѣхъ) lighter than any, lightest.  
Лучшій (изъ всѣхъ), better than any, best.

The same result is obtained by adding the prefix *наи*, as:

Наилучшій, The best.  
Наихудшій, The worst.

The superlative is formed by adding *самый*, 'most,' to the positive.

<i>Самый прекрасный,</i>	Most beautiful.
<i>Самый лёгкий,</i>	Lightest.
<i>Самый добрый,</i>	Kindest.
To respect, to revere,	Уважать, почитать.
To peck,	Клевать.
<i>Вредный.</i>	Famous, славный.
<i>Полит, учтивый.</i>	Good tempered, благоправный.
<i>Пречист, драгоценный.</i>	Obedient, послушный.
<i>Envy, зависть, f.</i>	Conscience, совесть, f.
<i>Gambling, игра.</i>	A favourite, любимецъ.
<i>Raspberry, малина.</i>	Gooseberry, крыжовникъ.
<i>Strawberry, клубника.</i>	Currant, смородина.
A blessing,	Благо.
Your obedient servant.	Вашъ покорный слуга.
Your most obedient servant.	Вашъ покорнѣйшій слуга.
A bird of prey.	Хищная птица.
Younger brother.	Младшій братъ.
Eldes son.	Старшій сынъ.

### EXERCISE LXX.

What are these stone-masons building?—They are building a house for the richest and most liberal merchant in the town.—Has he a good garden?—His garden is the finest in the town.—Which is the prettiest animal? The horse is the prettiest and most useful of our domestic animals.—Where is your friend?—She is sitting on the bench in the garden.—What are you sitting upon?—I am sitting on a chair and the little dog is lying at my feet.—Which is the most harmful passion? Gambling is the most harmful passion, and envy is the vilest.—Where are you going?—I am going to the cleverest and most experienced doctor in the town, because



health is man's most precious treasure.—Yes, my friend, health and a tranquil conscience are the greatest blessings. Do you see that youth, whom all his friends respect? Yes; he is the politest and most diligent of all the pupils. The hare is the most timid animal.—What is that hanging on the nail?—A beautiful picture is hanging on the nail.—Which is the pleasantest season of the year?—Spring is the pleasantest, and summer is the warmest season.—The eagle is the largest and strongest of all birds of prey.—The highest mountains are in Switzerland, and the largest rivers in America.—Can all birds fly?—Most birds fly, but there are birds which cannot fly.—Can the ostrich fly?—No, the ostrich is a bird which cannot fly, but only walk.—Whither are these pigeons flying?—They are flying to their nests. Who is our best friend?—A good book is our best, truest and most sincere friend, and also our pleasantest companion. Do you hear what they say?—I am listening, but I do not hear, because I am sitting too far from them.—The most faithful friend is not as true as the Bible, and the cleverest companions are not as witty and wise as the fables of the famous fabulist Æsop.—The Volga is the largest river in Russia.—The longest day and the shortest night is on the twenty-first of June; the shortest day and the longest night is on the twenty-first of December.

#### EXERCISE LXXI.

Will all the lady pupils go with us to the theatre to-day? No, we take with us the most diligent only.—What does this woman trade in?—She trades in fruit.—What fruit has she?—She has most excellent raspberries, large (крупные) plums, pears, apples, and fresh gooseberries.—Is it

true that the elephant is the most sagacious animal?—Yes, it is true.—Did you bring some gold?—I only brought some silver.—I advise you to bring some gold, or it will be impossible to buy that expensive horse.—Did the cook buy some fruit and some wine?—He bought some of the best wine, and some most excellent fruit.—Are you standing or sitting?—I am sitting, and not standing.—Are they sitting also?—No, they are not sitting, but standing.—The cleverest people are not always the richest or happiest, and the richest people are not always the most liberal.—Where did you spend the last spring and winter?—We spent the most agreeable season in Italy, and the coldest in Egypt. To whom did you give those French books?—I gave them to your eldest brother.—Did you also give something to my youngest brother?—No, I gave nothing to your youngest brother.—What does he advise you (to do)?—He advises me to take lessons.—Have your brothers many sparrows? They have pigeons only, they have no sparrows.—Who pecks the cherries in the garden?—The sparrows peck them, and I advise you to send the gardener there, or you will not have any cherries at all.—Of what do boys build their little houses?—They build them of cards.—Whom do you now rely upon?—I do not rely now upon any body, but formerly I relied upon my friends.—What does the merchant advise his clerk to do?—He does not advise him, he orders (him). What does he order him to do?—He orders him to take the money to the richest banker in the town.—Did he take it to him?—Yes he has taken it already.—What does the nurse advise the children to do?—She advises them not to eat unripe fruit.—Do your children obey their nurse? They always obey her; my children are very obedient.

## THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Тридцать шестой Урокъ.

## FORMATION OF THE INDECLINABLE COMPARATIVES.

He is stronger.	Онъ сильнѣе.
The father is kinder.	Отецъ добрѣе.
The sister is richer.	Сестра богаче.
The wine is cheaper.	Вино дешевле.
The houses are higher.	Дома выше.

The indeclinable or apocopated comparative is formed from the positive by changing the terminations of the latter into *ѣе* or *е*, as :

Слабый, слабъ, weak ;	слабѣе, weaker.
Твёрдый, твёрдъ, hard ;	твёрже, harder.
Умный, умёнъ, clever ;	умнѣе, cleverer.
Частый, частъ, frequent ;	чаще, more frequent.

Adjectives having the declinable comparative in *ѣйшій*, take *ѣе*, as :

<i>Declinable.</i>	<i>Indeclinable.</i>
Добрѣйшій, kinder ;	добрѣе.
Слабѣйшій, weaker ;	слабѣе.
Сильнѣйшій, stronger ;	сильнѣе, etc.

OBS. 1.—The following are exceptions to the above rule :

<i>Declinable.</i>	<i>Indeclinable.</i>
Дешевѣйшій, cheaper ;	дешевле.
Твердѣйшій, harder ;	твёрже.
Богатѣйшій, richer ;	богаче.
Густѣйшій, thicker ;	гуще.
Крутѣйшій, steeper ;	круче.

Adjectives in *зый*, *сый*, *жій* and *чій*, have the indeclinable comparative only :

Лысый, bald ;	лысѣе, balder.
Свѣжій, fresh ;	свѣжѣе, fresher.
Сізый, (dark) blue ;	сизѣе, bluer.
Горячій, warm ;	горячѣе, warmer.



Adjectives in *гій, кій, хій* form their indeclinable comparative in *е*, changing at the same time *г, к, х* into *ж, ч, ш*.

Крѣпкій, strong ; comparative крѣпче.

Строгий, severe ; comparative строже.

Вѣтхій, old ; comparative вѣтше.

Obs. 2 —The following in *кій* take *чѣ* instead of *че* ; some take both *ѣ* and *е*, as :

Дикій, wild ; comparative дичѣ.

Бойкій, bold ; comparative бойчѣ.

Жалкій, miserable ; comparative жалчѣ́е and жалче.

Звонкій, sonorous ; comparative звончѣ́е and звонче.

Ловкій, clever ; comparative ловчѣ́е and ловче.

The following form their indeclinable comparative in various ways :

Короткій, short ; comparative короче.

Кроткій, kind ; . . . кроче.

Близкій, near ; . . . ближе.

Низкій, low ; . . . ниже.

Узкій, narrow ; . . . уже.

Широкій, broad ; . . . шире.

Высокій, high ; . . . выше.

Глубокій, deep ; . . . глубже.

Слабкій, slack ; . . . слабже.

Тонкій, thin ; . . . тоньше.

Долгий, long ; . . . дольше.

Далёкій, distant ; . . . дальше.

Obs. 3.—Горькій, ‘bitter,’ according to its meaning, has a double comparative in each form : горча́йший or горшій and горче or горше.

Wormwood is more bitter than mustard.      По́льнь горче горчи́цы.

The poor man’s life was still sadder than before.      Жи́знъ бѣдня́ка была́ ещё́ горше́ чѣмъ пре́жде.

In the following *д* is changed into *ж*, and *ст* into *щ* :

Молодой, young ; comparative моло́же.

Худой, bad ; comparative хуже.



Толстый, thick ; comparative толще.

Простой, simple ; comparative проще.

OBS. 4.—The following indeclinable comparatives in *e* are formed from the declinable comparatives, and not from the positive degree.

Великій, great ; comparative	{ declinable большій. indeclinable больше.
Малый, small ; comparative	{ declinable меньшій. indeclinable меньше.
Хорошій, good ; comparative	{ declinable лучшій. indeclinable лучше.
Красный, fair ; comparative	красше.

OBS. 5.—From the comparatives большій and меньшій, are derived the adjectives

Большой, 'large,' and меньшой, 'small.'

Большой is used also instead of великій, when it denotes size, as : большой домъ, 'a large house,' instead of великій домъ.

The comparative of the following adjectives and adverbs must not be confounded :

<i>Adjectives.</i>	<i>Adverbs.</i>
Longer, больше.	Longer (time), долѣе.
More distant, дальше.	Farther, дальѣе.
Thinner, тоньше.	Thinner, тонѣе.
Larger, больше.	More, болѣе.
Smaller, меньше.	Less, менѣе.

OBS. 6.—The comparative of all other adverbs is exactly the same as that of the indeclinable adjectives they are derived from.

I was here longer than you.

This war was longer than that one.

We went farther.

Я былъ здѣсь долѣе нежели вы.

Эта война была дольше той.

Мы пошли дальѣе.

That forest is more distant from  
here than that river.

I have more books than he.

This book is larger than that.

I have less money than he.

These tables are smaller than those.

The ice is thinner than it was last  
year.

My paper is thinner than yours.

Тотъ лѣсъ дѣльше отсюда рѣкѣ, чѣмъ  
та рѣка.

У меня болѣе книгъ чѣмъ у него.

Эта книга болѣе той.

У меня мѣньше денегъ чѣмъ у него.

Эти столы мѣньше тѣхъ.

Лѣдъ тонѣе чѣмъ въ прошломъ году.

Моя бумага тонѣе вашей.

A little larger,

Поболѣе.

A little smaller,

Помѣньше.

OBS. 7.—The preposition *по* is added to the indeclinable comparative when the object compared is not mentioned, as :

A larger house is taken.

Нанять домъ побольше.

But when the object of comparison is mentioned, the comparative must be without the preposition *по*, as :

Your house is larger and more  
roomy than ours.

Вашъ домъ болѣе и просторнѣе  
нашего.

OBS. 8.—The preposition *по*, if used when the object of comparison is mentioned, modifies the comparative and signifies ‘a little,’ as :

Your book is a little better than  
ours.

Ваша книга получше нашей.

This horse is a little stronger than  
that one.

Эта лошадь посиленѣе той.

As—as,

Такъ—какъ.

OBS. 9.—In the comparative of equality *такъ* is usually left out in affirmative sentences.

He is as rich as Croesus.

Онъ (такъ) богать какъ Крезъ.

Stronger.

Сильнѣе, сильнѣй.

OBS. 10.—The comparative termination *ѣ* can be shortened in all adjectives into *ѣй*.

The—the, Чѣмъ—тѣмъ.

OBS. 11.—‘The,’—‘the’ before a comparative are rendered Чѣмъ тѣмъ.

The larger a horse is, the stronger it is. Чѣмъ больше лошадь, тѣмъ она сильнѣе.

OBS. 12.—There are qualifying adjectives which do not admit of any comparison. To this class belong adjectives denoting a quality of which a larger or smaller measure is impossible, as :

Square, квадратный.  
Married, женатый.  
Childless, бездѣтный.  
Homeless, бездомный.

Armless, безрукій.  
Footless, безногий.  
Barefoot, босой.  
Pedestrian, пѣшій, etc.

OBS. 13.—The object of comparison once mentioned need not be repeated.

What cloth is better than German (cloth) ?

Какъе сукно́ лучше нѣмецкаго ?

English cloth is better than German.

Англійское сукно́ лучше нѣмецкаго.

As (like),

Какъ.

Do it as you are told and not in your own way.

Дѣлайте это какъ вамъ приказываютъ, а не по своему.

OBS. 14.—There are in the Russian language only four adjectives having the superlative with declinable terminations; these are :

Largest, величайшій.  
Highest, высочайшій.

Smallest, малѣйшій.  
Lowest, низчайшій.

Best of all,

Лучше всѣхъ.

Obs. 15.—The superlative is also formed by adding *всѣхъ*, 'of all,' to the indeclinable comparative.

He is the kindest of all.  
She is the prettiest of all.

Онъ добрѣе всѣхъ.  
Она красивѣе всѣхъ.

For, { Ибо (rarely used).  
          { Потому что.

Read the Bible, for it is the best  
book.

Читайте Библию, ибо это самая луч-  
шая книга.

By (on), По (governs the dative).

By which road do you wish to go?  
I will go by the nearest road.

По какой дорогѣ вы желаете идти?  
Я пойду по ближайшей дорогѣ.

## EXERCISE LXXII.

Is it agreeable to live in town in the summer?—It is very agreeable, but to live in a village in the summer is still more agreeable and healthier than in town.—Is it as warm to-day as it was yesterday?—To-day is much warmer than yesterday.—Whose daughter is more diligent and more amiable than all the other pupils?—Our neighbour's daughter is the most diligent and most amiable of all.—Are all girls as charming and amiable as his sister?—His sister is kind and amiable, but her friend is kinder and more amiable, and their schoolmistress is the most amiable and charming of all.—Whose house is the finest of all?—The uncle's house, which you see on the other side of the river, is the finest of all.—Our neighbour's dog is very pretty. That is true, but my dog is prettier than that of the neighbour.—Which horses are the dearest?—Arabian horses are the dearest.—Where were you yesterday?—We were in the new theatre, which is much more luxurious and more roomy than the old one.—Are these merchant-ships as large and



strong as those war-ships?—No, war-ships are always larger and stronger than merchant-ships.—Which horse is the larger, yours or that of the Englishman?—My horse is larger, but that of the Englishman is prettier and more expensive than mine.—The nearer to the North, the longer are the days in summer, and the shorter the nights.—Which is the most expensive stone of all?—The diamond is dearer than all other precious stones.—What country is more mountainous than France?—Switzerland is more mountainous than France, but France is larger and richer than Switzerland. Is the stag as swift as the horse?—The stag is much swifter than the horse.—Which street is the broader, this or that?—That is the broader, but this is the brighter, for the houses are lower.—We have bought all this a little cheaper than before.—Is Moscow rich?—Yes, Moscow is one of the richest cities of Russia.—Who came here later than you?—Everybody came earlier than I.—These trees are higher and greener than those.—These houses are a little higher, but those are a little more roomy.—In spring the sky is clearer and the air is purer, more agreeable and warmer, than in autumn.—Man can live anywhere, both in the warmest and the coldest countries.

#### EXERCISE LXXIII.

Is the river Dnieper deep?—It is not everywhere equally deep, some places are deep and others are deeper or more shallow.—Which wine is the cheaper, the red or the white?—The white is the cheaper, but the red is the better.—Have you in England coal and iron?—There is more coal and iron in England than in France.—Who is the more diligent, your eldest or your youngest son?—My youngest son is much more diligent and more obedient than my eldest.

Where does he want to go?—To the field and into the forest.—Why not into the garden?—The forest is the nearest. Old men are generally more experienced than young men. Is the cupola of this church as high as the tower of that strong castle?—The cupola of this church is not only higher than that tower, but it is also higher than all the other cupolas and towers in the city.—Which do you like the best, summer or spring?—I like summer better (more) than spring, because it is warmer in summer.—France is larger and more populous than Holland, but Russia is not only larger than France, but it is also the most populous country in Europe.—Is your woollen cloth as thin as mine?—My cloth is thicker and cheaper than yours.—A mean rich man is much poorer than a beggar.—Do you want to eat now or later?—I do not want to eat now, because I have just breakfasted.—Bring a little more firewood, for it is very cold in the room.—Is your fur coat, lined with bear-skin, light? No, it is very heavy.—Is it warm?—It is warmer than all my other fur coats.—Did you live long in Italy?—I lived there longer than my brother.—Is the autumn day as long as the winter day?—The autumn day is longer than the winter one.—Who wears sable furs?—Only wives and daughters of rich men wear sable furs.—Are sheep-skins and hare-skins cheap?—They are cheaper than all other furs. Who was always the more liberal, the rich foreigner or his poor neighbour?—The first was by far the more liberal. Has he much money?—He has less money than you, but your house is smaller than his.—Whose waistcoat is the older, yours or mine?—My waistcoat is older than yours. Is he younger than his brother?—He is older than his brother.—Is his horse cheaper than yours?—His horse is cheaper, but also older and worse than mine.

## THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Тридцать седьмой Урокъ.

## AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

Russian qualifying adjectives, besides the three degrees of comparison, by means of certain terminations and prefixes, express abundance or want in the quality itself, and also strengthen or soften the original signification of the positive degree.

A. The augmentative degree denoting the quality as more abundant or stronger than usual is rendered :

a. By adding the prefix **не** to the declinable adjectives :

Бѣлый, white; пребѣлый, quite white.  
Дурной, bad; предурной, very bad.

b. By adding the terminations *ехонекъ*, *ешенекъ* or *охонекъ*, *ошенекъ* to the indeclinable adjectives :

Бѣлъ, white ; { бѣлѣхонекъ, } quite white.  
сухъ, dry ; { сухѣхонекъ, } quite dry.

Obs. 1.—The augmentative degree in adjectives is commonly rendered by adding : *совсѣмъ* or *совершенно*, ‘quite, entirely,’ to the apocopated adjectives, as :

Бѣлѣхонекъ or совершенно бѣлъ, quite white.  
Сухѣхонекъ or совершенно сухъ, quite dry.

NOTE.—The augmentative adjectives never denote a coarse deformity like that expressed by augmentative substantives.

### B. The diminutive degree denoting the quality as weaker



than usual is formed by adding *оватый, еватый* to the declinable, or *овать, евать* to the indeclinable adjectives.

Бѣлый, }	white ;	{ бѣловатый,	} whitish, rather white.
Бѣль, }		{ бѣловать,	
Синій, }	blue ;	{ синеватый,	} rather blue.
Синь, }		{ синевать,	

C. The diminutive terminations *енькой, онькой*, appropriated *енекъ, онекъ* are made use of to soften or modify the original signification of the adjective. These terminations are generally used before the substantives in the diminutive form, as :

Бѣленькая собачка,	A little white dog.
Синенькой платочекъ,	A little blue handkerchief.

Every qualifying adjective cannot have all the above mentioned degrees of signification ; therefore the following rules must be observed :

1. The diminutive terminations *оватый, еватый* are added only to those qualifying adjectives that denote colour, sense, measure, form, weight and physical or moral deficiency, as :

Чёрный, black ;	diminutive ;	черноватый.
Тёплый, warm ;	. . .	теповатый.
Сладкий, sweet ;	. . .	сладковатый.
Малый, small ;	. . .	маловатый.
Круглый, round ;	. . .	кругловатый.
Лёгкий, light ;	. . .	легковатый.
Бѣдный, poor ;	. . .	бѣдноватый.
Скупой, mean ;	. . .	скуповатый.

2. On the other hand the above terminations cannot be added to qualifying adjectives denoting a physical or moral perfection, such as : 'kind,' *добрый* ; 'intelligent,' *умный* ; 'rich,' *богатый*, etc.



Obs. 2.—The diminutive terminations *оватый, еватый* must not be confounded with the similar terminations of the positive degree of derivative adjectives, such as :

Угловáтый,	Angular.
Поздревáтый,	Porous.
Винóватый,	In fault, wrong.

3. The terminations *енькой, онькой* cannot be added to adjectives ending in *кий*, preceded by a consonant and denoting a property in an inanimate object, such as : ‘fragile,’ *ломкий* ; ‘sonorous,’ *звонкий* ; ‘slippery,’ *скользкий*, etc.

4. The augmentative terminations *ехонекъ, ешенекъ* cannot be added to derivative adjectives denoting appurtenance to an object of some parts or properties and ending in *авый, атый, астый, оватый, ивый, итый, истый, овитый, ный, кий*, etc., such as :

Моложа́вый,	Young-looking.
Лѣни́вый,	Lazy.
Серди́тый,	Angry.
Кры́атый,	Winged, etc.

Obs. 3.—All such adjectives however can take the prefix *пре*, both in the declinable and indeclinable form.

Премоложа́вый, премоложа́въ,	Looking very young.
Прелѣни́вый, прелѣни́въ,	Very lazy.
Пресерди́тый, пресерди́тъ,	Very angry.

Obs. 4.—Both the augmentative and the diminutive adjectives are used affirmatively only ; therefore the negative particle *не* cannot be prefixed to them.

Obs. 5.—Augmentative and diminutive adjectives have no degrees of comparison.

In forming the augmentative and the diminutive degrees the following euphonic changes must be observed :

1. The *e* in the termination *енекъ*, *ехонекъ*, preceded by *г*, *к*, *х* is changed into *о*:

Долгій, long; diminutive долговѣйшій, долгохонекъ.  
 Высокій, high; . . . высоковѣйшій, высокохонекъ.  
 Сухой, dry; . . . суховѣйшій, сухохонекъ.

2. The terminations *ешенекъ*, *ошенекъ* cannot be added to adjectives having *з*, *с*, *ж*, *ч* or *ш* before the termination, thus:

Свѣжій, fresh; augmentative свѣжехонекъ and not свѣжешенекъ.

Obs. 6.—All other adjectives can take both the terminations *ехонекъ*, *охонекъ* and *ешенекъ*, *ошенекъ*.

Бѣлый, white; augmentative бѣлехонекъ and бѣлешенекъ.  
 Сухой, dry; augmentative сухохонекъ and сухошенекъ.

3. Adjectives in *кій*, preceded by the radical consonants *н*, *д*, *т*, *з*, *с*, *г*, form their augmentative or diminutive degree by adding *енькой*, *онькой*, *енекъ*, *онекъ*, *ехонекъ*, *охонекъ* to the radical consonant; the consonant *к*, therefore in the termination of the positive degree is left out, as:

Тонкій, thin; diminutive тоненькой, тоненекъ; augmentative тонехонекъ.  
 Лёгкій, light; diminutive лёгковѣйшій, лёгонекъ; augmentative лёгкохонекъ.

4. In the adjective *мѣгкій*, 'soft,' the consonant *г* is changed into *к*:

Мѣгкій, diminutive мѣковѣйшій, мяко́некъ; augmentative мяко́хонекъ.

5. The following in *кій* preserve the *к*:

Шибкій, swift; diminutive шибко́некъ; augmentative шибко́хонекъ.  
 Жалкій, pitiable; . . . жалко́некъ; . . . жалко́хонекъ.  
 Горькій, bitter; . . . горько́некъ; . . . горько́хонекъ.  
 Плоскій, flat; . . . плоско́некъ; . . . плоско́хонекъ.

Крѣпкій, strong ; dim. крѣпилькой and крѣпилькой ; арос. крѣпобекъ and крѣпобекъ ; augm. крѣпобонекъ.

Мелкій, shallow, small ; dim. мелконькой and меленькой ; арос. мелкбонекъ and меленець ; augm. мелкбонекъ and мелхонекъ.

To marry (to get married), neuter verb.	{ Женѣться на (with the prepositional case). Выходѣть зѣмужъ за (with the accusative).
Married to,	{ Женѣтъ на (with the prep.). Зѣмужемъ за (with the instr.).

OBS. 7.—The verb выходѣть зѣмужъ, 'to marry,' is made use of when speaking of women, having for the perfect aspect выѣти зѣмужъ, and the verb женѣться when speaking of men.

NOTE.—The present and the future of the verb женѣться are alike, *i. e.* женѣсь, жѣнишься, etc.

Who is going to get married ?	Кто жѣнится ?
He is going to get married.	Онъ жѣнится.
Whom is he going to marry ?	На комъ онъ жѣнится ?
He is going to marry my sister.	На моеѣ сестрѣ онъ жѣнится.
Is it long since he has married her ?	Давно ли онъ на ней женѣтъ ?
He has been married to her two years.	Онъ женѣтъ на ней двѣ годѣ.
Whom is she going to marry ?	За когѣ выходѣть она зѣмужъ ?
She is going to marry him.	Она выходѣть за него зѣмужъ.
She was married to him last year.	Она выѣла за него зѣмужъ въ прошломъ годѣ.
Has she been long married to him ?	Давно ли она за нимъ зѣмужемъ ?
It is not long since she was married.	Она недавно зѣмужемъ.
To marry (to perform the ceremony of marriage),	Вѣнчѣть, I. I. perfect asp. обвѣнчѣть.
Who has married them ?	Кто ихъ вѣнчалъ ?
The clergyman married them.	Священникъ вѣнчалъ ихъ.



A single man, a bachelor,	Холостой человѣкъ.
A married man,	Женатый человѣкъ.
A married woman,	Замужняя женщина.
A marriage,	Бракъ, женитьба.
A wedding,	Свадьба.
To marry for love,	Жениться по любви.
A money match,	† Бракъ по расчёту.

To marry to, act. v.

{ Выдать замужъ за.  
Женить на, perf. asp. оже-  
нить.

He has married his daughter to an officer.

Онъ выдалъ свою дочь замужъ за офицера.

He married his son to an officer's daughter.

Онъ женилъ своего сына на дочери офицера.

## EXERCISE LXXIV.

What has this pretty little girl got in her hands?—She has got a little red handkerchief.—What kind of little gown has this little girl got?—She has got a clean, white little gown and a pair of new little shoes.—How is the water of this lake?—It was coldish yesterday, but it is rather warm to-day.—How are the clothes which your tailor brought you the day before yesterday?—They are rather wide, and the sleeves are narrowish and rather short.—The rooms of the kind little old woman are rather small and cold.—Is your servant intelligent and diligent?—He is very diligent, but rather stupid.—How is your new horse (which) you bought at the fair yesterday?—It is *very* lazy, but much stronger than my other one.—This knife is quite blunt; give me another a little sharper, if you please.—Speak to him a little louder, because he is rather deaf.—How is the bread at your baker's?—It is rather stale, sourish and rather bitter.—Can you give me a hundred roubles?—I do not



know; I think that will be rather difficult, but if you like, I can give you fifty roubles now, and the other fifty roubles afterwards.—What kind of a little house has your neighbour got?—His new little house is small, but clean.—Is the weather fine?—No, it is rather damp out.—Are the streets clean? The streets are rather dirty.—How was the beer (which) you drank at the Hotel yesterday?—The beer (which) we drank there was rather thick, but not bad.

### EXERCISE LXXV.

When did your eldest brother get married?—He was married last year.—Are both your brothers married?—My eldest brother is married, but the youngest one is not yet married.—Whom did your eldest brother marry?—He married the daughter of the clergyman who married them at St. Nicholas' church.—Give this little boy a pair of boots, because the rain is pouring and it is very cold out.—Is this boy then barefoot?—No, he is not barefoot, but his boots are in holes.—Where were you going yesterday morning with your daughter?—We were going to the wedding of my niece, who has married my clerk.—Is it true that your other niece is also going to marry the rich banker?—No, it is not true; my second niece was long ago married to Captain Petrof.—Is your mistress kind, and is her husband liberal?—We have a very kind mistress and her husband is a very liberal man.—Is this river deep?—It is rather deep, but it is not broad enough for large ships. Is your coffee sweet.—My coffee is quite bitter and thoroughly cold.—To whom did you give the pens and the red ink?—I gave them to my youngest brother.—Do you see those little red flowers on that little table?—I do not see the red, but I see the little bluish flowers.—When were

you at the countess's house?—I have been there quite recently.—Was she at home?—No, she was not at home, she was at the wedding at the princess's house.—To whom did the princess marry her daughter?—She married her to a rich banker.—Is the countess's family large?—Yes, she has five sons and four daughters.—I thought that her family was less than mine.—No, you see her family is larger than yours.—Have you spoken to that married woman who has got married against her parent's will?—No, I spoke only with that single man.

#### EXERCISE LXXVI.

Where is this busy little bee flying to?—It is flying to gather the sweet honey from the flowers.—Are your rooms clean?—Our rooms are quite clean, but the floors in the vestibule are quite dirty.—Did not your servant then wash the floors to-day?—No, our servant is very lazy.—What does this young-looking peasant say?—He says that "one who is not lazy to plough will soon be rich." To whom is this peasant going to marry his young son?—He is going to marry him to a young and pretty peasant-girl. Did you go anywhere yesterday?—I went to the theatre and to the ball yesterday.—Are they going anywhere? They are going to the field, which is quite green.—Is your handkerchief clean?—My handkerchief is quite clean, there is not a single dirty spot on it.—Whom is your niece married to?—She has married our neighbour.—Is it true that the rich banker, at whose wedding we danced, has married a poor widow?—He did not marry a widow, but a girl, the daughter of the richest banker in our town.—Who married them?—A French priest married them.

---

## THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

Тридцать восьмой Урокъ.

RELATIVE ADJECTIVES.—Прилагательное Относительное.

What journal is this ?	Какѣй это журналъ ?
It is a monthly journal.	Это мѣсячный журналъ.
What tobacco have you ?	Какѣй у васъ табакъ ?
I have Turkish tobacco.	У меня турецкій табакъ.
What kind of egg is this ?	Какѣе это яйцо ?
It is a fowl's egg.	Это куриное яйцо,

Adjectives which denote a relation of an object to ourselves or others, or distinguish a thing in relation to its kind are termed in Russian прилагательныя относительныя, 'relative adjectives,' and are formed from substantives and some adverbs as follows :

a. Adjectives ending in скій, ской, цкій, овскій, евскій are formed from names of animate beings, spiritual objects, names of places and professions :

Богъ, God ; Божескій, God's, God like.
Человѣкъ, man ; человѣческій, human.
Звѣрь, beast ; звѣрскій, bestial.
Отецъ, father ; отеческій, paternal.
Село, village ; сѣльскій, rural.
Англія, England ; англійскій, English.
Нѣмецъ, a German ; нѣмецкій, German.
Купецъ, a merchant ; купеческій, mercantile.

b. Adjectives formed from names of months take the termination скій, овскій, as :

Генваръ, January ; генварскій, of January.
Февраль, February ; февральскій, of February.

The termination овскій is added to the months of March, Мартъ and 'August,' Августъ, as :

Мартовскій, Августовскій, of March, of August.



OBS. 1.—The English terminations *ic, ical*, when used for names of arts and sciences are rendered in Russian by *ическій*, as : ‘dramatic,’ драматическій ; ‘historical,’ историческій ; ‘lyric,’ лирический, etc.

c. Relative adjectives in *инный*, are formed mostly from names of animals, as :

СОКОЛЬ, falcon : сокольный.  
 Утка, a duck ; утиный.  
 Орёлъ, an eagle ; орлиный.  
 Пчелá, a bee ; пчелиный.  
 Козёлъ, a goat ; козлиный.  
 Левъ, a lion ; львиный.  
 Лошадь, a horse ; лошадиный.

OBS. 2.—The following names of animals take *овый, евый* :

Бобръ, beaver ; бобровый.	Ежъ, hedgehog ; ежовый.
Китъ, whale ; китовый.	Кротъ, mole ; кротовый.
Осетръ, sturgeon ; осетровый.	Моржъ, walrus ; моржовый.

OBS. 3.—Adjectives in *овой, евой, овный, евный, енный, ный, ной*, are formed from names of inanimate and abstract objects having various significations, as :

Паръ, steam ;	{ паровой котёлъ, a steam boiler. парное молоко, new milk.
Душá, soul ;	{ душевный, hearty, sincere. душный, suffocating, close.
Духъ, spirit, ghost ;	{ духовой инструментъ, a wind-instrument. духовный, spiritual.

d. Adjectives formed from names of trees terminate generally in *овый, евый*, as :

Груша, pear ; грушевый.	Дубъ, oak ; дубовый.
Берёза, birch ; берёзовый.	Сосна, pine ; сосновый.

e. Adjectives in *яный, яной, янный*, denote the material of which a thing is made, as :

Дерево, wood ; деревянный, wooden.  
 Кожа, leather ; кожаный, leathern.



Масло, oil ; масляный.  
Желѣзо, iron ; желѣзный.

Волосъ, hair ; волосяной.  
Вода, water ; водяной.

OBS. 4.—Adjectives ending in жій, чій, шій are mostly used in the sense of substantives, as :

Проходжій, a foot-traveller.  
Пріѣзжій, a visitor.

Кормчій, a helmsman.  
Пѣшій, a pedestrian.

f. Adjectives formed from nouns and adverbs signifying time or place end in ній, шній, енный, as :

Лѣто, summer ; лѣтній.  
Весна, spring ; весенній.

Теперь, now ; теперешній.  
Всегда, always ; всегдашній.

What column is this ?  
It is Alexander's column.

Какáя это колонна ?  
Это Александровская колонна.

OBS. 5.—Relative adjectives answer the question: 'what kind?' They are therefore easily distinguished from possessive adjectives answering the question 'whose?'

Whose book is this ?

Чья эта книга ?

It is Alexander's book.

{ Это Александрова книга.  
{ Это книга Александра.

OBS. 6.—Possessive adjectives in Russian, as has been already explained, may be just as well rendered by the genitive of the nouns they are derived from. The same, however, cannot be done with the relative adjectives, although they are often rendered by the genitive of other languages, as :

Eagle's nest,  
A merchant's son,  
A gentleman's son,  
A travelling bag,  
Travelling notes,  
An able man,  
River-water,

Орлиное гнѣздó.  
Купеческій сынъ.  
Дворянскій сынъ.  
Дорожная сумка.  
Путевыя записки.  
Путный человекъ.  
Рѣчная вода.

Domestic expenses,  
Pig's head,  
A house-door,  
The town-wall,  
An air pump,

Домашнія издержки.  
Свинная голова.  
Домовая дверь.  
Городская стѣна.  
Воздушный насосъ.

Most (the greater part),

{ Большая часть.  
{ Большее число.

Who has most?

У кого большее число?

I have most.

У меня большее число.

Most of this field is already green.

Большая часть этого поля уже зелена.

Most people buy this.

Большее число людей покупаютъ это.

Several,

Нѣсколько.

Have you more horses than one?

У васъ больше одной лошади?

Yes, sir, I have several.

Да, сударь, у насъ нѣсколько.

Several kinds, or sorts,

Разные.

Several,

Многіе.

What pencils has he?

Какіе карандаши у него?

He has several kinds of pencils.

У него разные карандаши.

Are all the houses burnt?

Все ли дома сгорѣли?

Several are burnt.

Многіе дома сгорѣли.

Usually, generally,

Обыкновенно, вообще.

Where do you usually dine?

Гдѣ вы обыкновенно обѣдаете?

I usually dine at home.

Я обыкновенно дома обѣдаю.

To call, (to awake),

Будить, perf. asp. разбудить.

At what time does he call his master?

Въ какомъ часу онъ будитъ своего господина?

He usually calls him at nine, but I call him always at seven o'clock.

Онъ обыкновенно будитъ его въ девять, а я бужу его всегда въ семь часовъ.

Caste, class, сословіе.

Foreign, заграничный.

Clergy, духовенство.

A table-spoon, столовая ложка.

Nobility, дворянство.

A dessert-spoon, десертная ложка.

Education, образованіе.

A tea-spoon, чайная ложечка.

Educated, образованный.

Maternal, материнскій.

Of one's native country,	Отечественный.
A horse's mane,	Лошадиная грива.
Water communication,	Водяное сообщёние.
A colony, колонія.	Unimportant, маловажный.
A meal of fish, Рыбное кушанье.	To rise, to get up, вставать.
A meal of meat, Мясное кушанье.	To rise, perf. asp. встать.

## EXERCISE LXXVII.

Which houses are better than those of the village?—Town houses are much better and larger than village houses, but rural life in summer is much more agreeable than town life. Is French tobacco as good as American?—No, the latter, although dearer, is much better than the former.—What book are you reading?—I am reading a German book about the rural life of the Russian people.—What love is stronger than all others?—Maternal love.—What cold is more severe than that of February and March.—Usually the January cold is more severe than any others.—Are duck and goose eggs expensive?—In our market they are more expensive than fowls' eggs.—Where did they see those two black eaglets? In the eagle's nest.—Have you been in the Indian colonies? Yes, I spent (провелъ) the five hottest months there.—Are March days long there?—They are much longer there than those of July and August.—What goods has this merchant? He has several kinds of goods; he has iron, copper and pewter goods.—What houses are warmer than those built of stone? Wooden houses are much warmer than stone ones.—Where did you buy these pine and birch tables?—I bought them from the merchant's son in the market.—Did you bring me my new leather travelling bag?—No, but I will bring it you after dinner.—Had you for dinner to-day a meal of fish or meat?—No, we had neither, we had only milk soup.—Which class in Russia is the best (most) educated?—The children of noblemen



in Russia are usually much better educated than those of merchants.—How is the fish trade in this town generally? It is unimportant, because we have no water communication either with the German Sea or with any navigable rivers. Are the river steamers large?—The river steamers are generally smaller than the sea steamers.—Did not his brother eat more than I?—He ate much more than you, because he was very hungry.—Which boy can read (reads) better than all others.—The most diligent boy not only reads, but also writes better than all others.—What is the age of this boy?—He is thirteen years of age.

#### EXERCISE LXXVIII.

Have you spoken to these sailors?—I spoke with several of them.—About what did you speak to him?—I spoke to him of soldiers' and seamen's dress.—Have you many tea and table spoons?—We have only a few.—Of what metal are they made?—All our spoons are made of silver.—Are the nobility of your town rich?—They (it) are much richer than the clergy.—At what time (at what o'clock) did your servant call you this morning?—He called me very late; much later than yesterday.—Do you then rise early?—I usually rise very early, earlier than any one in the house.—Is the horse's mane long?—It is generally shorter than the horse's tail. What kind of bag has this foot traveller, a linen or leathern one?—He has got a woollen bag.—Are there many visitors in town?—There are not very many here now, but there are usually many here in summer.—What does the captain of this merchant vessel order his helmsman to do?—He orders him to go to (на, with the accus.) the ship.—Who has most apples? He has most, but most of his apples are much worse than mine.—In whose house were they living in winter?—They



were living in their father's house.—What history did Macaulay write?—He wrote the history of his native country.—Are the wines in this shop cheap?—The country wines are cheap, but foreign ones are very expensive.—What did the German master say to him yesterday?—He said to him that historical works are much more useful than lyric or dramatic ones.—Where do you generally pass your evenings?—I generally pass them at the theatre or at the club. What kind of books have you there on that table?—I have several kinds of books there.—I have there French, English, German, Dutch, Russian, Italian, Spanish and even a few Turkish and Persian books.

### THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

#### Тридцать девятый Урокъ.

To remain, to stay, (to be left,) { Оставаться.  
Остаться, \* perf. asp.

Do you remain?

I remain.

We often remained alone in the house.

Where were the children left.

#### *Imperfect Aspect.*

Я оставался, I remained.

Мы оставались, We remained,

Я буду оставаться, I shall remain, etc.

Оставайся, оставайтесь, remain.

Остаётесь ли вы?

Я остаюсь.

Мы часто оставались сами вь домѣ.

Гдѣ остались дѣти.

#### *Perfect Aspect.*

Я остался.

Мы остались.

Я останусь, ты останешься, etc.

Останься, останьтесь.

To leave,

{ Оставлять.  
{ Оставить, perf. asp.

Where did you leave your children this morning?

I left them where I always do.

Гдѣ вы оставили своихъ дѣтей сего-дня утромъ?

Я ихъ оставилъ тамъ, гдѣ всегда ихъ оставляю.

It remains,	Остаётся, <i>impers. verb</i>	} gov the dat.
It remained,	Оставалось, <i>остало́сь</i>	
It will remain,	{ Бúдетъ оставаться Останется	

It remains for me to say.  
It remained for you to decide.

Мнѣ остаётся сказать.  
Вамъ оставалось рѣшить.

Left, (remaining),

Остальной, (остаётся).

Is there anything left ?

Осталось ли что ?

There is nothing left.

Ничего не осталось.

He has some left.

У него немного осталось.

I shall have a few left.

У меня останется нѣсколько.

Every now and then,

Отъ времени до времени.

He comes to us every now and then.

Онъ приходитъ къ намъ отъ времени  
до времени.

Nay,

{ Нѣтъ, даже.  
Сверху того.

Nay, if he said that to you, you must  
not doubt it.

Нѣтъ, если́ это онъ вамъ сказалъ,  
то вы не должны сомнѣваться  
въ томъ.

Had he promised to see you ?

Общались ли онъ видѣть васъ ?

Nay, he had even promised to come  
here himself.

Онъ даже общалъ самъ прійти  
сюда.

Ever,

Когда́ либо.

Do you ever see our friend, the  
painter ?

Видите ли вы когда́ либо нашего  
пріятеля, живописца ?

I see him now and then.

Я вижу его́ изрѣдка.

Now and then,

Изрѣдка.

The following adjectives govern the genitive :

Worthy, *достойный*. | Devoid, *чуждый*.

Full (of), *полный*.

This is worth reward.

A prince worthy of his subjects' affection.

He is devoid of this vice.

The room is full of people.

Это достойно награды

Князь достойный любви своих подданныхъ.

Онъ чуждъ этого порока.

Комната полна людей.

The following adjectives govern the dative :

Faithful, вѣрный.

Amiable, любезный.

Dear to, { милый.  
                  { дорогой.

Agreeable, пріятный.

Useful, полезный.

Submissive, покорный.

Glad, радъ.

Suitable, agreeable, угодный.

Known to, извѣстный.

An acquaintance, знакомый.

In accordance with, relative, соотвѣтственный.

Decent, becoming, пристойный.

Obedient, послушный.

Natural to,

Proportionate, in proportion,

Becoming, decorous,

Alike (to be like),

Devoted,

Свойственный.

Соразмѣрный.

Приличный.

Подобный.

Прѣданный.

Obs. 1.—Обрадованный, 'delighted,' derived from радъ, governs the instrumental and not the dative :

Delighted with this.

Обрадованный этимъ.

The dog is faithful to his master.

Собака вѣрна своему господину.

This news was not agreeable to him.

Эта новость не была ему пріятна.

She is dear to him.

Она ему мила.

Honour is dearer to him than gold.

Честь ему дороже золота.

This is not agreeable to him.

Ему это непріятно.

The book is useful to us.

Книга намъ полезна.

A people submissive to their king.

Народъ, покорный своему королю.

She is glad of it.

Она рада тому.

The dress did not suit her.

Платье ей не было угодно.

A work known to the whole world.

Сочинѣніе, извѣстное всему свѣту.

The children are obedient to their master.

Дѣти послушны своему учителю.

I know this.

Это мнѣ извѣстно.

Did you know ?

Было ли вамъ извѣстно ?

We shall know.

Намъ будетъ извѣстно.

Nor I,  
Nor I either,

} И я также не.

I shall not go to the theatre this evening ; will you ?

No, I shall not go either.

I never read novels either.

Nor do I ever see her.

Я не идѣю сегодня вечеромъ въ театрѣ,  
пойдёте ли вы ?

Нѣтъ, и я также (огъ тоже) не пойду.

Я тоже никогда не читаю романовъ.

Я тоже никогда её не вижу.

As far as,  
To come up to,

До.  
Доходить, дойти.

As far as the garden.

I went with her as far as their mother's.

When you have read the book as far as this, (then) you may go for a walk.

До саду.

Я дошёлъ съ нею до дому ихъ матери.

Когда вы прочтёте книгу до сихъ поръ, то можете идти гулять.

To be a judge of,

Быть знаткомъ, (цѣнители-  
лемъ) въ (with the prep. case).

Are you a judge of wine ?

He is a good judge of it.

A judge (a connoisseur).

He is no judge of this.

Знатокъ ли вы въ винѣ ?

Онъ въ нёмъ большій знатокъ.

Знатокъ.

Онъ этого не понимаетъ.

To order,

Велѣть.

To get, to have something  
done or made,

Велѣть.

I ordered him to write.

Я велѣлъ ему писать.

Get these books taken away from here.

Велите унести отсюда эти книги.

Have a fowl roasted for me.

Велите зажарить мнѣ курицу.

To punish,

{ Наказывать.  
Наказывать, perf. asp.

To behave,

Вести себя.

He behaves well.

Онъ хорошо себя ведётъ.

She behaved well.

Она вела себя хорошо.



Behaviour, поведѣніе.	Theft, кража.
Praise, похвала.	Punishment, наказаніе.
Hackney carriage, извозчикъ.	Contempt, презрѣніе.
Devotion, преданность.	Rewarded, награждённый.
The deed, акт, дѣло, поступокъ.	

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

Where did you leave your portmanteau?—We left it on the steamer.—Why did you not take it with you?—I did not take my portmanteau with me, because it is too heavy, and there was not a single hackney carriage on the shore. Is the hotel far from the sea then?—Yes, the hotel is rather far from here, and it is not in the valley, but on the hill. Do you know that the gentleman to whom we spoke is the proprietor of that hotel?—No, I did not know that.—Will he be glad to see you?—I think (that) he will.—How do your nephews behave themselves?—Their behaviour is worthy of the highest praise.—What books do you leave them? I only leave them books useful to young men.—Were the officers and soldiers faithful to their commander?—No, and their punishment was proportionate to their treason.—Have you left the key in the door (in the lock) or has Andrew? Neither I nor Andrew has left it.—Had these young men a becoming dress (on)?—Their dress did not become such rich merchants, their coats were rather old, gloves rather dirty and their boots *all over* mud.—Was there much black tea left?—There were two pounds of tea left.—Did you give him all your money?—No, I had a few roubles left. How many horses will there be left?—There will be a few horses left.—Will you leave this book here?—I will leave it here.—Do you often go to him?—I go to him now and then.—Does he give you permission to go to the play?

Nay, he even comes with us himself.—Do you ever take children with you to the theatre?—We take them now and then.

#### EXERCISE LXXX.

Have you read the history of Russia?—I have not, nor has my brother either.—We do not know them.—Nor do we either.—Is your relative a judge of tea?—No, he is no judge of tea, nor is he a judge of wine either.—Why do you not give French books to your nieces?—Because these books are not useful to them.—Get the floors washed.—I ordered the maid-servant to wash the floors, and also to wash the linen.—When shall you be obliged to take the letters to the Post Office?—I must take them there at six (o'clock). How was he rewarded?—His reward was in accordance with his deeds.—Is it cold to-day?—It is much colder to-day than it was yesterday.—Is money useful to poor men? Money is useful to both rich and poor.—Are the soldiers faithful to their brave general?—They are faithful, obedient and devoted to him.—Does the master often punish this lazy pupil?—He punished him yesterday.—For what did he punish him?—He punished him because he did not know his Spanish lesson.—Are all these children yours? Yes, and I have three more at school.—Did your niece live in town when you lived in the country?—When I lived in the country my niece lived in town.—Has not my son written this letter very well?—Yes, he writes much better than my eldest son.—Do you want as much silk as wool? I want more silk than wool.—Will the young ladies stay here any longer?—They will not be able to stay here much longer.—What day of the month was it yesterday?—It was the sixth.—What day of the month will it be to-morrow?—It will be the twelfth to-morrow.

## FORTIETH LESSON.—Сороковѣй Урокъ.

## OF THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

## О Причастіи Дѣйстви́тельномъ.

Active participles are adjectives derived from active and neuter verbs and denote the action of the subject, as :

The loving mother.	Любящая мать.
The running horse.	Бѣгущій конь.

The active participle as a part of the verb has two tenses, the present and past, and it always combines the meaning of the relative pronoun *который*, 'who,' 'which,' or *что*, 'that,' with the verb from which it is derived.

a. The present participle is formed from the third person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination *тъ* into *щій*, (feminine *щая*, neuter *щее*) :

Читаю-тъ, they read ;	читаю-щій, reading, he who reads.
Иду-тъ, they go ;	иду-щій, going, he who goes.
Надѣю-тся, they hope ;	надѣю-щійся, hoping, he who hopes.

b. The past participle is formed from the past tense by changing the termination *лъ*, into *вшій* or *шій*, (feminine *вшая*, neuter *вшее*) :

Чита-лъ, I have read ;	чита-вшій, reading, he who has read.
Шёлъ, I was going ;	шёл-шій, going, he who was going.
Надѣя-лся, I hoped ;	надѣя-вшійся, hoping, he who was hoping.

The termination *вшій* is added to the participles formed from the past tense having a vowel before *лъ*, as :

Я игр-а-лъ, I played ;	игра-вшій, playing.
Она́ говор-и-ла, she spoke ;	говор-и-вшая, speaking.



OBS. 1.—If there be no *л* in the masculine termination of the past tense, the participle is formed by adding *шій* (and not *вшій*) to the root of the verb, as :

Я грѣбъ, I rowed ; part. past, грѣб-шій.  
Я могъ, I could ; part. past, могшій.

To lead, leading,	Весті́.
I was leading,	Вѣ́ль.
Leading,	Вѣ́дшій.

OBS. 2.—The radical consonants *д* and *т*, omitted in the infinitive mood and in the past tense, are replaced in the past participle active, as :

Цвѣ́стї, to bloom ; past tense цвѣ́лъ, ('root,' цвѣ́тъ) partic. past цвѣ́т-шій.

*Exceptions:* Класть, to put (root клад) ; partic. past кла́-в-шій and not кладшій.

Красть, to steal (root крад) ; partic. past кра́-в-шій and not кра́дшій.

A crying child.	Пла́чущее дитя́.
The following number.	Слѣ́дующій нү́меръ.
A practising physician.	Практикующій до́кторъ.

OBS. 3.—Active participles standing before a substantive are, as in English, used as qualifying adjectives, but these participles in Russian cannot take the form of an indeclinable adjective, *i.e.* they cannot be apocopated or used in place of the predicate.

Thus English participles used with the verb 'to be' are rendered in Russian either by the indicative or by an adjective, as :

The child is crying.	Дитя́ пла́четъ.
The book is interesting.	Кни́га занимате́льна.



**OBS. 4.**—Participles are declined like adjectives, agreeing with the substantive to which they refer in gender, number and case.

I spoke to the woman who sells flowers.

People that have money easily acquire friends.

They gave alms to the beggar-woman, standing at the church-door.

Do you see the man carrying (who carries) the sack ?

The boy reading (who reads) with attention is my brother.

Я говори́лъ съ же́нщиною, продаю́щею цвѣ́ты.

Лю́ди, имѣ́ющие де́ньги, легко́ приоб́рѣта́ютъ друзѣ́й,

Онѣ́ по́дали ми́лостыню́ ни́щей, сто́явшей у церко́вныхъ дvereй.

Ви́дите ли чело́вѣка, несúщаго (ко́торый несётъ) мѣ́шокъ.

{ Ма́льчикъ, чита́ющій (ко́торый чита́етъ) со внимáнiемъ, мой братъ.  
Чита́ющій со внимáнiемъ ма́льчикъ, мой братъ.

**OBS. 5.**—The participle is always separated from its antecedent by a comma, as :

The man sleeping.

The woman who was speaking.

Чело́вѣкъ, спя́щій.

Же́нщина, говори́вшая.

**OBS. 6.**—English participles preceded by a possessive pronoun or any preposition cannot be rendered in Russian by a participle, but must be expressed either by a substantive, or by a verb in the infinitive or indicative mood :

I do not believe in his coming.

He saved himself by swimming across the river.

He has decided upon writing it.

I am quite tired of talking.

Since my writing to him.

Besides his being poor.

{ Я не вѣ́рю его́ прибо́ду.

{ Я не вѣ́рю то́му что онъ при́идётъ.

Онъ спа́сся тѣ́мъ что пере́плывъ рѣ́ку.

Онъ рѣ́шился напи́сать это́.

Я у́томился говори́ть.

Съ тѣ́хъ поръ ка́къ я напи́салъ ему́.

{ Кро́мъ его́ бѣ́дности.

{ Кро́мъ то́го что онъ бѣ́денъ.

They punished him for not going there.

Do you like walking ?

I like riding.

Его наказали за то что онъ не по-  
шѣлъ туда.

§ Любите ли гулянье?

Любите гулять ?

Я люблю ѣздить верхомъ.

Я люблю ѣзду верхомъ.

The termination **ся** in the active participle of reflexive verbs is never abridged into **сь**:

People returning from the field.

The wheel turning round its axle.

Люди, возвращающіеся съ поля.

Колесб, обращающеея вкрѹтъ своѣи  
осѣ.

Rather,

Лучше, охотнѣе.

She said she would rather not speak to her.

Она сказала что лучше желала бы  
не говорить съ ней.

**We would rather stay here.**

Мы лучше (ог охотѣе) бы остались  
здѣсь.

To ache, )

To be ill, }

It pains,

Болѣть.

## Болѣтъ.

Obs. 7.—‘I have,’ followed by a noun expressing that the part of the body signified by it is affected by pain or illness, is rendered in Russian by у меня, and not by я имѣю :

I have a head-ache.

У меня головная боль.

My head aches.

У меня голова болитъ.

I have a tooth-ache.

У меня зубная боль.

My tooth aches.

У меня зубъ болитъ.

I have a pain in my chest. { У меня грудь болѣть.  
У меня боль въ груди.

У меня боль въ груди.

My heart aches.

У меня сердце болить.

I have a pain in my side.

У меня бокъ болить.

She is often ill.

Она́ ча́сто болѣтъ.

My feet ache.

У меня нѣги болятъ.

My arms were aching.

У меня рѹки болѣли.

Sore,

Больно́й, (болѣ́ть).

I have a sore throat.

{ У меня́ больно́е го́рло.  
{ У меня́ го́рло боли́тъ.

He has a sore foot.

У него́ больна́я нога́.

I have sore eyes.

У меня́ больны́е глаза́.

My eyes ache.

У меня́ глаза́ боля́тъ.

The pain, боль, f.

Disease, } болѣ́знь, f.  
Complaint, }

Indisposition, нездоровье.

He is much better.

She is much worse.

The headache, головна́я боль.

The earache, ушна́я боль.

Unwell, poorly, нездоровый.

The toothache, зубна́я боль.

Ему́ гораздо́ лучше́.

Ей гораздо́ х́уже́.

He is richer than I by far.

Онъ богаче́ меня́ мно́гимъ.

Obs. 8.—The word 'by' when used in English after a comparative to denote how much a thing exceeds another is expressed in Russian by the instrumental case :

My sister is taller than I by the whole head.

Моя́ сестра́ выше́ меня́ цѣло́й голо-  
вой.

I am older than you by two years.

Я ста́рше васъ двумя́ года́ми.

I am taller than you by two inches.

Я выше́ васъ двумя́ дю́ймами.

Pale (in the face),

Блѣ́день ли́цомъ.

Any particular quality, quantity, measure, etc., possessed by an object is rendered in Russian by a noun in the instrumental case

Strongly built.

Крѣ́покъ сло́женіемъ.

He is kind hearted.

Онъ добръ душо́ю.

Rich in remembrances.

Богаты́ воспомина́ніями.

A house ten yards high.

До́мъ выши́ною въ де́сять я́рдовъ.

A plank an inch thick.

До́ска толщи́ною въ дю́ймъ.

He is as tall as I.	}	Онъ рѣстомъ съ меня.
He is of my height.		
Good-looking.		Хорошъ собѣю.
Bad-looking, ugly.		Дурень собѣю.

To run out, to flow out, вытекать.		To belong, принадлежать.
To run into, to flow into, впадать.		To dress, одѣвать.
To stand, стоять.		To dress oneself, одѣваться.

To be reflected, отражаться ; perf. asp. отразиться.	
I am shorter than he.	Я ниже его рѣстомъ.
He is taller than I.	Онъ выше меня рѣстомъ.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

Who are these young ladies?—These young ladies walking in the garden are the sisters of that young man going into the field.—Is the horse standing there under the tree a good one?—It is much better than the one standing by (y) the well.—Who has gone in the country?—The young officers who came here yesterday from abroad.—Which Russian Czar always liberally rewarded his servants?—Peter the Great always liberally rewarded men that served him faithfully.—Which pupil did the master punish?—He only punished the pupil that did not know his lesson.—Is it true that the Volga, which flows into the Caspian Sea, runs out of a lake and not from the hills?—The river Volga, which runs out of the lake Ciliger (Селенгеръ), flows into the Caspian Sea.—Which is the most important river in the south of Russia?—The rivers Dnieper and Bug are the most important.—Give this crying child a little milk and (with) sugar.—Does everybody prefer glory to money?—There are people that prefer money to glory.—Do you want to go with me to the theatre?—No, we would rather go for a walk.—The rays of the rising sun are reflected in the clear waters of the lake as in a looking glass.—Which clerk did



you order to write the letters?—I ordered the clerk who lives in my brother's house.—Tell the children who are dressing in the nursery that it is time for them to go to school.—Where does the laundress live that brought us the linen?—She lives in the house belonging to my nephew. Who is going abroad to-morrow?—The rich officer who married the sister of our neighbour Mrs. B.—Will the countess's niece who is going to marry the brave colonel be with you to-morrow?—Only her aunt, the countess who last year married the rich prince, will be with us to-morrow.

#### EXERCISE LXXXII.

Has she decided upon going with you in the country? Yes, she is going with us, but abroad and not in the country.—Do you believe in his being the most diligent pupil in the school?—No, I do not believe it.—Did you tell the children walking in the garden with their master, that it is time for them to come into the room?—Yes, I told them.—Walking in the fields is pleasanter than walking in the streets.—Do you like reading?—Yes, I like reading and drawing.—What is the matter with this child? It has sore eyes.—What is the matter with you?—I have a pain in the back.—Have you the toothache?—Yes, I have the toothache.—Why did you not come to us yesterday? Because I had a headache.—Why do you walk so slowly? Because I have pains in my feet; I was walking about the town the whole of yesterday.—How old is your friend? He is older than I by five or six years.—How many years is your brother younger than you?—He is three years younger than I, he is the youngest in our family.—Is your sister writing?—No, she is not.—Why does she not write?

Because she has a sore hand.—Why does not your nephew go out?—Because he has sore feet.—What is the matter with your aunt?—She has a pain in her cheek.—Is your house as high as that one?—My house is higher than that one by a great deal.—You are very pale (in the face) to-day, Countess, are you unwell?—I am worse to-day; I have a sore throat and a pain in my side.—How is your niece? Thank you, she is better.—Is your brother taller or shorter than you?—He is much shorter than I.—Is the colonel's wife good-looking?—She was good-looking when she was a little younger.—Who may hope to receive reward?—The pupils learning diligently and obeying their masters will be rewarded.—Tell the boy dressing in the nursery that his master wishes to see him.—The master who wished to speak to the boy, has gone away long ago.—Which banker has bought these large forests?—The banker who married the Baroness's daughter two years ago.

#### FORTY-FIRST LESSON.—Сорокъ пёрвый Урёкъ.

##### OF THE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

##### О Причáстiи Страдáтельномъ.

Passive participles are formed from active verbs only. As verbal adjectives they have both the declinable and indeclinable forms, the latter being used with the auxiliary verb *быть*, 'to be,' to form passive verbs.

The passive participle combines the meaning of the relative pronoun *который*, 'who,' 'which' or *что*, 'which,' 'that,' and the verb it is derived from, as :

The book (which is) read by me	{ Кнѣга, читаемая мною.
(which I read).	{ Кнѣга, которую я читаю.
Children (who are) loved by their parents.	Дѣти, любимые своими родителями.

Obs. 1.—The subject in a passive sentence is put in the instrumental case.

The passive participle as part of the verb has two tenses, the present and past.

A. The declinable present participle passive denotes a duration of the action, and is formed from the first person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination **мъ** into **мый**, feminine **мая**, neuter **мое** :

Чита́емъ, we read ; чита́емый, read, which is being read.  
 Дѣлае́мъ, we do ; дѣла́емый, done (usually), which is being done.

The indeclinable present participle ends in **мъ**, feminine **ма**, neuter **мо** :

The book is read.	Кни́га чита́ема.
The child was loved.	Дитя́ было любимо́
The mother was loved.	Ма́ть была́ любима́.
They were loved.	Они́ были любими́.
The book will be read.	Кни́га бу́детъ чита́ема.
The houses will be built.	Дома́ бу́дутъ строи́мы.

Passive participles ending in **емый** (indeclinable **емъ**) are formed from verbs of the first four classes, as :

Чита́ю, I read ; чита́емый, read.  
 Пи́шущу, I write ; пиш́емый, written.

Participles in **омый**, are formed from verbs of the fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth classes, having the first person singular in **у**, preceded by a radical consonant or by **н** :

Зову́, I call ; зово́мый, called.  
 Веду́, I lead ; ведо́мый, lead.  
 Жну́, I mow ; жно́мый, mown.  
 Тяну́, I draw ; тяго́мый, drawn.



Participles in **имый**, are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, *i.e.* from the ninth and tenth classes :

Любл<sup>ю</sup>, I love ; люб<sup>и</sup>мый, loved.

Ви<sup>жу</sup>, I see ; ви<sup>д</sup>имый, seen.

Passive participles are declined like adjectives, and agree with their antecedent in gender, number, and case :

Letters received by us always contain pleasant news.

П<sup>и</sup>сьма, получа<sup>е</sup>мыя на<sup>м</sup>и всегда со<sup>д</sup>ержать въ себ<sup>ѣ</sup> пр<sup>и</sup>ятныя изв<sup>ѣ</sup>ст<sup>и</sup>я.

We have already answered the letters received by us from our parents.

Мы уже отв<sup>ѣ</sup>тили на п<sup>и</sup>сьма, полу<sup>ч</sup>енныя на<sup>м</sup>и отъ на<sup>ш</sup>ихъ ро<sup>д</sup>ителей.

The past passive participle denotes an accomplished action, and is formed from the past tense by changing **лъ**, into **ный**, **тый** (indeclinable **нъ**, **тъ**) :

Ч<sup>и</sup>та<sup>л</sup>, I have read ; ч<sup>и</sup>та<sup>н</sup>ный, read, which has been read.

Я трё<sup>л</sup>, I rubbed ; трё<sup>т</sup>ый, rubbed.

Obs. 2.—Participles in **тый**, **тъ**, are formed from verbs of the third, sixth and eighth classes, and from some monosyllabic verbs of the first class :

Кол<sup>б</sup>л<sup>л</sup>, I pricked ; кол<sup>о</sup>тый, pricked.

Жал<sup>л</sup>, I squeezed ; ж<sup>а</sup>тый, squeezed.

Тя<sup>н</sup>ц<sup>л</sup>, I drew ; тя<sup>н</sup>нутый, drawn.

Мы<sup>л</sup>, I washed ; мы<sup>т</sup>ый, washed.

Б<sup>и</sup>ть, to beat ; б<sup>и</sup>тый, beaten.

Obs. 3.—In forming the past participle from dissyllabic and polysyllabic verbs the tonic accent must be replaced, as :

Ч<sup>и</sup>та<sup>л</sup>, I read ; ч<sup>и</sup>та<sup>н</sup>, read.

Пи<sup>с</sup>а<sup>л</sup>, I wrote ; пи<sup>с</sup>а<sup>н</sup>, written.

Тя<sup>н</sup>ц<sup>л</sup>, I drew ; тя<sup>н</sup>нутъ, drawn.



In forming the past participle from the infinitive the following rules are to be observed:

Participles in **тый, тъ**, are formed from verbs having for their final letter of the root either one of the liquids **л, п, р**, or the vowels **я, и, ѣ, у, ы** :

Кол-ѣть, to prick ;	past partic. колѣо-тъ.
Прин-ѣть, to receive ;	. . приня-тъ.
Бѣ-тъ, to beat ;	. . бѣ-тъ.
Мы-тъ, to wash ;	. . мы-тъ.
Пѣ-тъ, to sing ;	. . пѣ-тъ.

And also from all verbs ending in **вуть** :

Гнуть, to bend ;	past partic. гнутъ.
Двѣнуть, to move ;	. . двѣнутъ.

All other verbs form their past participle in **ный, нъ** :

Звать, to call ;	past partic. званъ.
Сѣять, to sow ;	. . сѣянъ.
Везти, to carry ;	. . везѣнъ.

Some few verbs of the first and eighth classes have a double termination in the past participle, *i.e.* **тъ** and **нъ**, the latter not being used in ordinary conversation :

Бѣть, to beat ;	past partic. бѣтъ and бѣенъ.
Дѣнуть, to blow ;	. . дѣнутъ and дѣуновѣнъ.

Past participles in **нъ**, when changed into the declinable form take an additional **н**, before the termination, as :

Чѣтанъ, read ;	decl. form. чѣтанный.
Сѣянъ, sown ;	. . сѣянный.
Сказанъ, told ;	. . сказанный.

Obs. 4.—Verbs of the seventh and eighth classes follow the above rule in compound verbs only, as :

Вѣденъ, lead ; веденный—приведенный.

Стриженъ, shorn ; стриженный—остриженный.

Цѣненъ, valued ; цѣненный—оцѣенный.

Любленъ, loved ; любимый—возлюбленный.

Each, every,                      Кáждый, distributive.

Every (sort),                    Всáкій, collective.

OBS. 5.—Кáждый answers the question ‘who?’ ‘what?’  
and всáкій the question ‘what kind, or sort?’

Each one must think of him self.

Why do you not give a book to each  
of them?

Because each of them has one.

Кáждый долженъ заботиться о себѣ.

Отчего вы не даёте по книгѣ кáждо-  
му изъ нихъ?

Потому́ что у кáждаго есть книга.

Else,

Нибой, другóй.

Nobody else, no one else.

{ Никто нибой.

{ Никто другóй.

Something else.

{ Что нибудь нибое.

{ Что нибудь другóе.

In,

Чéрезъ (with the acc.).

In a week.

Чéрезъ недѣлю.

In two days.

Чéрезъ два дня.

He who—that,

Тотъ, котóрый.

She who—that,

Та, котóрая.

Did you write to the same man that  
I did?

Написáли вы томú, котóрому я на-  
писáлъ?

I wrote to him whom you ordered  
me to write to.

Я написáлъ томú, котóрому вы при-  
казáли мнѣ написáть.

Back,

Назáдь.

To come back,

{ Возвращáться.

{ Возвратítься, perf. asp.

Do you come back?

Возвращáетесь вы?

I come back.

Я возвращáюсь.

I will give it to him who will come  
back.

Я дамъ éто томú, котóрый возвра-  
тítься.

To count, to calculate,

Считáть, gov. the acc. perf.  
asp. сосчитáть.

To consider (to think),

Считáть, gov. the instr.

They are counting the trees in the garden.

Онѣ считáютъ деревья въ саду.

We consider him an honest man.

Мы считáемъ его чѣстнымъ человѣкомъ.

Whole, entire (perfect),

Цѣлый, весь.

All our tumblers are perfect.

Всѣ наши стаканы цѣлы.

We saw at his house a whole bottle of wine.

Мы видѣли у него цѣлую бутылку вина.

In the whole town you will not find such wines as we have.

Въ цѣломъ городѣ не сыщете такихъ винъ, какъ у насъ.

A broken glass.

Разбитое стекло.

Soon, quickly, fast,

Скоро.

The spring will come soon.

Скоро наступитъ весна.

He was walking so fast that we could not follow him.

Онъ шёлъ такъ скоро, что мы не могли слѣдовать за нимъ.

To leave, оставлѣть ;

perf. asp. оставитъ.

To invite, приглашáть,

. . . пригласитъ.

To touch, трогáть ;

. . . тронуть.

To print, печáтать ;

. . . напечатать.

To ornament, украшáть ;

. . . украситъ.

To build, стрóить ;

. . . пострóить.

To arm, вооружáть ;

. . . вооружитъ.

To cast, выливáть ;

. . . вылитъ.

To call, to name, назывáть ;

. . . назв́ать.

To sell, продавáть ;

. . . продáть.

To erect, воздвигáть ;

. . . воздвигн́уть.

To reward, награждáть ; governs the acc. and the instr.

### EXERCISE LXXXIII.

To whom were presented the books, bought by your brother?—They were given to the most diligent pupil.

Who gave you this figure of a dog cast in (изъ) bronze. This figure of a dog cast in bronze was given to me by a rich foreigner.—By whom was it sold to him?—I do not know.—Did they bring (привести) already the horses bought yesterday at the horse-mart?—The horses of which you speak are not yet brought, but the horse bought of the rich peasant is already brought.—What books did they buy? They bought a few books ornamented with drawings.—Is the drink prepared from rye sweet?—No, it is sour, but it is a very wholesome drink.—When did you receive the letters sent by me yesterday?—I received them to-day early in the morning.—Have you seen Alexander's column? Yes, I have, on the top of this column, erected in honour of the Emperor Alexander the First, stands an angel cast in bronze.—Are you acquainted with the foreigners invited by me to dinner?—I do not know the foreigners invited by you.—Where were the stolen goods found?—They were found in the locksmith's house.—Where were these books printed?—At B. D's., at St. Petersburg.—By whom are the diligently learning children loved and rewarded?—The children learning diligently are loved and rewarded by the kind master.—Was this lady-pupil rewarded last year? Yes, she was rewarded for good behaviour.—What did they reward her with?—They rewarded her with a book.

#### EXERCISE LXXXIV.

Have the letters been received by them?—They were received long ago.—By whom were they sent?—They were sent by my nephew.—Were the letters printed or written? They were written by the clerk of my nephew, who sent them.—By whom were you received?—We were received



by the amiable hostess.—Did they give each of these soldiers some money?—Some money was given to all the soldiers. By whom was the money given?—By the brave colonel. Will your brother return from the country soon?—He will be back to-morrow.—He who writes (will write) an exercise without any fault shall be rewarded.—Have you ever seen the emperor?—We never saw him.—What were you doing the whole morning?—I was reading the whole morning. Are the panes of the window in your room unbroken? Only one pane is broken, all the others are perfect.—When will your family return from abroad?—They (it) will be back in a fortnight.—By whom is this likeness drawn? It is drawn by a celebrated painter.—What was broken? The tumbler and the wine-glass were broken.—Was there anything else broken?—There was nothing else broken. Which fortresses were built by our kind king?—No fortress as yet has been built by him.—Are brick houses as warm as wooden ones?—Houses built of wood are much warmer than those built of brick.—Was the bride dressed well? She was in a dress made of white satin, all her lady-companions (friends) were also beautifully dressed.—What a tall man that is!—Yes, he is very tall.—Which of these two sisters do you think the prettier?—She who is more like her mother, the elder.

---

#### FORTY-SECOND LESSON.—Сорокъ второй Урокъ.

##### OF THE GERUND.—О дѣпричастіи.

Besides the participles, or verbal adjectives, there are also the gerunds, or verbal adverbs, formed from verbs. These

express the circumstances accompanying the action, and for this reason are classed among the adverbs :

When did you meet him ?

I met him going to the garden.

How was he reading ? (in what position.)

He was reading sitting.

Were you also reading sitting ?

No, I was reading at one time standing and at another lying down.

Когда вы встрѣтили его ?

Идучи въ садъ, я встрѣтилъ его.

Какъ (въ какомъ положеніи) читалъ онъ ?

Онъ читалъ сѣдя.

Читали ли вы тоже сѣдя ?

Нѣтъ, я читалъ то стоя, то лёжа.

Gerunds, like participles, are active or passive, and generally combine the meaning of the action expressed by the verb and that of the conjunction: когда, 'when;' пока, 'while;' между тѣмъ какъ, 'whilst;' послѣ того какъ, 'after,' and such like; thus, the verb сѣдѣлъ, 'I was sitting,' in the following phrases,

Я читалъ когда сѣдѣлъ.

Я говорилъ въ то время какъ стоялъ.

Whilst I was seated I was reading.

I spoke at the time I was standing.

may be just as well rendered by the gerund сѣдя, 'sitting,' as :

Сѣдя, я читалъ.

Стоя, я говорилъ.

I was reading sitting.

I spoke standing.

A. Active gerunds have no gender or number, but only inflexions to mark the present or past tense.

The present gerund expresses an action that is commenced and still continues, and is formed from the third person plural of the present indicative by changing the termination into я or учи (ючи), as :

дѣлаютъ, they do ; дѣлая, дѣлаячи, doing (whilst they do).

Говорятъ, they say ; говоря, saying (when they say).

Gerunds in я are formed by changing the termination ютъ, ятъ into я, as :

Чита́ють, they are reading ; чита́я, reading (when they read).

Люба́тъ, they love ; любя́, loving (when they love).

Obs. 1.—The termination я, when preceded by ж, ч, ш or щ, is changed into а, as :

Держа́тъ, they hold ; держ-а́, holding.

Плачу́тъ, they cry ; плач-а, crying.

Спѣша́тъ, they hurry ; спѣш-а́, hurrying.

The terminations ючи, учи, of gerunds are derived from ютъ, утъ by changing ть into чи, as :

Дѣлаю́тъ, they do ; дѣлаючи, doing.

Пи́шутъ, they write ; пи́шучи, writing.

Obs. 2.—The gerunds of verbs ending in нуть want the termination я, and have only the form in учи, as :

За́бнутъ, to feel cold ; за́бнучи, feeling cold.

Со́хнутъ, to be drying ; со́хнучи, drying.

То́нутъ, to sink ; то́нучи, sinking.

Тяну́тъ, to draw ; тяну́чи, drawing.

On the other hand the gerunds of verbs having the third person plural in ятъ, атъ, have not the form in ючи, учи, but in я (а) only, as :

Велѣ́тъ, they order ; велѣ́я, ordering.

Цѣня́тъ, they value ; цѣня́я, valuing.

Люба́тъ, they love ; любя́, loving.

NOTE.—The termination я, in gerunds of verbs of perf. asp. denotes an accomplished action, as :

Уви́дя, after having seen. | Поклонѣ́я, having bowed.



The past gerund denotes that the action was just completed when another began, and is formed from the past participle active by changing *шій*, into *ъ*, as :

Говорѣвшій, { speaking ; } говорѣвъ, after having spoken.  
 Читавшій, { reading ; } читавъ, having read.  
                   { he who spoke ; }  
                   { he who read ; }

OBS. 3.—The termination *ъ*, used chiefly in literature, in ordinary conversation is superseded by the termination *ши*, as :

Говорѣвши, having spoken ; instead of говорѣвъ.  
 Любѣвши, having loved ; . . . любѣвъ.

After having written the letter I sealed it (I sealed the letter when I had written it).

Написавъ письмо, я запечаталъ его (я запечаталъ письмо когда написалъ его).

Wishing to sell his horse, he took it to the market ; but finding no buyer, he brought it back.

Желая продать свою лошадь, онъ повѣлъ её на рынокъ, но не найдши ни одного покупателя, привѣлъ её обратно.

Having sent the letters to the post, they went out.

Отправивши (отправивъ) письма на почту, они вышли со двора.

The past gerund of reflexive verbs takes the termination *вши* and not *въ* before *ся* (ся), as :

Having become, дѣлавшись, not дѣлавсь.  
 Having learnt, учѣвшись, not учѣвсь.

B. The passive gerund has a compound form, being formed by adding the participle passive to the gerunds *бѣдучи*, 'being,' and *бывъ* (*бѣвши*) 'having been,' of the auxiliary verb *быть*, 'to be,' as :

Present, Бѣдучи, { читаемъ, } being read.  
                           { читаемъ, }

Past, Бывъ читаемъ, having been read.



Obs. 4.—The passive gerunds are little used in the Russian language of the present day.

Each other,	}	Другъ друга.
One another,		

Obs. 5.—The pronouns *each other* and *one another* are expressed by другъ друга, другъ другу, etc. The first of these two words is always in the nominative; hence, if there be any preposition in English, it must be put between them in Russian.

They love each other.

Онѣ любятъ другъ друга.

They treated each other politely.

Онѣ обходились другъ съ другомъ  
вѣжливо.

They spoke evil of each other.

Онѣ говорили дурно другъ о другѣ.

To try (to attempt),

Пытаться, попытаться.

To try (to test),

Пробовать, попробовать.

More than once I tried to get permission.

Не разъ ужъ я пытался получить  
позволеніе.

He attempted to speak to her.

Онъ пытался говорить съ нею.

We tried the new wine, but it was not to our taste.

Мы пробовали новое вино, но оно  
намъ не по вкусу.

I cannot possibly,

Мнѣ невозможно.

Possibly,

Возможно.

Could you come to me to-morrow?

Возможно ли вамъ прийти ко мнѣ  
завтра?

I cannot possibly.

Мнѣ невозможно.

To knock against, at,

Стучать, стучаться въ (with  
the acc.).

To knock at the door.

Стучаться въ дверь.

He knocked at the window.

Онъ постучался въ окно.

Against,      О, объ.

I knocked my elbow against the  
corner of the table.

He stumbled against the door-step.

Я ушибъ себя локоть объ уголъ сто-  
ла

Онъ споткнулся о порогъ.

To ascend,

Восходить на, with the acc.  
perf. asp. взойти.

They ascended this hill twice.

Have they already ascended the  
hill ?

No, they are at the foot of the hill.

Они восходили на эту гору два раза.  
Взошли ли они уже на гору ?

Нѣтъ, они у подношвы горы.

To weep, плакать.

Lamentation, плачь.

To sob, рыдать.

The sobbing, sob, рыданіе.

To take leave of.

To speak ill of.

To go to war.

On a visit.

Прощаться съ (with the inst.).

Говорить дурно о.

Уходить на войну.

Съ визитомъ.

Departure, отъѣздъ.

| Arrival, приѣздъ.

To learn, узнавать ; perf. asp. узнать.

To see (to have an interview with).

Видаться съ, повидаться съ (with the  
instrumental).

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

Where is her pretty little sister?—She is in the garden, sitting on a little bench, and is reading the little book given her by our kind master.—Why are you not with her? After having learnt my lessons, and having asked the permission of the master, I will also go to the garden.—Will you come back soon?—After reading a few fables and walking a little we will come back.—When will you return me my book?—After having read it, I will return it to you immediately.—Whom is he seeking?—His master, but, not seeing him, he is coming back.—Are all the clerks in

his office writing sitting?—No, some write standing.—May we go into the garden?—No, you cannot go there, because there was pouring rain the whole of the morning, and now it is very dirty in the garden.—Did they go for a walk knowing that I did not give them permission?—No, they went thinking that you would allow them to do so.—Do you expect the same tailor that I do?—Yes, I expect him whom you expect.—Did the mother speak to her son who was going to the war?—No, she only embraced and kissed him, weeping and sobbing bitterly.—Was the sister of the young soldier going to the war joyful?—No, taking leave of him, she also wept bitterly.—Who is there, knocking at the door?—It is the servant whom you sent for the wine. Does he know that whilst speaking ill of his acquaintances he also speaks ill of himself.—No, not knowing this he spoke ill of his acquaintances.—Which of you has most pencils?—He has most, he has three more than I.

#### EXERCISE LXXXVI.

Did you see (have you had an interview with) the Count and the Countess B?—Yes, having learnt of their arrival I went to them on a visit, but had to come back without seeing or (and) speaking to them.—Did your brother send the wine back to the merchant?—Yes, my brother after trying the wine found that it was bad, and, calling the servant, ordered him to take it back to the merchant. What did you forget to say?—In ordering him to write these letters I forgot to tell him that they must be sent to the Post-Office immediately.—Wishing to make a present to my brother, but not knowing the place of his abode he wrote to me, asking me to tell him where my brother



lived.—Is your tea strong?—After trying it I will tell you.—Did he buy a horse?—Yes, after selling his best cow, he bought a grey horse.—After punishing her son the mother wept herself.—Is the merchant honest?—One could not call him dishonest, but, in selling his goods, he never forgets his interests.—Is the view from the hill fine? After ascending the hill you will see the town surrounded by flourishing meadows and gardens.—Are they often at each other's houses?—They often go to one another.—Did you laugh at each other?—No, on the contrary, we were very polite to one another.—Why did you not come to us the day before yesterday?—I had a severe head-ache, and I could not possibly come.

---

#### FORTY-THIRD LESSON.—Сорокъ трѣтій Урокъ.

All persons of the present indicative are formed from the third person plural present in the following way :

A. Verbs, having the third person plural in *ютъ* or *утъ*, form the first person singular by cutting off *тъ* :

*Зна́-ютъ*, they know ; *зна́-ю*, I know.

*Бер-у́тъ*, they take ; *бер-у́*, I take.

The second and third singular, and the first and second persons plural are formed by changing *ютъ* or *утъ* into *ешь*, *еть*, *емъ*, *ете* :

*Зна́-ютъ*, they know ; *зна́-ешь*, thou knowest ; *зна́-етъ*, etc.

*Бер-у́тъ*, they take ; *бер-ёшь*, thou takest ; *бер-ётъ*, etc.

B. Verbs, having the third person plural in *ятъ* or *атъ*,



form the first person singular by changing ятъ into ю, and атъ into у :

Стрѣ-ятъ, they build ; стрѣ-ю, I build.

Крич-а́тъ, they cry ; крич-у́, I cry.

The second and third person, and the first and second person plural, are formed by changing ятъ or атъ into ишь, ить, имъ, ите :

Вел-я́тъ, they order ; вел-и́шь, thou orderest ; ве-ли́тъ, etc.

Крич-а́тъ, they cry ; крич-и́шь, thou cryest ; кричи́тъ, etc.

OBS. 1.—The past tense preceded by *if* or *whether* is rendered in Russian by the present with the particle ли, as :

They wanted to know if we were going there.      Онѣ хотѣли знать идѣмъ ли мы туда.

We doubted whether he really often invited him.      Мы сомнѣвались, дѣйствительно ли онъ часто приглашаетъ его.

#### OF THE POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

The potential and subjunctive moods of other languages are rendered in Russian by adding the particle бы to the past tense indicative :

I would (or should) have.

Я имѣлъ бы.

Would she have ?

Имѣла ли бы она ?

I should have written if I had any paper.

Я написалъ бы, если бы была у меня бумага.

The particle бы gives emphasis to the word it follows, as :

He would write to you if he were allowed.      Онъ бы написалъ вамъ, если бы ему позволили.

He would write to you, but to me he would not.      Онъ вамъ бы написалъ, но мнѣ бы не написалъ.

He would have written to you a letter, but not have sent any money.      Письмо бы онъ написалъ, но денегъ не послалъ бы.

He would have written to you if he could.      Онъ написалъ бы вамъ если бы могъ.

That, to, Чтóбы.

OBS. 2.—The potential is expressed in Russian also by the particle чтóбы, (Slavonic дабы), added to the past tense of the indicative :

I wish that you would go with us.	Я желаю чтóбы вы пошлѣ съ нами.
He sent his son money that he might buy a horse.	Онъ послалъ своему сыну денегъ, чтóбы онъ купилъ себѣ лошадь.
He wanted her to write.	Онъ желалъ чтóбы она писала.

OBS. 3.—The past tense in subjunctive form expresses often the present and future tenses, as :

I should like now to have a talk with you.	Я теперь желалъ бы (pres.) поговорить съ вами.
Oh, would that the day came at last.	Ахъ, если бы скорѣе день насталъ (fut.).

The particle бы can be added to the past tense of each of the aspects, as :

<i>Imperfect Aspect</i> . . .	Я кидалъ бы, I would be throwing.
<i>Perfect Aspect</i> . . .	Я выкидалъ бы, I would have thrown out.
<i>Iterative Aspect</i> . . .	Я кидывалъ бы, I would throw (repeatedly).
<i>Perf. Asp. of Unity</i> . .	Я кинулъ бы, I would throw (once), etc.

OBS. 4.—The subjunctive form of the verb is often superseded in Russian by the imperative, which in such case does not agree in person with the subject, as :

Were I now in the country I should not be now under treatment.	Будь я (если бы я былъ) теперь въ деревнѣ, лечиться мнѣ не пришлось бы.
Had he spoken always the truth he would be trusted now.	Говори онъ (если бы онъ говорилъ) всегда правду, ему повѣрили бы теперь.

OBS. 5.—*Should, would* and other auxiliaries of the

potential mood are rendered by бы, in conjunction with the verb :

He would go out if the weather were fine.

I should purchase that picture if I had enough money.

Had we known it,

Had they seen me.

Had I riches I should be happy.

Онъ вышелъ бы изъ дому еслибы погода была хорошая.

Я купилъ бы ту картину если бы у меня было довольно денегъ.

{ Знали бы мы это..

{ Если бы мы знали это.

Видѣли бы они меня ?

Будь я (если бы я былъ) богатъ, то былъ бы счастливъ.

Ought, should,

{ Долженъ.

{ Слѣдуетъ, impersonal verb  
(with the dative).

I ought to write, but I have no paper.

Я долженъ бы былъ (мнѣ слѣдовало бы) писать, да нѣтъ у меня бумаги.

He ought to have written.

Ему слѣдовало бы написать.

I May (perhaps),

Можетъ быть.

OBS. 6.—*May* and *might*, implying eventuality, are rendered by можетъ быть.

I may go if he come.

Я можетъ быть пойдѣу если онъ придетъ.

I might go if he came.

{ Я пошелъ бы, если бы онъ пришѣлъ.  
{ Я можетъ быть пошелъ бы, если бы онъ пришѣлъ.

Then, To (тогда).

OBS. 7.—The word *then*, to, in a principal preceded by a conditional clause is more frequently expressed in Russian than in English, as :

If he had known him, *then* he would have spoken to him.

Если бы онъ былъ знакомъ съ нимъ, то поговорилъ бы съ нимъ.

Had she pleased him he would have married her.

Shall we find him at home ?

We shall if we come in time.

He would not come even if you called him.

Alone, by one's self,

Has she been there alone all day ?

She was quite alone.

He is by himself.

For the first time,

For the last time,

Really, indeed,

He is indeed very kind.

Itself,

The linen itself is good, but very dear.

The same,

He speaks always to the same man.

The very same,

To remember,

To recollect, to think of,

To recall to mind,

Grateful people remember good done to them.

We often think of your kindnesses.

He suddenly remembered he had to go out, and left off working.

Если бы она́ ему́ понравилась, то онъ женился бы на ней.

Застанемъ ли мы его́ дома ?

Да, если прийдёмъ въ время.

Онъ не пришёлъ бы, если бы даже вы его́ позвали.

Одѣнь.

Была ли она́ тамъ цѣлый день одна ?

Она́ была совершенно одна.

Онъ одѣнь.

Въ первый разъ.

Въ послѣдній разъ.

Въ самомъ дѣлѣ.

Онъ въ самомъ дѣлѣ очень добръ.

Самъ по себѣ.

Полотно само по себѣ хорошее, да очень дорого.

Одѣнь и тотъ же.

Онъ всегда говоритъ съ однимъ и тѣмъ же человѣкомъ.

Совершенно—точно—тотъ самый.

Помнить.

Вспоминать.

Вспомнить, perf. asp.

Благодарные люди помнятъ сдѣланное имъ добро.

Мы часто вспоминаемъ о вашихъ милостяхъ.

Онъ вдругъ вспомнилъ, что ему́ нужно выйти и пересталъ работать.



To understand, { Понимать.  
Понять, perfect aspect.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Я понималъ, I understood ;  
Мы понимали, we understood ;  
Я буду, ты будешь, etc. понимать,  
I will understand ;  
Мы будемъ понимать, we will under-  
stand, etc. ;  
Понимай, понимайте, understand ;

*Perfect Aspect.*

Я по́нялъ.  
Мы по́няли.  
Я пойму́, ты поймёшь, etc.  
Мы поймёмъ, вы поймёте, etc.  
Пойми́, поймите.

To lend, Ссужать, perf. asp. ссудить  
(with the instr. с.).

He lent him some money.  
He always lends us money.

Онъ ссудилъ его деньгами.  
Онъ всегда ссужаетъ насъ деньгами.

To perish, { Гибнуть,  
Погибнуть, perfect aspect.  
For, against, На (govern the accusative).

Obs. 8.—In answer to the question “for how long,” *for* is translated na :

We have bought bread for the whole week.  
They prepared firewood against the winter.

Мы купили хлеба на цѣлую недѣлю.  
Они приготовили дровъ на зиму.

To feed, кормить.  
To provide, заготовить.  
Not to fail, не преминуть.  
Without fail, непременно.  
Profitable, доходный.

To refuse, { отказывать,  
отказать, р. а.

To trouble, to disturb, беспокоить.  
Subjected, подверженный.  
Cattle, скоть.  
Columbus, Колумбъ.  
Compass, компасъ.

To discover, { открывать.  
открыть, р. а.

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Would you buy this profitable estate?—Had I money enough, I would buy it.—Would you read it?—I should not read it.—Should we find him at home now?—You would not find him.—Would there be any doctors and chemists if men were always well?—If men were not subjects to complaints there would be no doctors or chemists. Is your friend going with you into the country?—He ought to go with me, for he is not quite well, and the country air would do him good.—Could cattle live in cold countries without sheds and stables?—Cattle would perish in winter from cold and hunger, had not man built for them good sheds and stables, and provided hay and oats against the winter.—Would your sister invite mine if she could?—If she could she would certainly ask her.—Cannot you lend me a few pounds?—I would do it if you had returned me the money I lent you last week.—Had I known that you would refuse my request, I should not have troubled you, but have asked somebody else.—Would you come to me if you knew that he was with me?—If I knew that, I would without fail.—Would not your brother go with us into the country?—He would not.

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Why has God given us two ears and one tongue only? In order that we should listen more and speak less. Ought not the servant to call the children?—It is not necessary.—You should ask him for some books.—If I knew he would not refuse, I would ask.—Were you at the English play yesterday?—Yes, but had he not come in

good time we should not have been able to go out.—For whom does this swallow catch flies (мóшка)?—For her little ones (кpóшка).—Do you know that your little son has caught two sparrows?—Yes, but I do not allow him to catch them.—Would he catch little birds were he allowed to do so?—Yes, he would.—What would you do if you were allowed to speak?—Were I allowed to speak I would tell all I know of him.—Who discovered America?—Columbus, but he would not have discovered it if he had not known the use of the compass.—For how long did you come here?—We came for a month.—Would he understand it were I to tell it to him?—I recollect your explaining to him the same thing before more than once, but he never could understand it.—You are sad, my friend, what is the matter with you?—I should be merry were I but satisfied.—Would you remain to dine with him if you knew that there would be a good dinner?—No, even then I would not.—Do you not wish he were now with us?—I never wish for what is impossible, for I know he is now abroad.

---

## FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

Сорокъ четвёртый Урокъ.

OF THE BRANCHES OF THE VERB.

Отрасли Глагола.

Among the inflexions of the verb, there are three to which all others are subordinate, and which are the bases or roots of three so-called branches.

The first branch has for its root the first person present indicative, from which all the other persons of the present indicative and imperative moods, as also present gerund and participles, are formed.

The root of the second branch is the past tense of the imperfect or perfect aspect, from which are formed the past gerund, the participles and the infinitive mood.

The root of the third branch is the past tense of the iterative aspect.

In the following table are given four verbs exemplifying the foregoing.



## THE BRANCHES OF THE VERB.

THE BRANCHES OF THE VERB.									
FIRST BRANCH.			SECOND BRANCH.				THIRD BRANCH.		
PRESENT AND FUTURE.		PRESENT.		PAST TENSE OF THE IMPERFECT AND PERFECT ASPECT.			ITERATIVE ASPECT.		
Indicative.	Imperat.	Gerund.	Participle.		Verb.	Gerund.	Infinit. Mood.	Passive Partic.	Verb.
			Active.	Passive.					
First Conjugation.									
Читаю, Читаешь, etc.	Читай, Читайте,	Читая, or Читаючи.	Читающий, <i>fern. шая, neut. щее.</i>	Читаемый.	Читалъ, <i>fern. ла, neut. ло.</i>	Читавъ, or Читавши.	Читать.	Читагъ.	Читывалъ.
Веду, Ведешь, etc.	Веди, Ведите,	Ведя, or Ведучи.	Ведущий.	Ведомый.	Вёлъ, Вела, Велѣо.	Вёдши.	Вести, (Вестъ).	Ведѣнъ.	Важивалъ.
Second Conjugation.									
Велю, Велишь, etc.	Веди, Ведите,	Веля.	Велящий.	Велимый.	Велѣлъ, Велѣла, Велѣо.	Велѣвъ, Велѣвши.	Велѣть.	Велѣгъ.	Велывалъ.
Цѣню, Цѣнишь, etc.	Цѣни, Цѣните,	Цѣня.	Цѣнящий.	Цѣнямый.	Цѣнилъ, Цѣнила, Цѣнило.	Цѣнигъ.	Цѣнить.	Цѣнегъ, or Цѣнѣгъ.	Цѣпывалъ.

*Of the Future.*—Будущее время.

The future tense of Russian verbs is either compound or simple.

*a.* The compound future is formed by adding the future of the auxiliary verbs *быть* and *стать* to the infinitive of the verb of imperfect aspect, as :

Я буду пѣть.	I will sing.
Ты будешь пѣть, etc.	Thou wilt sing, etc.
Я стану пѣть.	I will begin singing.
Ты станешь пѣть, etc.	Thou wilt begin singing, etc.

**Obs. 1.**—The compound future, formed by the help of *стану*, is used to form the future of inchoative verbs, which are of perfect aspect.

*b.* The simple future has the form of the present, and it follows the same rules as those laid down for the present tense, as :

Сказѣть, to tell ; скажѹ, скажешь, etc., I will tell, etc.
Удивѣть, to astonish ; удивлю, удивѣшь, etc., I will astonish, etc.
Рѣшѣть, to decide ; рѣшѹ, рѣшишь, etc., I will decide, etc.
Пойти, to go ; пойду, пойдѣшь, etc., I shall go, etc.

**Obs. 2.**—Only the verbs of perfect aspect have this future.

I saw a herdsman with fifty calves, ninety oxen and a hundred rams.	Я видѣлъ табунщика съ пятьюдесятью телятами, девяноста бы- ками и ста баранами.
He ordered his forty dragoons to go with those 140 uhlans.	Онъ велѣлъ своимъ сорока драгунамъ пойти съ тѣми сто сорока уланами.

In the compound cardinal numerals *пятьдесятъ*, 'fifty,' *шестьдесятъ*, 'sixty,' *сѣмьдесятъ*, 'seventy,' and *восемьдесятъ* 'eighty,' each part is declined separately, as :

Gen., dat. and prep. *пятидесяти, шестидесяти, etc.*  
Instrumental *пятидесятью, шестидесятью, etc.*

The numerals девяно́сто, 'ninety,' and сто, 'hundred,' are declined in the singular like substantives in о, viz. genitive, девяно́ста, ста, dative, девяно́сту, сту, etc. The numeral девяно́сто has no plural, and сто has no nominative case in the plural, having in the gen. сотъ, dat. стамъ, etc.

Obs. 3.—The numerals *сорокъ, девяносто, and сто*, when standing before a substantive, take the inflexion of *a* in the gen., dat., instr. and prep. cases, as :

**Nominative, со́рокъ челоуѣ́къ, де́вяно́сто ру́блей, сто кни́гъ.**

Genitive, сорока́ человѣкъ, девяно́ста рублѣй, ста́ книгъ.

Dative, сорока челевѣкамъ, девяноста рублѣмъ, ста кнѣгамъ.

Instrumental, сорока́ человекѣми, девяноста́ рублѣми, ста́ кнѣгами.

**Prepositional, сорока́ человѣкахъ, девяно́ста рублѣхъ, ста́ книгѣхъ.**

About,      Около, gov. the gen.

I had about a hundred roubles.

(У меня было около ста рублей.

У меня было рублей сто.

ORS. 4.—‘*About*’ before a numeral is rendered by placing the numeral after the noun :

I have two roubles.

У меня два рубля.

I have about two roubles.

У меня́ есть рублѣ́ два.

Two hundred, двѣсти.

Six hundred, шестьсѣтъ.

Three hundred, триста.

Seven hundred, семьсотъ.

Four hundred, четы́реста.

Eight hundred, восемьсотъ.

Five hundred, пятьсо́тъ.

Nine hundred, девятьсотъ.

Obs. 5.—In the above compound numerals each part follows its own declension ;

Nominative, двѣсти, трѣста, etc.

Genitive, **двухсо́тъ, трехсо́тъ.** etc.

Dative, двумста́мъ, тремста́мъ, etc.

Instrumental, двумястами, тремястами, etc.

Prepositional, двухстахъ, трехстахъ, etc.

Without,	}	Безъ, gov. the genitive.
Save, all but,		

They went without him.

Онѣи пошлѣи безъи него.

There are in this book forty leaves  
all but three.Въ этой книгѣи сорокъи листовъи безъи  
трѣхъи.

It wants,

{	Недостаётъ, impersonal verb,
	governs the genitive.
	Безъ.

It wants three roubles to make up  
ten.Не достаётъи трѣхъи рублейи чтобыи  
составитьи десятъи.

It wants a quarter to three o'clock.

Три часаи безъи четвёртии.

It wants five minutes to five.

Пять часовъи безъи пятии минутъи.

At (of the time),

Въ, gov. the acc. and prepos.

At two o'clock.

Въ два часа.

After two o'clock.

Въ третьемъи часу.

OBS. 6.—For the hours the preposition въ governs the accusative case, before the cardinal, and the prepositional before the ordinal numerals.

What time is it ?

Котóрыйи часъи ?

It is two o'clock.

Два часа.

At what o'clock ?

Въ котóромъи часуи ?

At two o'clock.

Въ два часа.

After six (in the seventh hour).

Въ седьмомъи часу.

Half-past one.

Половинаи вторагои.

Past one o'clock.

Второйи часъи.

Five minutes past one.

Пятьи минутъи вторагои.

OBS. 7.—The word 'past' before the hour is rendered in Russian by the ordinal numeral of the hour which follows :

At a quarter past two.

Въ четвёртьи третьагои.

At twenty minutes past twelve.

Въ двадцатьи минутъи первагои.



To (of the time),

Безъ.

Five minutes to two.

Два часа безъ пяти минутъ.

At a quarter to three.

{ Въ три безъ четверти.

{ Въ три четверти третьяго.

It wants twenty minutes to ten.

{ Въ десять безъ двадцати минутъ.

{ Въ сборокъ минутъ десятиаго.

To strike (of hours),

Бить, perf. asp. пробить.

It strikes,

Бьётъ, impers. v. (past бѣло.

future бѣдетъ бить.

The clock is striking.

Часы бьютъ.

Did the clock strike?

Били ли часы?

It struck five.

Бѣло пять часовъ.

It is going to strike two.

Пробьётъ два часа.

It is but nine at most.

Теперь много что девять часовъ.

At three o'clock precisely.

Ровно въ три часа.

The hour, o'clock,

Часъ.

In how many hours did he get to the village?

Во сколько часовъ дошёлъ онъ до деревни?

In five hours.

Въ пять часовъ.

At what o'clock did he go out of town?

Въ котóромъ часу вышелъ онъ изъ города?

At five o'clock.

Въ пять часовъ.

By,

За, gov. the instrumental.

One by one,

Одинъ за другимъ.

Hand him the things down one by one.

Подавай ему вещи одну за другой.

They went one by one.

Они шли одинъ за другимъ.

To come by,

Приобрѣтать, приобрѣсть.

How did he come by such a large fortune?

Какъ приобрѣлъ онъ такое огромное состояніе?

He is supposed (they say) to have inherited half a million from his grandfather.

Говорятъ, что онъ получилъ полмилліона въ наслѣдство отъ своего дѣда.

To come to, by,

How did he come by this honour?  
How does he come to be invited?

To have occasion,

Will there be any occasion for him  
to?

There will be no occasion.

Was there any occasion for him to  
write?

To come to know, }  
To find out, }

If he should come to know of it.  
How did you find out where he  
lives?

He was found out.

At once,

Only once, but once,

Once again,

We shall go to him only once more.

Single, only, единственный.

Capacity, } способность.  
Aptitude, }

Talent, даръ, талантъ.

Gift, даръ.

Gifted, одарённый.

Достигать, достигнуть.

Какъ достигъ онъ этой чести?  
Какъ достигаетъ онъ приглашенія?

Нужно, gov. the dative.

Нужно ли будетъ ему?

Не будетъ нужно.

Нужно ли было ему писать?

Узнавать, perf. asp. узнать.

Если бы онъ узналъ объ этомъ.  
Какъ вы узнали гдѣ онъ живётъ?

Его узнали (онъ былъ узнанъ).

Вдругъ.

Только одинъ разъ.

Ещё разъ.

Мы пойдёмъ къ нему только ещё  
одинъ разъ.

Cause, причина.

Governor, начальникъ.

To give out, раздавать.

To make up, составлять.

Old age, старость.

Full age, совершеннолѣтіе.

### EXERCISE LXXXIX.

Were there many guests at your neighbour's ball?—There were about thirty persons.—To how many soldiers was the wine given that was sent?—The wine sent by the governor was given to one hundred and forty-five men.

Did all the soldiers like that wine?—No, out of the one hundred and forty-five men, ninety did not like it.—How many men (soldiers) had the colonel who came here with his regiment last week?—The officer who came to our town is not a colonel, but only a captain, and he came here with ninety-five grenadiers and forty dragoons.—How many pieces of red velvet have I to hand you down?—Hand me down about twenty, but one by one.—How many inhabitants are there in Moscow?—There are in Moscow from three to four hundred thousand souls.—How many men are now wanting in your regiment?—There are wanting now three hundred only, but before there were wanting seven hundred.—Will there be any occasion for me to buy a piano?—No, there will be no occasion, your son will learn to play on mine.—Do you think my son will ever be able to play the piano as well as your eldest daughter?—I think he will, because he has an aptitude for it, and is also very diligent.—Were the swords given out to all the seven hundred hussars?—No, of those seven hundred hussars a few only wanted swords.—With how many companions shall you go from school to the forest?—All of us will go to the forest; our four masters with three hundred and sixty-three pupils, and three schoolmistresses with two hundred and forty-three lady pupils.—How many German miles are there from Berlin to St. Petersburg?—About two hundred German miles.

#### EXERCISE XC.

At what o'clock do you go out usually?—I go out usually at nine o'clock in the morning.—What o'clock is it now? I do not know for certain, but I think it must be now already half-past one, or perhaps a quarter to two.—It is

not yet a quarter past two?—Yes, it is almost a quarter. Take this book to him this afternoon at a quarter to two or at ten or even five minutes to two, but I beg that it be not later than two o'clock.—Did you order your coachman to come here to fetch you?—I have no coachman to order, but had I one, I would order him to come at twenty minutes past ten.—Did you stay long at his grandmother's? About two months.—Why did you not stay a little longer? Because the country life in winter is not very pleasant. Was there no other cause?—No, that was the only cause. Did he remain long there?—Till ten minutes past twelve; till half-past twelve.—Will there be any occasion for me to wait?—There will be no occasion for you to wait, as we shall be quite ready at a quarter to four.—Is this little girl his only child?—No, besides her he has also five sons and four daughters.

---

## FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Сорокъ пятый Урокъ.

### OF THE IMPERATIVE.—Повелительное Наклонѣніе.

The imperative mood has distinct inflexions only for the second person singular and plural, and is formed from the first person singular present indicative by changing the termination *у* or *ю* into *и́*, *и*, *й* or *ь*, as :

Иду́, I am going ; иди́, go.

Сохну́, I dry ; сохни, dry.

Дѣлаю́, I do ; дѣлай, do.

Вѣрю́, I believe ; вѣрь, believe.



To form the second person plural *те* is added to the imperative singular, as :

Иди́, go ;	plural, иди́те.
Сохни́, dry ;	. . . сохните.
Дѣлай, do ;	. . . дѣлайте.
Вѣрь, believe ;	. . . Вѣрьте.

*a.* The imperative in *и́* is formed from verbs having the first person singular in *ы́, ю́* accented and preceded by a consonant :

Пишѹ́, I write ;	пиши́, write.
Велю́, I order ;	вели́, order.

OBS. 1.—Verbs of the tenth class take in the imperative an *и́* accented even after a vowel, as :

Таю́, I conceal ;	таи́, conceal.
-------------------	----------------

*b.* The imperative in *и* unaccented is formed from verbs having the first person in *ы* or *ю* unaccented and preceded by two consonants, both of which remain in the imperative :

Сохну́, I am drying ;	imperative, сохни́.
Зи́жду, I build ;	. . . зижди́.
Мо́блю, I speak ;	. . . мо́лви.

*c.* The imperative in *и* is formed from verbs having the first person in *ы, ю* preceded by a vowel :

Знаю́, I know ;	imperative, знай́.
Смѣю́, I dare ;	. . . смѣй́.
Пою́, I sing ;	. . . пой́.

OBS. 2.—Verbs of the tenth class have the imperative in *и́*, when the tonic accent falls on the radical syllable, as :

Стро́ю, I build ;	imperative, строи́.
Покóю, I procure rest ;	. . . покой́.

*d.* The imperative in *ь* is formed from verbs having the

first person in *у, ю* unaccented, and preceded by one consonant or by *б, в, п, м* followed by the euphonic *л*, which is omitted in the imperative :

Вѣрю, I believe ;	imperative, вѣрь.
Гото́влю, I prepare ;	. . . гото́вь.
Сыплю, I sift ;	. . . сынь.

OBS. 3.—The termination *ю*, of the first person is changed into *ей*, as :

Пью, I drink ;	imperative, пей.
Бью, I beat ;	. . . бей,
Лью, I pour ;	. . . лей.

OBS. 4.—The imperative of the verbs *ѣхать*, ‘to ride,’ and *ѣсть*, ‘to eat,’ is formed irregularly : *поѣзжай, ѣшь*.

The imperative of verbs of perfect aspect wanting the present tense, is formed from the simple future according to the foregoing rules, as :

Пойду́, I shall go ;	imperative, пойдѣ.
Напишу́, I shall write ;	. . . напиши́.
Сдѣлаю, I will do ;	. . . сдѣлай.
Брошу́, I will throw ;	. . . брось.

OBS. 5.—The radical consonant of the first person, changed into its corresponding consonant for the sake of euphony, is restored in the imperative, but the euphonic *л* when inserted in the first person only is left out, as :

Вожу́ (води́ть), I lead ;	imperative, води́.
Носу́ (носи́ть), I carry ;	. . . носи́.
Сажу́ (сидѣ́ть), I seat ;	. . . сиди́.
Куплю́ (купи́ть), I buy ;	. . . купи́.
Люблю́ (люби́ть), I love ;	. . . люби́.

The other persons of the imperative are :

a. The third person, formed by adding the conjunction

пусть, (Slavonic да), 'let' to the third person present singular or plural :

Пусть читаетъ, } let him read ; пусть читаютъ, } let them read.  
 Да читаетъ, } да читаютъ ;

Пусть говоритъ, let him speak ; пусть говорятъ, let them speak.

b. The first person plural, which is identical with the first person of the future, and to which in familiar discourse the syllable те is usually added, as :

Скажемъ or скажете, let us say.

Пойдёмъ or пойдёте, let us go.

Возьмёмъ or возьмёте, let us take.

Будемъ (or станемъ) учиться, let us study.

Будемъ (or станемъ) говорить, let us speak.

Had I done, Сдѣлай я.

Had we done, Сдѣлай мы.

OBS. 6.—The second person singular of the imperative is used also with other personal pronouns, but in such case it expresses the optative or subjunctive mood, as :

Had I done this, I should not now have to regret. Сдѣлай я это, мнѣ не пришлось бы теперь сожалѣть.

Had they informed us of it yesterday, we should not have committed such a gross error. Дай онѣ намъ знать о томъ вчера, мы не сдѣлали бы такой грубой ошибки.

OBS. 7.—The imperative singular, not agreeing in form with the subject, is sometimes used also to express reproach or astonishment :

Overburdened with work as I am, having to write, to draw and to read, yet I am expected to look after the household ! Да я завалёнъ трудами, я и пиши, и рисуй и читай и занимайся ещё хозяйствомъ !

He cajoled them, and so they, of course, told him all they knew about me ! Онъ ихъ приласкалъ, и онѣ конечно расскажи ему всё что знали обо мнѣ !

Do go,            Пои́ди-ка.

In familiar discourse, to mollify the apparent harshness of the imperative form, *ка* is often added.

<i>Do come to us.</i>	Приходи́те-ка къ намъ.
<i>Do sing a song.</i>	Спойте-ка пѣсню.

Let, may,    Да.

All hail the King !	Да здравствуетъ Король.
Be they allowed.	Да будетъ имъ позволено.
Thy will be done.	Да будетъ воля твоя.
Thy Kingdom come.	Да прійдетъ царство твоё.

OBS. 8.—The old Russian form of the third person, the imperative with *да*, as: *да чита́етъ*, ‘let him read,’ *да чита́ютъ*, ‘let them read,’ is only met with in sacred books, and some ejaculatory phrases.

OBS. 9.—An elliptical form of the imperative is not unfrequently supplied by the infinitive, as: *позва́тъ его́*, ‘call him,’ but in such instances some idea of necessity or obligation is implied :

Do not make a noise, children (you must not make a noise).	Не шумѣть, дѣти! (вы не должны шумѣть).
Be quiet and know your place !	Молча́ть ! и зна́йте своё мѣсто !
No talking !	Не говори́ть !

Another peculiarity of the Russian language is, that the imperative is sometimes expressed by the past tense, as :

Go away, *пошёлъ* прочь instead of *поди́* прочь.  
Coachman, drive away, *пзвѳщикъ, пошёлъ* !

To leave, to abandon, to let,    { Оставля́ть.  
   { Оста́вить, perfect aspect.

Leave me your books.	Оста́вьте мнѣ ва́ши кни́ги.
Let that be there.	Оста́вьте это́ тамъ.
The post leaves.	† По́чта отхо́дитъ.



To let alone,

Do let me alone.

Let it be.

Оста́вить въ поко́ѣ.

Оста́вьте меня́ въ поко́ѣ.

Оста́вьте́ это́ въ поко́ѣ.

To let (to permit),

{ Позво́лить, perf. asp. позво́-  
литель, gov. the dat. of the  
pers. and the acc. of the  
thing.

Did you let the children go out ?

Not I, but the mistress let them.

Это вы позво́лили дѣтямъ вѣйти ?

Не я, а хозяйка имъ позво́лила.

To let (on hire),

{ Оудава́ть, } въ наймы́,  
{ Оуда́ть, } въ наёмъ.

To whom have you let your house ?

I have let it to a (certain) rich  
officer of dragoons.

Кому́ вы оудали въ наймы́ свой домъ ?

Я оудалъ его́ въ наймы́ одному́ бога-  
тому драгу́нскому офицеру.

To be let,

Оудаётся въ наймы́.

Is this house to be let.

All the houses here are to let.

Оудаётся ли́ это́тъ домъ въ наймы́.

Все́ дома́ здѣсь оуда́ются въ наймы́.

Nearly,

Чуть не, чуть чуть не, чуть  
бы́ло не.

The sack is very heavy, I can hardly  
carry it, and I nearly fell down.

I nearly said it.

Мѣшокъ очень тяжёль, едва́ могу́  
его́ нести́, и я чуть не упалъ.

Я чуть бы́ло не сказа́лъ.

At,

По, with the dative.

Did he do this at your bidding ?

He did it at my bidding.

Сдѣла́лъ ли онъ́ это́ по ва́шему при-  
каза́нію ?

Онъ́ сдѣла́лъ это́ по моему́ прика-  
за́нію.

To sketch, рисо́вать, нарисова́ть.

To contradict, противорѣ́чить.

To fall, па́дать, упа́сть.

For lack, за недоста́ткомъ.

Otherwise, въ проти́вномъ случа́ѣ.

The Holy Scripture, священное пи-  
са́ніе.

To let know, дава́ть зна́ть.

To pour out, нали́вать, нали́ть.

To pour out of, выли́вать, выли́ть.

To trouble one's self.	Безпоко́биться.
To enter (in the book).	Запи́сать занести́ (въ кни́гу).
To call (on a person).	Заходи́ть, за́хватъ.
The post comes.	По́чта приходи́ть.
The post leaves.	По́чта отходи́ть.
The orders are (usually) obeyed.	Приказа́нія исполня́ются.
The orders are obeyed.	Приказа́нія исполнены́.

## EXERCISE XCI.

Order the head clerk to write the letters to our bankers and tell him that they must be posted (sent to the post) to-day, and do not forget also to tell him to ask the Postmaster at what o'clock the last post leaves.—The last post, sir, leaves at a quarter to eight.—After giving the orders, come to my room at ten minutes past two and bring with you the letters which you began this morning.—Am I to bring also the bills of exchange, sent to us by the commission agent.—If they are not yet entered in the books (then) bring them, otherwise do not trouble yourself.—Dress yourself and go (поѣзжай, те) to town; on arriving there go to my lawyer and ask him whether the papers which he expects from the minister are already received.—Now you may go (срываете); but no, wait, tell him also that I must see him.—Your orders shall be obeyed, sir.—Ask your sister, if you please, whether she can lend me for a short time the book which she received a few days ago from Paris.—Go to her to-morrow and ask her yourself.—Why did you not let them remain longer in the fresh air? Because it was too cold out of doors.—When will you call on me?—I will call on you, if possible, on my return journey. Do not beat that little dog, but give it rather something to eat.—I am not beating it.—Silence! do not contradict your elders! go to your room and remain there till I call

you.—Do sketch me a rose and a tulip, and after finishing them show them to me.—I cannot draw, and if I could I should not be able to do it for lack of pencils and paper.

### EXERCISE XCII.

Do give me this picture.—It is my brother's picture, but were it mine, or if I knew that my brother would not be angry, I would certainly give it to you.—Is it said in the Holy Scripture that we should love even our enemies? These (слова) are the words of the Holy Scripture, 'Love your enemies and do good to those who hate you.'—Do let us go for a walk!—No, let us rather take a book and learn our lessons, for John says that our master will come at a quarter-past twelve.—Do not believe all that John says, our master comes always at five-and-twenty minutes past four and not at a quarter-past twelve.—Can I believe you? Rely upon my word and you shall have no occasion to repent.—Hail to the Queen! May our dear country flourish! Come here, I want you.—What do you wish?—Is it true that yesterday, in the evening, after six o'clock, walking along the shore, you stumbled against a stone and nearly fell into the water?—No, it is not true; at that time I was at home.—Is he aware that we cannot see him next week? No he is not aware of it.—To whom did your brother let his house?—He let it to a Berliner.—What sort of man is he?—He is a goldsmith by trade.—Is it far from here to that house?—I usually go there in one hour and a quarter. Did you find out where Mr. N. lives now?—No, I did not.—Find out then and let me know.—Was it you who upset the glass of wine?—Yes, I wanted to pour out a glass of wine and nearly upset the bottle as well.—Did



your brother hurt himself much when he fell from the tree? He did hurt himself much and nearly broke his leg.—At whose bidding was this done?—At my mother's bidding. I should like to speak to your nephew.—Let him alone, he has to learn his lessons.

# FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.—Сорокъ шестой Урокъ.

Whoever, whosoever,	Кто бы ни, кто ни.
Whatever, whatsoever,	Что бы ни, что ни.
Whichever,	Который бы ни.
However,	Какъ бы ни.
Whenever,	Когда бы ни.
Wherever,	Гдѣ бы ни, куда бы ни.

The particle *ни* is used in conjunction with the verb, when an idea of indefiniteness and universality accompanies the above pronouns and adverbs, as :

Whoever may ask you for money, do not give it.	Кто бы ни попросилъ у васъ денегъ, не давайте.
Whatever be your lot, never desert him.	Что бы ни выпало на вашу долю, не покидайте его.
Let him come in, whoever he is.	Впустите его, кто бы онъ ни былъ.
The virtuous man is respected wherever he goes.	Добродѣтельнаго человека уважають куда бы онъ ни пошелъ.

OBS. 1.—In these cases *ни* may be Anglicised by *no matter*, as :

However mighty (no matter how mighty) he is, I fear him not.	Какъ бы силенъ онъ ни былъ, я не боюсь его.
No matter what you do.	Что ни дѣлайте.
Do whatever you may.	Что бы вы ни дѣляли.
Cost what it may. }	
No matter what it costs. }	Что бы то ни стоило.



On the other hand, it must be remembered that, where a definite and particular circumstance is implied, the forms *тогъ кто, то что*, etc., are necessary, as :

Whoever (he who) spares the  
wicked does harm to the good.

(Тотъ) кто щадѣтъ злыхъ, вредѣтъ добрымъ.

Whenever you enter church always  
remove your hat.

Когда входишь въ церковь, снимай шляпу.

Which book shall I give you ?

Какую книгу долженъ я вамъ дать ?

Whichever you like.

Какую хотите.

Though ever so,

Какъ бы ни.

Ever so much,

СКО́лько бы ни.

Though your knowledge be ever  
so great.

Какъ бы нѣ были великі познѣнія  
вѣши.

Give him ever so much, he is never satisfied.

СКО́лько ему́ ни дава́йте, онъ всегда  
не дово́ленъ.

Give him ever so little he is thankful for it.

Какъ бы máло нѣ дали ему́, онъ до-  
воленъ.

Woody,

ЛѢСІСТЫЙ.

Stony,

## Каменѣстый.

Obs. 2.—Adjectives ending in истый, derived from substantives denote abundance, as :

A woody country.

Лѣснѣстая страна.

A stony road.

### Камені́стая доро́га.

A clayey soil.

### Глини́стая пѣчва.

To add to,      { Слагать съ      } with the instr.  
                         { Сложить, р. а. }

To subtract from, { Вычитатьъ изъ, } with the gen.  
 { Вѣчесть, p. asp. }

To multiply by,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Умно́жать на,} \\ \text{Умно́жить, р. а.} \end{array} \right\}$  with the acc.

To divide by, into, { Дѣлѣть на, } with the acc.  
 { Раздѣлѣть р. а. }

I will add, *бѹду слагать* ;

perfect aspect, сложу́.

I will subtract, буду вычитать;	perfect aspect, вѣчту.
I will multiply, буду умножать;	. . . умножу.
I will divide, буду дѣлить;	. . . раздѣлю.

Three and four make seven.

Три да четыре составить семь.

What will be ninety less thirty-five ?

Сколько будетъ девяносто безъ тридцати пяти ?

Ninety less thirty-five will be fifty-five.

Девяносто безъ тридцати пяти будетъ пятьдесятъ пять.

How much is twice two ?

Сколько будетъ двѣжды два ?

Three times three are nine.

Трижды три — девять.

Four times five are twenty.

Четырежды пять двадцать.

Five times eight are forty.

Пятью восемь сорокъ.

Addition, сложѣніе.

Multiplication, умноженіе.

Subtraction, вычитаніе.

Division, дѣленіе.

Once,

Разъ, однажды.

Twice,

Два раза, двѣжды.

Three times,

Три раза, трижды.

Four times,

Четыре раза, четырежды.

Five times,

Пять разъ, etc.

To multiply 9 by 3.

Умножить, помножить 9 на 3.

To divide 40 by 5.

Раздѣлить 40 на 5.

A third,

Треть.

Two thirds,

Двѣ трѣти.

The half,

Половина, полъ.

Half an hour,

{	Половина часа.
	Полчаса.

Obs. 3.—Substantives with the prefix полъ signifying 'half,' are put in the genitive, as :

Half-year, полгода.

Half a pailful, полведра.

Half a word, полслова.

Half a minute, полминуты.

**Полъ** takes an **у** in all the oblique cases, as :

*Singular.*

Nominative and accusative, **полгода, полведрá, полминуты.**

Genitive, **полгóда, полуведрá, полминуты.**

Dative, **полгóду, полуведру́, полминутѣ.**

Instrumental, **полгóдомъ, полуведрѣмъ, полминутѣю.**

Prepositional, **полгóдѣ, полуведрѣ, полминутѣ.**

*Plural.*

Nominative and accusative, **полгóды, полувѣдра, полминуты.**

Genitive, **полгóдовъ, полувѣдеръ, полминутъ.**

Dative, **полгóдамъ, полувѣдрамъ, полминутамъ.**

Instrumental, **полгóдами, полувѣдрами, полминутами.**

Prepositional, **полгóдахъ, полувѣдрахъ, полминутыхъ.**

**Obs. 4.**—As seen from the above examples the prefix **полъ** has the inflexion of **у** even in the nominative plural, thus becoming an indeclinable part of the word, as in :

A peninsula, **полуостровъ** ; genitive, **полуострова**, etc.

A semicircle, **полукругъ** ; . . **полукруга**, etc.

**Obs. 5.**—**День**, ‘day’ and **ночь**, ‘night,’ with the prefix **полъ**, remain in the nominative, as :

**Полдень**, ‘midday ;’ **полночь**, ‘midnight ;’ genitive, **полудня, полуночи**, etc. Plural, **пóдни, полнóчи** ; genitive, **полудней, полуночей**, etc.

As much again,

**Вдво́е (въ два ра́за) бо́льше,  
ещё сто́лько.**

As far again,

**Вдво́е да́льше.**

Is this as long again ?

**Вдво́е ли ё́то длиннѣе ?**

It is three times as long.

**Э́то втрѣе (въ три ра́за) длиннѣе.**

Three times as much.

**Втрѣе бо́льше.**

Four times as strong.

**Вче́тверо (въ четы́ре ра́за) си́льнѣе  
etc.**

As far again as,

**Вдво́е да́льше—чѣ́мъ.**

As good again as,

**Вдво́е лу́чше—не́жели.**

OBS. 6.—After вдвое, втрое, etc., the adjective is put in the comparative, and therefore the following word compared with it is put either in the genitive case or is preceded by чѣмъ, нежели.

This cloth is as dear again as that one.

Is it not as far again from that road to the bay as from this one ?

It is as near again from this road as from that one.

Это сукно вдвое дороже того.

Не вдвое ли дальше отъ той дороги до залива, чѣмъ отъ этой ?

Отъ этой дороги вдвое ближе, чѣмъ отъ той.

To be (found), }  
To be had, }

Находиться (conjug. like ходить.)

Where is it to be found ?

Are any apples to be found in the market at this time of the year ?

He was at that time in London.

Where is it ?

It is in the museum.

Гдѣ это находится ?

Есть ли на рынкѣ яблоки въ это время года ?

Онъ въ то время находился въ Лондонѣ.

Гдѣ это находится ?

Это находится въ музеѣ.

To call, (to name), }  
To be called, }  
What is the name of ? }  
What is it called ? }

Называть, р. а. назвѣть.

Называться.

Какъ называется ?

Какъ имя ?

OBS. 7.—Называться is generally used instead of какъ имя.

What is the name of the town you stayed at last autumn ?

What is his name (how do they call him) ?

Nobody knows his name.

Какъ называется городъ, въ которомъ вы провели прошлую осень ?

Какъ его зовутъ ?

Никто не знаетъ, какъ его зовутъ.



To make a show,	{ ВЫСТАВЛЯТЬ, ВЫСТАВИТЬ, р. а. }	на показъ.
To commit a fault,	Провиниться, perf. asp.	
To apply for a situation,	Просить мѣста, должности.	
To forgive, прощать, простить.	To accomplish, совершить, р. asp.	
To apply for, просить.	Fault, вина, проступокъ.	
The good will, уваженіе.	A stranger, пріѣзжій.	
For ever, вѣчно, навсегда.	To follow, подражать, (gov. the dat.)	
Familiar face, знакомое лицо.	To take care, беречь.	
To commit, совершать.	To beg leave, просить позволенія.	
To do a service.	Оказать услугу, сдѣлать одолженіе.	
To murmur against.	Роптать на, with the accusative.	
Thankful.	Благодарный, признательный.	

## EXERCISE XCIII.

Whoever is virtuous will be loved by all good men, in whatever country he lives.—Does she punish him when he is disobedient?—No, whatever he does, she never punishes him.—Can man live for ever?—No, no matter what care man may take of his health, yet he must die sooner or later.—Will my parents forgive me?—Whatever faults you have committed, they will forgive you.—To whom shall I give it?—To whomsoever you like.—Must we not despise this beggar?—No, though his poverty be ever so great, you must not despise him; you must despise nobody.—Does a virtuous man murmur against Divine Providence when he loses all that is dear to him?—Whatever happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against Divine Providence.—Had he spoken of me, would you have believed him?—Of whomsoever he speaks, I do not believe him.—Did they give you anything?—They gave us nothing whatever.—However skilful and learned we may be, let us not make a show of

our knowledge.—Does she follow the fashions?—Though fashions be ever so foolish, she always follows them.—How did you come to know about his misfortune?—I heard of it from his brother.—For whatever services he has done him he has been thankful.

#### EXERCISE XCIV.

Have you learnt the multiplication table?—I have learnt only addition and subtraction, but the multiplication table I do not know as yet.—Then you cannot divide twenty-five by five?—Oh yes, I can do that without knowing the table.—How much will seven times nine be?—To answer that we must multiply nine by seven, and to do that, one must have learnt the multiplication table.—Can we divide three by six, or three by nine?—Yes, we can, but in that case we should get one half and one third, and not whole numbers.—How many wine-glasses full were there in that half a bottle?—Seven and a half.—How many minutes are there in half-an-hour?—Thirty.—Had you come to his house half-an-hour sooner, you would have found him at home.—What is the Christian name of this peasant?—His Christian name is Peter.—Cannot you tell me what that is in Russian (по русски)?—I do not know it myself, you had better ask one of the masters.—What is the name of the street in which we saw so many hackney carriages this afternoon?—I do not know its name; I am myself a stranger here.—Will you allow me, sir, to ask what your name is?—Your face is familiar to me, only I cannot recollect at all where I had the honour of seeing you?—If I am not mistaken, I had the pleasure of being introduced to you at the Prince R's. ball.—How is your nephew get-

ting on?—He is in bad circumstances at present, but it is entirely his own fault, for if he had applied for a situation half a year ago, he would have obtained it.—Is your uncle as rich as his father?—My uncle is as rich again as my father.—Is it far from here to the river?—It is as far again from here to the river as from that green hillock.—Is this satin as good as mine?—It is as good again as yours.

## FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

### Сорокъ седьмой Урокъ.

Somebody said it.

Nobody said that.

He sees something good

He sees nothing good.

Нѣкто сказалъ это.

Никто не говорилъ этого.

Онъ видитъ нѣчто хорошее.

Онъ не видитъ ничего хорошаго.

How much, } СКОЛЬКО.

How many, }

When, КОГДА.

A few, some, НѢСКОЛЬКО.

Not any, not at all, НИ-  
СКОЛЬКО.

Once, sometime, НѢКОГДА.

Never, НИКОГДА.

OBS. 1.—Interrogative pronouns or adverbs with the prefix *нѣ* become indefinite, whilst those with *ни* become negative.

Some, а, нѣкоторый.

Some kind, нѣкій.

Not any, никотóрый.

Not of any kind, никакóй.

Who will come?

The one who is called.

Which handkerchief will you give?

The one that I bought.

Кто придётъ?

Тотъ, кто позванъ.

Котóрый платокъ вы дадите?

Тотъ, котóрый я купилъ.

OBS. 2.—The pronouns *кто*, 'who,' *что*, 'what,' 'that,'



кой, который, 'who, which,' каковѣй, 'what kind,' чей, 'whose,' сколько, 'how much,' when referring to an antecedent become relative, as in English.

Somebody,	{ Кто-нибѣ́дь.
	{ Кто-то.
Something,	{ Что-нибѣ́дь.
	{ Что-то.

Obs. 3.—Pronouns and adverbs followed by *нибѣ́дь*, which has the meaning of 'no matter what it be,' 'be it what it may,' can be easily distinguished from those followed by *то*, which means 'a certain, a particular.'

Did somebody (no matter who) speak to him ?	Говори́лъ ли кто нибѣ́дь съ нимъ ?
I know that someone spoke, but who it was I could not say.	Я зна́ю, что кто-то говори́лъ, но кто́ именно, не могу́ вамъ сказа́ть.
Did they give him anything ?	Да́ли ли онѣ́ ему́ что нибѣ́дь ?
They gave him something.	Онѣ́ ему́ что-то да́ли.
Have you seen him anywhere ?	Ви́дѣли ли вы его́ гдѣ́ нибѣ́дь ?
I have seen him somewhere abroad.	Я ви́дѣлъ его́ гдѣ́-то за гра́ницею.

Some—some,                      Кто—кто.

Many traders were there ; some with corn, some with milk, some with butter.	Мно́го торго́вцовъ тамъ бы́ло ; кто́ съ зерновы́мъ хлѣ́бомъ, кто́ съ моло́комъ, кто́ съ корови́нымъ ма́сло́мъ.
The man whom they praise.	Челове́къ, кото́раго онѣ́ хва́ляютъ.
That which we do not want.	То, чего́ намъ не ну́жно.

Obs. 4.—Relative pronouns agree in gender and number with their antecedent, and are put in the case governed by the verb or a noun of the subordinate clause.



Relative pronouns are always separated from their antecedent by a comma:

The book which we read.

Кни́га, кото́рую чита́емъ.

That which you are afraid of.

То, че́го вы бо́итесь.

Obs. 5.—When the second personal pronoun is used in the plural for the sake of politeness, the relative pronoun is put in the singular, as :

You, to whom I am indebted and  
whom I respect.

Вы, ко́му я обяза́н и кото́ра-  
го уважа́ю.

How much gunpowder have  
you ?

Ско́лько у васъ поро́ху?

I have a little (of it).

У меня́ его́ ма́ло.

I had much (of it).

У меня́ его́ бы́ло мно́го.

Obs. 6.—The pronouns *столько*, ‘so much;’ *мно́го*, ‘much;’ *ма́ло*, ‘a little;’ *не́сколько*, ‘a few’ as also the numerals *два*, *три*, *четы́ре*, *пять*, etc., in answer to the question, ‘how much?’ are followed by the genitive and require the verb to be impersonal.

How many of you were there ?  
There were a few of us.

Ско́лько чело́вѣкъ васъ тамъ бы́ло?  
На́съ тамъ бы́ло не́сколько (чело-  
вѣ́къ).

There are six ships there.  
Isaac had two sons.

Тамъ (есть) ше́сть корабе́й.  
У Иса́ака бы́ло (дѣте́й) два сы́на.

How many roubles were received ?  
Twenty roubles were received.  
It remained a quarter of an hour.

Ско́лько рубле́й бы́ло полу́чено ?  
Полу́чено бы́ло двадца́ть рубле́й.  
Оста́лся че́тверть часа́.

Who was riding ?

Кто ѣ́халъ ?

Two men were riding.

Два чело́вѣ́ка ѣ́хали.

Obs. 7.—When the numerals *два*, *три*, *четы́ре*, *пять*, etc.

answer the question 'who? or what?' then the predicate, as also any determinative word used with these numerals, is put in the plural.

Who is speaking?

These two men are speaking.

Seven do not wait for one.

The last half an hour flew by unnoticed.

Кто говоритъ?

Эти два человека говорятъ.

Семеро одного не ждутъ.

Остальные полчаса протекли незамѣтно.

One and a half.

Two and a half.

Полтора, fem. полторы.

Полтретья, fem. полтретьи.

I have a pound and a half of tobacco.

He goes to fetch a pound and a half of sugar.

У меня полтора фунта табаку.

Онъ идѣтъ за полутора фунтами сахара.

#### SINGULAR.

<i>Masculine and Neuter.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
N. & A. Полтора,	полторы.
Gen. Полутора,	полторы.
Dat. Полутору,	полторѣ.
Inst. Полуторымъ,	полторою.
Prep. Полторѣ,	полторѣ.

#### PLURAL.

<i>For all Genders.</i>
полуторы.
полторыхъ.
полторымъ.
полторыми.
полторыхъ.

Obs. 8.—The compound numerals полтора and полтретья present the peculiarity that in the nom. and acc. sing. they govern the following noun in the gen. sing., but in all other cases they require the noun to be put in the corresponding case of the plural, as :

#### *Masculine and Neuter.*

N. & A.	{ Полтора рубль.	{ Полтретья ведро.
	{ A rouble and a half.	{ Two and a half pails.
Gen.	Полтора рублѣй.	Полтретья ведеръ.
Dat.	Полтора рублѣмъ.	Полтретья ведрѣмъ.
Inst.	Полтора рублѣми.	Полтретья ведрѣми.
Prep.	Полторѣ рублѣхъ.	Полтретьѣ ведрѣхъ.

*Feminine.*

N. & A.	{ Полторы мину́ты, { A minute and a half,	{ Полтретьи́ ми́ли. { Two and a half miles.
Gen.	Полу́торы мину́ты,	Полутре́тьи ми́ли.
Dat.	Полу́торымъ мину́тамъ,	Полутре́тьиъмъ ми́лямъ.
Inst.	Полу́торыми мину́тами,	Полутре́тьими ми́лями.
Prep.	Полу́торѣ мину́тахъ,	Полутре́тьѣ ми́ляхъ.

Obs. 9.—In the dative, with a preposition, полторá and полтретья́ have also the inflexions of у, ю in the masculine, and that of ѣ in the feminine, as: по полу́тору, по полу́третью́; по полу́торѣ, по полутре́тьѣ; and in this case masculine and neuter nouns which follow these numerals are put in the genitive plural, and the feminine in the genitive singular.

There was given to each a pound and a half of bread and two measures and a half of wine.      Каждому дали по полу́тору фу́нтовъ хлѣ́ба и по полутре́тьѣ мѣ́ры ви́на.

Obs. 10.—Полтретья́, as also полчетверта́, ‘three and a half,’ etc., are no longer used, and are met with only in ancient Russian books.

A hundred and fifty,      Полтора́ста.

Obs. 11.—The compound numeral полтора́ста has in all the cases полу́тора́ста.

Have you not a hundred and fifty roubles?      Нѣтъ ли у васъ полу́тора́ста рублѣй.  
Add to these hundred and fifty roubles two hundred more.      Прибавьте къ этимъ полу́тора́ста рублѣмъ ещё двѣсти.

And,      Съ.

One and a half.  
Two and a half.

Одѣнь съ полови́ною.  
Два, двѣ съ полови́ною etc.

In,	На, по.
In English,	На а́нглійскомъ языкѣ.
To speak different languages.	Говорить на разны́хъ язы́кахъ.
To write English.	Писать на а́нглійскомъ языкѣ.

Obs. 12.—The verbs говорить, ‘to speak;’ изъясниться, ‘to express one’s self;’ читать, ‘to read;’ etc., when referring to a language or dialect, govern the prepositional case with the preposition на.

In Russian,	{ На ру́сскомъ языкѣ. По ру́ски.
In French.	{ На францу́зскомъ языкѣ. По францу́зски.

Obs. 13.—The second adverbial expression is more widely used.

Do you speak Russian ?	Говорите ли вы по ру́ски ?
I speak Italian and German only.	Я говорю́ то́лько по ита́льянски да по нѣмѣцки.
He writes in Dutch.	Онъ пи́шетъ по голла́ндски.
From—into,	Съ—на.
This work is translated from English into Russian.	Это сочи́неніе пере́веденъ съ а́нглійскаго язы́ка на ру́сскій.
To translate from one language into another.	Перево́дитъ съ одно́го язы́ка на дру́гой.
What is the Russian for ?	Какъ сказа́ть по ру́ски ?

The following adjectives denoting inclination or aptitude govern the dative with the preposition къ, ко.

Greedy, а́лченъ.	Inclined, apt, скло́ненъ.
Ready, гото́въ.	Passionate, стра́стенъ.
Affable, привѣ́тливъ.	Just, справедли́въ.
Respectful, почтѣ́теленъ.	Prejudiced, partial, пристра́стенъ.
Indifferent, равноду́шенъ.	Cold, холде́нь.
Capable, спосо́бенъ.	Cruel, жесто́къ.
Fit, годенъ.	Kind, affable, ла́сковъ.



Adjectives denoting mental or moral capacity or deficiency govern the prepositional case with **въ**.

Skilful, **искусенъ**.  
 Skilled, versed, **свѣдущъ**.  
 Unacquainted with, **несвѣдущъ**.  
 Moderate, **умѣренъ**.  
 Immoderate, **неумѣренъ**.  
 Weak, feeble, **слабъ**.  
 New, **новъ**.

Steady, constant, **постояненъ**.  
 Experienced, **опытенъ**.  
 Hard, firm, **твёрдъ**.  
 Innocent, **невиненъ**.  
 Tidy, clean, **опрятенъ**.  
 Strong (mighty,) **сильнъ**.  
 Happy, lucky, **счастливъ**.

OBS. 14.—Some adjectives denoting capacity or deficiency govern the accusative with the preposition **на**, as :

Insolent, daring, **дерзокъ**.  
 Sparing, careful, **бережливъ**,  
 Quick, **скоръ**.  
 Lavish, **расточителенъ**.

Heavy, **тяжёлъ**.  
 Weak, **слабъ**.  
 Strong (durable), **крѣпокъ**.  
 Clean, pure, **чистъ**.

He is fit for service.  
 The army is ready for battle.  
 He is ready for the journey.  
 I am weak in mathematics.  
 He is prompt.  
 He is deaf.  
 She likes chattering.  
 He is a thief.  
 They are slow.  
 She is innocent of that.

Онъ **годенъ** къ службѣ.  
 Армія **готова** къ бою (or на бой).  
 Онъ **готовъ** въ путь.  
 Я **слабъ** въ математикѣ.  
 Онъ **лёгокъ** на ногу.  
 Онъ **крѣпокъ** на ухо.  
 Она **слаба** на языкъ.  
 Онъ не **чистъ** на руку.  
 Они **слабы** на подъёмъ.  
 Она въ томъ **невинна**.

To make an acquaintance.  
 To make a request.  
 To make one's self understood.  
 To make progress in.  
 To be versed in.  
 To be conversant with.

**Знакомиться**, р. а. **познакомиться**.  
**Обращаться** съ просьбой.  
**Объясняться**, р. а. **объясниться**.  
**Дѣлать** успѣхи въ (with the prep.)  
**Хорошо** знать.  
**Быть** сильнымъ въ (with the prep. case).

To spend.  
 To pass by.  
 A passer by.

**Издѣрживать**, р. а. **издержать**.  
**Проходить** мимо.  
**Прохожий**.

## EXERCISE XCV.

Have you ever been at the Italian opera?—No, I have never been.—Do you not like then the singing of the Italian singers?—Yes, I like the singing, but I do not understand the Italian language at all.—Do you speak French?—Yes, I do, and I speak Spanish also.—If you speak these two languages you can learn to speak Italian in a short time.—Translate for me this little exercise from German into English.—I have no time now, and you had better do it yourself.—Is it true that his brother found a purse in the street?—I only know that he found something like (resembling) a leather purse, but whether it was a purse or something else, I cannot tell you; and therefore if you wish to know, ask him about it yourself. How many French books had he?—He had two French books.—How many daughters had he?—He had five daughters.—Where do these three peasants live?—These three peasants live in some little village on the other side of the river.—How many books were there lying on the table?—Two books, six books were lying.—Allow me to take these seven books.—Take these two books only, the other ones I want myself.—How many ounces are there in a pound and a half?—Twenty-four.—How much did your brother-in-law spend?—He spent more than one hundred and fifty pounds.—Did all the army return from abroad?—No, out of one hundred and fifty thousand men, sent abroad last year, only the last twenty thousand have returned.—Did the passers by give anything to the beggar?—Of all who (no matter who) passed by, every body gave him something; some gave a piece of bread, some a copeck, some gave even as much as a rouble.

## EXERCISE XCVI.

Is your master well versed in Spanish?—Yes, he is conversant with several languages, and he speaks Russian as well as his native tongue.—Do speak German with me. No, you had better speak German with me, as I express myself in this tongue as yet very badly.—Is this fit for anything?—This is fit for nothing.—Now there he has been learning Russian these three years, and still speaks so that one can hardly understand him.—That is because he wants practice, and were he to speak Russian more frequently, he would be able to express himself excellently, or at least so as to be understood by any Russian.—Does he express himself clearly?—No, it is difficult to understand him. Have you been learning Swedish long?—I have been learning it about three years, but although I speak Swedish tolerably well, I translate from English into Swedish very badly.—Is this young man liked by his acquaintances? Yes, because he is affable with everybody.—Is this boy strong in arithmetic?—Yes, but he is weak in drawing. Is she indifferent to him?—She is not only indifferent, but even cold with him.—Was he just to everybody?—He was partial to some and cruel to others.

---

## FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

Сорокъ восьмой Урокъ.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.—Возвратные Глаголы.

Reflective verbs, which denote an action falling upon the agent, are formed from *transitive* verbs by adding ся (the abridged pronoun себя) to the infinitive.



They are conjugated in the same way as transitive verbs, the suffix *ся* when coming after a vowel being abridged into *сь*.

To warm one's self,      *Грѣться.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### *Present.*

I warm myself, я грѣюсь, ты грѣ- ешься, онъ грѣется.		We warm ourselves, мы грѣмся, вы грѣетесь, онѣ грѣются.
---	--	--

##### *Past.*

I was warming myself, я грѣлся, fem. грѣлась, neut. грѣлось, etc.		We were warming ourselves, мы грѣлись, вы грѣлись, etc.
--	--	--

##### *Future.*

I will warm myself, я буду грѣться, etc.		We will warm ourselves, мы бу- демъ грѣться, etc.
---	--	--

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I would warm myself, я грѣлся бы, etc.		We would warm ourselves, мы грѣ- лись бы, etc.
---	--	---

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Warm thyself, грѣйся. Let him warm himself, пусть онъ грѣется.		Warm yourself, грѣйтесь. Let them warm themselves, пусть онѣ грѣются.
--	--	---

#### ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Present.*—Who is warming himself грѣющійся.

*Past.* — Who was warming himself грѣвшійся.

#### PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Wanting.*

#### GERUND.

*Present.*—(While) warming one's self, грѣясь.

*Past.* --- (After) having warmed one's self, грѣвшась.



To hope,	Надѣяться,	} neut. verbs.
To laugh,	Смѣяться,	

Reflective verbs of neuter signification, termed in Russian общие глаголы, 'common verbs,' cannot be used without the suffix ся, inasmuch as they express some state of *mind* or *feeling* falling only upon the agent himself.

To rejoice, радоваться.	To be afraid, бояться.
To take pains, стараться.	To be ashamed, стыдиться.

Reflective verbs which denote the action of two or more agents upon each other, and answering the question 'with whom,' are called взаимные, 'reciprocal.'

To kiss one another.	Цѣловаться.
To fight one another.	Сражаться.
To embrace one another.	Обниматься.
The troops are fighting (with the enemy).	Войска сражаются.
The friends embrace one another.	Друзья обнимаются.
The sisters are kissing one another.	Сёстры цѣлуются.

To break,	Рвать, рваться.
To knock, to knock at,	Стучать, стучаться.
To pray,	Моли́ть, моли́ться.

Obs. 1.—Neuter verbs denoting some inherent force or capability take the form of reflective verbs.

The thread breaks.	Нити рвётся.
To knock at the door	Стучаться въ дверь.
To pray God.	Моли́ться Богу.
The door opens.	Дверь отворяется.

Obs. 2.—Reciprocal verbs not answering the question 'with whom,' become simply neuter verbs, as :

The soldiers are fighting for their country.	Войска сражаются за своё отечество.
--	-------------------------------------

Obs. 3.—On the other hand, those neuter verbs which answer the question ‘with whom,’ have the signification of reciprocal, as :

They played with children.

We conversed with them.

Онѣ играли съ дѣтьми.

Мы разговаривали съ ними.

### PASSIVE VERBS.—Страдательные Глаголы.

Passive Verbs, which represent the agent as receiving or suffering an action from others, are formed, as in English, from active verbs by adding the auxiliary verb *быть*, ‘to be,’ in its different tenses to the apocopated participle passive, either present or past.

The distinction of gender in passive verbs is carried through all the moods and tenses.

To be read,	{ Быть чита́ему, f. чита́емой. Быть чита́ну, f. чита́нной.
To be wished,	{ Быть жела́ему, f. жела́емой. Быть жела́ну, f. жела́нной.
To be loved,	Быть любя́му, f. любя́мой.

I am loved, я любя́мъ, fem. любя́има, neut. любя́имо, etc.

I was loved, я былъ, а, о, любя́мъ, любя́има, о, etc.

I shall be loved, я буду любя́мъ, любя́има, о, etc.

I would be loved, я былъ бы любя́мъ, а, о.

Be (thou) loved, будь любя́мъ, а, о.

Being loved, будучи любя́мъ, а, о.

We are loved, мы любя́мы etc.

We were loved, мы были любя́мы, etc.

We shall be loved, мы будемъ любя́мы, etc.

We would be loved, мы были бы любя́мы.

Be (you) loved, будьте любя́мы.

Having been loved, бывши любя́мъ, а, о.

This man is respected.

This book is read.

{ Этотъ человѣкъ уважа́емъ.  
Этого человѣка уважа́ютъ.  
Эта кни́га чита́ема.  
Эту кни́гу чита́ютъ.  
Эта кни́га чита́ется.

OBS. 4.—The third person of passive verbs is seldom met with in the Russian language of the present day, and in general Russians prefer to use either the active or reflective form instead of the passive.

He is praised by all.	Онъ хвалѣмъ всѣми.
All praise him.	Всѣ его хвалятъ.
The business is done.	{ Дѣло дѣлается.
	{ Дѣло дѣлаемо.
The horses are sold.	{ Лошади продаются.
	{ Лошади продаваемы.
The letters are written.	Письма пишутся.

As the subject in the passive form is put in the instr. case, all reflective verbs used instead of passive govern also the instrumental.

I am occupied with reading.	{ Я занятъ } чтеніемъ.
	{ Я занимаюсь }
The cloth is cut with scissors.	Сукно рѣжется (отъ рѣжутъ) ножницами.
The horses were broken in by the groom.	Лошади объѣзжались конюхомъ.

OBS. 5.—In dates, the year together with the day of the month is put in the genitive, but the year or month by itself is put in the prepositional case with въ.

Shakespeare was born on the 23rd of April, 1546.	Шекспиръ родился двадцать третьяго Апрѣля, тысяча пятьсотъ сорокъ шестаго года.
Shakespeare was born in the year 1546.	Шекспиръ родился въ тысяча пятьсотъ сорокъ шестомъ году.
He went away in April.	Онъ уѣхалъ въ Апрѣль.

To hurry, to be in a hurry,	Торопить, торопиться.
I hurry him.	Я тороплю его.
I am in a hurry.	Я тороплюсь.
Were you in a hurry?	Торопились ли вы?

To wonder at,	} Удивля́ться, удиви́ться, gov the dative.
To be surprised at,	
What are they surprised at ?	Чему́ они́ удиви́ются ?
That is not to be wondered at.	Этому́ не́чего удиви́аться.
To gather strength,	{ Собира́ться, } съ си́лами.
To happen, to chance,	Случа́ться, случи́ться.
To cut,	Рѣ́зать, обрѣ́зать.
I have cut my finger.	Я обрѣ́залъ себѣ́ пале́ць.
He has cut his nails.	Онъ обрѣ́залъ себѣ́ но́гти.
I pared my nails.	Я постри́гъ себѣ́ но́гти.
To cut hair,	Стричь во́лосы.
To shear,	Стричь. *
I shear, etc., я стри́гъ, ты стри́- жѣшь, онъ стри́жеть.	We shear, etc., мы стри́жёмъ, вы стри́жете, они́ стри́гуть.
I sheared, я стри́гъ, стри́гла, стри́г- ло, etc.	We sheared, мы стри́гли, вы стри́г- ли, etc.
<i>Imperative, стри́ги.</i>	<i>Plural, стри́гите.</i>
To see one another,	Ви́дѣться.
To see one's self,	Ви́дѣть себѣ́.
To look at one's self in the glass,	Смотрѣ́ться въ зе́ркало.
To make (from), to prepare,	Выдѣ́лывать, perf. asp. вы́- дѣ́лать.
To dress leather.	Выдѣ́лывать ко́жу.
To make parchment.	Выдѣ́лывать перга́ментъ.
To make oil.	Выдѣ́лывать (or бить) ма́сло.
From—to,	{ Съ—на, (with the acc.) Изь—въ, (with the acc.)
From place to place.	Съ мѣ́ста на мѣ́сто.
From town to town.	Изь го́рода въ го́родъ.



To mistake for,	Принимать по ошибкѣ за (with the acc.)
To mistake, to be mistaken.	Ошибаться, р. а. ошибѣться.
I mistook, я ошибался,	perfect aspect, ошибся.
I shall be mistaken, я буду ошибаться,	. . . . . ошибусь.
Be mistaken, ошибайся,	. . . . . ошибѣсь.
To be amused at.	Забавляться, gov. the instr.
To wash one's self.	Мыться.
To wash one's face and hands.	Умываться, perf. asp. умыться.
To be renowned.	Славиться.
To be occupied in writing.	Заниматься письмомъ.
To jump away from.	Отскакивать, отскочить.
To sign.	Подписываться, подписаться.
To be frightened.	Пугаться, испугаться.
To dig, копать.	To require, требовать.
To use, употребить.	To carry, перевозить.
Morocco leather, сафьянъ.	Fright, испугъ.
By rail.	По желѣзной дорогѣ.
To use with food.	Употреблять въ пищу.

## EXERCISE XCVII.

What is your brother-in-law wondering at?—He wonders that you come here earlier than he.—There is nothing to wonder at; I went out earlier than he.—With what were your sons occupied the day before yesterday?—They were occupied in reading, writing and drawing.—Do you see each other often?—We see each other only now and then.—Do you see yourself in the looking-glass?—No, I see only you in it.—What are these children so much amused at?—They are amused at a cat looking at herself in the glass.—When was the digging of the canal begun?—It was begun on the 1st of August, 1844, and finished on the 11th of June,

1863.—Can you stay with us till the evening?—I cannot stay a single minute, I am in a hurry to get home.—Of what are the houses built?—The houses are built of stone, brick and wood.—Where is this newspaper printed?—It is printed in some small German town.—Are any French journals received here?—Yes, but they sell badly.—In what year were you born?—I was born in the year 1839.—In which month?—In March.—On what day of the month?—On the 25th.—From what seed is this oil made?—From hemp seed.—Do the English use this oil with food?—No, in England this oil is not used with food.—Are there many goods carried by rail from town to town?—Yes, now-a-days a great quantity of goods is carried by rail, not only from town to town, but also from one kingdom to another. Why is the oak-tree valued more (dearer) than the pine-tree?—Because it is harder than the pine, and is used for articles (поделка) requiring durability.

### EXERCISE XCVIII.

By whom are these letters signed?—By our head clerk. Is the letter which he copied a few hours ago signed already?—No, it is not yet signed.—Why is it not signed?—Because it is badly written.—How many letters are written and sent by post daily in your office?—I think there are about ninety letters written daily, of which only the greater part is sent by post the same day.—My brother while dressing this morning in his bedroom looked at himself in the glass, and suddenly jumped away from it in a fright.—What was he frightened at?—He saw a few grey hairs on his head.—By whom is this man conducted?—He is conducted by me.—Is your niece

sometimes punished?—No, never; she is loved and rewarded by the masters.—Are you learning Russian?—I began learning it on the 22nd of June.—Why did not you begin last year? you would now be able to speak.—I did not begin learning sooner because I have not been able to find a good master.—Whither are you hurrying so?—I am hurrying home, where I was expected long ago.—Do not hurry in vain; I have been at your house, and am able to tell you that, were you to go home now, you would find no one there.—The hair of this little girl was badly cut; who cut it so badly?—The nurse cut her hair.—Go into your room, and after washing your face and after combing your hair, come here and learn your lessons. Is there any leather dressed in Russia?—Different sorts of leather are dressed in Russia, but morocco leather is better (more) known to Europe than any other, because it is renowned for its excellent quality.

---

#### FORTY-NINTH LESSON.—С́орокъ девѣтой Уро́къ.

##### IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Безл́ичные Глаго́лы.

Impersonal Verbs proper are those which cannot be used as a predicate to any definite or direct subject, and in which, in fact, the subject is altogether wanting. They are expressed in Russian by the third person singular, their past being only *neuter* as to gender, as :

It grows late, вечерѣтъ ;	<i>past</i>	вечерѣло.
It thaws, таетъ ;	. .	тѣяло.
It grows dark, темнѣтъ ;	. .	темнѣло.
It becomes, подобѣтъ ;	. .	подобѣло.
It dawns, разсвѣтаетъ ;	. .	разсвѣтало.



Personal verbs used in the third person singular or plural without the pronoun—either when there is no definite agent expressed or when some such word as *it, one, they, people, some one, something*, etc., is understood in its place,—become impersonal.

It depends, зависѣть ;	<i>past</i>	зависѣло.
It is proper, приличествуетъ ;	. .	приличествовало.
They say, говорятъ ;	. .	говорили.
People think, думаютъ ;	. .	думали.
It wants, недостаётъ ;	. .	недоставало.
People do, дѣлаютъ ;	. .	дѣляли.

Obs. 1.—Impersonal verbs in the plural, are sometimes used instead of the passive, as :

The book is read.	Книгу читаютъ, instead of книга читается.
He is praised.	Его хвалятъ, instead of онъ хваляется.

Some verbs become impersonal by adding *ся* to the third person singular, without however taking the nature of reflexive verbs.

It is said, говорится.	It is done, дѣлается.
It is asked, спрашивается.	It is considered, считается.
It happens, случается.	It seems, кажется.
It appears, оказывается.	It is required, требуется.

Besides the above, there are also compound impersonal verbs formed by adding the auxiliaries *есть, было, будетъ* to apocopated participles passive, or to adjectives of the neuter gender, as :

It is written, написано.	It is possible, возможно.
It is said, сказано.	It is known, известно.
It is done, сдѣлано.	It is vexatious, досадно.

Obs. 2.—Impersonal verbs with peculiar terminations



are жаль, лѣнь and лѣзя, the last being used in the negative only :

It is a pity, жаль.

I feel sorry, мнѣ жаль.

I feel lazy, мнѣ лѣнь.

It is impossible, нельзя.

The verb нѣтъ, formed from есть, and the particle не (не есть) has in the past не было, future не будетъ.

Есть, было, будетъ become impersonal when they refer to the pronouns кто 'who,' что 'what, that,' or the adverbs гдѣ 'where,' когда 'when,' куда 'whither,' откуда 'whence,' and such like, as :

One has something to be glad of.

You have some one to speak to.

You had some one to love.

One will have something to think of.

One has somewhere to sojourn.

There is no place to go to.

Есть чему радоваться.

Есть съ кѣмъ поговорить.

Было кого любить.

Будетъ о чѣмъ подумать.

Есть гдѣ остановиться.

Нѣкуда пойти.

Obs. 3.—In interrogative and negative sentences есть is omitted, but было and будетъ must be retained.

Whom has one to ask ?

What is there to be done ?

What has one to be busy about ?

There is no one to ask.

There is nothing to be done.

There is no place to sojourn.

Whom had one to ask ?

There was no one to ask.

There was no place to go to.

What was there to be done ?

There was nothing to be done.

What will there be to be busy about ?

There will be nothing to be busy about.

Кого спросить ?

Что дѣлать ?

Чѣмъ заняться ?

Нѣкого спросить.

Нѣчего дѣлать.

Нѣгдѣ остановиться.

Кого было спросить.

Нѣкого было спросить.

Нѣкуда было пойти.

Что было дѣлать ?

Нѣчего было дѣлать.

Чѣмъ будетъ заняться ?

Нѣчѣмъ будетъ заняться.

The second person is also often used to express the impersonal, when in English the word *one* is understood.

You may sit here sometimes all day	Сидишь здѣсь иногда цѣлый день
long and see nothing.	и ничегó не видишь.
You think to yourself.	Думаешь про себя.

OBS. 4.—With some impersonal verbs the subject is expressed, as :

It thunders, громъ гремѣть.	It snows, снѣгъ идѣть.
It rains, дождь идѣть.	It hails, градъ идѣть.

Compound impersonal verbs, as also those formed from active and neuter verbs, govern the dative.

I should like to go for a walk.	Мнѣ хочется пойти гулять.
He is pleased with it.	Ему это пріятно.
He has some place to go to.	Ему есть куда пойти.
We are ordered.	Намъ велѣно.
Everybody was merry.	Всѣмъ было весело.
They are sorry for you.	Имъ жаль васъ.
It is impossible for her.	Ей невозможно.

The infinitive of all verbs when used as the complement to an impersonal verb governs the dative.

Learning is useful to everybody.	Учиться всякому человѣку полезно.
The work had to be finished.	Работѣ следовало быть конченной.
They ought to be ready.	Имъ должно быть готовымъ.
The greatest blessing is to enjoy good health.	Быть здорову (есть) первое благо.

OBS. 5.—Adjectives and participles in direct concord with the infinitive быть, governed by a personal verb, are put :—

a. In the nominative after the verbs могу 'I can,' and долженъ 'I must,' as :

I can be useful.	Я могу быть полезенъ.
The book must be read.	Книга должна быть прочитана.

## b. In the instrumental after other verbs :

I hope to be ready.  
I wish to be invited.

Надѣюсь быть готовымъ.  
Я желаю быть приглашённымъ.

Used to be,                      Бывало, impersonal.

Бывало may be used with verbs in all tenses, as :

I used to take a walk.

Я гулялъ бывало.

When I walked I used to think to myself.

Я гуляю бывало и думаю самъ про себя.

After taking a little walk I used to lie on the grass.

Погуляю бывало немного да и лягу на траву.

OBS. 6.—Neuter and reflective impersonal verbs which imply an idea of quantity, such as *much, several, some, few*, etc., govern the genitive.

A number of guests came.  
There was some increase in business

Наѣхало гостей.  
Прибавилось дѣла.

Down, downwards,  
Up, upwards,

Внизъ.  
Навѣрхъ, вверхъ, implying motion.

Are you coming down ?  
I am going up.  
They sailed down the river.  
We shall sail up the river.

Вы внизъ идёте ?  
Я идѣю навѣрхъ.  
Они плыли внизъ по рѣкѣ.  
Мы поплывёмъ вверхъ по рѣкѣ.

Above, upstairs,  
Below, downstairs,

Наверхъ, } implying rest.  
Внизъ, }

Is he upstairs ?  
He is downstairs.  
To come down stairs.  
To go up stairs.

На верху ли онъ ?  
Онъ внизъ.  
Сходить (внизъ) по лѣстницѣ.  
Всходить, взойти (навѣрхъ) по лѣстницѣ.

A story, floor.

A one-storied house.

A two-storied house.

My house has three stories.

The floors of the ground-floor are  
made of oak.

To be in lodgings,

To confess,

To turn one's self round,

To lose confidence in,

He has confidence in himself.

I lost all confidence in myself.

To appear,

It appears, it seems,

In ancient times,

The ancients,

To dispose, располагать.

To ascertain, узнавать.

The staircase, лестница.

Rose-water, розовая вода.

Kindness, радушие.

The next house.

The next street.

The main staircase.

The ground floor.

The upper floor.

Sugar-cane.

Position, положёние.

Этажъ.

{ Домъ въ одинъ этажъ.

{ Однотажный домъ.

Двухэтажный домъ.

У меня трехэтажный домъ.

Полы въ нижнемъ этажѣ дубовые.

Квартировать, I. 4.

Сознаваться въ, with the  
prepositional case, I. 2.

{ Поворачиваться, I. 1.

{ Повернуться, р. а., I. 8.

Терять довѣріе къ.

Онъ имѣетъ довѣріе къ себѣ.

Я потерялъ всякое довѣріе къ са-  
мому себѣ.

Казаться, I. 2.

Кажется.

{ Въ древности.

{ Въ древнія времена.

Древніе (люди).

To relieve, помогать.

To put together, сложить

The inmate, жилецъ.

Beetroot, свѣкла.

Confidence, довѣріе.

Сосѣдний домъ.

Сосѣдняя улица.

Парадная лестница.

Нижній этажъ.

Верхній этажъ.

Сахарный тростникъ.

| To put, положить.



## EXERCISE XCIX.

Of what is sugar made in France, Russia, and other countries in Europe?—From beetroot.—Is not sugar made also from sugar-cane?—Yes, a great deal of sugar is made in America from the sugar-cane.—I should like to know why you want to go to him?—I want to go to him because there is no one here to ask where French books are sold, and I promised my sister to buy her one.—Did people write in ancient times on paper like that which we use now?—No, in ancient times people had no idea of the paper which we use now, but wrote on stones, bricks and shells.—Ought one not to confess one's errors?—Yes, but one is not always disposed to confess one's errors. How was the time of the day ascertained before clocks were (not) invented?—The ancients ascertained the time by (no with the dative) the position of the sun.—Can you tell me where there are any good lodgings to let?—They say (that) there are several good lodgings to let in the next street.—On which floor would you like to lodge?—I should like to live on the ground floor or second floor. From what are ropes made?—Ropes are made from coarse hemp.—Whither do the swallows fly for the winter season? It is supposed that they fly for the winter season to Central Africa.—Are there many forests in Southern Russia? No, you may ride sometimes for a whole day and not see a single tree.—From what is rose-water made?—Rose-water is made from rose-leaves.—At what o'clock can one find him at home?—He can be found at home from a quarter past four till six in the evening.—Do you like the new comedy at the French play?—I have not seen it myself, but it seems it was not liked by the public.—If you (one)

keep a squirrel in a cage without giving it something to nibble, (then) its teeth will grow so that it will not be able to put them together.

### EXERCISE C.

Where were you told about my sister going to be married. I was told at my sister's ball yesterday.—Was there much dancing at that ball?—There could be no such a thing, as the rooms are so small that one could scarcely turn one's self round.—Is this the house where you were received with such kindness?—No, the house you speak of has three stories, and this has only two.—Is this poor woman relieved?—Yes, people relieve her.—Was your sister invited to the countess's ball?—She was invited to it, and she also hopes to be invited to the princess's ball.—By (къ) what time must the dresses ordered be ready?—They must be ready by to-morrow.—Did she wish to be useful to her? Yes, but she could not be useful to her.—What are the children afraid of?—They are afraid of being left at home. Did you hear with whom he intends to go to the Paris Exhibition next year?—They say he is going with the French Ambassador.—Is there anybody upstairs?—No, everybody is downstairs.—Shall I be allowed to go upstairs?—No, you must remain downstairs.—Whither are these steamers sent?—They are sent down the river.—Will there be any steamer going up the river?—No, there will be no steamer going up the river.—Are we to believe that he went away without saying 'good-bye?' No, you must not believe that.—Whoever has told a lie yesterday, will not be believed to-morrow.

---

## FIFTIETH LESSON.—Пятидеся́тый Уро́къ.

To write, писа́ть.

Writing,

To take, вяза́ть.

Taking,

Written, писа́нь.

Писа́нiе.

Taken, вяза́ть.

Взя́тiе.

Verbal nouns are derivatives of neuter gender ending in *nie* or *tie*, formed from the past participle passive by changing *ъ* into *ie* (*ье*). They are used in place of the infinitive in cases where, in English, the participle present or the infinitive is employed.

To read is beneficial.

Reading is beneficial.

Executed, исполне́нь.

Wished, жела́нь.

Saved, спасе́нь.

To walk, ходи́ть.

Чита́ть поле́зно.

Чте́ние поле́зно.

Executing, execution, исполне́нiе.

Wishing, wish, жела́нiе.

Saving, salvation, спасе́нiе.

Walking, walk, хо́жде́нiе.

Verbal nouns are formed not only as stated above, but also from neuter and other verbs, without however taking the suffix *ся*.

To seat, сидѣ́ть.

To endeavour, стара́ться.

Sitting, сидѣ́нiе.

Endeavouring, стара́нiе.

OBS. 1.—In nouns having both the terminations *ie* and *ье*, the former implies an act and the latter an object, as :

Granted, жа́лованъ.

Drunk, пия́ть.

{ (The act of) granting, жа́лованiе.

{ The grant, salary, жа́лованье.

{ Drinking, пия́тiе.

{ The drink, пия́ть.

Verbal nouns follow the changes of meaning expressed by the imperfect, perfect and iterative aspects.

Written, писа́нь, писа́нiе.

Written out, выпи́сыванъ, выпи́сыванiе.

Signed, подписа́нь, подписа́нiе, (подпи́сь.)

Used to be written, пи́сыванъ, пи́сыванiе.



OBS. 2.—The tonic accent, when transferred in the participle to the radical syllable, is put in verbal nouns on the syllable preceding *ie* or *ie*.

Written, *писа́нь*, *писа́нiе*.

Ordered, *вѣ́дѣнь*, *вѣ́дѣнiе*.

Fought, *воѣ́ванъ*, *воѣ́ванiе*.

Substantives formed from participles ending in *енъ* instead of *ѣнь*, take the characteristic vowel of the past tense or of the infinitive.

Borne, *тѣ́рпенъ*, (*тѣ́рпѣль*, *тѣ́рпѣть*), *тѣ́рпѣнiе*.

Turned, *вѣ́рченъ*, (*вѣ́ргѣль*, *вѣ́ргѣть*), *вѣ́ргѣнiе*.

To fear,

Бо́и́ться, II. 9.

To dread;

Опа́са́ться, I. 1.

To take care of one's self,

Берѣ́чься, I. 7.

To guard one's self against,

Осте́регáться, I. 7.

OBS. 3.—The above four verbs govern the genitive, and when followed by *чтобы* require the next verb to be put in the negative:

He fears that she will come.

Онъ бо́и́тся что́бы она́ не при́шла.

He is afraid he will break the bottle.

Онъ бо́и́тся что́бы не разб́ить бутыл-  
ки.

He dreads to be seen.

Онъ опа́са́ется что́бы е́го не уви́дѣли.

After (when),

{ По́слѣ то́го—когда́.

{ По́слѣ то́го—какъ,

After he returned.

По́слѣ то́го какъ онъ возврати́лся.

After having made his speech,  
he sat down.

По́слѣ то́го какъ онъ произнёсъ  
свою́ рѣ́чь (произнёсши свою́  
рѣ́чь) онъ сѣ́лъ.

For, in,

На, with the accusative

I gave him money for the purchase  
of books, and he spent it in  
cakes.

Я далъ ему́ де́негъ на поку́пку книгъ  
а онъ ихъ истрáтилъ на прѣ-  
ники.



We bought linen for shirts.

What picture is this ?

This picture is painted by Rembrandt.

A picture by Titian.

Мы купили полотна на рубахи.

Что это за картина ?

Эта картина написана Рембрантомъ.

Картина Тиціана.

OBS. 4.—The word *by* in cases where the participle passive is understood is expressed in Russian by the genitive of the following noun.

A picture by Rubens.

A poem by Byron.

Картина Рубенса.

Поэма Байрона.

To run,

To run about,

{ Бѣжать, \* def. imperf. asp.

{ Бѣгать, indef. imperf asp.

Бѣгать по, with the dative.

*Definite.*

I am running, etc., бѣгу, бѣжишь,  
бѣжитъ.

We are running, бѣжимъ, бѣжите,  
бѣгутъ.

I was running, я бѣжалъ.

We were running, мы бѣжали.

*Indefinite.*

I run, etc., бѣгаю, бѣгаешь, бѣга-  
еть.

We run, бѣгаемъ, бѣгаете, бѣгаютъ.

I ran, я бѣгалъ.

We ran, мы бѣгали.

*Imperative*, бѣги, бѣгите, бѣгай, бѣгайте.

To run all over,

To avoid,

To pay attention to,

Избѣгать.

{ Избѣгать, imp. asp.

{ Избѣжать, perf. asp.

Обращать (обратить) вниманіе на, with the accus.

They do not pay any attention to him.

Children ! pay attention.

Онѣ не обращаютъ на него никакого вниманія.

Дѣти ! будьте внимательны.

To take into consideration,

Брать (взять), въ соображѣ-  
ніе.

To make allowance for,

Обращать вниманіе.

One should make allowance for his  
illness.

Нужно взять въ соображеніе его бо-  
лѣзнь.

We must make allowance for his  
being a foreigner.

Намъ должно обратитъ вниманіе на  
то, что онъ иностранецъ.

Such a thing,

{ Что либо такое.  
{ Что нибудь подобное.

No such thing can be seen here

Нечего подобнаго здѣсь не увидишь.

Such,

Такой.

Such, as,

Тотъ, который.

Such books as they have read do  
not please them.

Тѣ книги, которыя онѣ читали, имъ  
не нравятся.

Such as wish to go must say so  
now.

Тѣ, которые желаютъ пойти, должны  
ѣго теперь сказать.

To rival,

Соперничать съ, with the  
instrumental.

To do right,

Быть правымъ.

To be proud of.

Гордиться, governs the instrumental.

The evening comes on.

Вечерѣть, impersonal verb.

To send to prison.

Заключить, посадить въ тюрьму.

To perform.

Играть, представлять.

To accuse.

Обвинять, perf. asp. обвинить.

Beforehand.

Заранѣе, наперѣдъ.

Unpardonable.

Непростительный.

Proper (due).

Должный.

Thus, in such a way.

Такъ, такимъ образомъ.

Raphael, Рафаэль.

Rubens, Рубенсъ.

Schiller, Шиллеръ.

Molière, Мольеръ.

## EXERCISE CI.

Have you seen the new picture by Doré?—I have not, but my nephew, who, as you know, is considered a great connoisseur, has seen it, and he says that it is an excellent picture.—May one say that this picture rivals the best of Raphael's or Rubens' works?—No, it seems to me that could not be said of this picture.—Why do you not drink some wine?—My doctor recommended me not to drink any.—Good wine is not an injurious beverage if one drinks it in moderation.—Would it be surprising if he were sent to prison?—Of course not, for it is an unpardonable thing to borrow money from people, knowing beforehand that one will not be able to pay his debts at the proper time.—To borrow money in such a way is considered as a theft.—The evening comes on very early to-day.—No, it only appears so to you, it is not earlier than usual.—What will this money be given for?—It will be given for the purchase of pens and pencils.—Whither are you running?—I am running into the garden to see what the children are doing there.—They are running about the garden.—What play do they give to-day at the theatre?—Some tragedy by a French writer.—Do you not know what piece was performed yesterday?—Yesterday was performed one of Molière's comedies.

## EXERCISE CII.

Was there much beer sold at the fair?—They say there was sold about 3543 casks.—Is the criminal already punished?—No, he is not, and he will not be punished, as it seems he is not guilty, but falsely accused by his enemies.—Of what is this lady so proud?—She is proud

of her pretty daughters.—Of what is his uncle proud?—He is proud of his industrious sons.—How much linen shall I need for a dozen and a half of shirts?—You will require about fifty yards.—What has he bought?—He has bought two pair of stockings, a pair of kid gloves, half a yard of cloth for his waistcoat, and a straw bonnet for his daughter.—Have you ever seen such a pocket-book?—I have seen many such.—Did she pay any attention to him? Yes, she did.—Does he pay attention to his words?—No, he does not pay any attention to what he says.—Did I not do right to tell him all the truth?—You did quite right. Where are you going?—I am going to Berlin.—Then I hope to have the pleasure of meeting you there.—I shall be very glad indeed.

---

## FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ пѣрвый Урокъ.

#### OF THE ASPECTS IN DETAIL.

It might erroneously be assumed that the Russian verb, in having only three tenses, is not susceptible of the different variations of meaning presented in English by compound tenses, or by a dozen or so of auxiliaries combined with the infinitive or participle: the reverse is, however, the case. Besides the ordinary moods and tenses, the Russian verb has also forms to express the circumstances accompanying the action, or the manner in which the action is performed, without reference to its time. These forms, named *aspects*, **виды** (see Lesson 28), which render the Russian verb



richer in its simplicity than those of other European languages, are :

I. *The Imperfect Aspect*, indicating an action performed absolutely, *i.e.* without conditions as to its beginning or ending.

The peasants sell their goods in the market.

Some wrote with pen, some with pencil.

Who will read us this manuscript ?

Whoever can read best.

Крестьяне продають свой товары на рынокъ.

Кто писалъ перомъ, кто карандашомъ.

Кто будетъ читать намъ эту рукопись ?

Тотъ, кто читаетъ лучше всѣхъ.

To fly,

To swim,

{ Летѣть, def.  
{ Летать, indef.

{ Плыть, def.  
{ Плавать, indef.

The imperfect aspect is subdivided into :

*a.* The definite, which denotes that the action takes place at some particular time.

He is swimming (now) to that ship.

Whither are these birds flying ?

How did you feel at the time when you were swimming to the boat ?

We will swim slowly.

Онъ плывётъ къ тому кораблю.

Куда эти птицы летятъ ?

Какъ вы себя чувствовали въ то время когда плыли (плыли) къ лодкѣ.

Мы будемъ плыть тихо.

*b.* The indefinite, which denotes the ability or faculty, as also a habit of performing an act without reference to a particular time.

Birds (can) fly and fishes swim.

He swims well.

If you take a few lessons in swimming, you will be able to swim well.

Птицы летаютъ, а рыбы плаваютъ.

Онъ плаваетъ хорошо.

Если возьмете нѣсколько уроковъ плаванія, то будете плавать хорошо.

II. *The Perfect Aspect*, which denotes a thorough accomplishment of the action, is subdivided into :

*a. Inchoative Perfect Aspect (the starting point)*, denoting an action as fully begun, without intimating that it has been or will be brought to an end.

He began to speak and everybody got silent.	Онъ заговорилъ и все замолчалъ.
The musical-box began to play.	Органчикъ заигралъ.
They will begin to laugh.	Онѣ засмѣются.

*b. Perfect Aspect of Duration (the goal)*, denoting that the action, although brought to a termination, required a certain time for its accomplishment.

I have read (finished reading) the book.	Я прочиталъ книгу.
They came home.	Онѣ пришли домой.
They will read (entirely) the book.	Онѣ прочтутъ книгу.
She will come home.	Она придетъ домой.

*c. Perfect Aspect of Unity (semelfactive)*, employed when the action is performed in one single, sudden effort :

He shouted (once).	Онъ крикнулъ.
He jumped (once) over the fence.	Онъ перепрыгнулъ черезъ заборъ.
He gave him a glance.	Онъ взглянулъ на него.

III. *The Iterative Aspect*, denoting that the action was accomplished in repeated efforts or times at some distant period.

In olden times our ancestors used to live better than we do now.	Въ старину живали дѣды лучше нашего.
We used to read good books.	Мы читывали хорошія книги.

OBS. 1.—Each Aspect is regularly conjugated according to its own moods and tenses, thus :

a. The *Imperfect Aspect*, both definite and indefinite, has all the moods and tenses.

b. The *Perfect* has all the moods and tenses, except the present.

c. The *Iterative* wants the imperative and has only the past tense.

OBS. 2.—There are a few verbs like свистать ‘to whistle,’ which possess all the aspects, as for instance :

Imperfect asp.	{ Definite,	свистѣть.
	{ Indefinite,	свистать.
Perfect asp.	{ Inchoative,	засвистать.
	{ of duration,	просвистать.
	{ of unity,	свистнуть.
Iterative asp.		свистывать.

In some verbs the perfect of unity is wanting, in others the inchoative or the iterative.

With this relation to the aspects the simple verbs, *i.e.* those which have no preposition attached to them; are :

1. *Complete*, which have all the principal aspects, as :

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To throw, кидать,	кинуть,	кидывать.
To touch, трогать,	тропнуть,	трогивать.

2. *Incomplete*, which have two aspects: the imperfect and the iterative, as :

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To play, играть,	игривать.
To sing, пѣть,	пѣвать.

3. *Double* verbs, which have both the forms of the imperfect aspect and the iterative, as :

<i>Imperfect Definite.</i>	<i>Imperfect Indefinite.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
To go, идти,	ходить,	хаживать.
To carry, нести,	носить,	нашивать.

4. *Defective*, which have one aspect only, the imperfect or perfect, as :

To adore, обожа́ть,	} used only in the imperfect aspect.
To suspect, подозрѣ́вать,	
To come to one's self, опомни́ться,	} used only in the perfect aspect.
To gush out, хлы́нуть,	

To refuse,

{ Отка́зывать въ, } with the  
{ Отказа́ть, р. а., } prep. с.

To bequeath, to leave,

Отка́зывать, отказа́ть.

What did he refuse you ?

Въ чёмъ онъ отка́залъ вамъ ?

He refused me everything.

Онъ во всёмъ мнѣ отка́залъ.

My grandmother bequeathed me this estate.

Бабушка отка́зала мнѣ это помѣстье.

He gave him a peremptory refusal.

Онъ ему́ ничесто отка́залъ.

He met with a refusal.

Онъ получи́лъ отка́зъ.

To be of use,

Быть полезнымъ.

To make one's self useful,

Приноси́ть пользу.

To be a burden to,

Быть въ тя́гость.

Am I a burden to you ?

Въ тя́гость ли я вамъ ?

I am a burden to myself.

Я въ тя́гость себѣ.

They were a burden to themselves.

Онѣ были себѣ въ тя́гость.

Immaterial, all the same,

Всё равно, ну́жды нѣтъ, im-  
personal, with the dat.

It is immaterial to us.

Намъ всё равно.

It is all the same to me.

} Мнѣ всё равно, мнѣ ну́жды нѣтъ.

It makes no difference to me.

To rid one's self of,

Освободи́ться, изба́виться отъ,  
with the genitive.

To get rid of,

To get off one's hands, }

Сбыва́ть, сбы́ть съ рукъ.

We could not get rid of that disagreeable man.

Мы не могли́ изба́виться (отдѣлаться)  
отъ того́ неспоснаго чело́вѣка.



Have you got rid of the damaged goods ?

We have got that work off our hands.

To succeed,

I sometimes succeed in finding him in.

Did he succeed ?

He will not succeed.

To complain of,

He complains of his severity.

To observe, to watch,

We watched the men working.

In spite of,

By accident,

On purpose,

Intentionally,

For what ?

Was there any cause to punish him ?

There was no cause.

By,

To pass (by),

I passed your house.

Сбыли ли вы съ рукъ испорченный товаръ ?

Мы сбыли съ рукъ (огъ съ плечъ) эту рабѣту.

Удаваться, удаться, conj. like  
дать.

Мнѣ удаётся иногда застать его дома.

Удалось ли ему ?

Ему не удастся.

{ Жаловаться на, } with  
{ Пожаловаться, р. а. } the acc.

Онъ жалуется на его строгость.

Наблюдать за, with the instr.

Мы наблюдали за работающими (людьми).

Не смотри на, with the acc.

Случайно, }  
Нарочно, } adverbs.  
Умышленно, }

За что ?

Было ли за что его наказывать ?

Нѣ за что было.

Мимо.

Проходить мимо, with the  
genitive.

Я прошёлъ мимо вашего дома.

By (according), in,  
I could not judge by the hand-  
writing.  
In my opinion.

As one can,  
Let us be as good as we can.

Weekly, *adv.*

Monthly,

Yearly,

I pay weekly.

I pay quarterly.

To ask for a loan.

To cease.

To make a stay.

To become.

To become rich.

To enrich, to make rich.

To knock against.

To serve tea, dinner.

The necessities of life.

A commercial house.

Property, имущество.

A half-bottle, полбутылка.

To keep, держать.

По, with the dative.

Я не могъ судить по почерку.

По моему мнѣнію.

По возможности.

Будемъ добры по возможности.

Еженедѣльно, понедѣльно.

Ежемѣсячно, помѣсячно.

Ежегодно, погодно.

Я плачѹ понедѣльно.

Я плачѹ каждую четверть (года).

Просить денегъ въ займы у.—

Переставать, р. а. перестать.

Пробыть, прожить.

Становиться, дѣлаться.

Обогащаться, обогатиться.

Обогащать, обогатить.

Стучать о, with the acc. с.

Подавать чай, обѣдъ.

Нужное, необходимое.

Торговый домъ.

Burden, тягость.

A champagne-glass, бокалъ.

Appropriation, присвоение.

### EXERCISE CIII.

Must I punish this lazy boy for his breaking the tumbler?—If he broke it on purpose, then punish him, but if he did it by accident then he should not be punished.—May we punish children for disobedience or misbehaviour?—We not only may, but should.—Was there any cause to reproach him?—There was no cause to reproach him.—While

passing this five-storied house I met a young man.—Who was that young man?—I do not know his name, but I remember well that he is the same whom I met more than once at your house.—It is impossible for me to guess by such a description.—How long has this little girl worn these shoes?—She has not worn them more than four weeks, and they are quite worn out already.—How does your brother-in-law pay his rent, weekly or monthly?—He pays quarterly, he pays yearly.—What wine shall I serve at dinner?—Bring two bottles of Burgundy and a bottle of Champagne.—In asking this miser for a loan, you waste your time, because he is so mean, that he refuses the necessities of life to his only son.—Is this diamond-merchant rich?—Judging by the luxury that surrounds him, he must be very rich.—Did you ask anybody for a loan?—No, I did not, I am not in need of money.—Have you got rid of your head-ache?—Yes, my head does not ache now. Has the merchant got rid of the damaged cloth?—Yes, he has succeeded in getting rid of it.—Did he buy this watch? No, his grandfather, who never refuses him anything, gave it to him.—Has he left something to his poor nephew? No, he left all his property to his eldest niece.

#### EXERCISE CIV.

Have you ever watched the work of the bees in their hives? Yes, I saw them once working at the Crystal Palace, where they are kept in glass hives.—Ought not everybody to endeavour to make himself useful?—Everybody ought to make himself as useful as he can, for the moment that a man, however rich he may be, ceases to make himself useful to others, he becomes a burden to himself.—Will he succeed

in getting a situation in some commercial house?—He has got a situation and gets a very good salary, but in spite of all this, he is always complaining.—Do not knock the book against the table; your mother is ill, and you make such a noise.—I have done it by accident and not on purpose. Bring me a glass of champagne.—Our champagne is sold only in bottles and half bottles.—Then bring me half a bottle.—Yes, sir.—Of what is this man accused?—He is accused of appropriating other people's money.—Is this his sole crime?—No, he is accused of another crime also.—Of which?—That he has stolen from his master a large sum of money.—By whom was this church built?—Which church?—The one built of brick, and whose cupola is seen from here better than all others.—Is England rich?—Yes, very rich; free trade has so enriched that country.

## FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ второй Урокъ.

Whither are you carrying this child? . Куда вы несёте этого ребёнка?

I am carrying him to the hospital.

Я несѹ его въ больницу.

Do you take him there often?

Часто ли вы его туда носите?

I take him there every day.

Я его туда ношѹ каждый день.

The double verbs, namely those having the definite and indefinite forms in the imperfect aspect, designate movement or some act having relation to hearing or sight.

The radical form of these verbs is the definite aspect, from which the indefinite is formed.



The following comprise nearly all of this class.

*Definite Imperfect Aspect.*

Бресті́, I. 7, to wander,  
 Блестѣ́ть, II. 9, to glitter,  
 Блуді́ть, II. 10, to wander,  
 Бѣжа́ть,\* to run,  
 Вали́ть, II. 10, to throw down,  
 Везті́, I. 7, to carry (in a carriage),  
 Вести́, I. 7, to lead,  
 Вѣсѣ́ть, II. 10, to weigh,  
 Гнать,\* to drive,  
 Идти́,\* to go,  
 Каті́ть, II. 10, to roll,  
 Криві́ть, II. 10, to crook,  
 Летѣ́ть, II. 9, to fly,  
 Ломі́ть, II. 10, to break,  
 Лѣзть, I. 7, to climb,  
 Мѣрѣ́ть, I. 1, to measure,  
 Нести́, I. 7, to bring, to carry,  
 Плы́ть, I. 6, to swim,  
 Ползті́, I. 7, to crawl,  
 Роні́ть, II. 10, to drop,  
 Слы́шать, II. 9, to hear,  
 Саді́ть, II. 9, to plant,  
 Свистѣ́ть, II. 9, to whistle,  
 Тащі́ть, II. 10, to drag,  
 Ѣхать,\* to ride,

*Indefinite Imperfect Aspect.*

Броді́ть, II. 10.  
 Блѣста́ть, I. 1.  
 Блужда́ть, I. 1.  
 Бѣга́ть, I. 1.  
 Вали́ть, I. 1.  
 Возі́ть, II. 10.  
 Воді́ть, II. 10.  
 Вѣша́ть, I. 1.  
 Гоня́ть, I. 1.  
 Ході́ть, II. 10.  
 Кача́ть, I. 1.  
 Кривля́ть, I. 1.  
 Лета́ть, I. 1.  
 Ломя́ть, I. 1.  
 Лѣзѣ́ть, II. 10.  
 Мѣря́ть, I. 1.  
 Носі́ть, II. 10.  
 Плава́ть, I. 1.  
 Полза́ть, I. 1.  
 Роня́ть, I. 1.  
 Слыха́ть.  
 Сажа́ть, I. 1.  
 Свиста́ть.  
 Таска́ть, I. 1.  
 Ѣзди́ть, II. 10.

Obs. 1.—The iterative aspect of double verbs is formed from the indefinite, as :

To go, идти́, ході́ть,	Iterative, хажива́ть.
To ride, ѣхать, ѣзди́ть,	. . ѣзжива́ть.
To hear, слы́шать, слыха́ть,	. . слыхива́ть.

Obs. 2.—All other verbs of the imperfect aspect have one form only, as :

The children are silent when he reads.      Дѣти молча́тъ когда онъ чита́етъ.

He reads well.  
 What is he doing now ?  
 He is singing.  
 They sing well.  
 Birds sing.

Онъ хорошо читаетъ.  
 Что онъ теперь дѣлаетъ ?  
 Онъ поётъ.  
 Они хорошо поютъ.  
 Птицы поютъ.

To do, to cause,

{ Причинить, I. 1.  
 { Причинить, р. а. II. 10.

The rain did harm to the fields.

Дождь причинилъ вредъ полямъ.

To laugh at, to mock,

{ Смѣяться } надъ, with  
 { Насмѣхаться } the instr.

They laughed at him.  
 You should not mock him.

Они смѣялись надъ нимъ.  
 Вы не должны насмѣхаться надъ  
 нимъ.

To make one laugh.

Смѣшить, II. 10.

To have done with,

{ Окóнчить.  
 { Не нуждаться болѣе.

Have you done with this book ?

{ Окóнчили ли вы эту книгу ?  
 { Нужна ли вамъ ещё эта книга ?

I have not done with it yet.

{ Я её ещё не окóнчилъ.  
 { Она мнѣ ещё нужна.

Have you done dinner ?

{ Окóнчили ли вы обѣдать ?  
 { Отобѣдали ли вы ?

Is this right ?

{ Справедливо ли ?  
 { Хорошо ли ?

To be right,  
 To be in the right,  
 To be in the wrong,

Быть справедливымъ.  
 Быть правымъ.  
 Быть не правымъ.

To act rightly,

{ Дѣлать хорошо.  
 { Поступать справедливо.

Is he right in calling me lazy ?

Справедливо ли онъ, называя меня  
 лѣнтяемъ (лѣнивымъ).

He is wrong.

{ Онъ не справедливъ.  
Онъ не хорошо дѣлаетъ.

Was I right in calling you early ?

Хорошо ли я сдѣлалъ, разбудивъ васъ рано ?

Was he in the right when he complained ?

Правъ ли онъ былъ, когда жаловался ?

He was entirely in the wrong.

Онъ былъ совершенно не правъ.

I shall have done,

Я окончу.

I shall have written,

Я напишѹ.

Obs. 3.—The English future perfect with *shall* or *will* expressed or understood, is rendered by the future tense in Russian, as :

When will you buy this house ?

Когда вы купите этотъ домъ ?

As soon as I have got the money ?

Какъ только получѹ деньги.

After I have written this letter, I shall have to write one more.

Когда напишѹ (написавъ) это письмо, мнѣ нужно будетъ написать еще одно.

For (during),

Въ продолженіе.

He rode for five days.

Онъ ѣхалъ въ продолженіе пяти дней.

For six weeks we had only biscuit to eat.

Въ продолженіе шести недѣль мы ѣли только сухарі.

In passing,

Мимоходомъ, adverb.

When did you see him ?

Когда вы видѣли его ?

I saw him as I went by.

Я видѣлъ его мимоходомъ.

He looked at the window as he went past.

Онъ заглянулъ въ окно мимоходомъ.

In every way,

Всячески, adverb.

I have done my best.

Я всячески старался.

He tried this in every way.

Онъ всячески пробовалъ это сдѣлать.

To persuade,

{ Уговаривать, I. 1.  
{ Уговорить, р. а. II. 10.

To lose,

Теря́ть, р. а. потеря́ть.

To be lost,

{ Пропада́ть, I. 1.  
 { Пропа́сть,\* р. а. (future,  
 пропаду́).

He has lost his purse.

Онъ потеря́лъ свой кошеле́къ.

The dog was lost.

Соба́ка пропа́ла.

This money may be regarded as lost.

Ну́жно счита́ть что эти де́ньги про-  
па́ли.

We have lost sight of him.

Онъ у насъ изъ глазъ пропа́лъ.

They gave me up for lost.

Онѣ счита́ли меня́ пропа́щимъ чело-  
вѣкомъ.

To have an objection to,

Быть прѳтивъ, with the gen.

Have you any objection to this.

Имѣете ли что прѳтивъ этого ?

I have no objection to this.

Я не прѳтивъ этого.

To knit,

{ Вязать, I. 2.

{ Связать, р. а.

To post a letter,

Отда́ть письмо́ на по́чту.

To trouble with,

{ Утружда́ть, } with the  
 { Утрудѣ́ть, р. а. } instr.

To tell (to narrate).

Разска́зывать.

To play at chess.

Игра́ть въ шахма́ты.

To play at billiards.

Игра́ть на билья́рдѣ.

A chess-player.

Шахма́тный игро́къ.

A billiard-player.

Билья́рдный игро́къ.

A game of chess.

Па́ртія въ шахма́ты.

To be obliged, compelled.

Быть прину́ждену́.

A vain effort.

Напрасный трудъ.

Drought, засуха.

Conclusion, оконча́нiе.

A beggar-woman, ни́щая.

To shine, сия́ть.

Visible, ви́дный, ви́димый.

To fulfil, испол́нить.

To cry out, крича́ть.

To dispose, располага́ть.

Effort, трудъ, усѣ́лие.

To suppose, полага́ть.



## EXERCISE CV.

Who usually takes (leads) this little girl to school?—The old nurse takes her there in the morning, and I take her in the evening.—When did our neighbours go out? They went out after warming themselves.—What did you plant yesterday?—I was planting flowers the whole day. What are you carrying on those sledges?—We are carrying wheat.—Whither are you carrying it?—We are taking it to town.—Do you always take your wheat to the town market?—No, we only take it thither when we cannot sell it on the spot.—What was his eldest brother laughing at the other day?—He was laughing at the conclusion of the story which the nurse was telling to the children.—What were the children complaining of?—They were complaining of the dull and rainy weather.—What did they wish for? They wished that the sun would always shine.—Was their wish fulfilled?—Yes, for six whole weeks there was not a single cloud visible.—Did this dry weather do any harm? Yes, it did a great deal of harm to the fields, meadows and gardens.—Do you go to town in winter often?—No, we seldom go there.—Who left you the estate you now possess?—My late aunt left it to me.—Is the servant carrying the fire-wood which the peasant has brought for us this morning?—No, he has not yet begun to carry it.—Whither shall you go next year for cloth?—I shall go to England, and then, when I have bought it, I shall go to Holland. Why do you speak so loud?—The gentleman to whom I speak, although very kind and amiable, is unfortunately deaf, so I am compelled to cry out, in order to be heard.—Shall John go to the forest?—No, it is Nicholas's business to go there; therefore he, and not John, shall go.

## EXERCISE CVI.

Does your little niece learn to knit stockings?—She need not learn it, because she has already knit a few pairs of very fine stockings.—Would your nieces knit their own stockings if they could not buy any?—Even then they would not, for they know not how to knit stockings.—Do me the favour of putting those letters in the post as you go by.—They are posted already.—When will you have done copying these letters?—I shall have done by this evening. When will they have done with the books?—They will have done by to-morrow.—When will your uncle return to town?—When he has finished his business.—For how long are you going to Australia?—I am going there for three years.—Can he play at billiards?—Yes, he is a very good billiard player.—Does he play as well as this marker?—No, he does not, but that does not prevent him from considering himself the best player.—With whom were you playing at chess at the club?—I played yesterday two games at chess with a Hungarian, who is considered to be one of the strongest players.—Which of you has won?—I, of course, lost; for I am a weak player.—Did you persuade him to come to us to-morrow?—I endeavoured in every way to persuade him, but he was so obstinate that all my efforts were thrown away on him.—Well, if he likes better to sit by himself at home, we shall not trouble him any more with our invitation.—Did your neighbour find her little dog, which they say was lost a few days ago?—No, and the little dog was not lost, but stolen, it is supposed, by an old beggar-woman.

---

## FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Пятьдесятъ третій Урокъ.

## FORMATION OF THE ITERATIVE ASPECT.

The Iterative is formed from the imperfect aspect by changing the termination of the infinitive or that of the present tense into **ывалъ, нвалъ, валъ** or **алъ**.

Dissyllabic and polysyllabic verbs in **тъ**, preceded by **а, я, о, ѣ, и** form their iterative in **ывалъ** or **нвалъ**, the tonic accent falling on the radical syllable, *i.e.* before the termination.

To read, чит-ать, читаю ;	iterative, чѣт-ывалъ.
To measure, мѣр-ять, мѣряю ;	. . мѣр-нвалъ.
To sting, кол-оть, колю ;	. . кал-ывалъ.
To sit, сид-ѣть, сижу ;	. . сѣж-нвалъ.
To love, люб-ить, люблю ;	. . любл-нвалъ.

Verbs of the first conjugation ending in **ать** form the iterative in **ывалъ**, which is changed into **нвалъ** when coming after **ж, ч, ш, г, к, х** only, as :

To hold, держ-ать, держу ;	iterative, дѣрж-нвалъ.
To roll, кач-ать, качаю ;	. . калч-нвалъ.
To decide, рѣш-ать, рѣшаю ;	. . рѣш-нвалъ.
To move, двѣг-ать, двѣгаю ;	. . двѣг-нвалъ.
To plough, пах-ать, пашу ;	. . палх-нвалъ.

An **л** before **нвалъ** is inserted in the iterative of verbs of the second class in **ать**, preceded by **б, п, м** :

To shake, колеб-ать, колеблю ;	iterative, колеблнвалъ.
To drizzle, крап-ать, краплю ;	. . краплнвалъ.
To slumber, дрем-ать, дремлю ;	. . дремлнвалъ.



Obs. 1.—The following dissyllabic verbs of the ninth and tenth classes take **алъ** instead of **ивалъ** :

To burn, горѣть ;	iterative, горѣалъ.
To boil, кипѣть ;	. . кипѣалъ.
To cut, рубить ;	. . рубѣалъ.

The iterative in **валъ** and **алъ** is formed :

a. From all monosyllabic verbs :

To know, знать, знаю ;	iterative, знавалъ.
To sing, пѣть, пою ;	. . пѣвалъ.
To live, жить, живу ;	. . живалъ.
To nibble, грызть, грызу ;	. . грызалъ.
To bake, печь, пеку ;	. . пекалъ.
To row, грести, гребу ;	. . грѣбалъ.
To burn, жечь, жгу ;	. . жигалъ.

Except the following in **сть** :

To lay, класть, кладу ;	iterative, клáдывалъ.
To steal, красть, краду ;	. . кра́дывалъ.
To spin, прясть, пряду ;	. . прѣдывалъ.

Obs. 2.—The termination **валъ** is used after vowels and **алъ** after consonants.

To tear, рвать, рву ;	iterative, рывалъ.
To take, брать, беру ;	. . бира́лъ.

Obs. 3.—If a vowel in the imperfect aspect is wanting in the verbal root, the vowel **и** (**ы**) is inserted in the iterative :

To babble, врать, вр-у ;	iterative, впр-ѣалъ.
To rub, терѣть, тр-у ;	. . тпр-ѣалъ.
To call, звать, зову ;	. . зыв-ѣалъ.

Obs. 4.—The termination **алъ** of the iterative is always accented.



b. From dissyllabic verbs in *вуть*, as :

To feel cold, *зѣбнуть* ; iterative, *зѣб-ѣлъ*.  
 To dry, *сѣхнуть* ; . . *сѣх-ѣлъ*.

Except the following :

To smell, *пѣхнуть* ; iterative, *пѣхивалъ*.  
 To draw, *тянуть* ; . . *тягивалъ*.

OBS. 5.—Between the indefinite imperfect aspect and the iterative there is a great similarity in meaning, and they have in common the *a* in the final syllable, as :

I was in the habit of swimming.      Я *плѣвалъ*,  
 I used to sing.      Я *пѣвалъ*.

but they differ in this that the first has and the second has not the present tense.

Verbs having in the infinitive the tonic accent on the last syllable, in forming the iterative change the *o* of the radical syllable into *a*, which takes also the accent.

To throw, *бросѣть* ; iterative, *брасывалъ*.  
 To look, *смотрѣть* ; . . *смѣтривалъ*.  
 To feed, *кормить* ; . . *кармливалъ*.

OBS. 6.—If the radical *o* is accented in the infinitive it remains unchanged in the iterative.

To touch, *трѣгать* ; iterative, *трѣгивалъ*.  
 To damage, *пѣртить* ; . . *пѣрчивалъ*.

Only the following deviate from this rule :

To creep, *пѣлзѣть* ;      iterative, *пѣлзывалъ*.  
 To turn, *ворѣчать* ;      . . *ворѣчивалъ*.  
 To build, *стрѣбить* ;      . . *страивалъ* (*стрѣивалъ*).  
 To dispose to kindness, *дѣбрить* ; . . *дѣбривалъ* (*дѣбровивалъ*).

Obs. 7.—It has been stated that the iterative of double verbs is formed from the indefinite aspect; the following, however, are exceptions, as they form the iterative also from the definite aspect.

To climb, лѣзть;	iterative, лѣзѣлъ.
To creep, ползѣть;	. . . ползѣлъ.
To turn, вертѣть;	. . . вѣрчивалъ.
To roll, катить;	. . . кáчивалъ.

Most verbs derived from substantives or adjectives want the iterative; to these belong neuter verbs of the first class in ѣть, жать, чать, шать, щать, and verbs in нуть of the eighth class denoting the acquisition of some quality, as:

To grow white, бѣлѣть.	To become dear, дорожать.
To grow black, чернѣть.	To become strong, крѣпчать.
To grow blue, снѣѣть.	To grow old, ветшать.
To sweat, потѣть.	To know how, умѣть.
To fade, блѣкнуть.	To grow deaf, глѣхнуть.

The participles, the gerund and the infinitive of the third branch, *i.e.* of the iterative, are formed in the same way as those of the second branch, namely, by changing лъ into въ (вши) вшій,—ть,—нъ, as:

<i>Iterative</i> , чѣтывалъ.
<i>Active Participle</i> , чѣтывавшій.
<i>Passive Participle</i> , чѣтыванъ.
<i>Gerund</i> , чѣтывавъ.

Obs. 8.—The iterative aspect of simple verbs is seldom used in the infinitive, but a careful study of this aspect will be found very useful for the formation of prepositional verbs.

To spend,	{ Трѣтить, II. 10.
	{ Истрѣтить, perf. asp.
To spend (on one's self),	Проживать, прожить.
Do you spend much every year?	Сколько вы проживаете въ годъ?
I spend all I earn.	Я проживаю всё что зарабатываю.

To live upon, by,

She lives by her labour.

They live upon their income.

He has nothing to live upon.

Жить, with the instr.

Она живётъ своими трудами.

Онѣ живутъ своими доходами.

Ему нѣтъмъ жить.

Upon,

He lives upon the money left to him by his uncle.

На, with the accus.

Онъ живётъ на деньги, оставленные ему его дѣдею.

By,

What do you mean by that ?

Подъ, with the instr.

Что вы разумѣете (понимаете) подъ этимъ.

To help,

{ Помогать, I. 1, with the dat.  
{ Помочь,\* р. а., (fut. помогу,  
поможешь, etc.).

We cannot help you.

They always helped him as far as possible.

I cannot help laughing.

I cannot refrain from laughing. }

Could one help laughing ?

Мы не можемъ помочь вамъ.

Онѣ всегда помогали ему по возможности.

Я не могу удержаться отъ смѣха.

Можно ли удержаться отъ смѣха ?

To burst out laughing,

To be in a perplexity,

To call on,

Punctually,

To consist,

In the sight of,

On, about,

Разразиться смѣхомъ.

Находиться въ затрудненіи.

{ Заѣхать къ, } with the  
{ Заходить, зайти, } dat.

Въ точности.

Состоять, II. 9.

Передъ, with the instr.

О, объ.

Did they speak on this matter ?

They spoke about it.

Говорили ли онѣ объ этомъ дѣлѣ ?

Онѣ говорили объ этомъ.

To become saving,

Hence,

Thence,

I shall go hence to London and  
thence to Paris.

How did you come to know that  
he is ill?

He said that illness alone could  
prevent his coming; he did  
not come, hence I came to the  
conclusion that he was ill.

Henceforth,

Thenceforth,

A month hence,

They will go to him a few days  
hence.

To get into debt,

To favour with,

To intrust to,

To notify,

To tend, ходить за.

To lie buried, быть похоронену.

To display, оказывать.

To send away, отослать.

Ordinary, простой.

To be at work.

Toast.

A message.

Стать бережливымъ.

Отсюда, изъ сего.

Оттуда, изъ того.

Я поѣду отсюда въ Лондонъ, а отту-  
да въ Парижъ.

Какъ это вы узнали что онъ боленъ?

Онъ сказалъ, что только болѣзнь мо-  
жетъ помѣшать ему прійти;  
онъ не пришёлъ, изъ сего я и  
заключилъ, что онъ боленъ.

Отнынѣ, вперёдъ

Съ тѣхъ поръ.

Черезъ мѣсяцъ.

Онѣ пойдутъ къ нему черезъ нѣ-  
сколько дней.

Дѣлать долги.

Удостоить, with the instr.

Возложить на, with the acc.

Извѣстить о, объ, with the  
prepos. case.

To fulfil, исполнить.

To repay, уплатить.

Spare money, лишнія деньги.

To send for, прислать за.

Equality, равенство.

Быть за работою.

Поджаренный хлѣбъ.

Порученіе.

## EXERCISE CVII.

Why are these things not sent yet?—Because they had  
to be sent for.—Did you find the Italian at home when you



called on him yesterday morning?—No, he was not at home. He goes out early then?—Not always; he only goes out early when business requires it.—Did the clerk execute punctually the message entrusted to him?—I do not know in what this message consisted.—He was ordered to notify the arrival of the vessel.—Why did the traveller go so often to the cemetery?—Because his wife, whom he so tenderly loved, lies buried there.—Have you no money?—I am very much in want of it now.—I have no spare money now, but I will oblige you all the same as far as I can, if you promise me to repay it three months hence.—What kind of woman was the late countess?—She was a true mother to the poor and the suffering.—She used to give money liberally to the poor and often even tended them herself. Was her sister as liberal?—She displayed as much kindness to the poor as her circumstances allowed her.—Does he read much now?—He used to read formerly, but now, they say, he does not even take a book in hand.—Have you ever seen such a horse?—I have seen in my life-time all sorts of horses, but so fine a one I never saw.—When will you favour us with a (your) visit?—We hope to be in town three weeks hence, and then we will call on you. Did they notify to him the arrival of the goods?—Yes, they notified it to him by letter.—What kind of breakfast have you ordered to be served, an English or an ordinary one?—What do you mean by an English breakfast?—Tea with buttered toast, and, if you like, a mutton or veal cutlet. This is too much, I eat but little in the morning.—Give orders for a cup of coffee with cream to be brought.

#### EXERCISE CVIII.

How much does your brother spend a year on himself?

He spends not only all he earns, but even gets into debt. What does this poor widow live upon?—She lives by her labour.—Upon what money does this extravagant young man live?—He lives on money which he gets from his father.—Do you spend much?—I used to spend not a little when I was rich, but now I have become saving.—How are his affairs now?—He is in a great perplexity.—How much a week do you pay to your cook?—I pay him twelve and a half roubles per month.—Is all the money spent? No, there are a few roubles left, with (на) which we will buy for ourselves a few French and German books.—Are all men equal in France?—All men are equal in the sight of God, but you will not find true equality among men. Help me to carry this heavy box upstairs.—I am very sorry I cannot fulfil your request, but if you will wait a short time, when I return I will carry it there myself.—Is your gardener at work?—Why do you ask me about it? You know he is the most honest and industrious of my servants.—This I know, but I ask you what he is doing? He is planting trees and flowers.

---

## FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ четвёртый Урокъ.

Verbs of perfect aspect formed, not by means of a prefix, but by a change of termination, are divided into two categories :

- a. Verbs of perfect aspect of unity.
- b. Simple perfect verbs.

The Perfect Aspect of Unity is formed from verbs of imperfect aspect denoting a physical action or rather an action combined with some visible or audible sign. Verbs of this aspect are formed by changing the termination of the imperfect aspect into ну, нуť.

Лопать, to burst ;	perf. of unity, лопнуť.
Махать, to wave ;	. . махнуť.
Дуть, to blow ;	. . дѣнуť.
Лизать, to lick ;	. . лизнуť.
Рубить, to chop ;	. . рубнуť.
Зѣвать, to yawn ;	. . зѣвнуť.
Прѣгать, to jump ;	. . прѣгнуť.
Сверкать, to flash ;	. . сверкнуť.

OBS. 1.—The radical consonants г, д, к, т, are omitted before нуť in the following :

Блестѣть, to shine ; блеснуť.	Прѣдѣть, to bound ; прѣнуť.
Брызгать, to sprinkle ; брызнуť.	Свистѣть, to whistle ; свѣснуť.
Вертѣть, to turn ; вернуť.	Тискать, to squeeze ; тѣснуť.
Глядѣть, to look ; глѣнуť.	Трепетѣть, to tremble ; трепенуť.
Двѣгать, to move ; двѣнуť.	Трескать, to crack ; трѣснуť.
Дѣргать, to pull ; дѣрнуť.	Трогать, to touch ; трѣнуť.
Кидѣть, to throw ; кѣнуť.	Хлестѣть, to lash ; хлеснуť.
Плескѣть, to splash ; плеснуť.	Хлыстѣть, to smack ; хлыснуť.
Полоскѣть, to rinse ; полоснуť.	Хрустѣть, to crunch ; хруснуť.
Прѣскать, to syringe ; прѣснуť.	Шептѣть, to whisper ; шепнуť.

OBS. 2.—The radical consonants г, к, х in verbs of second conjugation, changed in the imperfect aspect into ж, ч, ш or с, are restored in the perfect of unity.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Звучѣть, to sound ;	звукъ,	звѣкнуť.
Визжѣть, to yell ;	визгъ,	вѣзгнуť.
Кричѣть, to scream ;	крикъ,	крѣкнуť.
Ворошиť, to stir ;	ворохъ,	ворохнуť.



OBS. 3.—**А** before **нѣть** becomes soft (**ль**).

Колѣть, to sting ;	кольнѣть.
Шевелѣть, to stir ;	шевелѣнѣть.
Вилѣть, to evade ;	вилѣнѣть.

OBS. 4.—The following verbs of perfect aspect in **нѣть** are not classed with verbs of unity, as they do not denote an action accomplished by a sudden or single effort. In these verbs the letter **н** belongs to the root and not to the termination :

Минѣть, to avoid ;	from мпновѣть.
Обманѣть, to deceive ;	. . обманѣвать.
Поминѣть, to mention ;	. . поминѣть.

OBS. 5.—The following, forming the perfect of unity in **нѣть** without denoting physical action, are exceptions :

Дерзнѣть, to dare ;	from дерзѣть.
Хвастнѣть, to boast ;	. . хвѣстѣть.
Щегольнѣть, to flaunt ;	. . щегольѣть.

I have been a long time now waving my hand to you.	Я уже давно какъ махаю вамъ ру- кою.
I will wave my hand to him once at the proper time.	Я махну ему рукою когда придетъ пора.

### THE USE OF БЫЛО.

OBS. 6.—The impersonal verb **было** before an infinitive in affirmative and negative sentences denotes an obligation or necessity, and is mostly used with personal pronouns in the dative, as :

Ему было прочесть.	He had to read.
Вамъ было поговорить съ нимъ.	You had to speak to him.

OBS. 7.—**Было** after the infinitive of perfect aspect sig-



nifies 'should have,' and is used with the first person only, as :

Прочѣсть было мнѣ эту книгу.

I should have read this book.

Поговорить было намъ съ нимъ.

We should have spoken to him.

Obs. 8.—In negative sentences было after an infinitive is used with verbs of imperfect aspect only, and denotes likewise an obligation or necessity.

Не говорить было съ нимъ.

You ought not to speak to him.

Не идти было туда.

You ought not to go there.

Obs. 9.—Было with the past tense of perfect aspect denotes either duration without completion or a failure in accomplishing an action.

Я прочёл было это.

I nearly read it through.

Я собрался было лечь, какъ вдругъ.

I was about (or just going) to lie

слышу стукъ въ дверь.

down, when suddenly I heard  
a knock at the door.

Obs. 10.—With the inchoative perfect aspect it denotes that an action was about to be, or on the point of being commenced, as :

Я было заговорилъ.

I was on the point of speaking.

Я сталъ было пѣть.

I was about to sing.

### THE USE OF БЫВАЮ.

It has been stated (Lesson 49), that the impersonal бывало is found with verbs in each of the three tenses. Its use may be thus illustrated :

a. With the past tense of the imperfect and iterative an action is described as one that took place repeatedly in some remote period.

Я говорилъ бывало ему.

I used to speak to him.

Я бздилъ бывало въ театрѣ.

I used to go to the theatre.

Obs. 11.—This form is often used instead of the iterative, thus :

Я говори́лъ быва́ло, отъ я гово́ривалъ.  
Я ѣзди́лъ быва́ло, отъ я ѣзжа́лъ.

b. With the present an action that occurred in some remote period is described as still continuing, as :

Гуляю́ быва́ло по́ берегу и собираю́ раку́шки.      While walking along the shore I used to gather shells.

Obs. 12.—The principal clause with *бывало*, when changed into a gerund, becomes a subordinate one denoting an action long past :

Сидя́ быва́ло и ужу́ рыбу.      While seated I used to angle with  
Сидя́ я уди́лъ рыбу.      a line.

c. With the future of the inchoative aspect an action is described as *begun*, and with that of the perfect aspect as *ended* in some remote period :

Заговори́тъ (inchoative) быва́ло она́      No sooner did she begin to speak  
о своёмъ покойномъ мужѣ да и      of her late husband than she  
запла́четъ.      used to cry.  
Посмо́тритъ (посмотрѣвъ) быва́ло въ      No sooner had he gazed at your  
глаза́ и то́тчасъ отгада́етъ ва́ше      eyes than he used to guess  
жела́ніе.      your wishes.

It is going on,

What was there going on ?

Will there be anything going on ?

By so doing,

Read aloud, by so doing you would  
give us a pleasure.

Дѣлается, impers. v.

Что тамъ дѣлалось ?

Будетъ ли что нибудь дѣлаться.

Тѣмъ.

Чита́йте вслухъ, тѣмъ вы доста́вите  
намъ удовольствіе.

To fly at,

{ Броса́ться на,      } with the  
{ Бро́сится, p. a.      } acc.

To discharge (a gun),	{ Стрѣлѣть изъ, } with the { Выстрѣлѣть, р. а. } gen.
To become frightened,	Испугаться, р. а.
To enjoy, to make use of,	Пользоваться, gov. the instr.
To be taken ill,	{ Заболѣвать, I. 1. { Заболѣть, I. 1.
To load (a gun)	{ Заряжать, I. 1. { Зарядить, II. 10.
It must be,	Должно быть, impers. v.
Some one must have said that to him.	Кто нибудь, должно быть, сказалъ это ему.
To leap upon,	{ Вспрыгивать на, } with the { Вспрыгнуть, р. а. } acc.
To communicate.	Сообщать, р. а. сообщить.
To be taken ill.	Заболѣвать, р. а. заболѣть.
To cry, to weep.	Плакать, р. а. заплакать.
To fail, to be a bankrupt.	Обанкрѣтиться, р. а.
To shake, трясти.	To nod, кивать.
To leap, прыгать.	To turn round, обернуться.
To gallop off, ускорять, р. а.	Subordinate, подчинѣнный.
Extensive, значительный.	Rude, неприличный.
Ancestral, отеческій.	Absence, отсутствіе.
A whip, вѣтухъ.	A fight, битва.

## EXERCISE CIX.

Is it not your brother standing there by the roadside?  
 It appears to be.—Give a whistle; perhaps he will turn round and see us.—I cannot whistle; you had better run up to him and tell him to come here.—Whisper to him that I have to communicate something important to him.  
 The master says it is rude to whisper in company.—What



sound is that?—Some one must have discharged a gun in the next room.—Have not you heard anything?—I think some one gave a shriek.—You had better see what is going on there.—What did you see?—On entering the room I saw the husband loading his gun; he gave me a look, became frightened, and dropping (уронить) the gun, ran out of the room into the yard; there he leapt upon a horse standing at the door and galloped off into the field. Do not smack the whip; you may frighten the horse by so doing.—The other day when my brother smacked his whip, the horse flew at the coachman and nearly killed him.—Shake that apple tree; perhaps a few apples will fall.—My eldest brother used to climb upon that thick branch and give it a shake.—Have you communicated this news to his brother-in-law?—Yes, I communicate to him all the news I receive.—Did he do it cleverly?—He did it so cleverly as not to be remarked.—How many times during the fight did that brave soldier load his gun?—He loaded it only fourteen times.—Why did he not fire as often as others?—Because he had not powder enough.—Is it not true that the performance was very good?—All did not perform equally well; some actors were very weak. Is the weather fine?—Yes, but I think it will rain.—Why do you think so?—Because a southerly wind is blowing. It seems to me you are mistaken; the wind is blowing not from (съ) the south, but from the north.—You always like to contradict.

#### EXERCISE CX.

Who had to write?—We had to write.—You should not give your sons so much money; they would then be more saving.—The mother used to look (fut.) at her sick child



and cry.—Did you send word of your arrival to your brother?—I had written a letter and was just on the point of sending it to the post, when suddenly the door opened and your brother entered the room.—Where does the general live who used to review the troops?—He now lives in his ancestral castle, respected by his monarch, and loved not only by his former subordinates, but also by all his friends and acquaintances.—How did you pass the long winter evenings in your parents' house?—One of us used to read aloud (pres.) and the others listened.—Are you satisfied with your new servant?—No, I am very dissatisfied with him.—Do you know that the merchant who enjoyed so extensive a credit is now bankrupt?—Yes, and are you aware that my sister was on the verge of giving him all her money, but our uncle prevented it in time.—Whom did you give a nod to?—To an old school friend, whom I have not seen for more than five years.—You promised to let me know whether you would come for the evening; why did you not do it?—We expected you.—I was just going out, when the servant came to tell me that my sister was suddenly taken ill and wanted to see me.—This was the only reason for my absence, and I hope you will excuse me.—Why did you not send us word about your sister's illness? we would have paid her a visit.—I never hasten to send bad tidings, but now I may tell you that she is much better, and our doctor says she is out (BHE) of danger. Do you read much in the evenings?—Yesterday evening I read through the first volume of the novel you brought me last week.—When you have finished reading these interesting verses, will you lend them to me?—When I have finished, I will do so with pleasure.

---

## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Пятьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.

## PERFECT SIMPLE VERBS.

Verbs expressing a thorough accomplishment of an action without the termination *нуть* and without any prefix attached to them, are called *perfect simple* verbs.

From most of these verbs are formed corresponding verbs of imperfect aspect having the present tense in *аю*, *аю*, and the infinite in *ать*, *ять*.

*Perfect Aspect.**Imperfect Aspect.*

Благословить, to bless ;	благословлять.
Бросить, to throw ;	бросать.
Дать,* to give ;	давать.
Кончить, to finish ;	кончать.
Купить, to buy ;	покупать.
Лишить, to deprive ;	лишать.
Пастъ, to fall ;	падать.
Плѣнить, to captivate ;	плѣнить.
Простить, to pardon ;	прощать.
Пустить, to let go ;	пускать.
Родить, to beget ;	рожать and рождать.
Рѣшить, to decide ;	рѣшать.
Свободить, to deliver ;	свобождать.
Ступить, to step ;	ступать.
Хватить, to seize ;	хватать.
Явить, to show ;	являть.
Ять,* to take ;	имать.

Obs. 1.—All the verbs of imperfect aspect in the above list belong to the *first*, and those of perfect aspect to the *second* conjugation.

The forty-eight verbs given in the annexed table as examples include all the terminations subject to regular permutation of letters. There will be found among them a few verbs, such as the four verbs of Class VI., or the 26th and 28th examples of Class VII., which appear to deviate from the regular rules, but each of these verbs is given as example for many others forming their infinitive or the present tense in the same manner, thus forming separate groups of verbs with regular conjugation.

Besides the six above-named examples there are also some other verbs, which deviate from the rules either in the formation of the infinitive, or of the present, or imperative, so, in order to facilitate their study, a separate table is given in Lesson Fifty-nine.

Concerning the use of the tonic accent in the conjugation of regular verbs the following rules are to be observed :

1. The first person present the past tense and the imperative have the accent generally on the same syllable as the infinitive, except those verbs in *оварь*, *евать*, in which the syllable *ов*, *ев* belong to the root and not to the termination.

2. The other persons of the present tense preserve the accent of the first person, except verbs in *нѣтъ* or *отъ*, or verbs of the second conjugation, in which the accent is transferred to the penultimate.



## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

		INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.																																																																																																																																																																																																							
Classes.	Examples.	PRESENT OR FUTURE.		Imperative Mood.	PRESENT TENSE.																																																																																																																																																																																																				
		Indicative Mood.			Gerund.	Participle.																																																																																																																																																																																																			
		1st Person.	2nd.	2nd Person.			Active.	Passive.																																																																																																																																																																																																	
I.	1 2 3	Чита́, Мѣря́, Грѣ́	} ю	есть	чита́ мѣря грѣ́	} и	чита́ мѣря грѣ́	} я	чита́ мѣря грѣ́	} ющій	чита́ мѣря грѣ́	} емый																																																																																																																																																																																													
II.	4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13	Ор Треп-л Меч Клевещ Ищ Вяж Пиш Паш Кли́ч-у Сѣ́-ю		} ю	есть		ор лешь меч клевецъ ищ жешь пиш паш		} и		ори́ трéпл мечá клевецá и́щуци вя́жучи пи́шучи па́шучи		} и	брющій трéплющій мéч клеве́щ и́щ вя́жу пи́ш па́шущій	} ущій	бр трéпл мéч клеве́щ искóбмый вя́ж пи́ш па́ш	} емъ емый емъ емый емъ																																																																																																																																																																																								
	есть	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́			и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́		и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́				и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́			и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́		и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́		и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́	и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́ и́



Пятьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.  
Спряжение Правильныхъ Глаголовъ.

Examples.	INFLEXIONS OF THE SECOND BRANCH.				THIRD BRANCH.		
	PAST.	Infinitive Mood.	PAST TENSE.		Iterative Aspect.		
	Indicative Mood.		Gerund.	Participle Passive.			
1	Читá	} лъ	читá	} нъ	читы	} валъ	
2	Мѣря		мѣря		мѣри		
3	Грѣ		грѣ		грѣ-тъ		
			въ оу вши				
4	Ор	} алъ	чит	} авши	ор	} ары	
5	Треп		треп		трѣп		
6	Мет		мет		мѣт		
7	Клевет	} алъ	клевет	} авши	клевет	} клеветы	
8	Иск		иск		ѣск		
9	Вяз		вяз		вѣз		
10	Пис	} алъ	пис	} авши	пѣс	} писы	
11	Пах		пах		пѣх		
12	Клѣк-алъ		клѣк-ать		клѣк-анъ		
13	Сѣ-ялъ		сѣ-ять		сѣ-янъ	сѣи-валъ	
13	Кол-бѣлъ		кол-бѣть		кол-бѣвъ	кол-отъ	калы-валъ
14	Вое	} валъ	вое	} вавъ	воѣ-ванъ	} воѣвы	
15	Меже		меже		межѣ-ванъ		
16	Совѣтовалъ		совѣтовать		совѣто-ванъ		
17	Рв	} алъ	рва	} авъ	рв	} анъ	рыв-алъ
18	Пр		пр		пр		пир-алъ
19	Сос		сос		сос		сѣс-ывалъ

INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.							
Classes.	Examples.	PRES. or FUTURE.		Imper. Mood.	PRESENT TENSE.		
		Indicative Mood.			Gerund.	Participle.	
		1st Person.	2nd.	2nd Per.		Active.	Passive.
VI.	20	Плы-в-ѹ	вешь	плы-в-и	плыв-я	плывущій	—
	21	Сты-н-у	нешь	сты-нь	сты-нучи	стынущій	—
	22	Им-ѹ	ешь	ими	—	—	—
	23	М-ну	нешь	мни	мп-учи	жмущій	мпомый
VII.	24	Грыз	ѹ	грыз	грызѧ	грыз	вед } ѹмый
	25	Пас		пас	пасѧ	пас	
	26	Ве-д-		ве-д-и	вед-я	вед } ѹщій	
	27	Тр		тр	тр-учи	тр	
	28	Пек-		пек	пек-учи	пек	
VIII.	29	Тя(г)пѹ	пу	тини	тѣнучи	тѣнущій	тяг-омый
	30	Зѧб }		зѧбви	зѧбнучи	зѧбнущій	—
	31	Сѹх }		сѹхви	сѹхнучи	сѹхнущій	—
IX.	32	Вел-ѹ	ишь	вел-и	велѧ	вел } ѧщій	велѧмый
	33	Терп-л-ѹ	пишь	терп-и	терпѧ	терп } ѧщій	терпѧмый
	34	Видж-у	дишь	—	видѧ	вид-ѧщій	видимый
	35	Верч }	тишь	верт-и	вертѧ	верт } ѧщій	вертѧмый
	36	Виш }	сишь	виси	висѧ	вис } ѧщій	—
	37	Сто-ѹ	ишь	сто-и	стоѧ	сто } ѧщій	—
	38	Держ-ѹ	жишь	держ-и	держѧ	держ-ѧщій	держѧмый
	39	Слыш-у	шишь	слышь	слышѧ	слыш-ѧщій	слышѧмый
X.	40	Цѣн-ѹ	нишь	цѣн-и	цѣнѧ	цѣн } ѧщій	цѣнѧмый
	41	Люб-л-ѹ	бишь	любѧ	любѧ	люб } ѧщій	любѧмый
	42	Суж-ѹ	дишь	судѧ	судѧ	крут } ѧщій	крут } ѧщій
	43	Круч }	тишь	крути	крутѧ		
	44	Свяц }	тишь	святѧ	святѧ		
	45	Вож }	зишь	возѧ	возѧ		
	46	Нош }	сишь	носѧ	носѧ		
	47	Уч }	ишь	учи	учѧ	уч-ѧщій	уч } ѧщій
48	Стрѹ-ю	ишь	строй	стрѹѧ	стрѹ-ѧщій	стрѹѧмый	

Examples.	INFLEXIONS OF THE SECOND BRANCH.				3d BRANCH.
	PAST.	Infinitive Mood.	PAST TENSE.		Iterative Aspect.
	Indicative Mood.		Gerund.	Participle Passive.	
20	Плы	плы } ты } я } мя }	плы	—	плы } вѣлѣ
21	сты		сты	—	сты } вѣлѣ
22	я		я	ятѣ	им } аѣлѣ
23	мя		мя	мятѣ	мин } аѣлѣ
24	Грыз(л)ѣ	грызѣти	грызѣ	грызенѣ	грыз } аѣлѣ
25	Пас(л)ѣ	пасѣти	пасѣ	пасенѣ	пас } аѣлѣ
26	Вѣ(д)лѣ	ве-сти	вѣдѣ	ведѣнѣ	—
27	Тѣр(л)ѣ	тер-ѣ-ти	тѣрѣ	тѣрѣ-тъ	тир } аѣлѣ
28	Пѣк(л)ѣ	пе-чь	пѣкѣ	пѣченѣ	пек } аѣлѣ
29	Тя-нуѣлѣ	тя-нуѣти	тянувши	тѣ-нуѣти	тѣг-ивалѣ
30	Зябѣ	зябѣ } нуѣти	зябѣ } ши	—	зябѣ } аѣлѣ
31	Сохѣ	сохѣ } нуѣти	сохѣ } ши	—	сохѣ } аѣлѣ
32	Велѣ } вѣлѣ	велѣ } вѣти	велѣ } вѣвѣ	велѣ } вѣнѣ	велѣ } ивалѣ
33	Терпѣ } вѣлѣ	терпѣ } вѣти	терпѣ } вѣвѣ	терпѣ } вѣнѣ	терпѣ } ивалѣ
34	Видѣлѣ	видѣ-ти	видѣ-вѣ	видѣ-нѣ	видѣ-ивалѣ
35	Верѣ } вѣлѣ	верѣ-ти	верѣ-вѣ	верѣ-енѣ	верѣ-ивалѣ
36	Висѣ } вѣлѣ	висѣ-ти	висѣ-вѣ	—	вишѣ-ивалѣ
37	Сто(и)ялѣ	сто-и-ти	сто-и-вѣ	—	сто-ивалѣ
38	Держѣ-аѣлѣ	держѣ-ати	держѣ } авѣ	держѣ } анѣ	держѣ-ивалѣ
39	Слышѣ-алѣ	слышѣ-ати	слышѣ } авѣ	слышѣ } анѣ	слыхѣ-ивалѣ
40	Цѣнѣ-иѣлѣ	цѣнѣ-и-ти	цѣнѣ-и-вѣ	цѣненѣ	цѣни-валѣ
41	Любѣ } иѣлѣ	любѣ } и-ти	любѣ } и-вѣ	любленѣ	любѣ } валѣ
42	Судѣ } иѣлѣ	судѣ } и-ти	судѣ } и-вѣ	суженѣ	сужѣ } валѣ
43	Крутѣ } иѣлѣ	крутѣ } и-ти	крутѣ } и-вѣ	крученѣ	кручѣ } валѣ
44	Святѣ } иѣлѣ	святѣ } и-ти	святѣ } и-вѣ	свѣщенѣ	свѣщѣ-аѣлѣ
45	Возѣ } иѣлѣ	возѣ } и-ти	возѣ } и-вѣ	воженѣ	важѣ } валѣ
46	Носѣ } иѣлѣ	носѣ } и-ти	носѣ } и-вѣ	ношенѣ	наши } валѣ
47	Учѣ } иѣлѣ	учѣ } и-ти	учѣ } и-вѣ	ученѣ	учѣ } валѣ
48	Стрѣбѣ-валѣ	стрѣбѣ-ти	стрѣбѣ-ивѣ	стрѣбѣ-енѣ	страивалѣ

The **я** of the past tense suppressed in the masculine must be restored in other genders, and in the plural, as, грызъ, fem. грызѣ, neut. грызѣо, plur. грызѣи.

The following perfect simple verbs of neuter voice form their corresponding imperfect aspect with the reflective termination **ся**.

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Стать,* to become ;	становѣться.
Сѣсть,* to sit ;	садѣться.
Лечь,* to lie ;	ложѣться.

Some perfect simple verbs derived from foreign words and ending in **ю, овать**, form their corresponding imperfect aspect in **овываю, овывать**.

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Атакѣвать, to attack ;	атакѣвывать.
Конфирмовѣть, to confirm ;	конфирмовѣвать.

Obs. 2.—The termination **ю, овать** may be used both for perfect and imperfect aspects, as :

Я атакѣю,	{ I attack, pres. imperf.
	{ I will attack, fut. perfect.
Я атакѣвалъ,	{ I attacked.
	{ I used to attack.

The following six verbs are used both for the perfect and imperfect aspects without any change of the termination :

Велѣть, to order ;	fut. and pres. велѣю.
Женѣть, to marry ;	. . . женѣю.
Казнѣть, to decapitate ;	. . . казнѣю.
Полонѣть, to capture ;	. . . полонѣю.
Рѣнить, to wound ;	. . . рѣню.
Рѣшить, to destroy ;	. . . рѣшу.

Obs. 3.—The verbs **велѣю** and **рѣню** have the meaning of



the imperfect aspect only in the present and past, their future with *бѹду*, as, *бѹду велѣть*, *бѹду рѣнить* not being used.

The verbs *даровѣть*, 'to give;' *вѣщать*, 'to relate;' *миновѣть*, 'to pass;' *образовѣть*, 'to form;' have the meaning of the imperfect aspect in all the inflexions of the first branch, and that of the perfect in those of the second branch, as :

## FIRST BRANCH.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

*Дарѹю*, I give ;  
*Дарѹй*, give ;  
*Дарѹя*, giving ;  
*Дарѹющій*, he who gives ;  
*Дарѹемъ*, (which is) given ;

## SECOND BRANCH.

*Perfect Aspect.*

*Я даровѣлъ*, I gave.  
*Даровѣвши*, having given.  
*Даровѣвъ*, (which was) given.  
*Даровѣвшій*, he who gave.  
*Даровѣть*, to give.

OBS. 4.—Instead of *образѹю* is used also *образовываю* in the imperfect aspect. *Минѹю* has the future of perfect aspect *минѹ*, *минѣшь*, etc., and in the past the double inflexions *минѹлъ* and *миновѣлъ*.

OBS. 5.—Perfect simple verbs, such as *бросить*, 'to throw;' *дать*, 'to give;' *пасть*, 'to fall;' etc., denoting a physical action performed by a single, sudden effort, have the signification of the perfect aspect of unity.

They are throwing stones into the garden.

Онѣ бросаютъ камни въ садъ.

Who has thrown this ?

{ Кто бросилъ это ?  
 { Кто кинулъ это ?

To decide on,

{ Рѣшатся на, } with the  
 { Рѣшится, р. а. } acc.

It follows,

{ Слѣдуетъ, } impers.  
{ Значить, } verbs.

Does it follow from this that he is right ?

Слѣдуетъ ли изъ этого, что онъ правъ ?

It does not follow yet that you are right.

Это ещё не значить что вы правы.

To be reconciled,

Мириться съ, } with the  
Помириться, р. а. } instr.

To make it up,

Прежде, раньше.

Before,

To educate, to bring up,

{ Воспитывать, I. 1.

{ Воспитать.

To be deprived of, to lose,

{ Лишаться, } with the  
{ Лишиться, } gen.

She lost her husband last year.

Она лишилась своего мужа въ прошломъ году.

To own,

Владѣть.

To be owned,

{ Находиться во владѣніи.

{ Принадлежать, II. 9.

By whom is this estate owned ?

{ Въ чьёмъ владѣніи это помѣстье ?

{ Кому принадлежить это помѣстье ?

This estate was formerly owned by my uncle.

Это помѣстье принадлежало прежде моему дядѣ.

To sew,

Шить, р. а. сшить, I. 1.

To make clothes,

Шить платье.

Whose dress are you making ?

Чьё платье вы шьёте ?

I am making this dress for myself.

Я шью себѣ это платье.

Is the waistcoat made (finished) ?

Сшить ли жилетъ ?

He will make it.

Онъ его сошьётъ.

On account of,

{ По случаю, по причинѣ.  
{ По, with the dat.

To compare,	{ Сравнивать, I. 1.
	{ Сравнить, II. 10.
To be equal to,	{ Быть равнымъ, } with the
	{ Равняться, } dat.
To be compared to,	{ Сравниться съ, with instr.
To be equal to,	

He is equal to him.	Онъ ему равенъ.
That could not be equalled.	Это не могло сравниться.

By way of comparison,	Сравнительно, напримѣръ.
Beyond comparison,	{ Несравненно, I. 1.
	{ Безъ сравненія.
To collate, to compare,	{ Сличать, I. 1.
	{ Сличить, р. а. II. 10.

They compared these two editions, and found no difference at all.	Онѣ сличили эти два изданія и не нашли никакой разницы.
--	--

To quarrel, ссориться, II. 10.	To attain, достигать достигнуть.
To take pains, трудиться, II. 10.	To acquire, приобретать.
To drop, уронить, II. 10.	To be certain, быть увѣрену.
Trifling, маловажный.	Careful, осторожный.
A garment, платье.	To take a seat, садиться.

Insurance Company.	Страховое общество.
A nutshell.	Ореховая скорлупа.
A lawsuit.	Тяжебное дѣло.

## EXERCISE CXI.

Did the fisherman get his son married to his neighbour's daughter?—He was on the verge of doing so (repeat the verb), but he discovered that, according to our laws, one is not allowed to marry before the age of twenty-one.—When

he attains the age of twenty-one, then his father will let him marry the girl he loves.—Is this lawsuit decided? Our judge decides all important causes, but he is now out of town, and therefore it will be necessary for me to wait the decision till the judge returns.—Did you decide on anything?—No, I have not decided on anything as yet. May it be presumed that it will happen?—I am certain it will happen.—Who owns these excellent three storied houses?—The first two houses are owned by some Insurance Company; as to the rest, I cannot tell who owns them.—Do not throw the nutshells on the floor.—I did not throw them on purpose, but dropped them by accident. Are Mr. B.'s works good?—They are good, but not equal to Molière's?—Through your not allowing your daughter to visit us yesterday, you deprived not only her, but us of a great pleasure.—If I am compelled sometimes to deprive her of this pleasure, it is only because her presence is necessary at home.—Is learning acquired without pains?—Learning is not to be attained without great pains.—Did you order supper to be served?—I will order it immediately.—Have you compared the copy with the original?—Yes, I did, and found a great difference.—Have you been to see my cousin (fem.)?—I was deprived of that pleasure on account of my sister's illness.

## EXERCISE CXII.

Does your aunt bring up her only daughter properly? No, she brings her up very badly.—Why do you think so? Because I see her every day indulging her child in all sorts of whims.—Perhaps by indulging her in some trifling whims she somewhat spoils her daughter, but it does not follow that she brings her up badly, and I think if you had



children of your own you would spoil them more than your aunt does her's.—Allow me to wait here a few minutes for my friend.—Certainly, take a seat.—Have you compared these two pictures?—I have, and I find that the first is much better than the other.—Can this be equalled? This cannot be equalled.—Forgive me, mamma, for breaking your favourite Japanese vase.—I forgive you this time, but I hope you will be more careful in future.—Embrace your brother and make it up with him.—Why do you advise me to do so?—I am not angry with him; we have not quarrelled.—Is it as useful to speak as to write?—It is more useful to speak than to write; but if you wish to learn a foreign language you should do both.—What does he want?—He wants to be equal to him.—Have you enough money to pay your tailor?—I have not enough, but I will borrow what I require from my cousin.—What clothes did you order your tailor to make?—I ordered him to make a dress-coat, a frock-coat, two pairs of trowsers and some other garments.—Have you dropped anything?—I have dropped nothing, but my brother has dropped his silk purse.—Does my picture equal that of your brother?—My brother's picture is beyond comparison.

---

## FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.

### Пятьдесятъ шестой Урокъ.

Certain prepositions are temporarily prefixed to the simple verbs, and have the effect of modifying the aspect, and sometimes changing the voice or the meaning of the verb.

The prepositions used as prefixes in the formation of compound verbs are as follows :

Вз, воз, взо, Up, denotes—

*a.* An upward movement :

Взлетѣть, to fly up.

Воспитать, to educate, to bring up.

Восходить, to ascend.

Возмужать, to attain the age of puberty.

*b.* Reciprocation or reinstatement :

Возблагодарить, to return thanks.

Возстановить, to re-establish.

Возвратить, to return.

Возраждать, to regenerate.

Вы, Out.

*a.* An outward movement :

ВЫкинуть, to throw out.

Вывозить, to export.

ВЫгнать, to drive out.

ВЫслать, to send out.

*b.* Acquirement by means of exertion :

ВЫплакать, to obtain by entreaty.

ВЫнудить, to extort.

*c.* Giving a final polish or bringing into a proper shape :

ВЫбѣлнить, to bleach.

ВЫкроить, to cut out to a pattern.

До, Till, up to.

An action carried on up to a certain point :

Дойти до.

Договорить.

To go up to a certain point.

To speak up to a certain point.

За, For.

*a.* An action extended over an object :

Заклейть, to glue over.

Заржавѣть, to be covered with rust.

*b.* A stoppage or arrest.

Зазимовать, to stop for the winter. | Замѣшкать, to delay.

Изъ,

Out of, from.

*a.* The same as *вы*, *i.e.* an outward movement, but is used mostly in an elevated style.

Изгнать, to banish. | Изваять, to carve.

*b.* An action all over the surface or through a body in all directions.

Написатьъ,

to cover all over with writing.

Прозабнуть,

to be frozen through.

На,

On

*a.* An action upon a surface.

Написатьъ, to write upon.

| Намощить, to polish.

*b.* An action upon a number of things.

Наговорить, to say many things.

| Насаждать, to plant abundantly.

О, объ, обо,

About, round about.

Оголить, to strip entirely.

| Отвердѣть, to harden all round.

Осмотреть, to inspect.

| Осыпать, to strew round.

Отъ,

From.

*a.* Movement away from the object, or separation of parts.

Отходить, to go away from.

| Отдѣлѣть, to detach.

*b.* Reciprocation.

Отплатить, to repay.

| Отблагодарить, to repay with thanks.

Отговорить, to dissuade.

| Отписать, to write back.

Пере,                      Over.

*a.* A change of place, a movement across.

Переменить, to change.		Перевезать, to carry over.
Переложить, to transpose.		Передать, to transmit.

*b.* Excess.

Перевѣсить, to overweigh.		Переварить, to over boil.
---------------------------	--	---------------------------

*c.* An action over the whole object in a certain order, and sometimes reciprocation.

Перебить,	to kill (one after another).
Передавать,	to hand over (one after another).
Переговорить,	to converse.

По,                      Over.

*a.* Accomplishment of the action.

Поставить, <i>p. a.</i> , to place.		Показать, <i>p. a.</i> , to show.
-------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

*b.* Indefinite duration of the action.

Посидѣть,	to sit (a little, sometime, etc.).
Поговорить,	to speak.

Подъ,                      Under.

*a.* A downward direction.

Подложить, to put under.		Подвергнуть, to subject.
--------------------------	--	--------------------------

*b.* A motion towards an object.

Подходить, to come up to.		Подносить, to bring up to.
---------------------------	--	----------------------------

При,

A carrying out an action.

Приѣхать, to arrive.		Пристрѣлить, to shoot outright.
----------------------	--	---------------------------------



Про,

Through.

*a.* An action through and in one direction, and a passing by.

Пробѣжать, to run through. | Прочитать, to read straight through.

**b. Duration of the action till some definite end or time.**

Пропѣть пѣсню,      to sing a song through.

Прележать день, to pass the day reclining.

Проговорѣть, to speak through.

Разъ.

*a.* Division.

Разда́ть, to distribute.

Разгра́бить, to pillage.

Разобрать, to sort.

Разодра́ть, to tear.

*b.* Development or spreading of the action over the object.

Развёртывать, to unroll, to unfold. | Развеселить, to enliven.

Растолстѣть, to grow very stout.

Съ, со,

With.

*a.* Connection of parts.

Сострѣбить, to construct.

**Сложѣть, to put together.**

**b. A thorough destruction of the object.**

Сгнить, to decay entirely.

Сгорѣть, to burn down.

y,

Away.

*a.* In verbs of movement—disappearance from sight.

Убѣжать, to run away.

УГНА́ТЬ, to drive out.

**b. Accomplishment of the action to a certain extent.**

Умѣсѣть, to knead well.

УЗНА́ТЬ, to recognise.

c. Completeness of the action.

**Утопѣть**, to drown (thoroughly). | **Уморѣть**, to starve to death.

Въ,	In.
Войти́, to go in.	Вно́сить, to bring in.
Па́дъ,	Above, over.
Напи́сывать, to superscribe.	На́дзирáть, to superintend.
Надстро́ить, to build a superstructure.	
Ни́зъ,	Below.
Низойти́, to descend.	Низпослáть, to send down.
Низве́ргнуть, to precipitate.	
Пре́дъ,	Before.
Предска́зать, to foretell.	Предше́ствовать, to precede.
Проти́въ,	Against, contrary.
Противо́рчить, to contradict.	Противопоста́вить, to oppose.
Безъ,	Without.
Privation or deficiency.	
Чести́ть, to honour.	Безче́стить, to dishonour.
Воору́жить, to arm.	Обезору́жить, to disarm.

NOTE.—Of the above-named prepositions—вз (воз, возо), вы, разъ (разо), низ (низо), and пере are inseparable prefixes, *i.e.* never found by themselves.

In verbs of perf. asp. the prefix вы takes the tonic accent, but in those of imperf. asp. the tonic accent remains on the verbal root, as :

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
Выходи́ть, to go out ;	вы́йти.
Выигрыва́ть, to gain ;	выи́грать.

### COMPOUND VERBS.

Compound or prepositional verbs of imperfect aspect are formed—

a. By prefixing a preposition to the simple verb of in-

definite imperfect aspect without any change of termination, as :

#### IMPERFECT ASPECT.

<i>Simple Verbs.</i>	<i>Compound Verbs.</i>
Ходѣть, to go ;	ВЫХОДѢТЬ, to go out.
Летѣть, to fly ;	ВЫЛЕТѢТЬ, to fly out.
Вращѣть, to turn ;	ВОЗВРАЩѢТЬ, to return.

OBS. 1 —These compound verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed.

b. By adding a preposition to the iterative aspect, which thus acquires the inflexions of all moods and persons of the imperfect aspect, as :

<i>Iterative Aspect.</i>	<i>Compound Imp. Asp.</i>
Чѣтывалъ, I used to read out ;	ВЫЧѣтывать, to read out.
<i>Present.</i> Выхѣтываю, ешь, etc.	<i>Gerund.</i> Выхѣтывая, вавъ.
<i>Past.</i> Выхѣтывалъ, ла, ло.	<i>Partic. Act.</i> Выхѣтывающій, вшій.
<i>Future.</i> Бѣду выхѣтывать.	<i>Partic. Pass.</i> Выхѣтываемъ, вычѣтыванъ.
<i>Imperat.</i> Выхѣтывай, ите.	

c. By prefixing a preposition to the simple verb of imperfect aspect, and inserting the syllable ва before the termination.

<i>Simple Imperf. Asp.</i>	<i>Compound Imperf. Asp.</i>
Слабѣть, to grow weak ;	ослабѣвать.
Велѣть, to order ;	повелѣвать.

#### OF THE INCHOATIVE.

The inchoative perfect aspect is formed—

a. By adding the auxiliary verb стать, past сталъ, future стану, ешь, etc. to the infinitive of verbs of imperfect aspect, as :

Стать играть,	to begin to play.
Онъ сталъ играть,	he began playing.
Онъ станеть играть,	he will begin playing.





To publish,	Издава́ть, р. а. изда́ть.
Was this work published ?	Издаётся ли это сочинё́нiе ?
This work is out of print.	Это сочинё́нiе уже́ болѣе не издаётся.
To leave off, to cease,	{ Переставáть, I. 1.
To sleep enough,	{ Перестáть, р. а. I. 8.
To oversleep one's self,	Вы́спаться.
To pass off,	Просыпа́ть, р. а. проспáть.
Through,	Выдава́ть, вы́дать.
The procession passed through the street.	По, with the dat.
To freeze,	Шествiе прошло́ по у́лицѣ.
To ring,	{ Замерза́ть, I. 1.
It rings in the ears.	{ Замерзну́ть, р. of unity, I. 8
It rang in the ears.	{ Звенѣ́ть, II. 9.
	{ Зазвенѣ́ть, <i>inchoative</i> .
	Звени́ть въ уша́хъ.
	Звенѣ́ло въ уша́хъ.
In writing, by letter,	Пи́сьменно.
To get, to write to (for a thing),	{ Выпи́сывать.
To direct,	{ Направля́ть, I. 1.
	{ Напра́вить, р. а. II. 10.
To make a fair copy.	Перепи́сывать на́бѣло.
To direct a letter.	Адресова́ть письмó.
To write a prescription.	Пропи́сывать рецѣ́птъ.
To become cheerful.	Повеселѣ́ть, р. а.
To make a fault in writing.	Опи́сываться, описáться.
To make a written order.	Предпи́сывать, предписáть.
To take down, to write down.	Запи́сывать, записáть.
To add (in writing).	Припи́сывать, приписáть.

To answer, to write back.

Отписывать, отписать.

Nature of illness.

Характеръ болѣзни.

Symptoms of illness.

Признакъ болѣзни.

Camp fire.

Бивачный огонь.

## EXERCISE CXIII.

Have you asked the doctor to write a prescription for me?—Yes, I wrote to him about it yesterday, and after having described to him the nature of your complaint, I was on the point of adding a few words on your part, but I changed my mind, remembering that you were totally unacquainted with him.—Have you already directed the letter?—Not yet, I will first make a fair copy of it. Have you come to the end of writing your letter?—I shall soon have come to the end.—Will you write some more letters?—No, I have finished writing for to-day.—Is the letter already signed?—The head clerk has signed it long ago.—Out of which book have you copied this letter?—I do not copy my letters out of books.—Your friend often copied letters and verses out of books and passed them off as (3a) his own.—Where do you get these illustrated papers from?—We used to get them formerly from Vienna, but henceforth we shall get them from Paris.—Those which you ordered are out of print.—Have you already written over a whole quire of paper?—No, I have about seven sheets left.—Be quiet, please; through your chatter I have made two mistakes in writing.—Have you transmitted to him the news of the town verbally or by letter?—In answering him, I communicated to him all that took place.—Did you take down my address?—Yes, it is already written down. The chief made a written order for his subordinates to arrive at the office earlier than usual.

## EXERCISE CXIV.

Ask this girl to sing us something.—Yes, I will ask her. The girl began to sing, and all began to listen.—I was on the point of explaining this to him in French, when I recollected his dislike to speaking a foreign language in a public place (общество).—She began to scream so loudly, that our ears began to ring.—Our grandmother, while reading to-day, fell into a slumber and dropped her book.—Do you see, dear sister, the boys have begun to run about in the yard yonder? I will go likewise and begin to run about with them.—No, my dear, do not go away from here; I want you, and besides that it is very dirty in the yard.—Will they carry the body (покойникъ) through our street?—Yes, so they say.—When will the procession pass by?—Hardly before three o'clock.—Whose wedding carriage is that passing by?—It is that of the major of artillery and his young bride from Ems.—How is it that her uncle lived so long at Ems?—In order to take the baths there.—Is that town pretty?—Yes, it lies in a narrow and picturesque valley. The camp fires began to blaze and the poor half-frozen soldiers became cheerful.—Have you salted your soup?—I have not only salted it, but over-salted it.—Did he go through his lesson without a fault?—He did nothing but make faults.—Leave off playing the flute: I did not sleep enough; I am sleepy still.—I began playing the flute on purpose to wake you, because you told me when you went to lie down you did not wish to over-sleep yourself.

---

## FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Пятьдесятъ седьмой Урокъ.

COMPOUND VERBS (*continued*).

## FORMATION OF PERFECT AND IMPERFECT ASPECTS.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, derived from the indefinite form of the double simple verb, have in the perfect aspect the termination of the corresponding definite verb.

<i>Indefinite Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Definite Perfect Aspect.</i>
Про-ходить, to pass ;	Про-йти.
Пере-возить, to carry across ;	Пере-везти.
У-нести, to take away ;	У-нести.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, derived from the iterative, form the perfect aspect by restoring the corresponding termination of the primitive simple verb.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
С-прашивать, to interrogate ;	С-просить.
За-служивать, to deserve ;	За-служить.
За-пирать, to shut ;	За-переть.
О-становивать, to stop ;	О-становить.

Compound verbs of imperfect aspect, having both the definite and indefinite forms, have two terminations for the perfect aspect. The same is the case with compound verbs which are susceptible of the perfect aspect of duration and that of unity.

The first of these two terminations, that of the indefinite form or of duration, is used to express an action requiring many efforts, or a certain length of time.

The second, that of the definite form, or of perfect of unity, is used to express an action requiring only a single effort, as :



## SIMPLE VERB.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>		<i>Iterative.</i>
Катѣть, <i>def.</i>	катать, <i>indef.</i>	катывать.
<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect of Unity.</i>	<i>Iterative.</i>
Кидать.	кинуть.	кидывать.

## COMPOUND VERB.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect of Duration.</i>	<i>Perfect of Unity.</i>
Прокатывать.	прокатать.	прокатить.
Выкидывать.	выкидать.	выкинуть.

The following simple derivative verbs in ать, ять—first person аю, яю—have two terminations for their perfect aspect, one in у, ю, to express an action performed in a single effort, and another, without any change, to express duration.

<i>Simple Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Compound Perfect Aspect</i>	
	<i>of Duration.</i>	<i>of Unity.</i>
Ворóчать, to turn.	сворóчать.	своротѣть.
Вѣшáть, to weigh.	развѣшáть.	развѣснѣть.
Кусáть, to bite.	раскусáть.	раскусѣть.
Роня́ть, to drop.	пророня́ть.	проронѣть.
Хватáть, to seize.	выхватáть.	выхватнѣть.
Цара́пать, to scratch.	оцара́пать.	оцара́пнѣть.
Бросáть, to throw.	выбросáть.	выброснѣть.

OBS. 1.—The above verbs can be used also with other prefixes, according to the meaning required.

The following verbs borrow their perfect aspect from another root when it is wanted to express an action performed in a single movement.

<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Compound Perfect Aspect.</i>	
	<i>of Duration.</i>	<i>of Unity.</i>
Бить, to beat,	побѣть,	удáрнѣть.
Брать, to take,	побрáть,	взять.
Класть, to put,	покла́сть,	положѣть.
Говорѣть, to speak,	поговорѣть,	сказáть.
Ловѣть, to catch,	изловѣть,	поймáть.

Compound verbs of perfect aspect in *нуть* form their imperfect aspect in *ать*, as :

<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>
Поги́бнуть, to perish ;	погиба́ть.
Привы́кнуть, to get accustomed ;	привыка́ть,
Окисну́ть, to turn sour ;	окиса́ть.

The following form their perfect aspect irregularly.

SIMPLE VERBS.	COMPOUND VERBS.	
<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Imperfect Aspect.</i>	<i>Perfect Aspect.</i>
Вѣща́ть, to tell.	извѣща́ть,	извѣсти́ть.
Глота́ть, to swallow.	поглаща́ть,	поглоти́ть.
Куса́ть, to bite.	укуса́ть,	укуси́ть.
Мѣня́ть, to change.	перемѣня́ть,	перемѣни́ть.
Скака́ть, to gallop.	перескаки́вать,	перескочи́ть.
Стрѣля́ть, to shoot.	застрѣлива́ть,	застрѣли́ть.

Some compound verbs of imperfect aspect have no corresponding verbs of perfect aspect.

To these belong verbs with the prefix :

a. По, in a frequentative sense, as :

Поси́живать, to be in the habit of sitting.
Почи́тывать, to be in the habit of reading.
Попѣва́ть, to be in the habit of singing, etc.

Obs. 2.—The verbs of perfect aspect *посидѣть*, *почитать*, *попѣть*, although with the same prefix *по*, must not be confounded with the above, inasmuch as they are formed from the simple verbs *сидѣть*, *читать*, *пѣть*, and the prefix *по* merely modifies the duration of action, which lasts in this case a certain time without interruption.

b. Подъ or при, in the sense of an action accompanying another, as :

Подсвистыва́ть,	to whistle in accompaniment.
Припѣва́ть,	to sing in accompaniment.

c. Разъ, when denoting an action upon different objects, or extending over a surface, as :

Разговáривать,	to converse upon.
Разъѣзжáть.	to ride about.

d. Co in the sense of reciprocal action, as :

Собесѣдовáть,	to converse with.
Соучáствовать,	to participate.

Obs. 3.—The following verbs are defective, *i.e.* are wanting altogether in the perfect aspect.

### *Of the First Class.*

Обладáть, to possess.	Подозрѣвáть, to suspect.
Обожáть, to adore.	Подражáть, to imitate.
Обонáть, to scent.	Подразумѣвáть, to understand.
Обуревáть, to agitate.	Порицáть, to blame.
Ожидáть, to wait.	Порывáть, to tear.
Опасáться, to dread.	Смышлѣть, to contrive.
Осязáть, to touch.	Совѣщáть, to deliberate.
Отсвѣчивáться, to reflect.	Сожалѣть, to regret.
Охуждáть, to vilify.	Созерцáть, to contemplate.
Перекоря́ться, to quarrel.	Увѣщевáть, to exhort.
Поблажáть, to connive at.	Управлѣть, to govern.
Подобáть, to be necessary.	Упражнѣть, to employ.

### *Of the Fourth Class.*

Долженствовáть, to be obliged.	Преслѣдовáть, to pursue.
Изобилóвать, to abound.	Привѣтствовáть, to welcome.
Повиновáться, to obey.	Приличествóвать, to be becoming.

And many other verbs ending in ствóвать.

### *Of the Ninth Class.*

Предвидѣть, to foresee.	Принадлежáть, to belong.
Провидѣть, to provide.	Содержáть, to maintain.
Подлежáть, to be subject.	Отстоять, to be distant.
Прилежáть, to be adjacent.	Предстоять, to stand before.
Зависѣть, to depend.	Состоять, to consist.

*Of the Tenth Class.*

Сѣлится, to strive.  
 Походить, to resemble.

Стоить, to be worth.  
 Значить, to signify.

To consult upon,	{	Совѣтоваться о, with the
		прер. с.
	{	Посовѣтоваться, р. а.
To send a word,		Прислать сказать.
	{	Увѣдомить словцомъ.
To write a word,		Написать строчку.
To drop a line,		
Is it not true ?		Не правда ли ?

You will not give it to him, will you ?

Вы не дадите ёго ему, не правда ли ?

Obs. 4.—In sentences like the above, the interrogation is rendered by “ не правда ли ? ”

You would not offend him, would you ?

Вы не станете его обижать, не правда ли ?

He reads very well, does he not ?

Не правда ли, что онъ читаетъ хорошо ?

For the most part,

Большею частью.

Lo !

Вотъ !

To serve one's time,

{ Выслуживать срокъ.

{ Выслужить, р. а.

To earn a pension,

Выслужить пенсію.

Or,

Иначе.

Come a little earlier, or you will get nothing.

Приходите пораньше, иначе вы ничего не получите.

To ferry across,

{ Перевозить, } with the  
 { Перевезти, р. а. } acc.



To keep a promise, { Исполнять обѣщаніе.  
Исполнить, р. а.

Does he generally keep his promise ? Исполняетъ ли онъ свой обѣщанія ?  
He kept his promise only once. Онъ только одинъ разъ исполнилъ  
свое обѣщаніе.

To change for, { Мѣнять на, } with the  
Перемѣнить, р. а. } acc.

To play a trick with, { Подсмѣиваться надъ, } with  
Подсмѣяться, р. а. } the  
instr.

It is certain, Конечно, несомнѣнно.

At a cheap rate, За дешѣвую плѣту.

Consequently, { Слѣдовательно.  
Вслѣдствіе этого.

To apply for payment, Потребовать уплаты.

To do one's duty.

Исполнять обязанности.

To turn sour.

Киснуть, р. а. прокиснуть.

To dismiss.

Выключать, р. а. выключить.

To boil.

Кипятить, р. а. вскипятить.

To evade.

Избѣгать, р. а. избѣгнуть.

To smuggle.

Провозить тайно.

To amount.

Простираться до, with the gen.

Contraband goods.

Контрабандный товаръ, контрабанда.

To manage, дѣлать.

To depart, разъѣзжаться.

A strong man, силачъ.

To flee, разъѣзжаться.

A duty, tax, пошлина.

A stratagem, хитрость.

A loss, утрата.

A boatman, лодочникъ.

## EXERCISE CXV.

About what are you interrogating this boatman?—I asked him whether he can ferry us across to the opposite shore.—I know that he ferries across, because he ferried

me, and at a very cheap rate too.—Are there many contraband goods smuggled across every year?—Yes, it is reckoned that the loss to (вѣ) the revenue amounts to 200,000 roubles yearly.—In what way do they manage to evade the payment of the duty?—For the most part by stratagem, and sometimes even by force, for the smugglers, they say, are nearly always armed.—What are these workmen throwing out of the ditch?—They are throwing earth out of it. Is there much left to be thrown out?—No, they have nearly thrown all out; there remains only one heavy stone, but, lo! that strong man has thrown it out.—Will not your aunt leave a small pension to her faithful old servant? No, she says that he does not deserve it.—Has this soldier earned his pension?—Yes, he has been receiving it for some years.—Is it true that all the thieves were caught? No, they caught only one thief, the others fled on all sides before the arrival of the police.—Must I consult him upon this?—No, I advise you never to apply to him; you had better apply to my uncle, who is able to give you good advice.—You said you would lend my sister this novel, did you not?—Yes, I said so, and I will keep my promise.—It is a pity we did not receive your letter, is it not?—It does not matter much, for I saw him soon after I wrote it.

#### EXERCISE CXVI.

What do you do (are you in the habit of doing) now in the evening?—We read and then play at billiards.—Read me a little from this book, and then you may go to play a little. Do you intend to pay that man for the wine when he applies for payment?—He sends his clerk to me for the money every day, but I shall not pay him until he changes these

bad wines for better.—Why do these guests depart so early?—Because the mistress of the house is taken suddenly ill.—Go to him at once for the papers, or you will not find him at home.—Does he always do his duty?—He only once did not perform his duty, and was consequently dismissed from the service.—When shall I be free?—When you have done your duty you will be free, but not before.—Have you found your hat?—I was searching for it everywhere for a long time, and I cannot understand even now how it came (очутиться) into this room.—Probably, you put it here on the table yourself.—No, I always put my hat on the table in the ante-room, and if I find it now on the table in this room, it is certain that some one took it from there to play a trick with me.—Will you not order some water to be boiled for me?—I will order it directly.—Do these bottles burst?—Only one has burst.—Cork the bottles properly, or the wine will turn sour.—However you may cork the bottles, this wine is sure to turn sour.

## FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

Пятьдесятъ восьмой Урокъ.

### COMPOUND VERBS (*continued*).

Compound Verbs of perfect aspect formed from simple defective verbs, *i.e.* from verbs wanting the iterative, as also from some verbs in *ить* of the second conjugation, have in the imperfect aspect the abridged termination *ять* or *ать* instead of *ивать* or *ывать*, as :

#### SIMPLE VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Винить, to accuse,

Томить, to weary,

Рѣшить, to decide,

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

*Perfect Aspect.*

обвинить,

утомить,

разрѣшить,

*Imperfect Aspect.*

обвинять.

утомлять.

разрѣшать.



OBS. 1.—The abridged termination is also used when the meaning of the primitive verb is changed in its compound, as :

## SIMPLE VERBS.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.**Perfect Aspect.**Imperfect Aspect.*

Садить, to plant,

осадить, to besiege,

осажда́ть.

Свѣтить, to light,

просвѣтить, to enlighten,

просвѣща́ть.

But when the compound verbs retain the signification of their primitives, they have in the imperfect aspect the full termination of the iterative, as :

## SIMPLE VERBS.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

*Imperfect Aspect.**Perfect Aspect.**Imperfect Aspect.*

Садить, to plant,

пересадить, to replant,

переса́живать.

Свѣтить, to light,

засвѣтить, to light,

засвѣ́чивать.

OBS. 2.—There are some compound verbs whose simple form is either wanting altogether or obsolete, as :

*Imperfect Aspect.**Perfect Aspect.*

Побѣждать, to vanquish,

побѣ́дить.

Обижать, to offend,

обидѣ́ть.

Встрѣчать, to meet,

встрѣ́тить.

Разорять, to ruin,

разори́ть.

OBS. 3.—The aspect in such verbs is recognised by the termination, which is almost always ать or ять for the imperfect aspect.

EXCEPTION.—Two verbs of this category, оправдывать, ‘to justify,’ and обнарѳодовать, ‘to promulgate,’ have the termination ать also for the perfect aspect—оправда́ть, обнарѳо́довать.

Most compound verbs formed from the old root ять, ‘to



take,' iterative, *имать*, take after the prefix an *н* for the sake of euphony.

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Внимать, to attend to,	
Взимать, to take,	
Вынимать, to take out,	
Донимать, to get the remainder,	
Занимать, to occupy,	
Изнимать, } to exempt,	
Изнимать, } pres. <i>изъёмлю</i> ,	
Нанимать, to hire,	
Обнимать, to embrace,	
Отнимать, to take away,	
Перенимать, to intercept,	
Понимать, to understand,	
Поднимать, to lift,	
Предприимать, to undertake,	
Принимать, to accept,	
Приподнимать, to lift a little,	
Пронимать, to penetrate,	
Разнимать, to part,	
Снимать, to take off,	
Унимать, to repress,	

*Perfect Aspect.*

внять, future, <i>воньмѹ.</i>	
взять, . . . <i>возьмѹ.</i>	
вынуть, . . . <i>выну.</i>	
донять, . . . <i>дойму.</i>	
занять, . . . <i>займу.</i>	
изнять, } . . . <i>изъимѹ.</i>	
изять, }	
нанять, . . . <i>найму.</i>	
обнять, . . . <i>обнимѹ.</i>	
отнять, . . . <i>отнимѹ.</i>	
перенять, . . . <i>перейму.</i>	
понять, . . . <i>пойму.</i>	
поднять, . . . <i>поднимѹ.</i>	
предпринять, . . . <i>предпримѹ.</i>	
принять, . . . <i>приму.</i>	
приподнять, . . . <i>приподнимѹ.</i>	
пронять, . . . <i>пройму.</i>	
разнять, . . . <i>разнимѹ.</i>	
снять, . . . <i>снимѹ.</i>	
унять, . . . <i>уйму.</i>	

Obs. 4.—All the above verbs of imperfect aspect are conjugated according to the examples of the first class; those of perfect aspect follow the example *ять* given in the sixth class of the table of regular verbs (Lesson 55).

To hinder, to prevent,	{ Препятствовать, gov. the dat. Воспрепятствовать, p. a.
To thwart,	{ Мѣшать, } gov. the { Помѣшать, p. a. } dat.
To understand,	Понимать, слышать.

I understand you.

Я понимаю васъ.

We understand you went to him.

Мы слышимъ, что вы пошли къ нему

To enter the service,

{ Поступать на службу.  
{ Поступить, р. а.

He entered the civil service.

Онъ поступилъ въ гражданскую службу.

All of them are going to embrace military service.

Они все поступаютъ въ военную службу.

To spare,

{ Одолжать, р. а. одолжить.  
{ Щадить, р. а. пощадить.  
{ Обходиться, р. а. обойтись безъ.

Can you spare any money ?

Можете ли одолжить денегъ ?

I have some to spare.

У меня есть ещё лишнія деньги.

He spared even his enemies.

Онъ щадилъ даже враговъ своихъ.

We cannot spare you.

Мы не можемъ обойтись безъ васъ.

To enjoy,

{ Наслаждаться, } gov. the  
{ Насладиться, р. а. } inst.

To escape, to decamp,

{ Увёртываться, отъ, } with  
{ Увернуться, р. а, } the  
gen.

To get out of,

To depart,

To neglect,

{ Пренебрегать, } gov.  
{ Пренебречь, р. а. } the inst.

To ask for leave,

{ Просить позволения.  
{ Попросить, р. а.

To oppose,

{ Противиться, gov. the dat.  
{ Воспротивиться, р. а.

To practise,

Упражняться въ, with the  
рег. с.

To refuse, to reject,

Отказываться отъ, } with the  
Отказаться, р. а. } gen.

To recall, to decline,

Онъ отказывается это дѣлать.

He refuses to do this.

Онъ отказывается отъ своихъ словъ

He recalls his words.

Онъ отказался играть.

He refused to play.

To carry out,	{ Исполнить, р. а. исполнить.
	{ Выполнить, р. а. выполнить.
Contrariwise,	Паоборѣтъ, напрѣтивъ.
To stop making a noise.	Униматься, р. а. унятьсѧ.
To exclaim.	Восклицать, р. а. воскликнуть.
To perceive.	Замѣчать, р. а. замѣтить.
To acquire (by imitation).	Перенимать, р. а. перенять.
To prove, to be proved.	Оказываться, р. а. оказаться.
To hold a reception.	Принимать у себя.
To stipulate.	Назначать, р. а. назначить.
An official of high standing.	Знатный сановникъ.
Late (last), послѣдній.	Late (former), прежній.
Mischievous, злой.	Трикъ, шутка, шалость.
Training, воспитаніе.	A schoolmate, соученикъ.
A job, работа.	Work, работа.

## EXERCISE CXVII.

What sort of building do you undertake?—I undertake all sorts of building.—Is it true that the works undertaken by you last year are not yet finished?—Yes, in undertaking a difficult job I did not calculate well beforehand how much time would be required for it, and besides that, the number of workmen hired by me proved to be insufficient.—Why did you not take off your hat yesterday before your late master?—When I meet him, I always take off my hat, and if I did not do it yesterday, it was, of course, because I did not perceive him.—Why do you take the toys away from your sister?—I took only one doll away from her, and that was because she wanted to break it. Have you accepted presents from him?—Why not? he always accepted presents from me.—Does the baroness often hold receptions at her house?—She received us last week, and asked us to visit her in future without being in-



vited.—Have you hired a large house in town for the winter?—I have no need to hire a house in town, as I have one of my own.—Do not take the things out of the trunk; as we shall not stop at this station.—I have taken them out already.—But I ordered you not to take them out.—I beg your pardon; I misunderstood you.—I cannot understand how it is you always carry out my orders contrariwise.

### EXERCISE CXVIII.

What do these unfortunate parents regret?—They regret that they did not prevent their son from entering military service.—The mother, sobbing, exclaimed: “If I had thwarted my only son’s desire to leave home, I should not now have to blame myself for his death.”—Will you come to us to-morrow at the stipulated time?—If it is possible for me to decamp from my friends, you may rely on my presence.—He wanted to get out of our invitation.—Do not depart from your own words, or we will never believe you again.—She asks for leave to go to her sister.—Tell her that she may go to her to-morrow, but that to-day we cannot spare her.—How is your brother in health?—Oh, he always enjoys excellent health.—In declining their invitation, you lost an excellent opportunity of being presented to an official of high standing, who might be useful to you in many respects.—I do not regret it at all.—You ought not, however, to neglect good acquaintances.—If I neglected this invitation, it does not mean that I neglect good acquaintances.—Are you satisfied with the training that your son gets at the town school?—No, on the contrary, I am very much dissatisfied; he has acquired there only the bad manners and mischievous tricks of his school-



mates.—In endeavouring to stop the noise of his pupils the master shouted louder than anyone, “Hold your noise, you disobedient children, or I will punish you severely.”

## FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.

### ПЯТЬДЕСЯТЬ ДЕВЯТЫЙ УРОКЪ.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs proper are those which do not follow in all moods, tenses and persons the rules of formation, deviating in some inflexions from their proper conjugation or from their proper class ; as also those having some peculiar irregular inflexions or changes of radical letters not met with in other verbs.

There are in the Russian language only thirteen irregular verbs, which are :

1. Бѣжать, to run.	Ревѣть, to roar.
Хотѣть, to wish.	Стенать, to groan.
Чтить, to honour.	Гнать, to drive.
Шибѣть (root).	Спать, to sleep.
2. Ѣхать, to ride.	Быть, to be.
Идти, to go.	Ѣсть, to eat.
Дать, to give.	

OBS. 1.—The irregularity of the first eight in the above list consists chiefly in their belonging to a mixed conjugation, or to a mixed class, and that of the remainder in changes of radical letters contrary to the rules of permutation.

TABLE No. 1. CONJUGATION OF

	INFLEXIONS OF THE FIRST BRANCH.						
	PRESENT OR FUTURE.				PRESENT TENSE.		
	Indicative Mood.			Imperat.	Gerund.	Participle.	
	1st Pers.	2nd.	3rd.	2nd Pers.		Active.	Passive
1	Бѣгу Бѣжимъ	бѣжишь бѣжите	бѣжитъ бѣгутъ	бѣги бѣгите	бѣгучи	бѣгущій	—
2	Хочу Хотѣмъ	хочешь хотѣте	хочетъ хотѣтъ	хоти хотѣте	хотя	хотѣщій	хотѣмый
3	Чту Чтимъ	чтишь чтите	чтитъ чтятъ	чти чтите	чтя	чтѣщій	чтѣмый
4	* Шибѹ Шибѣмъ	шибѣешь шибѣете	шибѣтъ шибѣутъ	шибѣи шибѣите	—	—	—
5	Ревѹ Ревѣмъ	ревѣешь ревѣете	ревѣтъ ревѣутъ	ревѣи ревѣите	ревучи	ревущій	—
6	Стенѹ Стѣнемъ	стѣнешь стѣнете	стѣнетъ стѣнутъ	стѣни стѣните	стѣя	стѣящій	—
7	Гонѹ Гонимъ	гонѣшь гонѣте	гонѣтъ гонѣтъ	гонѣи гонѣте	гонѣя	гонѣщій	гонѣмый
8	Сплю Спимъ	спишь спѣте	спитъ спѣтъ	спи спѣте	спѣя	спѣящій	—
9	Ѣду Ѣдемъ	ѣдешь ѣдете	ѣдетъ ѣдутъ	ѣжай ѣжайте	ѣдучи	ѣдущій	—
10	Иду Идемъ	идѣшь идѣте	идѣтъ идѣтъ	идѣи идѣте	идѣя	идѣщій	—
11	Есмь Есми Бѹду Бѹдемъ	еси естѣ бѹдешь бѹдете	есть суть бѹдетъ бѹдутъ	бѹдь бѹдѣте	бѹдучи	бѹдущій	—
12	Ѣмъ Ѣдимъ	ѣшь ѣдите	ѣстъ ѣдѣтъ	ѣшь ѣшьте	ѣя	ѣдѣщій	ѣдѣмый
13	Дамъ, р. Дадѣмъ	дашь дадите	дастъ дадѣтъ	дай дайте	—	—	—

# IRREGULAR VERBS.

	SECOND BRANCH.				3D BRANCH
	PAST TENSE OF IMPERF. AND PERF. ASP.				ITERAT. ASP.
	Verb.	Gerund.	Infinitive Mood.	Participle Passive.	The Verb.
1	Бѣжалъ	бѣжавъ бѣжавши	бѣжать	—	бѣживалъ (from бѣгать)
2	Хотѣлъ	хотѣвъ хотѣвши	хотѣть	—	хачивалъ
3	Чтилъ	читивъ читивши	читать	ченъ	—
4	Шибъ шибла, о	шибши	шибѣть	шибѣвъ	шибалъ (from шибать)
5	Ревѣлъ	ревѣвши.	ревѣть	—	рѣвывалъ
6	Стеналъ	стенавъ стенавши	стенать	—	—
7	Гналъ	гнавъ гнавши	гнать	гнанъ гнать	гáнивалъ (from гонѣть)
8	Спалъ	спавъ спавши	спать	спанъ	сыпалъ
9	Ѣхалъ	ѣхавъ ѣхавши	ѣхать	—	ѣзжалъ (from ѣздить)
10	Шѣлъ	шѣвъ шѣвши	идти	иденъ	хáживалъ (from ходить)
11	Былъ	бывъ бывши	быть	быть	бывалъ
12	Ѣлъ	ѣвши	ѣсть	ѣденъ	ѣдалъ
13	Далъ	давъ давши	дать	давъ	давалъ (from давать)

Observations on No. 1 Table of Irregular Verbs :—

a. Шибѣть as an active verb is generally used with the prefixes вы, за, у, as : вышибѣть, 'to knock out ;' зашибѣть, 'to bruise ;' ушибѣть, 'to hurt ;' as a neuter verb it takes the prefix о, ошибѣться, 'to make a mistake.'

b. In compound verbs formed from идѣти, the radical д is replaced by й, as : найтѣи, прійтѣи, зайтѣи, etc.

In the imperative of пойтѣи the semivowel й is usually omitted, as : пойдѣи, пойдѣте, and in выйтѣи the imperative has two terminations : выйдѣи, выйдѣте and выдѣи, выдѣте.

c. Спать, идѣти and быть, being of neuter voice, have no passive participle, but compound verbs of active voice formed from these verbs, such as проспѣть, 'to miss in sleeping ;' найтѣи, 'to find ;' забыть, 'to forget ;' have the passive participle with inflexions as shown in the table, i.e. проспѣнъ, найденъ, забытъ.

d. The participle бѣдущій as well as the verb бѣду expresses the future tense, but the gerund бѣдучи has the signification of the present tense.

e. The imperative of хочѣи is used with the prefixes за or вос, as : захотѣи, восхотѣи ; the gerund present хотѣи is used only in the negative form, as нѣхотѣи, the particle taking the accent.

The gerund хотѣи when used without the particle не becomes a conjunction, signifying *although*.

f. The imperative of ѣду, both in the simple imperfect and in the compound perfect aspect, is not used, but is borrowed from the compound verb of imperfect aspect with the prefix по, as : поѣзжай, 'go.'



The same inflexion in the imperative must be used also for all other compound verbs, as : *заѣзжай*, ‘come round ;’ *выѣзжай*, ‘drive out ;’ etc.

*g.* *Шедъ* and *давъ*, the first form of the past gerund of the verbs *идти* and *дать*, are seldom used, and then only with a prefix, as *пришедъ*, *предавъ* ; in ordinary speech the second form, viz. *шедши* and *давши* must be used.

The iteratives printed in italics are formed from the indefinite form or from the imperfect aspect of the same verb.

All the inflexions omitted in this table are formed regularly.

Besides the above-named thirteen irregular verbs there are some others, which, although conjugated regularly, deviate somewhat from the rules of formation.

Their principal irregularity consists in the irregular formation of the infinitive or of the present tense.

The apparent irregularities of the infinitive, as also of the present or of the imperative, are due to the avoidance of unpleasant combinations of sounds.

Thus, for example, in the infinitive the radical consonants *г*, *к* change into *ч* ; *д*, *б*, *н* into *с*, as :

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Стригѹ, стригъ ;	стричь, instead of стригѣть.
Текѹ, текъ ;	течь, . . . текть.
Краду, кра(д)лѣ ;	красть, . . . крадѣть.
Гребѹ ; грѣбъ ;	гребѣть, . . . грѣбѣть.
Клянѹ, клялѣ ;	клясть, . . . клянѣть.
Ведѹ, вѣ(д)лѣ ;	вести, . . . ведѣть.

TABLE No. 2. VERBS OF IRREGULAR FORMATION.

Class.	INFINITIVE MOOD.			INDICATIVE MOOD.		IMPER. MOOD.	PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.
	Imperf. or Perf. Asp.		Iter. Asp.	Present or Fut.	Past.		
1.	To shave	брить	бривать	брѣю	брилъ	брей	бритый
	To sing	пѣть	пѣвать	пою	пѣлъ	пой	пѣтый
	To howl	выть	—	вб	вы	во	—
	To cover	крыть	кры	крб	кры	кро	крытый
	To wash	мыть	мы	мб	мы	мо	мытый
	To grieve	ныть	ны	нб	ны	но	—
	To dig	рыть	ры	рб	ры	ро	рытый
	To rot	гнить	гни	гни	гнилъ	—	—
	To beat	бить	би	бь	би	бе	битый
	To twine	вить	ви	вь	ви	ве	витый
	To pour	лить	ли	ль	ли	ле	литый
	To drink	пить	пи	пь	пи	пе	питый
	To sew	шить	ши	шью	ши	ше	шитый
	To repose	* чить	—	чю	чплъ	чйи	—
2.	To build	* здать	зидать	зйжду	зда	зйжди	зданный
	To send	слать	сылать	шлю	сла	шли	сланный
	To spread	стлатъ	стилатъ	стелю	стла	стели	стланный
5.	To take	брать	бирать	беру	бра	бери	бранный
	To tear	драть	дирать	деру	дра	дери	дранный
	To drive	гнать	ганивать	жену	гна	жени	гнанный
	To call	звать	зывать	зову	зва	зови	званный
6.	To live	жить	жи	жи	жи	жив	—
	To be reputed	слыть	слы	слы	слы	слыв	—
	To take	* ять	имать	иму	ялъ	ими	ятый
	To press	жать	жим	жму	жа	жми	жатый
	To reap	жать	жин	жну	жа	жни	жатый
	To stretch	* (рас) пять	пин	пву	пялъ	ппи	пйи
	To begin	* (на) чать	чнвать	чну	чалъ	чни	чатый
	To put	* (на) дѣть, р.	дѣвать	дѣну	дѣлъ	день	дѣтый

TABLE No. 3. VERBS OF IRREGULAR FORMATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.			INDICATIVE MOOD.		IMPERAT. MOOD.	PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.
Imperf. or Perf. Aspect.	Iter. Asp.		Present or Future.	Past.		
To become	стать, р.	* ставать	стану	сталъ	стань	—
To grind	молоть	мáмывать	мелю	молóбъ	мели	мóлотый
To curse	клясть	кля́нать	клянú	клялъ	кляни	кля́тый
To row	гре(б)сти́	гребать	гребú	грёб(л)ъ	гребй	гребённый
To scrape	скрестъ	скребать	скребú	скрёбъ	скреби	скребённый
To keep	блюсти́	блю́дять	блюд }	блюлъ	блюд }	блю́денный
To ramble	брести́	—	бред }	брё	бред }	—
To lay	класть	кла́дывать	клад }	кла }	клад }	кла́денный
To fall	* пасть	—	пад }	па }	пад }	—
To spin	прясть	прядать	прядú	пря }	пряд }	прядённый
To go	грядти́	—	грядú	—	гряди	—
To steal	красть	кра́дывать	краду	кра }	крадъ }	кра́денный
To sit	сѣсть, р.	—	сѣду	сѣ }	сѣдъ }	—
To sweep	мести́	мет }	мет }	мё }	мети́	метённый
To perturb	мясти́	мят }	мят }	мя }	мят }	мятённый
To press	* гнести́	* гнет }	гнет }	гнё }	гнет }	гнетённый
To plait	плести́	плет }	плет }	плё }	плет }	плетённый
To bloom	цвѣсти́	цвѣ }	цвѣт }	цвѣ }	цвѣт }	—
To find	* (об) рѣсти́	(об)рѣт }	рѣт }	рѣ }	рѣт }	рѣтённый
To count	* честь	чит }	чт }	чѣ }	чти́	чтённый
To dawn	* свѣсти́	свѣт }	свѣт }	свѣлъ	—	—
To grow	расти́	раст }	раст }	росъ	расти́	—
To preserve	беречь	берег }	берег }	берёгъ	берег }	бережѣ }
To guard	стеречь	стерег }	стерег }	стерё	стерег }	стережѣ }
To put to	* прячь	пряг }	пряг }	пря }	пряг }	пря́же }
To burn	жечь	жиг }	жг }	жѣ }	жг }	жжѣ }
To shear	стричь	стриг }	стриг }	стри }	стриг }	стри́же }
To lie	лечь, р.	—	лягу	лѣ }	лягъ	—
To be able	мочь	могáть	могú	могъ	моги́	—
To pound	толочь	—	толкú	толóкъ	толки́	толчённый
To care	пещи́сь	—	пекúсь	пёкса	пекисъ	—



The radical vowels are also sometimes changed, a vowel or a consonant being inserted in the present tense for the sake of euphony. These changes, with the exception of a few, form groups of verbs conjugated in the same way, but a table of these verbs will be more useful to learners than any number of rules.

Observations on the Tables of Verbs No. 2 and 3 :—

The inflexions not given in the Tables No. 2 and 3, are formed regularly.

With regard to the class of verbs in the No. 3 Table, *молю́ть* belongs to Class III. and *кля́сть* to Class VI.; all the rest in this table are conjugated according to the examples given in Class VII. of the Table of Regular Verbs (Lesson 55).

Verbs marked with an asterisk are used only with pre-fixes, and those marked with p. are of perfect aspect.

To draw close,	{ Пододвига́ться къ, } with { Пододви́нуться, p. a. } dat.
To sit near by,	Подсе́дять, p. a. подсе́сть.
To take a seat,	Уса́живаться, p. a. усе́сться.
To squeeze, to press,	Пожи́мать, пожа́ть.
He was in the habit of squeezing his hand.	Онъ пожи́малъ ему́ ру́ку.
He squeezed his hand.	Онъ пожа́лъ ему́ ру́ку.
To pass, to ride through,	{ Проѣ́хать по, with the dat. { Выѣ́хать за, with the accus.
They passed through the town.	Онѣ проѣ́хали по́ городу.
He passed through the barrier.	{ Онъ выѣ́халъ за заста́ву. { Онъ проѣ́халъ заста́ву.



To sleep, to pass the night,  
To wind upon,  
To turn on, to be wound on,

Tears used to come into his eyes.

Tears came into his eyes.

In a friendly manner,  
To lay down, to spread,  
To be spread,

To warrant,

To fly open,

To be satisfied,

Was he satisfied?

They will be satisfied.

Itself,

The horizon itself.

Up to the verge of the horizon.

To ride up to,

To cross, to ride across,

Почевать, р. а. переночевать.

Навёртывать, р. а. навёрну́ть.

Навёртываться, р. а. навер-  
ну́ться.

Слёзы навёртывались у него на гла-  
зяхъ.

У него навёрну́лись на глазахъ слёзы.

По пріятельски, по дру́жески.

{ Разсти́лать по } with the  
{ Разост́лать, р. а. } dat.

Разсти́латься, р. а. разо-  
стла́ться.

{ Руча́ться за, } with the  
{ Поручи́ться, р. а. } accus.

Раскрыва́ться, р. а. рас-  
кры́ться.

{ Быть } дово́льнымъ.  
{ Остávaться }

Оста́лся ли онъ дово́ленъ?

Они оста́нутся дово́льны.

Са́мый.

Са́мый небоскло́нь (горизо́нтъ).

До са́мага небоскло́на.

{ Доѣ́зжать до, } with the  
{ Доѣ́хать, р. а. } gen.

{ Переѣ́зжать чрезъ, } with  
{ Пере́хать, р. а. } the acc.

To call on,                    { Заѣзжать къ, } with the  
                                       { Заѣхать, р. а. }     dat.

To damp, мочить;	perf. asp. помочить.
To fade, линять;	• • полинять.
To drive away from,— отгонять;	• • отогнать.
To drive away, угонять;	• • угнуть.
To devour, to eat, пожирать;	• • пожрать.
To appoint, назначать;	• • назначить.

Hard, твёрдый, сильный.  
 A back yard, задний дворъ.  
 Smooth, гладкий.  
 A casket, шкатулка.  
 A country house, дача.  
 Dark blue, тёмносиний.  
 Timid, боязливый.

Further, дальнѣйшій.  
 A paved road, шоссе.  
 A porch, крыльцо.  
 A drover, погонщикъ.  
 Monotonous, однообразный.  
 Dark grey, тёмносѣрый.  
 Endless, безконечный.

### EXERCISE CXIX.

Harness the grey horses and go for the children.—After having brought them home, come to me for further orders. At what time did you leave (выѣхать изъ) town?—At a quarter-past two.—Narrate to me the details of your travelling.—With pleasure.—At the hour appointed for the journey there came to the porch a coach, harnessed with four post-horses, and after taking our seats we rode out of our street to one of the best streets of the capital.—We went along that street for about ten minutes and at length we came to a stone bridge.—After crossing the bridge we called on our aunt, in order to take leave.—She was living (use pres. tense) in one of the most magnificent houses of that part of the town, but not finding her at home we continued our journey, and after half-an-hour passed through the town barrier and went on along a smooth paved road.—On both sides of the road stood pretty country houses with

little gardens; in the fields, in a luxuriant grass there were many beautiful flowers to be seen.—The view on both sides of the road, although picturesque, seemed to us rather monotonous, and as we went on we saw nothing but endless fields, spreading to the verge of the horizon.—In this way, without meeting a single tree or a single hillock, we came up to the last station, where we slept, and on the following day, early in the morning, went on foot to the village; the rest you know.—Did you hurt yourself in falling off the chair?—You are mistaken, it was not I, but my sister who fell off the chair; but she was not hurt.—Should the children run out into the yard without my permission, inform me of it immediately.—Yes, sir.

#### EXERCISE CXX.

Do you shave yourself?—No, the barber shaves me. Take my measure and make me a frock-coat.—Of what colour do you wish it to be?—Dark blue or black?—Is this cloth durable, and do you warrant me that it will not fade? It is very durable, although rather thin.—It seems to me that after being damped it will be rough.—I have no doubt you will be satisfied with it.—The shops in our town are magnificent, are they not?—Yes, you have many excellent shops, but one sees often at the door of some of those shops some poor man in rags, timidly looking around to see whether someone will give him a penny, which he wants to buy a piece of bread.—Are the carpets laid down on the floors?—Not yet, but we will lay them down immediately after the servant has finished washing the floors.—This gentleman at every meeting squeezes my hand in a friendly manner, although we hardly know one another.—He

squeezed his hand so hard that tears came into his eyes. He pressed the spring of the lock and the casket flew open. Is the corn reaped?—No, they are now reaping it.—Sit nearer to the window.—I would rather draw nearer the fire, for I feel cold.—Where does this drover drive these sheep to?—He drives them to the slaughter-house.—Drive this cow away from the window, or she will eat all the flowers.—I have driven her away twice already; I had better go and tell the servant to drive her away to the back yard.

---

## SIXTIETH LESSON.

### Шестидесятый Урокъ.

#### GOVERNMENT.

Nouns and verbs govern other words either directly or by means of prepositions.

The genitive, dative, accusative and instrumental cases are governed in both ways, but the prepositional case never stands in immediate relation to the governing word of a sentence, as it is never used without a preposition.

#### OF THE GENITIVE.

The genitive case without a preposition may be used as an attribute or a complement.

A. As an attributive or determinative word the genitive is used :

a. With nouns to indicate possession, direct dependence



or influence, and answers the question *whose?* for animate, or *of what?* for inanimate objects.

The father's house.	Домъ отца.
The peasant's son.	Сынъ крестьянина.
The commander of the fleet.	Начальникъ флота.

*b.* To express a quality attributed to a noun, and answering the question : *what kind or quality?* or *which year, month, day, etc.* :

A man of great intelligence.	Человѣкъ большаго ума.
He is tall.	Онъ высокаго роста.
On which day of the month?	Котораго числа?
On the first.	Перваго числа.

**B.** The genitive as a complement is governed by :

*a.* Nouns denoting quantity, measure, weight, etc., as also collective nouns.

A dozen spoons.	Дюжина ложекъ.
A handful of salt.	Горсть соли.
A crowd of people.	Толпа народа.

*b.* The pronouns *много*, 'many, much;' *сколько*, 'how much;' *столько*, 'so much;' *нѣсколько*, 'a few, some;' *мало*, 'a little;' *довольно*, 'enough;' *болѣе*, 'more;' *мѣнѣе*, 'less;' the numerals beginning from two, in the nominat. or accus., and the numerals *двое*, *трое*, *четверо*, etc., in the nominative.

How many days are there in the year?	Сколько дней въ году?
365 days.	365 дней.
How many of you were there?	Много ли было васъ?
There were ten of us.	Насъ было десятеро.
He has plenty of work and little time.	У него много работы, но мало времени.
I was there more than a month.	Я былъ тамъ болѣе мѣсяца.
Less than this.	Мѣнѣе этого.

Obs. 1.—The genitive case is also used with impersonal verbs when one of the pronouns, such as *много, мало, несколько*, etc., is understood.

Many guests came.

Наѣхало (много) гостей.

There was some increase of business.

Прибавилось (несколько) дѣла.

c. Those active verbs of perfect aspect in which the action relates only to a part of the object, and when *много, мало, несколько*, etc., in the accusative case are understood :

To sow some corn.

Посѣять пшеницы.

To bring some water.

Принести воды.

To obtain some money.

Достать денегъ.

Obs. 2.—The imperfect aspect of the same verbs governs the accusative :

To sow corn.

Сѣять пшеницу.

To bring water.

Носить воду.

To obtain money.

Доставать деньги.

d. Common reflexive verbs with the prefix *на*, denoting abundance :

He read a great many books.

Онъ пачитался книгъ.

I saw a great many curious things.

Я наглядѣлся диковицъ.

e. The comparative of adjectives and adverbs, when not followed by the conjunction *нѣжели*, or *чѣмъ*, 'than :'

Moscow is more ancient than St.  
Petersburg.

Москва древнѣе С. Петербурга.

Gold is dearer than silver.

Золото дороже серебра.

f. The following neuter verbs :

To wish, желать.

To ask, спрашивать.

To will, хотѣть.

To expect, ожидать.

To hunger, ѣлкать.

To attain, достигать.

To thirst for, жаждать.

To be worth, стоить.

To deign, удостоивать.

To hope, чаять.

And the adjective *достойнъ*, 'worthy.'

*g.* Neuter and common verbs expressing *fear, loss, or privation* :

He fears him.	Онъ боится его.
He lost his father.	Онъ лишился отца.
He is devoid of vice.	Онъ чуждъ порока.
He is deprived of the honour.	Онъ лишёнъ чести.
They are worthy of their respect.	Они достойны ихъ уваженія.

*h.* All active verbs preceded by the negative adverb не, as also the impersonal verbs нѣтъ, не стало, не видно, не имѣется, не случается and others, denoting privation or absence:

Do not waste time.	Не теряй времени.
Do not do evil.	Не дѣлай зла.
There is no change to be seen.	Не видно переменъ.
Nothing happened.	Ничего не случилось.
There is no news.	Нѣтъ извѣстій.

OBS. 3.—The adverb не governs the genitive indirectly, that is, through the verb to which it is attached.

## OF THE DATIVE.

*A.* The dative without a preposition, used as an attribute, denotes a direct dependence or influence upon the object to which it relates :

He is my friend.	Онъ мнѣ другъ.
He is master of this house.	Онъ хозяинъ этому дому.
A list of things.	Списокъ вещамъ.
The head of the family.	Глава семейству.

*B.* The dative, as complement of a sentence, is used with :

*a.* Nouns and verbs denoting a state or quality relating to an object, as also with those indicating the object for whose gain or loss the action is performed.

I see him.	Онъ мнѣ виденъ.
He wants me.	Я ему нуженъ.

We are equal to them.	Мы имъ равны.
He has got into debt with him.	Онъ задолжалъ ему.
He owes him.	Онъ долженъ ему.
They injure him.	Онѣ вредятъ ему.
She helps them.	Она помогаетъ имъ.

b. Impersonal verbs, denoting a state or feeling attributed to an animate object :

He is merry, but I feel dull.	Ему весело, а мнѣ скучно.
We want to eat.	Намъ хочется ѣсть.
I pity him.	Мнѣ жаль его.
I cannot go.	Мнѣ нельзя идти.

Obs. 4.—The copula *быть* in the infinitive is followed by the dative to express a state or condition, this form being used for the infinitive of passive verbs.

To be merry.	Быть веселу.
To be loved.	Быть любиму.
To be alone.	Быть одному.

c. And the following compound adverbs :

Suitably, соответственно.	Contrary, вопреки.
Decently, прилично.	In order to reproach, въ укоръ.
Similarly, подобно.	In order to annoy, на зло.
Moderately, въ мѣру.	In spite of, на перекоръ.
Compliantly, въ угоду.	In derision, на смѣхъ.
Matching in size, подъ стать.	Matching in colour, подъ цвѣтъ.

#### OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

The accusative without a preposition is used only as a complement to active verbs, as :

He reads a book.	Онъ читаетъ книгу.
I gave the paper.	Я далъ бумагу.
Remember what you read.	Помни читанное.
They know him.	Онѣ его знаютъ.

Obs. 5.—The accusative without a preposition may be



also used with neuter, reflective, reciprocal and passive verbs, but in this case it expresses the circumstances of place, or time, and has the meaning of an adverb, as :

I walked a mile.	Я прошёлъ мѣлю.
He was lazy the whole day.	Онъ лѣнился цѣлый день.
He washed himself for two whole hours.	Онъ мылся два часа.
The bridge was in a damaged state all the year round.	Мостъ былъ испорченъ круглый годъ.

### OF THE INSTRUMENTAL.

The instrumental case without a preposition is used,

*a.* With passive verbs, to designate the subject of a proposition, and answering the question *by whom?*

By whom is this brought ?	Кѣмъ это принесено ?
It is brought by me.	Это принесено мною.

*b.* With active, neuter and other verbs, to express the means or the instrument by which the action was performed, and answering the question, *by whom?* or *by what?* (*with what?*)

I write with a pen.	Пишѹ перомъ.
They are occupied with work.	Онѣ заняты работою.
He played with his gold chain.	Онъ игралъ его золотой цѣпочкой.

In the form of an adverb in the instrumental case are put :

*a.* Nouns denoting the manner in which the action is performed, and answering the question *how?*

The letter is written in large characters.	Письмо написано крупными буквами.
The raspberry grows in bushes.	Малина растётъ кустами.
The army was drawn up in line.	Войско построилось рядами.
They went by sea.	Онѣ поѣхали моремъ.

The dust rose in clouds.

Пыль поднялась столбомъ.

We are going at a walking pace.

Мы идёмъ шагомъ.

He stood with his face turned towards me.

Онъ стоялъ ко мнѣ лицомъ.

To buy tobacco by pounds.

Покупать табакъ фунтами.

*b.* Names of seasons and parts of the day, in answer to the question *when* ?

In spring, весной.

| In summer, лѣтомъ.

At night, ночью.

| In the morning, утромъ.

*c.* Substantives or adjectives to designate the name, surname or quality attributed to an object.

They call him John.

Его зовутъ Иваномъ.

He was considered an intelligent man.

Его считали умнымъ (человѣкомъ).

I found this reading difficult.

Я нашёлъ это чтеніе труднымъ.

To heat a stove,

Топить печь.

To light the fire,

Затопить, р. а.

They ordered the stove to be lighted.  
The house is heated with iron  
stoves.

Они приказали затопить печь.  
Домъ отопливается желѣзными пе-  
чами.

To master,

Даваться, } govern the

To give one's self to,

Даться, р. а. } dat.

He cannot master the foreign lan-  
guages.

Ему не даются иностранные языки.

He mastered sciences.

Ему дались науки.

I cannot get hold of him.

Онъ мнѣ не дается въ руки.

To get hold of,

{ Завладѣвать, } govern the  
{ Завладѣть, р. а. } instr.

To become ill,

{ Занемогать, } govern the  
{ Занемочь, р. а. } instr.

To spit blood,	{ Хѣркать крѡвью. { Хѣркнуть, р. of unity.
To have the name of—	Слыть, р. а. прослыть.
To shrink.	Пожимать, р. а. пожать.
To shake.	Покачивать, р. а. покачать.
To move.	Шевелить, р. а. шевельнуть.
A manager.	Управляющій.
An accident.	Проншѣствие.
Exertion.	Напряжѣніе.
Firmness.	Твёрдость.

## EXERCISE CXXI.

What does he ask him for?—He asks him for some money.—What is he afraid of?—He is afraid lest some one should ask him for something.—What she was frightened at?—She was frightened at the storm.—Take a friend's advice, you know he is a friend to you and therefore would not advise you badly.—How many months old is this child?—It is seven months old.—Of what height is your uncle?—He is very tall.—Were there many of you at the princess's ball?—There were seven of us.—What are you waiting for?—I am waiting for orders.—When you go to your merchant, buy for me, if you please, some pens, pencils and paper.—All goods at your neighbour's are much better and cheaper than those of your merchant.—What did this frock-coat cost you?—It cost me five pounds ten shillings.—Does he not like his teacher?—Yes, he does, but he does not obey him.—Have you ordered the fire to be lighted?—Not yet, but I ordered some fire-wood to be brought, and as soon as he brings it, I will order the fire to be lighted.—Do you know why he does not visit me any more?—He is ashamed of his lies, dreads your reproaches, and is too proud to acknowledge his fault and ask your

pardon.—He need not dread my reproaches, as I know that he did not tell a deliberate lie, but only repeated what was said by others.—When did you leave town, and were you riding long?—We left town in the evening, were riding the whole night and came home early in the morning.

#### EXERCISE CXXII.

May one believe everything that is said?—On the contrary, not only one may not, but even should not, believe. What do you wish for?—I am wishing to go for a walk. Do you feel dull here, then?—No, but I feel warm here. Does your brother learn diligently?—He is as diligent as ever, but he cannot master the mathematics, although he learns with facility foreign languages.—So he is a man of good memory and slow intellect.—You would vex him much were you to tell him that.—I want to give you this diamond ring.—I should be very glad of the present, but am afraid that, in accepting it, I shall deprive your nephew, for whom it was intended, of the pleasure.—Who has got hold of my knife?—Peter; he is making his pen with it. Well, but tell him not to cut his pencils with it.—What sort of pen are you writing with?—I am not writing with a pen, but with a pencil.—What are you surprised at? We are surprised at your being here earlier than us by a whole hour, although we rode and you walked.—I went out early in the morning and walked through the forest and without stopping once, whilst you rode by the main road and stopped many times.

#### EXERCISE CXXIII.

Does Mr. B. still manage that estate of yours, which abounds in game?—Yes, and he has the name of being an



honest and clever manager; but he is now very ill, poor fellow (бѣдняга).—What is the matter with him?—A few days ago he was riding over the bridge at a trot, his horse stumbled against a stone, and he fell and hurt himself very much. On the following day he began to spit blood, and is now ill with fever.—Does his doctor consider his illness dangerous?—He is silent about it, and only shrugs his shoulders and shakes his head.—I pity his poor wife; she wept bitterly while communicating to me the news of this sad accident.—Now she tends him like a child, as he cannot move his arms or legs.—Is she not afraid of becoming ill also from exertion which deprives her of rest day and night?—She does not seem to pay any attention to it; one is really surprised at her strength, patience and firmness. Where is that son of his now who was last year at the university as a student?—He is now in our town as a doctor.

---

## SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.

### Шестдесятъ пѣрвый Урокъ.

#### PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

##### Without,

##### Безъ.

A man without fortune.

Человѣкъ безъ состоянія.

We cannot do without money.

Намъ нельзя обойтись безъ денегъ.

Five all but two.

Пять безъ двухъ.

A quarter to two o'clock.

Два часа безъ четверти.

For (for the sake of).

Для.

I came here for your sake.

Я пришёлъ сюда для васъ.

Pens are necessary for writing.

Пѣрья нужны для писанія.

In order to.

Для того чтооь.

Until, up to, } До.  
Before, as far as, }

He was faithful to him till death.  
I waited until the evening.  
It came to such a pass that there  
was not a single penny left.  
That happened before your arrival.  
This does not concern you.  
I have something to ask you.  
What business is it of yours.  
Before the birth of Christ.  
He read on to the end.  
Up to this place.  
He rode as far as the village.

Онъ ему былъ вѣренъ до смѣрти.  
Я ждалъ до вечера.  
Дошло до того, что у насъ не оста-  
лось ни одного пѣни.  
Это случилось до вашего прибытія.  
Это до васъ не касается.  
У меня до васъ просьба.  
Какое вамъ до этого дѣло.  
До Рождества Христова.  
Онъ читалъ до конца.  
До сего (этого) мѣста.  
Онъ ѣхалъ до деревни.

Out of, from, for, } Пзъ.

He came out of the house.  
They concluded from this that he  
was wrong.  
He did this of his own free will.  
He works for money.  
They received him out of charity.  
To lose one's temper.

Онъ вышелъ изъ дому.  
Пзъ этого они заключили, что онъ не  
правъ.  
Онъ сдѣлалъ это пзъ доброй воли.  
Онъ работаетъ пзъ платы.  
Его приняли пзъ милости.  
Выходить пзъ себя.

Between, amidst, } Мѣжду, межъ, промежду.  
Among, } промежъ, (implying di-  
rection or motion).

The water penetrated between the  
planks.  
I fell among strangers.

Мѣжду досокъ проникала вода.  
Я попалъ мѣжду незнакомыхъ.

Obs. 1.—Между, when not implying direction or motion,  
governs the instrumental case.

Along, } Вдоль.  
I walked along the river. Я гулялъ вдоль рѣки.

Instead of, for,

He took this book instead of that one.

Instead of learning his lessons, he is playing.

Will you go there for me ?

Within,

His house is within the fortification.

Out of, beyond, outside,

The fortifications are outside the town.

He is out of his wits.

Beside, by, near,

He is sitting beside me.

They live next to us.

His garden is near the village.

I was riding and he was running alongside of me.

Except, besides,

There was no one except you in our house.

I eat nothing but bread.

Without joking.

By, past,

He passed by our house.

About, round,

We went round the garden.

He lives somewhere near the forest.

We were waiting for about two hours.

Вмѣсто.

Онъ взялъ эту книгу вмѣсто той.

Вмѣсто того чтобъ учить уроки, онъ играетъ.

Хотите пойти туда вмѣсто меня ?

Внутри.

Его домъ находится внутри укрѣпленій.

Внѣ.

Укрѣпленія находятся внѣ города.

Онъ внѣ себя.

Возлѣ, подлѣ.

Онъ сидитъ возлѣ меня.

Они живутъ возлѣ насъ.

Его садъ подлѣ деревни.

Я ѣхалъ верхомъ. а онъ бѣжалъ подлѣ меня.

Кромѣ.

Кромѣ васъ у насъ никого не было.

Я ничего не ѣмъ кромѣ хлѣба.

Кромѣ шутокъ.

Мимо.

Онъ шелъ мимо нашего дома.

Около.

Мы обошли около сада.

Онъ живётъ гдѣ-то здѣсь около лѣса.

Мы ожидали около двухъ часовъ.

Around,

There is not a single garden 'around  
the town.

A dense fog hangs round the moun-  
tain peak.

From, out of, since,

They went away from us.  
From the house to the forest.  
He fell ill from trouble.  
A remedy against head-ache.  
He did not know what he was doing  
from joy.

From year to year.  
From day to day.  
He dismissed him from his service.

Behind, from behind,

He was walking behind me.  
He attacked him from behind.

Upon, over,

He put a fur coat over his frock-  
coat.  
We saw him upon the water.

After, afterwards,

He came after me.  
After having written, he rose.

Before, formerly,

He came before you.

Against, opposite,

He went against the enemy.

{ Вкругъ, вokrúгъ.  
{ Окрестъ (seldom used).

Вокрúтъ гóрода нѣтъ ни одного са́да

Окрестъ горной верши́ны висѣтъ гус-  
той туманъ.

Отъ, ото.

Онѣ ушли́ отъ насъ.  
Отъ дому до́ лѣсу.  
Онъ заболѣлъ отъ забóбъ.  
Лѣкарство отъ головной бóли.  
Онъ не зналъ что дѣлалъ отъ ра-  
достя.  
Годъ отъ году.  
День ото дня.  
Онъ ему́ отказалъ отъ мѣста.

Позади́, сза́ди.

Онъ шѣлъ позади́ меня́.  
Онъ напалъ на него́ сза́ди.

Повѣрхъ.

Онъ надѣлъ шубу повѣрхъ сюртука́.  
Мы ви́дели его повѣрхъ воды́.

Пóслѣ.

Онъ пришѣлъ пóслѣ меня́.  
Онъ всталъ пóслѣ тогó какъ напи-  
салъ.

Прѣжде (of time).

Онъ пришѣлъ прѣжде васъ.

Прóтивъ, противу (move-  
ment).

Онъ шѣлъ прóтивъ непріятеля́.



Against, opposite,

Напрóтивъ, насúпротивъ,  
(rest).

He lives opposite our house.

Онъ живётъ напро́тивъ (от насúпро-  
тивъ) насъ.

On the contrary.

Напрóтивъ.

For the sake of,

Рáди.

He served for honour's sake.

Онъ служилъ рáди чéсти.

He did it for your sake.

Онъ сдѣлалъ это рáди васъ.

Therefore, on that account.

Чего́ рáди, сего́ рáди.

For God's sake.

Бо́га рáди.

OBS. 2.—Для is generally used instead of рáди: the latter, if used, is usually placed after the noun.

Above, in addition to, }  
Besides, }

Сверхъ.

This is above his understanding.

Это свѣрхъ его́ поня́тiя.

He bought for him two books be-  
sides.Онъ купилъ ему́ сверхъ того́ и двѣ  
кни́ги.

To the middle, among, {

{ Посредí, (movement).  
{ Средí, (rest).

He steered the ship amidst reefs.

Онъ провёлъ корáбль посредí под-  
водныхъ ка́мней.The monument is erected in the  
middle of the square.Па́мятникъ поста́вленъ средí пло-  
щади.

In broad day.

Посредí о́блага дня.

From, since, about,

Съ, со.

From this place up to that place  
they measured the distance.Съ это́го мѣста по то́ мѣсто онѣ вы-  
мѣрили расто́яние.He was absent from the 1st of May  
to the 5th of June.Онъ былъ въ отлúчкѣ съ пѣрваго  
ма́я по пýтое Ю́ня.

We worked from morning till evening.

Мы рабóтали съ утра́ до вѣчера.

It was raining from four till five.

Дождь шёлъ съ пýтаго до шестáго  
часá.

He took the book from the table.  
 He took the hat off his head.  
 He changed his seat.  
 The boat rolled from side to side.  
 From day to day and from hour to  
     hour we expected him.  
 On Tuesday night.  
 Between the 1st and 2nd day of the  
     month.  
 He died of grief.  
 He did it with my consent.  
 His estate was sold by auction.  
 If I may be allowed to say.  
 They lost their way.  
 He went out.  
 On all sides.  
 He knocked me down.  
 Since then we saw him no more.

Онъ взялъ книгу со стола.  
 Онъ снялъ съ головы шляпу.  
 Онъ пересѣлъ со стула на стулъ.  
 Лодка качалась съ боку на бокъ.  
 Со дня на день и съ часу на часъ  
     мы его ожидали.  
 Въ ночь со вторника на среду.  
 Съ перваго на второе число.  
 Онъ умеръ съ горя.  
 Онъ сдѣлалъ это съ моего согласія.  
 Имѣніе его продано съ молотка.  
 Съ позволенія сказать.  
 Они сбились съ пути.  
 Онъ ушёлъ со двора.  
 Со всѣхъ сторонъ.  
 Онъ сбилъ меня съ ногъ.  
 Съ тѣхъ поръ мы его болѣе уже не  
     видали.

OBS. 2.—Съ governs also the accusative and the instr.

At, near, beside, by,

He lives at his father's.  
 She has white hands.  
 Our house lies by the river.  
 He sits by the window.  
 I waited for him at the door.  
 His field lies quite close to the  
     forest.

У.

Онъ живётъ у отца.  
 Руки у ней бѣлы.  
 Нашъ домъ стоитъ у рѣки.  
 Онъ сидитъ у окна.  
 Я ожидалъ его у дверей.  
 Поле его у самаго лѣса.

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

To, towards, for,

He came to me.  
 We touched the shore.  
 We arrived there towards evening.  
 He went to mass.  
 The enemies met face to face.  
 Love of one's native country.

Къ, ко.

Онъ пришёлъ ко мнѣ.  
 Мы привалили къ берегу.  
 Мы приѣхали туда къ вечеру.  
 Онъ пошёлъ къ обеднѣ.  
 Враги сошлись лицомъ къ лицу.  
 Любовь къ отечеству.

He is invited to dinner.  
 He sought a pretext for a quarrel.  
 I was going towards the palace.  
 This becomes her.

On, upon, over, }  
 At, for, according, }

We took a walk in the fields.  
 He tapped me on the shoulder.  
 I wandered about in the world.  
 The soldiers fired at the besiegers.  
 How much is it a pound ?  
 One shilling a pound.  
 We were there in the morning.  
 They selected the apples for their  
 size, and the handkerchiefs for  
 their quality.  
 He acted in this affair conscientiously.  
 He is the first in his class for good  
 behaviour.  
 He is the oldest in years and the  
 highest in rank of all here.  
 They dress according to the fashion.  
 He counted on his fingers.  
 We used to live there for weeks at  
 a time.  
 I was travelling by land and he by  
 sea.

The post arrives every Tuesday.  
 He is clad in summer attire.  
 They are walking two by two.  
 He serves in the artillery.  
 According to my opinion.

Obs. 3.—По governs also the accusative and the prepositional cases.

Contrary, against, }  
 In spite of, }

He acted against common sense.

Онъ приглашёнъ къ обѣду.  
 Онъ искалъ предлога къ ссорѣ.  
 Я шелъ ко дворцу.  
 Это ей къ лицу.

По.

Мы гуляли по полю.  
 Онъ потрепалъ меня по плечу.  
 Я странствовалъ по свѣту.  
 Солдаты стрѣляли по осаждающимъ  
 По чѣмъ за фунтъ ?  
 По шиллингу за фунтъ.  
 Мы были тамъ поутру.  
 Онъ выбирали яблоки по величинѣ,  
 а платки по добротѣ.

Онъ въ этомъ дѣлѣ поступилъ по  
 совѣсти.  
 Онъ въ классѣ первый по поведѣ-  
 нію.  
 Онъ здѣсь старшій по лѣтамъ и по  
 чину.  
 Онъ одѣваются по модѣ.  
 Онъ считалъ по пальцамъ.  
 Мы жили тамъ по недѣлямъ.

Я ѣхалъ по сухому пути, а онъ по  
 морю.  
 Почта приходитъ по вторникамъ.  
 Онъ одѣвается по лѣтнему.  
 Онъ идуть по два въ рядъ.  
 Онъ служить по артиллеріи.  
 По моему мнѣнію.

Вопреки.

Онъ поступилъ вопреки здравому  
 смыслу.

He did it against all sense of decency.      Онъ сдѣлалъ это вопреки приличіямъ.

He married contrary to his father's wish.      Онъ женился вопреки желанію своего отца

To receive, to take,

{ Принима́ть, I. 1.  
{ Прини́ять, I. 6.

We used to receive him.

Мы принимали его́.

He has taken the medicine.

Онъ принялъ лека́рство.

To fortify,

Укрѣплѣть, р. а. укрѣпи́ть.

To protect,

Защища́ть, р. а. защити́ть.

Impregnable, непристу́пный.

Impassable, непроходи́мый.

Naval, морско́й, флѣтскі́й.

A forester, лѣснѣи́чій.

A rampart, валъ.

Truthfulness, досто́вѣрность.

#### EXERCISE CXXIV.

Is it far from here to the frontier?—About fifty miles. From what do you conclude that he is lazy?—From the fact that he learns his lesson only by (изъ) compulsion. For whom are these illuminations being prepared?—For the new governor of the town.—Does he drink wine?—He drinks nothing except water.—When did you arrive here? I came here before spring and will stay here till next spring.—Has the enemy much of an army?—He has from ten to twelve thousand men.—Against whom have you fought?—I fought against the Hungarians in the year 1849. When going to the war did you pass by our village?—I do not recollect it now, but as your village lies near the river along which our regiment went, it is probable that we did pass it.—The letter sent from my brother to his friend did not reach him.—What did he get ill from?—He got ill from trouble.—Take a seat near me, and I will take a pen and write you a prescription for fever.—Do not, however,



take this medicine after dinner, and to-morrow during the morning, if you are not better, come to me again.—Is this town well fortified?—On all sides it is defended by impregnable batteries and ramparts, and, besides that, on one side it is protected by lofty mountains impassable for troops. Up to which day of the month will you be in town?—From the second to the tenth.—The bird flew from the cage to the table.—Will your sons return soon?—We expect them every hour.—At what time are you going out?—About nine, or at twenty minutes to two.—Since what o'clock have you been waiting for him?—I have been waiting for him since half-past eight.—He was waiting for you from three to five o'clock.

#### EXERCISE CXXV.

To whom did he apply?—He applied to his chief.—Which of these two roads leads to the forester's house?—When you come to the nearest village, turn to the right and go straight up to the river; there, after crossing the bridge, you will see on a hillock the forester's house; so you cannot now lose your way.—While taking a walk in the fields and enjoying the pleasant evening air we came to a little house lying (стоять) at the foot of the hill.—Is it true that the rich banker is going to marry the daughter of a naval officer?—There is such a rumour in town, but I could not answer for its truthfulness.—From which battery did the enemy fire at your troops?—He fired at us from his ships, in spite of their heavy (сильный) rolling from side to side. Did he act according to your orders?—No, he acted contrary to my orders.—How are you going abroad?—From here to town we are going by rail, and thence by sea.—Does he go to church every Sunday?—He goes to church not

only on Sunday, but on week days.—At how much per foot do you buy this mahogany?—At two shillings and threepence per foot.—In what order did the soldiers march? They marched six in a row.

## SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.

### Шестьдесятъ второй Урокъ.

#### PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

##### Into, in, to, at,

##### Въ, во (movement).

He went into the garden.

I am going to Vienna.

I came on Monday in the afternoon,  
and he came at one in the after-  
noon.

We came in time.

His house is a two storied one.

I will write this in one hour.

He tore the handkerchief to pieces.

We believe in God.

To look through spectacles.

He set out on a journey.

To speak through the nose.

To play at cards.

To give a deposit.

To agree thoroughly.

To paint black.

He put his head out of his window.

A seat in the theatre at two roubles.

It is seven times as high.

To sell at a loss.

I translated word for word.

His sister resembles her father.

Онъ пошѣлъ въ садъ.

Я ѣду въ Вѣну.

Я пріѣхалъ въ понедѣльникъ въ пол-  
день, а онъ въ часъ по по-  
лудни.

Мы пришліи въ пору.

Его домъ въ два этажа.

Я напишѣю это въ часъ.

Онъ изорвалъ платокъ въ куски.

Мы вѣруемъ въ Бога.

Смотрѣть въ очки.

Онъ пустился въ дорогѣ.

Говорить въ носъ.

Играть въ карты.

Дать въ задатокъ.

Жить душою въ душу.

Красить въ черную краску.

Онъ вынулъ голову въ окно.

Мѣсто въ театрѣ въ два рубля.

Это въ семь разъ выше.

Продать въ убытокъ.

Я перевелъ слово въ слово.

Его сестра въ отца.

He is in love with her.  
 A room six yards long.  
 A battalion a thousand men strong.  
 In one jump.  
 In time of peace.  
 He died a year afterwards to the  
     very day.  
 The windows look into the garden.  
 He looked out of the window.  
 Once a week.  
 Twice a year.  
 He fired at him.  
 A battalion is drawn up in line.  
 A book folio size.  
 He puts me down as nothing at all.

Онъ влюблёнъ въ неё.  
 Комната длиною въ шесть я́рдовъ.  
 Батальонъ въ тысячу челове́къ.  
 Въ оди́нъ прыжокъ.  
 Во вре́мя ми́ра.  
 Онъ у́меръ годъ спустя́ день въ день.  
 О́кна выхо́дятъ въ садъ.  
 Онъ смотре́лъ въ о́кно.  
 Разъ въ неде́лю.  
 Два ра́за въ годъ.  
 Онъ вы́стрѣлилъ въ него́.  
 Батальонъ постро́енъ въ ли́нию.  
 Кни́га въ ли́сть.  
 Онъ меня́ ни во что не ста́вить.

Obs. 1.—Nouns designating state or rank of a person, when preceded by въ, are put in the plural, and being in this case treated as collective nouns take the inflexion of the nominative, as :

He is promoted to the rank of major.  
 He took her for a wife.  
 They elected him as their chief.  
 He enlisted for a soldier.

Онъ произведе́нъ въ майо́ры.  
 Онъ взя́лъ её себѣ́ въ же́ны.  
 Они́ выбра́ли его́ себѣ́ въ нача́льни́ки.  
 Онъ записа́лся въ солда́ты.

Behind, beyond, for,

За (movement).

He went out of the gate.  
 We are going abroad.  
 He took her by the hand.  
 He always espouses the cause of the  
     innocent.  
 He took vengeance on him for the  
     offence.  
 I live three miles off.  
 This took place an hour ago—a week  
     ago.

Онъ вы́шелъ за воро́та.  
 Мы ѣ́демъ за гра́ницу.  
 Онъ взя́лъ её за́ руку.  
 Онъ всегда́ заступа́ется за неви́н-  
     наго.  
 Онъ ему́ отомсти́лъ за оби́ду.  
 Я живу́ за́ три ми́ли.  
 Это случи́лось за́ часъ пе́редъ снѣ́мъ,  
     за́ неде́лю.



He paid twopence for a pound of  
flour.

I bought a pound of flour for two-  
pence.

He is turned forty.

They began dinner.

He grasped the hilt of his sword.

She got married to him.

He makes proposals of marriage to  
her.

Let us go out of town.

They mistook him for me.

### On, upon,

He sat down on a chair.

I turned to the east.

He went into the field.

I went down on my knees.

I looked at him.

I shall go to Paris *viâ* Calais.

He entrusted me with a commission.

On the following day.

In future.

I purchased ten roubles worth of  
cloth.

He is on a year's leave of absence.

To go to work, to war.

Give me some money for tobacco.

He divided it into three parts.

Your coat is longer than mine by a  
foot.

Pray partake of this.

He bought it for ready money.

I sued him.

It came into his mind.

At length, at last.

At last I have finished.

He ran to help him.

He gave him some money for drink.

Онъ заплатилъ за фунтъ муки два  
пенса.

Я купилъ фунтъ муки за два пенса.

Ему уже за сорокъ лѣтъ.

Онѣ сѣли за столъ.

Онъ хватился за шпагу.

Она вышла за мужъ за него.

Онъ свѣтается за неё.

Поѣдемъ за городъ.

Его приняли за меня.

### На (movement).

Онъ сѣлъ на стулъ.

Я обратился на востокъ.

Онъ пошелъ на поле.

Я сталъ на колѣни.

Я смотрѣлъ на него.

Я поѣду въ Парижъ на Калѣ.

Онъ возложилъ на меня порученіе.

На другой день.

На будущее время.

Я купилъ сукна на десять рублей.

Онъ отпушенъ на годъ.

Идти на работу, на войну.

Дай мнѣ денегъ на табакъ.

Онъ раздѣлилъ это на три части.

Вашъ сюртукъ на футъ длиннѣе мо-  
его.

Купайте на здоровье!

Онъ купилъ на наличныя деньги.

Я просилъ на него.

Ему пришло на умъ.

Наконѣцъ.

На силу я окончилъ.

Онъ приближалъ къ нему на помощь.

Онъ далъ ему на водку.



Obs. 2.—*Ha* governs also the prepositional.

Against,

О, объ, обо.

He struck the table with his fist.

Онъ удари́лъ кулако́мъ объ сто́лъ.

He leant against the wall.

Онъ опёрся объ стѣну.

We are separated by a party-wall.

Я живу́ съ нимъ обо́ стѣну.

She was walking arm-in-arm with her betrothed.

Она́ шла обо́ руку съ своимъ жени-  
хо́мъ.

Now it is daylight at six o'clock,  
and last month at that hour we  
got up by candle-light.

Тепе́рь въ шесть часо́въ уже́ свѣтло́,  
а въ прошлoмъ мѣсяцѣ́ объ́ эту́  
по́ру мы вста́вали при́ свѣча́хъ.

He makes a bet.

Онъ бы́ется объ́ закла́дъ.

Obs. 3.—*O* governs also the prepositional case.

Under, beneath, below,

Подъ (movement).

In answer to the question :

*a.* WHITHER ?

He took shelter under the roof.

Онъ укрѣ́лся подѣ́ кро́влю.

He threw the book under the table.

Онъ бро́силъ кни́гу подѣ́ сто́лъ.

They descended the hill at a walk-  
ing pace.

Они́ шли́ подѣ́ гору́ ша́гомъ.

The enemy drew near to the for-  
tress.

Неприя́тель подступи́лъ подѣ́ крѣ-  
пость.

*b.* WHEN ?

He arrived about morning.

Онъ при́ѣхалъ подѣ́ утро.

He will set off about autumn.

Онъ вы́ѣдетъ подѣ́ осень.

*c.* HOW MUCH ?

He is getting on to forty.

Ему́ подѣ́ сорокъ лѣтъ.

Obs. 4.—*Подѣ́* when implying rest governs the instr.

Up to, on,

По.

He went into the water up to his  
knees.

Онъ воше́лъ въ́ воду́ по́ ко́лѣно.

I measured up to this point.  
 Each one received a rouble.  
 They live on the other side of the  
 river.  
 He is standing on my right.

About,

He is about my size.  
 A grain as small as a pin's head.  
 I stayed there for about a week.

Of, about,

He spoke aside.  
 He spoke of you.

Through,

The water sinks through the paper.  
 The light comes through the glass  
 door.  
 The grass is seen through the fence.

Through, by,

He rode across the field and I went  
 over the bridge.  
 He jumped across the ditch.  
 I will come in an hour's time.  
 We advertised it in the papers.  
 I sent it by a servant.  
 In a hundred years from to-day.

To tuck up, to turn up,  
 To make an offer, to ask in  
 marriage,

To rush after,

To take a situation,

To mend.

Я отмѣрилъ по это мѣсто.  
 Каждый получилъ по рублю.  
 Они живутъ по ту сторону рѣки.

Онъ стоитъ по правую руку.

Съ.

Онъ ростомъ съ меня.  
 Зерно съ булавочную головку.  
 Я пробылъ тамъ съ недѣлю.

Про (used instead of для,  
 for or о, объ, about).

Онъ говорилъ про себя.  
 Онъ говорилъ про васъ.

Сквозь.

Вода протекаетъ сквозь бумагу.  
 Светъ проникаетъ сквозь стеклянную  
 дверь.  
 Зелень видна сквозь заборъ.

Черезъ, чѣрезъ.

Онъ ѣхалъ чѣрезъ поле, а я чѣрезъ  
 мость.  
 Онъ перепрыгнулъ чѣрезъ ровъ.  
 Я придѣ чѣрезъ часъ.  
 Мы объявили чѣрезъ газеты.  
 Я послалъ чѣрезъ слугу.  
 Чѣрезъ сто лѣтъ отъ сего дня.

Засучивать, р. а. засучить.

{ Свѣтаться за, } with the  
 { Посвѣтаться, р. а. } acc.

{ Бросаться за, } with the  
 { Броситься, р. а. } instr.

Наниматься, р. а. наняться.

Чинить, р. а. починить

To erect.

To give leave of absence.

To tear.

A range of mountains.

A great general.

Сооружать, р. а. соорудить.

Отпускать, р. а. отпустить.

Драть, р. а. разодрать, изодрать.

Цѣпь горъ.

Славный полководецъ.

Unpleasantness, неприятность.

A chest of drawers, комодъ.

An instructor, наставникъ.

A ditch, ровъ.

## EXERCISE CXXVI.

Did he enter the room?—He has been a long time in the room already.—Were there many guests there?—There were about ten men.—Were they a long time in building this shed?—They were about a week building it.—What have you torn your coat against?—Against a nail.—Take it to the tailor towards evening, but do not pay him for mending it, as he owes me about ten roubles.—On the right there was a river flowing, and on the left a range of mountains was seen.—What did he pay for the horse which he bought for his daughter?—It cost him about £300. Does it match his other horse in size?—It matches his other horse both in size and colour.—If you want to wash yourself turn up your sleeves to the elbow.—Have you been staying long in town?—Since the 5th November.—Has your brother made an offer to our neighbour's daughter?—I know that he is in love with her, but I cannot say whether he has made her an offer.—What did they praise him for? For diligence.—Has the tailor been here?—Yes, the tailor came here two hours ago.—Put the bracelet on the table. It is lying on the chest of drawers.—What price are these cigars?—Threepence each.—Did he get leave of absence from school for a long time?—For two days.

## EXERCISE CXXVII.

Is your brother tall?—He is about my uncle's size.—We have snow still lying in March, but in southern countries about this time the fields are covered with grass.—Where did this little dog rush to after the kitten?—He rushed after it under the table.—What is your uncle's age?—He is getting on to fifty.—Whither did he throw the stone? He threw it into the water.—What did you hear about him? I do not like to say of people that which I have not seen myself, but only heard.—These panes are so dirty that light can hardly come through (проникать) them.—After having crossed the bridge, they had to jump across a deep ditch.—In whose memory is this monument erected?—In memory of the great general Koutousoff.—When will he be at your house?—In five days' time.—Through whom did this unpleasantness arise (взойти)?—Through him. What are they doing?—They are playing at cards.—Whom do you take as your instructor?—Your former teacher. Was he wounded?—Yes, he was wounded in the leg. Whom do you take as your witness?—I take you as my witness.—What is your brother doing now?—He took a situation as clerk.

## SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Шестьдесятъ третій Урокъ.

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

Beyond, behind, За.

In answer to the question

WHERE?

The sea is beyond the hills.

Море за горами.

I stand behind the house.

Я стою за домомъ.



## ON WHOSE ACCOUNT?

The delay is caused by him alone.  
 One hears nothing for the noise.  
 Why did you not come ?  
 Because it was impossible.

За нимъ однимъ остано́вка.  
 За шумомъ ниче́го не слы́шно.  
 За чѣмъ ты не пришёлъ ?  
 За тѣмъ что не́льзя.

## AT WHAT ?

He was sitting at his work.  
 He was sitting at his meal.

Онъ сидѣлъ за рабо́тою.  
 Онъ сидѣлъ за сто́ломъ.

## BEHIND OR AFTER, WHOM OR WHAT ?

Walk behind me.  
 Shot after shot is heard.  
 He went to find a doctor.

Ступа́йте за мно́ю.  
 Слы́шенъ вы́стрѣлъ за вы́стрѣломъ.  
 Онъ пошѣлъ за до́кторомъ.

## FOR WHAT PURPOSE ? (used instead of Для).

Why are you here ?  
 On my own business.

За чѣмъ ты здѣсь.  
 За своимъ дѣ́ломъ.

## Over, on, upon,

The bird hovers over her nest.  
 I experienced it myself.  
 The rock overhung the water.  
 He gets the upper hand of him.  
 We laughed at him.  
 They gained a victory over the enemy.

## Падъ.

Пти́ца лета́етъ надъ гнѣздо́мъ.  
 Я испыты́алъ это́ надъ собо́ю.  
 Ска́ла вы́ставилась надъ водо́ю.  
 Онъ берѣ́тъ верхъ надъ нимъ.  
 Мы смѣ́ялись надъ нимъ.  
 Они́ одержали побѣ́ду надъ непри́-  
 теле́мъ.

## Under, underneath,

The bird built her nest beneath the roof.  
 The dog is lying under the table.  
 He is known by the name of Smith.  
 He stood at the foot of the hill.  
 She was under his protection.

## Подъ (implying rest).

Пти́ца свила́ гнѣздо́ подъ кры́шей.  
 Соба́ка лежи́тъ подъ сто́ломъ.  
 Онъ извѣ́стенъ подъ и́менемъ Шми́та.  
 Онъ сто́ялъ подъ горо́ю.  
 Она́ была́ подъ его́ защи́тою.

In front of, before.

There is a garden before the house.  
He stood in front of me.  
He has the preference over him.

He woke up before daylight.

Between, among, amidst,

He is sitting between us.  
The difference between good and evil.

Among plants some are medicinal and some poisonous.

During business hours he did not like talking.

In the meantime.

Whilst.

With,

He rode with a guide and I without one.

Come to us with your wife.

He did it with our assistance.

France borders on Germany.

I congratulated him on his birthday.

I do not know him at all.

I have no money by me.

A hat with a brim.

Предъ, передъ, (implying rest).

Передъ домомъ находится садъ.

Онъ стоялъ предо мною.

Онъ имѣетъ преимущество предъ нимъ.

Онъ проснулся предъ разсвѣтомъ.

Между, межъ (implying rest).

Онъ сидитъ между нами.

Различіе между добромъ и зломъ.

Между растеніями находятся цѣлебныя и ядовитыя.

Между дѣломъ онъ не любилъ разговаривать.

Между тѣмъ.

Между тѣмъ какъ.

Съ, (opposed to безъ).

Онъ ѣхалъ съ провожатымъ, а я безъ провожатаго.

Пріѣзжайте къ намъ съ женою.

Онъ сдѣлалъ это съ нашею помощію.

Франція граничитъ съ Германіей.

Я поздравилъ его со днёмъ его рожденья.

Я его совсемъ не знаю.

Со мною денегъ нѣтъ.

Шляпа съ полями.

## PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE PREPOSITIONAL.

In, at,

I live in London.

He is endowed with great capacities.

Въ (implying rest).

Я живу въ Лондонѣ.

Въ нёмъ большія способности.

He is in debt.  
 He was caught in the act of stealing.  
 At the head of the army.  
 He is invited.  
 We were made fools of.  
 He stood before ladies with his hat  
 and gloves on.  
 He wears spectacles.  
 He came in the beginning of the  
 year.  
 What o'clock is it ?  
 Just struck nine.  
 Just upon two o'clock.  
 Between twelve and one.  
 He arrived in the early part of  
 September.  
 There will be a fine harvest this  
 year.

### On, upon,

He is lying on a sofa upstairs.  
 He has been at sea.  
 There are stars in the heavens.  
 I am in the service.  
 The soldier is on sentry duty.  
 We were in the open air.  
 Last week.  
 He saw a good many things in his  
 lifetime.

### About, concerning,

He spoke about me.  
 He writes upon the war.  
 A three-legged stool.  
 He came about holiday-time.

### After,

On entering church.  
 After the death of Alexander.

Онъ въ долгѣхъ.  
 Онъ пойманъ въ воровствѣ.  
 Во главѣ войска.  
 Онъ позванъ въ гости.  
 Мы остались въ дуракахъ.  
 Онъ стоялъ передъ дамами въ шляпѣ  
 и въ перчаткахъ.  
 Онъ въ очкахъ.  
 Онъ приѣхалъ въ началѣ года.

Который часъ.  
 Въ началѣ десятий.  
 Второй въ исходѣ.  
 Въ первомъ часу.  
 Онъ приѣхалъ въ первыхъ числахъ  
 сентябрѣ.  
 Въ нынѣшнемъ году́ будетъ хоро-  
 шая жатва.

### На, (implying rest).

Онъ лежитъ на верху на диванѣ.  
 Онъ служилъ на морѣ.  
 На небѣ звѣзды.  
 Я нахожусь на службѣ.  
 Солдаты стоятъ на часахъ.  
 Мы были на воздухѣ.  
 На прошлой недѣлѣ.  
 Онъ видѣлъ многое на своемъ вѣку.

### О.

Онъ говорилъ обо мнѣ.  
 Онъ пишетъ о войнѣ.  
 Стулъ о трѣхъ ножкахъ.  
 Онъ приѣхалъ о праздникахъ.

### По.

По входѣ въ церковь.  
 По смерти Алексѣя.

The son inherited the estate from  
his father.

She lamented her late husband.  
In my opinion.

Near, in the time of,  
St. Petersburg lies near the mouth  
of the Neva.

A parcel was sent with the letter.

He is a servant of mine.

This happened in my presence.

In the reign of Alexander the  
Second the peasants were freed  
from serfdom.

He was present at the taking of the  
fortress.

He shudders at the bare idea of it.

He is at his hour of death.

To take shelter,

To be exposed,

To shudder,

To establish,

To view,

To take a stroll,

To reign, царствовать.

To labour, трудиться.

The besieger, осаждающий.

Want, недостатокъ.

Willingness, охота.

A dispatch, депеша.

A medium, средина.

A table of contents, оглавление.

Augustus, Августъ.

A consul, Консулъ.

Сынъ по отцѣ наследовалъ имѣніе.

Она плакала по своему мужу.  
По мнѣ.

При.

Петербургъ при устьѣ Невы.

При письмѣ отправлена посылка.

Онъ при мнѣ лаксему.

Это случилось при мнѣ.

При Александрѣ Второмъ освобожденны  
крестьяне.

Онъ былъ при взятіи крѣпости.

Онъ содргается при мысли о томъ.

Онъ при смерти.

Укрываться, р. а. укрѣдиться.

{ Подвергаться, } govern the  
{ Подвергнуться, } dative.

Содрагаться, р. а. содрог-  
нуться.

Учреждать, р. а. учредить.

Обозрѣвать, р. а. обозрѣть.

Прохаживаться по, with the  
dat.

To march, идти.

To be situated, находиться.

The besieged, осажденный.

Superfluity, излишество.

Experiment, опытъ.

A declaration, объявление.

A brink, край.

A preface, предисловіе.

Tiberius, Тиберій.

Bernard, Бернардъ.

Fasces, орудія карательныя.



## EXERCISE CXXVIII.

Have you been out of town to-day?—No, I could not go out on account of the rain.—Why did you not go in a coach then?—Because coaches were not to be had.—Have you been sitting down a long time drawing?—For about an hour.—What were they talking about at dinner?—That after the despatch the declaration of war will follow.—Are the things you sent for brought?—They will be brought in an hour.—Hold the umbrella over my head, because both my hands are occupied.—What are you labouring over? I am making an experiment on this medicine.—Do not stand on the brink of the precipice, or you will fall into it. With whom were you at his house.—With two friends. Where were you at the time it rained.—I took shelter under the porch.—On what pretext did he leave the room.—He left on the pretext that an organ was playing under the window.—Were the besiegers standing a long time close on to the town.—For about a month.—Where is your market situated?—In the square in front of the church. Lictors were marching in front of the consul carrying the fasces.—What were you doing before dinner?—I was taking a stroll in the town.—There is a medium between want and superfluity.—We are now hovering (находиться) between fear and hope.—With willingness and diligence one succeeds in everything; but without those qualities all efforts are useless.—Of what crime is he accused?—He is accused of theft.

## EXERCISE CXXIX.

Is it true that you were walking in the garden without a hat and without boots?—No, I was walking with my hat

and boots on.—In the beginning of winter it is still dark at half-past four in the morning, but in the beginning of summer daybreak begins soon after two.—Are horses sold here every day?—No, only in the first days of each month. At the very idea of the danger to which his son was exposed he shuddered.—From what spot did you view the suburbs of the town?—From the hill.—When did you ascend the Mount St. Bernard?—Last week.—Is the fire-wood burning in the stove?—Yes, but badly; one should put (подложить) some fresh dry wood on.—Who reigned after the death of Augustus?—Tiberius.—For whom are you in mourning?—For my parents.—Is there a table of contents to the book?—Yes, and there is also a preface.—How many legs has this stool?—Three.—Did this happen before witnesses.—No, without them.—When was the Senate first established in Russia?—In the reign of Peter the Great. Are there any paintings (живопись) on the walls and ceiling of that church?—Yes, the walls and ceiling are painted by the celebrated French artist, Horace Vernet.

---

## SIXTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### Шестьдесят четвёртый Урокъ.

Words which govern by means of prepositions may be divided into compound and simple words.

A. Compound verbs, as also their derivatives, are generally followed by the same preposition as the one prefixed to them, provided that it is susceptible of being used separately.

Thus verbs with the prefix :

<i>Въ</i>	require <i>въ</i> :	<i>внести въ домъ</i> , to bring into the house.
<i>До</i>	„ <i>до</i> :	<i>дойти до дому</i> , to go as far as the house.
<i>За</i>	„ <i>за</i> :	<i>зайти за уголъ</i> , to go round the corner
<i>Изъ</i>	„ <i>изъ</i> :	<i>избрать изъ множества</i> , to select from a quantity.
<i>На</i>	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>наѣхать на мель</i> , to run on a shoal.
<i>Надъ</i>	„ <i>надъ</i> :	<i>надзирать надъ дѣломъ</i> , to superintend an affair.
<i>Отъ</i>	„ <i>отъ</i> :	<i>отойти отъ стола</i> , to withdraw from a table.
<i>Подъ</i>	„ <i>подъ</i> :	<i>подложить подъ сукно</i> , to lay under a cloth.
<i>Со</i>	„ <i>со</i> :	<i>сойти съ горы</i> , to descend a hill.

Entry into the house is prohibited.

The superintendence of this matter is entrusted to me.

The descent down the hill is very steep.

Входъ въ домъ запрещенъ.

Надзоръ надъ этимъ порученъ мнѣ.

Сходъ съ горы очень крутъ.

Compound verbs with inseparable prefixes, *i.e.* those which modify the meaning, require after them some separable preposition whose meaning is allied to that of the verbal prefix ; such are :

<i>Изъ</i>	requires <i>отъ</i> :	<i>избавить отъ бѣды</i> , to deliver from trouble.
<i>Низъ</i>	„ <i>съ</i> :	<i>низлетѣть съ высоты</i> , to fly down from a height.
<i>Подъ</i>	„ <i>къ</i> :	<i>подойти къ дому</i> , to draw up to the house.
„	„ <i>съ</i> :	<i>поднять съ полу</i> , to lift from the floor.
„	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>поднять на воздухъ</i> , to lift up in the air.
<i>Пере</i>	„ <i>черезъ</i> :	<i>перейти черезъ мостъ</i> , to go over the bridge.
<i>При</i>	„ <i>къ</i> :	<i>прійти къ другу</i> , to come to a friend.
<i>Про</i>	„ <i>сквозъ</i> :	<i>прейти сквозь огонь</i> , to pass through fire.
<i>Разъ</i>	„ <i>на</i> :	<i>разломить на части</i> , to break to pieces.
„	„ <i>по</i> :	<i>размѣщать по угламъ</i> , to place in the corners.

B. Of the simple words governing by means of prepositions the most important are :

#### GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

With *изъ*.—Adjectives in the superlative degree, numerals, as also the pronouns *всякъ*, *каждый*, *иной*, *много*, *и*



нѣкоторые, when they denote a number from which a selection is made :

The most diligent of all pupils.

The best of all.

One of the two will go there.

The second of them will be rewarded.

Every one of us may be a hero.

Many of them lost their lives.

Some of the listeners began to slumber.

Прилежнѣйшій изъ учениковъ.

Лучшій изъ всѣхъ.

Одинъ изъ двухъ пойдётъ туда.

Второй изъ нихъ будетъ награжденъ.

Всѣй изъ насъ можетъ быть горемъ.

Многіе изъ нихъ лишились жизни.

Нѣкоторые изъ слушателей задремали.

With отъ.—Nouns designating protection against something.

A cloak for the rain.

A shelter from a storm.

A medicine for fever.

Плащъ отъ дождя.

Пристанище отъ бури.

Лѣкарство отъ лихорадки.

### GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

With къ.—Nouns and verbs denoting movement towards an object.

I am going to him.

He applied to me.

This letter is to my father.

He has a great propensity for music.

He is appointed as secretary to him.

Я иду къ нему.

Онъ обратился ко мнѣ.

Это письмо къ моему отцу.

У него большая охота къ музыкѣ.

Онъ назначенъ къ нему въ секретаря.

Nouns denoting some pleasing or displeasing disposition of mind towards an object.

Love and reverence towards parents.

Hatred of lying.

Любовь и почтеніе къ родителямъ.

Ненависть ко лжи.

OBS. 1.—Verbs from which these nouns are derived govern the accusative without a preposition.

To love and revere parents.

To hate lying.

Любить и почитать родителей.

Ненавидѣть ложь.



## GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

With **въ**.—The substantive **вѣра**, ‘faith,’ and its derivatives **вѣровать**, **вѣрующій**, **вѣрованіе**, when speaking of some spiritual object.

Faith in Christ.

**Вѣра во Христа.**

I believe in one God the Father.

**Вѣрую во единого Бога Отца.**

With **на**.—Neuter verbs expressive of a movement of feeling or passion, as: **уповать**, ‘to trust;’ **негодовать**, ‘to be indignant;’ **злобствовать**, ‘to bear malice;’ **роптать**, ‘to murmur;’ **сѣтовать**, ‘to lament;’ and the common verbs—**надѣяться**, ‘to hope;’ **полагаться**, ‘to rely;’ **жаловаться** or **плакаться**, ‘to complain;’ **сердиться** or **гнѣваться**, ‘to be angry;’ as also their derivatives.

He murmurs at his fate.

**Онъ ропщетъ на судьбу.**

To murmur at one's fate is a failing of the weak-minded.

**Ропотъ на судьбу—удѣлъ слабыхъ.**

He complains of you.

**Онъ жалуется на васъ.**

The complaint about you is already delivered in.

**Жалоба на васъ уже подана.**

## GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

With **надъ**.—Nouns and verbs denoting superiority, power or triumph:

He has power over his subjects.

**Онъ имѣетъ власть надъ своими подданными.**

He laughed at the stupid persons.

**Онъ смѣялся надъ глупыми.**

He gained a brilliant victory over the enemy.

**Онъ одержалъ блестящую победу надъ неприятелемъ.**

With **съ**.—All reciprocal verbs:

They fought the enemy.

**Онѣ сражались съ неприятелемъ.**

We correspond with him.

**Мы переписываемся съ нимъ.**

## Words designating comparison or resemblance.

He compared me to him.

Онъ сравнилъ меня съ нимъ.

The resemblance to him was striking.

Сходство съ нимъ было поразительно.

## GOVERNING THE PREPOSITIONAL CASE.

With о.—Verbs expressing a mental act, communication of ideas, expression of feelings, as also their derivatives :

I have heard of that.

Я слышалъ о томъ.

We read about the war.

Мы читали о войнѣ.

She is anxious about her son.

Она безпокоится о своёмъ сынѣ.

Her grief for her son was excessive.

Ея печаль о сынѣ была велика.

To fight a duel,

Дра́ться на дуэли, на поединкѣ.

To fight with swords,

Бит́ься на шпа́гахъ.

OBS. 2.—The preposition на when used after the reciprocal verbs бит́ься, сража́ться, дра́ться, 'to fight,' requires the name of the arm chosen for a duel to be put in the prepositional plural.

They fought a duel with pistols.

Онѣ стрѣля́лись на пистоле́тахъ.

We fought with swords.

Мы би́лись на шпа́гахъ.

While, so long as,

Пока́, покуда́.

Until, so long as,

Пока́—не.

While you are there I will finish the work.

Пока́ вы бу́дете тамъ, я оконча́ю раб́оту.

I will not go there until everything is ready.

Я не пойду́ туда́, пока́ всё не бу́детъ гото́во.

Strike the iron while it is hot.

Куй же́лѣзо пока́ горячо́.

As if, that,

{ Бу́дто, бу́дто бы.

{ Какъ бу́дто, какъ бу́дто бы.

They say he is ruined.

Говори́тъ бу́дто онъ разори́лся.

I ask him, and he is as silent as if  
he did not hear me.

Have you heard of his becoming a  
maniac ?

Is it possible ?

To arise.

To let out.

To move from.

To be in a reverie.

A poor-box.

Cattle breeding.

Suitable.

Я спрашиваю его, а онъ молчитъ,  
какъ будто бы не слышитъ меня.

Слышали вы что онъ помѣшался ?

Будто бы ?

Пронсходить, р. а. произойти.

Выпускать, р. а. выпустить.

Сдвигать, р. а. сдвинуть.

Мечтать о, with the prep. с.

Ящикъ для бѣдныхъ.

Скотовѣдство.

Пригодный.

### EXERCISE CXXX.

What are you building this shed for?—For (keeping) firewood.—Are these grounds suitable for cattle breeding? No, the soil here is everywhere unfertile, but the lands over the river are capable of agriculture.—Out of what did the quarrel arise?—From his letting the goldfinch out of the cage.—Make (извлекать) all possible use of the talents with which nature has endowed you.—Of what are these beautiful flowers made?—Of wax.—Of how many battalions is this regiment composed?—Of three.—Where did you take shelter from the rain?—Under a tree.—If you wish to get rid of your cold, and, what is more important, of the frequent visits of your doctor, do not go out of doors in damp weather.—Which of these two stones did he move from this spot?—The one which is three paces from us. The journeymen returning from their work entered the church which stands by the river.—After turning round the corner, he came to a poor-box and dropped in a silver coin.—We have goods of Russian manufacture which are sold for English ones.—What was he angry with him for?



For not answering to him his question.—How long shall you wait?—I shall wait till it is finished; I shall not go until everything is finished.

### EXERCISE CXXXI.

Can you change me this note into small money?—I have no small change myself.—Is this novel translated into English?—No, it is translated only into French.—Whom does she resemble?—Her mother.—This kind nurse looks after the children and tends upon their sick mother.—Have they built a hay-loft over the shed?—No, but in a short time they will build one.—Did you compare the translation with the original?—Yes, and I find it very good.—On whom lies the responsibility for losses in (upon) the sale of goods?—All the fault lies on him.—Can he play the flute? He can play different instruments.—In what language is this Bible written?—In Hebrew.—What did you ask him about?—I asked him what he is in a reverie about.—Have you picked up the pins from the floor?—I do not see a single pin on the floor.—Have you cut this pie into pieces?—Yes, I have cut it into four pieces.—Is it true that your brother has killed the officer who offended your sister?—My brother fought him a duel with pistols, but he did not kill him, he only wounded him in the arm.

---

### SIXTY-FIFTH LESSON.

Шестьдесятъ пятый Урокъ.

POSITION OF WORDS.—(Размѣщеніе Словъ).

Among modern languages the Russian is conspicuous for



its clearness and simplicity. Although it possess by means of its inflexions great facilities for inversion and transposition, it has totally discarded the rhetorical contrivances of the ancients. Its periods, however long, are never involved, and the sequence of the different parts of speech is at once direct and logical. This result, however, is attained without any rigid or inelastic formality.

Its flexibility is shown by the following examples, in which the meaning is in no wise affected by transposition :

Я разговаривалъ съ нимъ о его дѣ-  
лахъ.

I conversed with him about his  
affairs.

This may be rendered also :

Разговаривалъ я съ нимъ о его дѣлахъ.

Съ нимъ я разговаривалъ о его дѣлахъ.

О дѣлахъ его я съ нимъ разговаривалъ.

Съ нимъ о дѣлахъ его разговаривалъ я.

The natural order of words in an affirmative or negative proposition is as follows :

The first place is occupied by the subject (подлежащее) and its adjuncts, if any, and the second by the predicate (сказуемое) followed by its adjuncts, if any.

Богъ сотворилъ міръ въ шесть дней,  
и человека по образу своему и  
подобію.

God created the world in six days,  
and man after his own image.

OBS. 1.—The predicate or even a subordinate word may take the first place for the sake of emphasis.

Былъ я вчера въ театрѣ.  
Во Франціи я былъ.

I was in the theatre yesterday.  
I have been to *France*.

OBS. 2.—The subject is placed after the predicate and at

the end of a clause when it is desired to give to the subject a greater prominence.

Всё что мы видимъ сотворилъ Богъ. God created all we behold.

Adjectives employed as epithets precede the noun :

Прилежный ученикъ читаетъ полез- The diligent scholar reads useful  
ныя книги. books.

Adjectives employed as attributes or as surnames follow the noun :

Это (есть) дѣло доброе. This is a good act.  
Его считаютъ человѣкомъ благо- He is considered to be a sensible  
мыслящимъ. man.

The apposition follows the substantive to which it refers :

Кблосъ Родосскій, одинъ изъ семй The Colossus of Rhodes, one of the  
чудесъ свѣта, былъ вылитъ изъ seven wonders of the world,  
бронзы. was made of bronze.

The adverb precedes the verb ; the complement follows the word to which it refers ; words of circumstance follow those which determine them :

И умвѣйшій человекъ не всегда Even the most sagacious do not  
видитъ выходъ изъ затруд- always see an escape from dif-  
неній. ficulties.

When two or more determinative words come together, first the determinative, then the demonstrative pronoun, and lastly the numeral or adjective precede the substantive.

Всѣ эти первыя мѣста уже за- All these first seats are already  
няты. taken.

Demonstrative, possessive, indefinite and definite pronouns precede the substantive.

Эта книга мой.	This book is mine.
Мой братъ здоровъ.	My brother is well.
Какбй-то домъ горитъ.	Some house is on fire.
Весь домъ горитъ.	The whole house is on fire.

Subordinate clauses follow those on which they depend either in the way of meaning or syntactical connexion :

Скажи́ брату, что за́втра бу́дутъ гб- сти, кото́рыхъ ну́жно хоро́шб приня́ть, е́сли онъ не хо́четъ прослы́ть невѣжливымъ.	Tell my brother that to-morrow there will be guests who must be well received, if he wishes not to pass for an uncivil man.
--	--

The relative pronouns кото́рый & кой, ' who, which,' in the genitive precede the substantive of the subordinate clause when the former is without a preposition :

Человѣ́къ, кото́раго слова́мъ мо́ж- но вѣ́рить.	A man whose words one may be- lieve.
Кни́га, ко́ей соде́ржаніе любопы́т- но.	A book whose contents are interest- ing.

OBS. 3.—In the same instance, however, the substantive with a preposition precedes the relative pronoun :

Человѣ́къ, на слова́ кото́раго мы мо́жемъ положи́ться.	A man on whose words we may rely.
Страна́, въ преде́лахъ кото́рой мы живе́мъ.	A country in whose limits we dwell.

In interrogative sentences the order varies somewhat from the English, inasmuch as the word which conveys the purport of the question takes the first place :

Съ бра́томъ ли вы говори́ли?	Have you spoken to the brother ?
Нѣтъ, съ сестро́й.	No, to the sister.
Не са́ми ли мы виноваты́ въ на́- шихъ несча́стіяхъ ?	Have we not ourselves to blame for our misfortunes ?

OBS. 4.—Interrogative sentences expressing participation commence with the conjunction и.

И онъ тамъ былъ ?	Was he there too ?
И тамъ онъ былъ ?	Was he also there ?
И то онъ зна́етъ ?	Does he know even that ?

OBS. 5.—In asking a question, when one is convinced of



the contrary of the fact implied, the sentence begins with the interrogative adverb *развѣ* :

<i>Развѣ</i> можетъ человекъ провести	Can man go through life without
всю жизнь безъ горя ?	sorrow ?

Obs. 6.—To express doubt the sentence begins with the interrogative adverb *неужели*, *ужели*.

<i>Неужели</i> ещё не видите, что вы	Do you not yet see that you cannot
не можете заставить насъ вѣ-	make us believe such stories ?
рить такой сказкѣ ?	

A question may be expressed by a mere stress of the voice on a particular word, without any interrogative particle :

Вы вчера разби́ли стака́нъ ?	Did you break the glass yesterday ?
Вы вчера разби́ли стака́нъ ?	Did you break the glass <i>yesterday</i> ?

Obs. 7.—When the interrogative clause follows an affirmative one, the particle *ли* is retained :

Я желаю знать, былъ ли онъ тамъ ?	I want to know whether he was
	there !

Obs. 8.—When it is sought to draw attention to the particular thing requiring an answer, the interrogative word is placed after the circumstantial clause.

Изъ многихъ купленныхъ имъ книгъ,	Which book did he give him of the
которую онъ подарилъ ему ?	many he bought ?
Въ жизни сколько вы успѣли вы-	How many castles in the air have
строить воздушныхъ замковъ	you had time to make in your
прежде, нежели вы окончательно	lifetime, before you finally set-
поселились въ нынѣшней ва-	tled down in your present
шей скромной обстановкѣ ?	humble position ?

To forebode, to foretell,

Is the owl a bird of good omen ?  
No, it is of ill omen.

Предвѣщать.

Хорошая ли предвѣстница совѣ ?  
Нѣтъ, она дурная предвѣстница.



To use bad words,  
To come to blows,  
To separate, n. v.,  
To be wroth with—.

To dress (wounds).  
To rejoin (in speaking).

To argue, спóрить.  
Superstitious, суевѣрный,  
A cuckoo, кукушка.

Бран'иться, р. а. побран'иться.  
Подра'ться, р. а.  
Расход'иться, р. а. разойт'ись.  
Быть въ сердцахъ на, with  
the acc.

Перевязывать, р. а. перевязать.  
Возражать, р. а. возразить.

To pass through, проход'ить.  
Bruised, изб'итый.  
Simpleton, прост'акъ.

### EXERCISE CXXXII.

One fine morning two peasants, John and Peter, were out walking together, and, while passing through a wood, heard the cry of a cuckoo for the first time. “The cuckoo is a bird of good omen,” said the superstitious John. “Her cry foretells something lucky for me; at least a purse full of money.”—“And why to thee?” rejoined Peter, who was not wiser than John. “I do not know why the cuckoo should foretell luck to thee alone. I am somewhat older and a better man than thou art, and I am sure her cry will bring me luck.” Instead of enjoying the beauties of the morning they began to argue, and then to use bad words. After some quarrelling they came to blows, and at length the two friends separated, both very much bruised and wroth with each other. On the following day they met at the doctor's, and whilst he dressed their wounds, they recounted to him how the quarrel arose (произошл'и), and asked him for whose benefit the cuckoo really had cried. The doctor laughed and said: “She cried for the benefit of neither of you, you simpletons, but for mine, because you have come to me to be treated, and will have to pay me for my treatment and medicine.”

## SIXTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Шестьдесятъ шестой Урокъ.

POSITION OF WORDS (*Continued*).

In an imperative clause the first place is occupied by the verb, followed by the complement and its adjuncts.

Читайте книгу, которую вы сегодня  
купили.

Read the book which you bought  
to-day.

OBS. 1.—The personal pronoun precedes the verb in the imperative only for the sake of pointing out contrast or opposition.

Вы оставайтесь здѣсь, а я пойду  
домой.

You remain here, and I will go  
home.

OBS. 2.—The personal pronoun or the subject follows the verb when the imperative is employed instead of the potential or subjunctive mood.

Сдѣлай это я, всё на меня нападутъ.

Were I to do this, everybody would  
attack me.

When the imperative is formed by means of the conjunctions *пусть* or *пускай*, ‘let,’ the subject may be placed between *пусть* and the verb.

Пусть люди говорятъ.

Let them speak.

Пусть онъ проситъ.

Let him ask.

OBS. 3.—But the conjunction *да* is never separated from the verb in the imperative.

Да будетъ свѣтъ

Let there be light !

The auxiliary **быть** and **стать**, usually placed before adjectives, participles or the infinitive, come after them when to the compound verb an adverb, conjunction or other adjunct is added.

Я бѹду готовѡ

Я стану рабѡтать.

Скѡро готовѡ бѹду.

Скѡро рабѡтать стану.

I shall be ready.

I shall begin to work.

I shall be ready soon.

I shall soon begin to work.

The conjunction **бы**, by means of which the potential mood is formed, is placed immediately after the word to which it refers, but the conjunctions **же**, **ли**, **так**, **и**, are generally inserted between **бы** and the word preceding it.

Онѡ же бы сдѡлалъ это

Онѡ то бы сдѡлалъ.

Емѹ такѡ бы послушаться.

Сдѡлалъ ли бы онѡ ?

Полѡзно ли бы было ?

He, however, would do it.

He would do it himself.

He ought to have obeyed nevertheless.

Would he do ?

Would it be useful ?

The following extract will serve to illustrate the foregoing rules.

Вѡ литератѹрѡ кѡждѡго нарѡда есть свой великіе люди.

Каждый народъ съ гордостью указываетъ на немногихъ избранниковъ въ общемъ кругу своихъ литературныхъ дѣятелей, и называетъ ихъ великими потому, что они стоятъ выше всего окружающаго ихъ, потому, что ихъ дѣятельность не укладывается въ тѣ узкія рамки, которыя служатъ естественною границею для дѣятельности ихъ современниковъ и собратіи.

There are great men in the literature of every nation.

Each with pride points to a chosen few in the whole circle of literary workers, and calls them great because they stand higher than all that surround them, for the reason that their activity is not cramped within those narrow frames which serve as a natural limit for the exertions of their contemporaries and colleagues.



Такіе люди обыкновенно увлекаютъ за собою толпу, и окружающій ихъ рой поклонниковъ, уже при жизни, создаётъ имъ то исключительное положеніе, вслѣдствіе котораго великій писатель не приурочивается къ современной ему эпохѣ, а—такъ сказать—эпоха приурочивается къ великому писателю. Его имя даётся наступающему за нимъ періоду и тому новому поколѣнію литераторовъ, которое развилось и выросло подъ непосредственнымъ вліяніемъ его произведеній и представляетъ собою его школу.

Such men usually draw the masses after them, and the swarm of admirers surrounding them already in their lifetime creates for them that exceptional position, in consequence of which a great writer does not conform himself to his epoch, but the epoch—so to say—conforms itself to the great writer. His name is given to the period coming after him and to the new generation of authors which has developed itself and grown under the immediate influence of his works and represents his school.

П. ПОЛЕВОЙ.

P. POLEVOY.

It came to pass,

{ Однажды.

{ Случилось такъ.

To interrupt,

{ Перебивать, р. а. перебить

{ Прерывать, р. а. прервать.

To revive, а. v.

Оживлять, р. а. оживить.

To take heart,

Ободряться, р. а. ободриться.

To extend, простира́ть.

To thrill, to tremble, трепета́ть.

To bound forth, выпрыгну́ть.

To proclaim, объявля́ть.

False, поддѣльный.

Wretch, несчастный.

Abruptly, отрывисто.

A den, яма, берлога.

Shudder, трепе́ть.

Supplication, мо́льба.

Concourse, стече́ніе.

Arena, циркъ, арена.

Fraud, подло́гъ.

A crier, глашата́й.

A token, знакъ.

An offender, обидчи́къ.

A roar, рыка́ніе.

Amphitheatre, амфитеатръ.

Gallienus, Галліе́нь.

Salonica, Сало́ника.

A praetorian guard, претори́анецъ.



## EXERCISE CXXXIII.

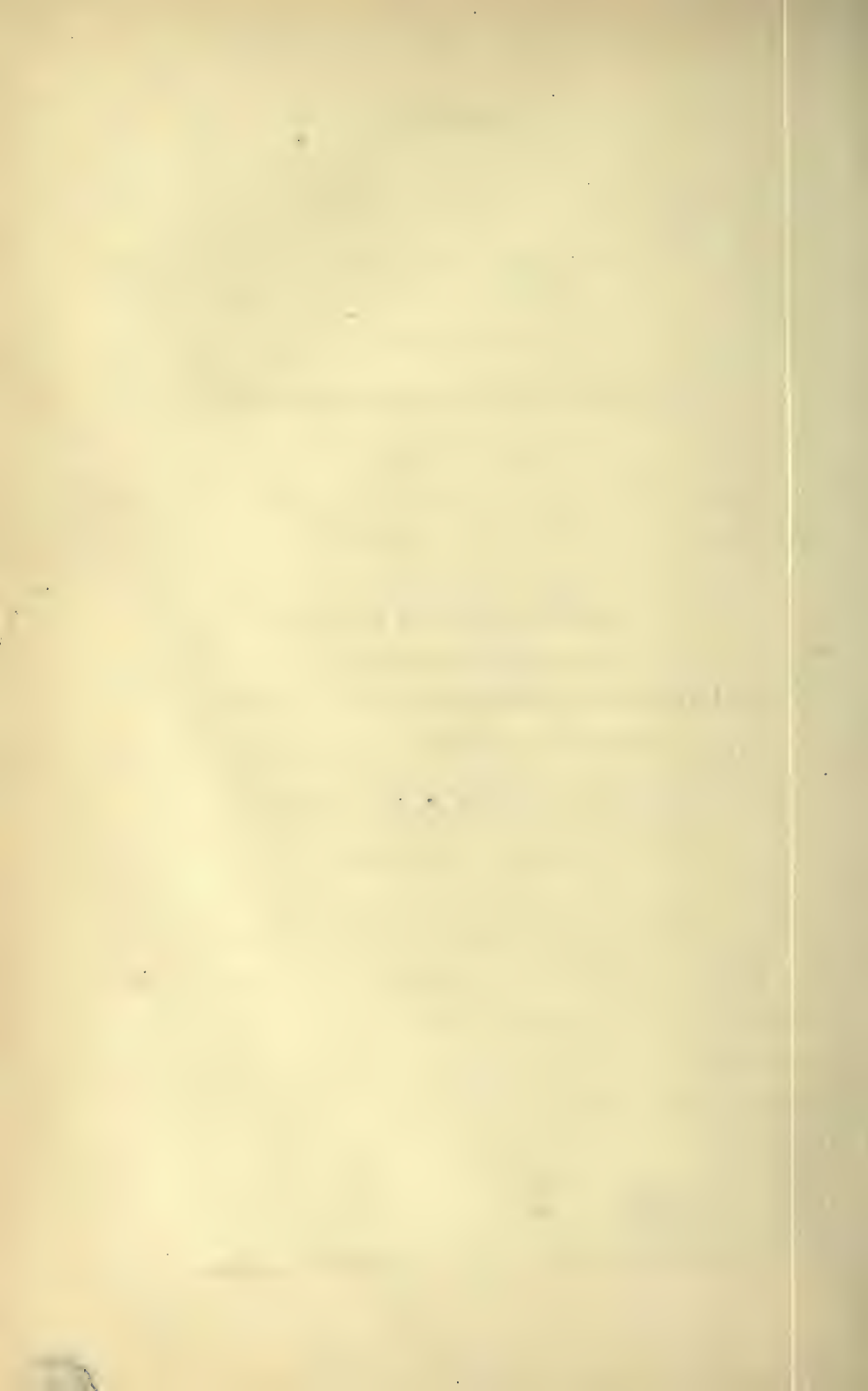
Gallienus, the Roman Emperor, had a beautiful wife, named Salonica, whom he tenderly loved. It came to pass that a diamond merchant sold her some false precious stones. Salonica discovered (замѣтить) the fraud, flew to her husband and demanded that he should punish the offender. "Certainly," replied Gallienus, "nothing is easier. A lion has been lately sent to me from Africa; I shall have him exhibited to-morrow in the arena; he will be very hungry, and—." "He will be very hungry!" interrupted Salonica with a shudder. "Enough! not a word more," rejoined the Emperor abruptly, and calling a prætorian guard he gave him an order in a low voice. On the following day there was a great concourse of sightseers in the amphitheatre at the appointed hour. The terrible roar of the lion was heard from the dens below. Among the crowd, thrilled with expectation of a favourite spectacle, it was said that the diamond merchant who had cheated Salonica was about to be thrown to the lion. The sound of a trumpet and the voice of the crier soon stopped the general talk (говоръ). The door of one of the dens was suddenly thrown open (отворить), and out of it was brought the trembling criminal pale as death and extending his arms in token of supplication towards Gallienus. The roaring of the lion grew louder and louder; the unhappy diamond merchant fell upon his knees, bowed (склонить) his head on his breast and covered his face with his hands. The fatal moment arrived. The door of another den flew open (партво-

рѣтъ), and lo ! from it bounded forth a—lamb. The laughter of the spectators somewhat revived the despairing wretch ; he opened his eyes, sighed (вздохнѣть) and took heart again. Then the crier proclaimed to the crowd that according to the orders of Gallienus the deceiver had been punished in his turn with deception. Salonica giving her hand to her husband thanked him for the lesson.

**END OF PRACTICAL PART.**

# APPENDIX:

CONTAINING A BRIEF RECAPITULATION OF  
RULES, WITH ALL THE PARADIGMS OF  
DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.





## APPENDIX.

---

### I. ETYMOLOGY.—Словопроизведе́нiе.

#### INTRODUCTION.

1. ALL the words of the Russian language are divided into eight parts of speech, (ча́сти рѣчи), viz :

- (1) The Substantive, и́мя существи́тельное.
- (2) The Adjective, и́мя прилагáтельное.
- (3) The Pronoun, мѣстоимѣ́нiе.
- (4) The Verb, глаго́ль.
- (5) The Adverb, нарѣ́чiе.
- (6) The Preposition, предло́гъ.
- (7) The Conjunction, сою́зъ.
- (8) The Interjection, междомѣ́тiе.

2. The first four parts of speech being subject to changes in their terminations are called *variable* (измѣ́няемыя), the four last are *invariable* (неизмѣ́няемыя), except the adverb, which has degrees of comparison.

3. Words are either *primitive* (первообра́зные), or *derivative* (произво́дные).

<i>Primitives.</i>	<i>Derivatives..</i>
Ли́къ, image, face ;	лицо́, face.
Зрѣ́тъ, to see ;	зрѣ́нiе, sight.

4. There are no articles in the Russian language.

## THE SUBSTANTIVE.

5. Substantives are either proper (имя собственное), common (имя нарицательное), or collective (имя собирательное), as: Никола́й, 'Nicholas'; челове́къ, 'man'; ста́до, 'flock.'

To all substantives belong gender, number and case.

## GENDER (ро́дъ).

6. There are three genders, masculine (му́жескій), feminine (же́нскій) and neuter (сре́дній).

The gender of animate beings is known by their sex, and that of inanimate objects by their terminations.

(1) Of the masculine are :

a. Names of males: оте́цъ, 'father'; дѣ́дя, 'uncle.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in ѣ, й, and some in ь: садъ, 'garden'; поко́й, 'room'; кора́бль, 'ship.'

(2) Of the feminine are:

a. Names of females: жена́, 'wife'; дочь, 'daughter.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in а, я and some in ь: вода́, 'water'; землѣ́, 'land'; вла́сть, 'power.'

(3) Of the neuter are:

a. Names of animate beings when no distinction of gender is shown: дитѣ́, 'child'; существо́, 'a being.'

b. Names of inanimate and abstract objects ending in о, е, я: сло́во, 'word'; мо́ре, 'sea'; и́мя, 'name.'

7. Some nouns denoting animate beings have a common

inflection for the masculine and feminine, and are therefore common as to gender; such are: сирота, 'orphan;' бродяга, 'vagabond.'

8. Some nouns denoting animate beings form the feminine gender from the masculine by changing the termination of the latter, as: гость, 'guest,' fem. гостя; левъ, 'lion,' fem. львица,

9. As to the gender of nouns ending in **ь**, the following rules are to be observed:

a. Common nouns denoting animate beings are masculine: царь, 'czar;' олень, 'stag.'

*Except*—Мать, 'mother;' дочь, 'daughter;' свекровь, 'mother-in-law;' and some names of animals ending in **вь**, **нь**, **пъ**, **лъ**, **дъ**, **тъ**, **съ**, **шъ**, which are feminine, as: лошадь, 'horse;' мышь, 'mouse,' etc.

b. Names of abstract objects ending in **ь** are feminine, as: жизнь, 'life;' власть, 'power.'

*Except*—день, 'day;' вопль, 'cry;' вихрь, 'whirlwind;' дождь, 'rain;' ливень, 'pouring rain;' перечень, 'extract;' and the following foreign words: спектакль, 'spectacle;' пароль, 'parole;' стиль, 'style;' контроль, 'control.'

c. Names of inanimate objects ending in **ь** are feminine, as: цѣпь, 'chain;' дверь, 'door;' except the following, which are masculine.

Алькоголь, alcohol.  
 → Алтарь, altar.  
 Бандероль, band.  
 → Бемоль, a flat.  
 Биль, billiard ball.  
 Бредень, drag-net.

Букварь, ABC-book.  
 Бюлетень, bulletin.  
 Бѣксель, bill of exchange.  
 Бѣнзель, monogram.  
 Волдырь, boil.

Гвоздь, nail.  
 Госпиталь, hospital.  
 → Гребень, comb.  
 Грифель, slate-pencil.  
 → Грудь, toadstool.  
 Дѣготъ, tar.

Дождь, rain.	Ноготь, finger-nail.	Стáвень, window-shut- ter.
Жёлудь, acorn.	Нуль, zero.	Стебѣль, stalk.
Пябѣрь, ginger.	Огонь, fire.	Стихárь, surplice.
Календárь, almanack.	Пáнцырь, coat of mail.	Сухáрь, biscuit.
Кáмень, stone.	Пень, stump.	Тóполь, poplar.
Картóфель, potatoes.	Перистýль, peristyle.	Трénзель, curb.
Кáшель, cough.	Перкáль, shirting-ca- lico.	Трúфель, truffle.
~ Килъ, keel.	~ Пѣрстень, ring.	~ Тýфель, slipper.
~ Конопѣль, hemp.	Пистóль, pistol.	Уголь, coal.
~ Кóготъ, claw.	Пламень, flame.	Уровень, level.
~ Кóзырь, trump.	Плáстырь, plaster.	Фити́ль, linstock.
Колóдезь, well.	Плétень, hedge.	~ Флúгель, wing (of a house).
~ Корáбль, ship.	Портфéль, portfolio.	Фонáрь, lantern.
Кóрень, root.	Пóршень, piston.	Хмѣль, hops.
~ Косáрь, mower.	Прóфиль, profile.	Хрустáль, crystal.
Костýль, crutch.	Пузырь, bladder.	Цíркунъ, pair of com- passes.
Кочéнь, heart of a cab- bage.	Пупýрь, pimple.	Шквóрень, pole-bolt.
Кремéнь, flint.	Пустýрь, vacant land.	Шпилъ, a capstan.
Кремль, Kremlin.	Путь, road.	Штémпель, stamp.
Крénдель, cracknel.	Рáшпиль, rasp.	Щáвель, sorrel.
Куль, sack.	Рéвень, rhubarb.	Щёбень, rubbish.
Лáгерь, camp.	Ремéнь, strap.	Ърь, the letter ъ.
Лáпоть, list-shoe.	Рубль, rouble.	Эль, the letter л.
Ларь, large chest.	Рубѣль, batlet.	~ Якорь, anchor.
Лóкотъ, elbow.	Руль, helm.	~ Янтáрь, amber.
Лóмотъ, slice.	Сбúтень, honey-tea.	~ Ясень, ash-tree.
Миндáль, almonds.	Серáль, seraglio.	~ Ячмéнь, barley.
Миткáль, calico.	Складéнь, necklace.	
Монастырь, convent.	Словáрь, dictionary.	
Нашатýрь, nitre.		

The above list comprises all the most useful words.

#### NUMBER.—Числó.

10. There are two numbers, singular (едíнственнóе) and plural (мнóжественнóе), each number having seven cases.



## CASE.—Падѣжъ.

11. There are seven cases, viz :

(1) The Nominative (именительный), giving the name of an object in answer to the question *who?* or *what?*

Кто это? who is it? — Ученикъ, the pupil.

(2) The Vocative (звательный), indicating the name of the object addressed :

Ученикъ! будь прилеженъ. Scholar! be diligent.

The vocative is the same as the nominative in all substantives, except a few used in addressing the Deity, as : Богъ, Господь, 'God, Lord;' vocat. Бóже, Гóсподи.

(3) The Genitive (родительный), indicating possession, and answering to the question *whose?* or *of what?*

Чья книга? whose book? — Ученика́, 'the pupil's.'

(4) The Dative (дательный), indicating the person or thing to which an object refers, and answering to the question *to whom?* or *to what?*

Кому́ сказа́лъ онъ?  
Ученику́,

To whom did he say?  
To the pupil.

(5) The Accusative or Objective (винительный), answering to the question *whom?* or *what?*

Кого́ онъ учи́тъ?  
Ученика́.

Whom he teaches?  
The pupil.

(6) The Instrumental (творительный), indicating the means or cause, and answering to the question *by whom?* or *by* or *with what?*

Кѣмъ онъ люби́мъ?  
Ученико́мъ,  
Чѣмъ это напи́сано?  
Перо́мъ,

By whom is he loved?  
By the pupil.  
With what is this written  
With a pen.

(7) The Prepositional (предложный), answering to the question *about whom or what? in whom or what? on whom or what?* etc.

It is termed prepositional inasmuch as it is always preceded by one of the following prepositions : о (объ), въ, на, по, при.

О комъ онъ говоритъ?  
Объ ученикѣ.

About whom is he speaking?  
About the pupil.

In nouns denoting animate beings the accusative of the masculine singular and plural of all genders is the same as the genitive, and in inanimate or abstract objects like the nominative.

#### DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

12. Nouns, with regard to their declension, are classed as regular (правильныя) and irregular (неправильныя).

The three declensions, according to gender, are given in the practical part.

13. Regular nouns in respect of their similarity of inflexions in the genit. dat. and instrum. cases are divided into two declensions, with fifteen different terminations in the nom., as shown in the annexed table.

(1) To the first declension belong all nouns of the first ten terminations, the genit. of which ends in а, я ; dat. у, ю ; and instrum. омъ, емъ.

(2) To the second declension belong all nouns of the other five terminations, the genit. of which ends in ы, и ; dat. ѣ, ы ; instr. ою, ею, бую.

## DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

SINGULAR.							PLURAL.					
Terminals	Nominative and Vocative.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Instr.	Prep.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Instr.	Prep.
		Like the Nominative or Gen.						Like the Nominative or the Genitive.				
1	ъ	а	у		омъ	ѣ	ы	овъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
2	й	я	ю		емъ	ѣ	и	евъ	ямъ		ями	яхъ
3	й after i	я	ю		емъ	и	и	евъ	ямъ		ями	яхъ
4	ъ after ж, ш, ч, щ	а	у		емъ	ѣ	и	ей	амъ		ами	ахъ
5	ь of masculine nouns	я	ю		емъ	ѣ	и	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
6	о	а	у		омъ	ѣ	а	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
7	е after ж, ч, ц, щ	а	у		емъ	ѣ	а	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
8	е after л, р	я	ю		емъ	ѣ	я	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
9	é (accented) after е, ё	я	ю		ёмъ	ѣ	я	й, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
10	е after i, ъe unaccented	я	ю		емъ	и	я	й, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
11	а	ы	ѣ	у	ою	ѣ	ы	ъ	амъ		ами	ахъ
12	я after consonants	и	ѣ	ю	еою	ѣ	и	ь	ямъ		ями	яхъ
13	я after а, е, ѣ, ы, о, у, ы́	и	ѣ	ю	еою	ѣ	и	й, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
14	я after i and ы́a unaccented	и	и, ѣ	ю	еою	и, ѣ	и	й, ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ
15	ь of feminine nouns	и	и	ь	ью	и	и	ей	ямъ		ями	яхъ

## DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N.	{ Слонъ, Elephant.	{ Садъ, Garden.	{ Конь, Horse.	{ Корабль, Ship.
G.	Слонá.	са́да.	коня́.	корабля́.
D.	Слону́.	са́ду.	коню́.	кораблю́.
A.	Слонá.	садъ.	коня́.	корабль.
I.	Слоно́мъ.	са́домъ.	конѣ́мъ.	кораблѣ́мъ.
P.	О сло́нѣ.	о са́дѣ.	о конѣ́.	о кораблѣ́.

*Plural.*

N.	Слоны́,	Сады́,	Кони́,	Корабли́,
G.	Слоно́въ.	садо́въ.	коней́.	кораблѣ́й.
D.	Слона́мъ.	сада́мъ.	коня́мъ.	корабля́мъ.
A.	Слоно́въ.	сады́.	коней́.	корабли́.
I.	Слова́ми.	сада́ми.	коня́ми.	корабля́ми.
P.	О слоно́хъ.	о сада́хъ.	о коня́хъ.	о корабля́хъ.

*Singular.*

N.	{ Геройъ, Hero.	{ Покѣй, Room.
G.	Героя́.	поке́я.
D.	Герою́.	поке́ю.
A.	Героя́.	поке́й.
I.	Герое́мъ.	поке́емъ.
P.	О геро́ѣ.	о поке́ѣ.

*Plural.*

{ Герои́,	{ Покѣи́,
{ Негое́я.	{ Rooms.
герое́въ.	поке́евъ.
героя́мъ.	поке́ямъ.
герое́въ.	поке́и.
героя́ми.	поке́ями.
о геро́яхъ.	о поке́яхъ.

## DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N.	{ Жена́, Wife.	{ Вода́, Water.	{ Няня́, Nurse.	{ Ба́ня, Bath.
G.	Жены́.	води́.	ня́ни.	ба́ни.
D.	Женѣ́.	водѣ́.	ня́нѣ́.	ба́нѣ́.
A.	Жену́.	воду́.	ня́ню.	ба́ню.
I.	Жено́ю.	водо́ю.	ня́нею.	ба́нею.
P.	О женѣ́.	о водѣ́.	о ня́нѣ́.	о ба́нѣ́.



*Plural.*

N. Жёны,	Воды,	Няни,	Ба́ни.
G. Жёнъ.	водъ.	нянь.	банъ.
D. Жёнамъ.	водамъ.	нянямъ.	банямъ.
A. Жёнъ.	воды.	нянь.	бани.
I. Жёнами.	водами.	нянями.	банями.
P. О жёнахъ.	о водахъ.	о няняхъ.	о баняхъ.

*Singular.*

N. { Свекрѡвъ,	{ Страсть,
{ Mother-in-law.	{ Passion.
G. Свекрѡви.	стра́сти.
D. Свекрѡви.	стра́сти.
A. Свекрѡвъ.	страсть.
I. Свекрѡвьѹ.	стра́стью.
P. О свекрѡви.	о стра́сти.

*Plural.*

{ Свекрѡви,	{ Стра́сти,
{ Mothers-in-law	{ Passions.
свекрѡвей.	страсте́й.
свекрѡвямъ.	страстѣ́ямъ.
свекрѡвей.	стра́сти.
свекрѡвѣми.	страстѣ́ми.
о свекрѡвахъ.	о страстѣ́хъ.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER NOUNS.

*Singular.*

N. { Сло́во,	{ Мо́ре,	{ Имя,
{ Word.	{ Sea.	{ Name.
G. Сло́ва.	мо́ря.	и́мени.
D. Сло́ву.	мо́рю.	и́мени.
A. Сло́во.	мо́ре.	и́мя.
I. Сло́вомъ.	мо́ремъ.	и́менемъ.
P. О сло́вѣ.	о мо́рѣ.	о́бъ и́мени.

*Plural.*

N. Сло́ва,	Мо́ря,	Именá,
G. Сло́въ.	морей.	имѣ́нь.
D. Сло́вамъ.	морѣ́ямъ.	именáмъ.
A. Сло́ва.	моря́.	именá.
I. Сло́вами.	моря́ми.	именáми.
P. О сло́вахъ.	о моря́хъ.	о́бъ именáхъ.

14. According to the above examples are declined all regular nouns, with the following changes, which are to be observed in consulting the preceding table of declension.

(1) After ж, ч, ш, щ, г, к, х the termination ы is changed into и : ножъ, 'knife;' plur. ножи; туча, 'cloud;' plur. тучи.

(2) After ж, ц, ч, ш, щ the term. о is changed into е : улица, 'street;' instr. улицею, instead of уликою.

(3) After ж, ч, ш, щ in the dat. instr. and prep. cases of the fifteenth termination the vowel я is changed into а : ночь, 'night;' dat. ночамъ, instr. ночами, prep. ночахъ.

(4) The vowel о or е is inserted in some terminations for the sake of euphony : свѣзка, 'bundle;' gen. plur. свѣзокъ; бревнѣ, 'beam;' gen. plur. бревень.

(5) Nouns of the 11th, 12th, 13th and 14th terminations may take in the instrum. sing. the contracted termination ой, ей, instead of ою, ею : забѣва, 'amusement;' недѣля, 'week;' instr. забѣвой, недѣлей.

15. Irregular nouns are of two kinds, firstly, those of mixed declension (разныхъ склоненій), and secondly, those of mixed inflexion (разныхъ окончаній).

Of mixed declension are :

(1) The ten neuter nouns in мя : бремя, 'burden;' время, 'time;' вымя, 'udder;' знамя, 'standard;' имя, 'name;' пламя, 'flame;' племя, 'tribe;' стремя, 'stirrup;' сѣмя, 'seed;' тѣмя, 'crown,' which take in all the cases the syllable ен, as shown in the example имя. According to their instr. sing. in емъ, they belong to the first declension, and according to their gen. and dat. in и to the second.

(2) The nouns дитя, 'child;' пламень, 'flame;' and путь, 'road.'

Nouns of mixed inflexion deviating in some cases either in the sing. or plur. are fully treated of in the Practical Part.

### DERIVATION.

16. Russian derivative nouns are formed from nouns, adjectives and verbs by adding the following suffixes :

#### *Derived from Nouns.*

Арѣ,	звона́ръ, bellringer ;	from	звонѣ, ringing.
Ярѣ,	стола́ръ, cabinetmaker ;	„	столѣ, table.
Никѣ,	мѣдникѣ, coppersmith ;	„	мѣдѣ, copper.
Чикѣ,	перевѣдчикѣ, translator ;	„	перевѣдѣ, translation.
Щикѣ,	тракти́рщикѣ, innkeeper ;	„	тракти́рѣ, inn.
Акѣ,	рыба́къ, fisherman ;	„	ры́ба, fish.
Якѣ,	моря́къ, seaman ;	„	море, sea.
Ачѣ,	труба́чѣ, trumpeter ;	„	труба́, trumpet.
Никѣ,	ча́йникѣ, teapot ;	„	чай, tea.
Пна,	бара́нина, mutton ;	„	бара́нѣ, ram.
Ня,	пивова́рня, brewery ;	„	пивова́ръ, brewer.
Ство,	раба́ство, slavery ;	„	раба́, slave.

#### *Derived from Adjectives.*

Ецѣ,	мудре́цѣ, wise man ;	from	му́дрый, wise.
Якѣ,	бѣднѣкъ, poor man ;	„	бѣдный, poor.
Пна,	тишина́, quietness ;	„	ти́хий, quiet.
Пна,	равни́на, plain ;	„	ра́вный, equal.
Остѣ,	но́вость, novelty ;	„	но́вый, new.
Естѣ,	свѣже́сть, freshness ;	„	свѣжѣй, fresh.
Ство,	бога́тство, riches ;	„	бога́тый, rich.

#### *Derived from Verbs.*

Арѣ,	пи́сарь, writer ;	from	писа́ть, to write.
Ецѣ,	купе́цѣ, merchant ;	„	купи́ть, to buy.
Тель,	владѣ́тель, possessor ;	„	владѣ́ть, to possess.
Лнѣ,	лгу́нѣ, liar ;	„	лгати́, to lie.
Бище,	владѣ́ище, cemetery ;	„	влади́, to put.
Лище,	учѣ́ище, school ;	„	учи́ть, to teach.
Ство,	бѣ́гство, flight ;	„	бѣга́ть, to run.

17. Besides the above there are also augmentative and diminutive terminations, which will be found fully explained in the Practical Part (Lessons 26 and 27).

18. Compound nouns are formed by coupling a noun, an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, adverb or preposition with a noun, the first word ending in e or o, unless it be an adverb or preposition, as :

Кораблекруше́ние, shipwreck ;	from	кора́бль, ship, круше́ние, breaking.
Доброжелáтель, well-wisher ;	„	дóбрый, good, желáтель, wisher.
Единоду́шие, unanimity ;	„	еди́нъ, one, ду́ша, soul.
Самоу́читель, self-instructor ;	„	самъ, self, учи́тель, teacher.
Злопо́лучіе, ill-luck ;	„	зло, evil, полу́чить, to receive.
Несча́стie, misfortune ;	„	не, not, сча́стie, fortune.
Бездѣ́йствie, inaction ;	„	безъ, without, дѣ́йствie, action.
Надгробі́е, epitaph ;	„	надъ, over, гробъ, tomb.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

19. Adjectives in Russian are divided into :

Qualifying (ка́чественныя), as, бѣ́лый, white.

Possessive (притяжа́тельныя), as, царевъ, of the king.

Relative (относи́тельныя), as, а́нглийскій, English.

Numeral (числи́тельныя), as, оди́нъ, one ; пе́р-  
вый, first.

Verbal (дѣ́йственныя), as, игра́ющій, playing ;  
игра́нь, played.

20. Adjectives are used either as epithets, as, до́брый че́ловѣкъ, 'the good man ;' or as attributes, че́ловѣкъ (есть) до́брь, 'the man is good.'

21. Qualifying adj. and pass. participles, when employed as attributes, undergo apocope and become indeclinable.



a. The full or declinable terminations of adjectives are :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Masc. ый, ій, ой.	ыс, іс.
Femin. ая, яя, ѣя. }	ыя, ія.
Neut. ое, ее, ѣе. }	

b. Apocopated terminations are :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Masc. ѣ, ѣ.	ы, и.
Femin. а, я.	ы, и.
Neut. о, е.	ы, и.

22. Possessive adjectives (Lesson 30), according to their terminations, are of two classes :

(1) Ending in овъ, евъ, инъ, цынъ, ѣ, as : Ив́ановъ домъ, 'John's house;' дѣ́динъ садъ, 'uncle's garden.'

(2) Ending in ій, овій, евій, as : барáній рогъ, 'ram's horn;' медвѣ́жій мѣхъ, 'bear-skin.'

23. Relative adjectives (Lesson 38) have the following terminations :

(1) Скій, ской, цкій, овскій, евскій, as : человѣ́чскій, 'human;' рѹ́сскій, 'Russian.'

(2) Овый, евый, овой, овный, евный, евой, енный, ный, лный, яной, янный, as : го́рный, 'mountainous;' дере́вня́ный, 'wooden.'

(3) Ній, жій, чій, preceded by a consonant or a semi-vowel, as : лѣ́тній день, 'summer day.'

24. Numeral adjectives are divided into cardinal (ко́личественныя) and ordinal (по́рядочныя).

(1) Cardinal numerals are : оди́нъ, 'one;' два, 'two;' три, 'three,' etc.; as also двѹ́е, трѹ́е, чѣ́тверо, etc., and полъ, 'half;' полто́ра, 'one and a half;' полтре́тья, 'two and a half,' etc.

(2) The ordinal numerals are : пѣрвый, 'first;' второй, 'second,' etc.

To these belong the adjectives другой, 'another,' and послѣдній, 'last.'

25. To adjectives belong gender, number and case. They are divided into two declensions :

a. Of the first declension are qualifying and possessive adjectives, and ordinal numerals.

b. Of the second are cardinal numerals.

#### A. FIRST DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem. &amp; Neut.</i>
N. нѣвый, new,	нѣвая,	нѣвое.	нѣвые, нѣвыя.
G. нѣваго,	нѣвой,	нѣваго.	нѣвыхъ.
D. нѣвому,	нѣвой,	нѣвому.	нѣвымъ.
A. нѣвый or нѣваго,	нѣвую,	нѣвое.	like the N. or Gen.
I. нѣвымъ,	нѣвою, ой,	нѣвымъ.	нѣвыми.
P. нѣвомъ,	нѣвой,	нѣвомъ.	нѣвыхъ.

According to the above are declined all qualifying adjectives in ый, ой, гій, кій, хій, relative in ый, ой, скій, and the ordinal numerals пѣрвый, 'first,' второй, 'second,' etc.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem. &amp; Neut.</i>
N. царѣвъ, king's,	царѣва,	царѣво.	царѣвы.
G. царѣва,	царѣвой,	царѣва.	царѣвыхъ.
D. царѣву,	царѣвой,	царѣву.	царѣвымъ.
A. царѣвъ or царѣва,	царѣву,	царѣво.	царѣвы or царѣвыхъ.
I. царѣвымъ,	царѣвою,	царѣвымъ.	царѣвыми.
P. царѣвомъ,	царѣвой,	царѣвомъ.	царѣвыхъ.

According to the above are declined all possessive adjectives of the first class in овъ, евъ, инъ, цынъ, fem. а, neut. о, and qualifying adjectives of apocopated termination, as: Петровъ, а, о, 'of Peter's;' новъ, а, о, 'new.'

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N. господень, Lord's	господня,	господне.	господни.
G. господня,	господней,	господня.	господнихъ.
D. господню,	господней,	господню,	господнимъ.
A. Like the N. or G.	господню,	господне.	Like the N. or G.
I. господнимъ,	господнею,	господнимъ,	господними.
P. господнемъ,	господней,	господнемъ,	господнихъ.

According to the above are declined all qualifying and possessive adjectives in ъ, жъ, чъ, and also the qualifying in шъ, щъ, as: синъ, 'blue;' похожъ, 'resembling;' горячъ, 'hot;' хорошъ, 'good;' свѣдущъ, 'skilled.'

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>F. &amp; N.</i>
N. сынѡвнїй, filial,	сынѡвняя,	сынѡвнее.	сынѡвнїе,	їя.
G. сынѡвняго,	сынѡвней,	сынѡвняго.	сынѡвнихъ.	
D. сынѡвнему,	сынѡвней,	сынѡвнему.	сынѡвнимъ.	
A. Like the N. or G.	сынѡвнюю,	сынѡвнее.	Like the N. or G.	
I. сынѡвнимъ,	сынѡвнею,	сынѡвнимъ,	сынѡвними.	
P. сынѡвнемъ,	сынѡвней,	сынѡвнемъ.	сынѡвнихъ.	

According to the above are declined qualifying and relative adjectives in їй (fem. яя, neut. ее), and also those in жїй, чїй, шїй, щїй, (fem. ая, neut. ее), сїнїй, 'blue;' похожїй, 'resembling;' горячїй, 'hot;' свѣдущїй, 'skilled;' старшїй, 'eldest.'

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N. трѣтій,	трѣтя,	трѣтье.	трѣтя.
G. трѣтяго,	трѣтей,	трѣтяго.	трѣтихъ.
D. трѣтѣму,	трѣтей,	трѣтѣму,	трѣтьимъ.
A. Like the N. or G.	трѣтью,	трѣтье.	Like the N. or G.
I. трѣтьимъ,	трѣтью,	трѣтьимъ.	трѣтьими.
P. трѣтьемъ,	трѣтей,	трѣтьемъ.	трѣтихъ.

According to the above are declined relative adjectives of the second class in *ій*, (fem. *ья* or *ія*, neut. *ье* or *ие*,) as: ба-  
рѣній, 'of the ram;' говѣжій, 'of beef.'

## B. SECOND DECLENSION.

26. Cardinal numerals are declined in two ways:

(1) The numerals одѣнъ, 'one;' два, 'two;' три, 'three;' четыре, 'four;' as also their derivatives двѣе, трѣе, четверо etc., like adjectives.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. одѣнъ,	одна,	одно.
G. одного,	одной,	одного.
D. одному,	одной,	одному.
A. Like the N. or G.	одну,	одно.
I. однимъ,	одною (ой),	однимъ.
P. однимъ,	одной,	одномъ.

<i>Plural.</i>		
N. одні,	однѣ,	одні.
G. однихъ,	однѣхъ,	однихъ.
D. однимъ,	однѣмъ,	однимъ.
A. Like the Nom. or Gen.	одні.	одні.
I. одними,	однѣми,	одними.
P. однихъ,	однѣхъ,	однихъ.



*Plural.*

<i>M. and N. Fem.</i>		<i>For all Genders.</i>	
N.	два, двѣ,	три,	четыре.
G.	двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ.
D.	двумъ,	трёмъ,	четырёхъ.
A.	Like the N. or G.		Like the Nom. or Gen.
I.	двумя,	тремя,	четырьмя.
P.	двухъ,	трѣхъ,	четырёхъ.

*For all Genders.*

N.	двое,	трое,	четыре.
G.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.
D.	двоимъ,	троимъ,	четырёхъ.
A.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.
I.	двоими,	троими,	четырьмя.
P.	двоихъ,	троихъ,	четырёхъ.

The other collective numerals, *пѣтеро*, 'five,' *шѣстеро*, 'six,' etc., are declined like *четыре*.

27. Numerals ending in *ь* : *пять*, 'five;' *шесть*, 'six;' up to *тридцать*, 'thirty,' are declined like nouns of the 15th termination (see Lesson 13, Obs. 10).

For the declension of *сорокъ*, 'forty;' *девяносто*, 'ninety;' *сто*, 'hundred;' *двѣсти*, 'two hundred,' and other compound numerals, see Lesson 44.

For the declension of *полторá*, 'one and a half;' *полплетъá*, 'two and a half;' and *полтора́ста*, 'hundred and fifty,' see Lesson 47.

28. *Ты́сяча*, 'thousand,' and *милліо́нъ*, 'million,' are declined like substantives.

29. Like substantives are declined also *пятьо́къ*, 'five;' *десято́къ*, 'ten;' *дю́жина*, 'dozen;' *со́тня*, 'hundred;' as also *дво́йка*, *тро́йка*, *четве́рка*, *пятье́рка*, *шесте́рка*, *семерка*, *восьме́рка*, *девятка*, and *деся́тка*, these latter being used in card playing, as : *трефо́вая дво́йка* or *дво́йка тре́фъ* 'the two of

clubs;’ червѣнная девѣтка or девѣтка, червѣй, ‘the nine of hearts.’

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.—Степени Сравненія.

30. There are three degrees of comparison :

(1) Positive (положительная степень), as :

Добрый, добръ, ‘kind.’

(2) Comparative (сравнительная степень), as :

Добрѣйшій, or добрѣе, ‘kinder.’

(3) Superlative (превосходная степень), as :

Самый добрый, or всѣхъ добрѣе, ‘kindest.’

For the formation of degrees of comparison, see Lessons 35 and 36.

Besides the degrees of comparison, adjectives have also augmentative and diminutive terminations (Lesson 37).

### DERIVATION.

31. Adjectives derived from substantives are the possessive and relative already enumerated.

32. Those derived from verbs are formed by changing the termination of the infinitive into ный (ной), лый, ивый, кій, жій, чій :

Учѣный, learned ;	from учѣть, to teach.
Выкупной, ransomed ;	„ выкупить, to ransom.
Рослый, stalwart ;	„ расти, to grow.
Игривый, playful ;	„ играть, to play.
Ломкій, fragile ;	„ ломить, to break.
Похожий, similar ;	„ походить, to resemble.
Пѣвчій, singing ;	„ пѣть, to sing.

33. Compound adjectives are formed by coupling an adjective, a substantive or a particle with an adjective, the first word taking usually an o or e, with the exception of particles :

Остроумный, witty ;	from	острый, sharp, умный, intelligent.
Тёмносерый, dark-gray ;	„	тёмный, dark, серый, grey.
Гостеприимный, hospitable ;	„	гость, guest, приёмный, receiving.
Очевидный, evident ;	„	очи, eyes, видный, visible.
Международный, international ;	„	между, between, народный, national.
Безподобный, incomparable ;	„	безъ, without, подобный, like.

## THE PRONOUN.—Мѣстоимѣніе.

34. Pronouns are divided into :

- (1) Personal (личныя).
- (2) Interrogative (вопросительныя).
- (3) Demonstrative (указательныя).
- (4) Relative (относительныя).
- (5) Determinative (опредѣлительныя).

35. The *personal* pronouns are : я, 'I ;' ты, 'thou ;' онъ, 'he' (fem. она́ ; neut. оно́) ; plur. мы, 'we ;' вы, 'you ;' они́ (fem. онѣ), 'they.'

Besides the above three personal pronouns, there is the reflective personal себя, 'self,' which serves for all persons, genders and numbers.

36. Interrogative pronouns have their corresponding demonstratives as follows :

### OF THE OBJECT.

#### *Interrogative.*

Кто ? who ?      Что ? what ?

#### *Demonstrative.*

Тотъ, to, 'that ;' нѣкто, 'somebody ;' нѣчто, 'something ;' никто́, 'nobody ;' ничто́, 'nothing ;' всякъ, 'every ;' кажды́й, 'each ;' всё, 'all ;' прочій, 'other.'

### OF QUALITY.

Какой, каковъ ?      What sort of ?

Такой, таковъ, 'such, such a one ;' другой, 'other ;' всякій, 'every

(sort) 'нѣкоторый, нѣкій, 'certain ;' никакой, 'not any ;' одинакій, 'same ;' разный, 'diverse ;' никакъ, 'different.'

### OF QUANTITY.

Коликій ? which ?      Ско́лько ? how much ?

То́ликій, 'such a one.'

Сто́лько, 'so many, so much ;' мно́го, 'much ;' ма́ло, 'few ;' нѣско́лько, 'some ;' ниско́лько, 'not any.'

### OF PLACE OR ORDER.

Кото́рый ? which ?

Сей, э́тотъ, о́ный, 'this ;' кото́рый нибу́дь, 'any one ;' никото́рый, 'not any.'

### OF POSSESSION.

Чей ? whose ?

Мой, 'my, mine ;' твой, 'thy, thine ;' егó, 'his ;' нашъ, 'our ;' вашъ, 'your ;' ихъ, 'their ;' and the reflexive свой used for all three persons.

These last are termed possessive pronouns (притяжательныя мѣстоимѣнія).

Indefinite pronouns answering the question чей ? 'whose ?' are :

Чей-то, 'somebody's ;' чей нибу́дь, 'anybody's ;' and the negative ничей, 'nobody's.'

37. The interrogative pronouns кто, что, кото́рый, како́й, чей also serve as relatives when they refer to an antecedent. To the relative pronouns belong also кой, каково́й, 'who,' or 'he who,' which have not the signification of the interrogative.

38. The determinative pronouns are :

a. Those expressive of size and quantity : весь, 'all ;' оба, 'both.'

To these are added the numerals о́динъ, дво́е, трóе, etc., when used as pronouns.



6. Those expressive of identity : самъ, самый, 'self.'

Determinative pronouns are employed with personal and demonstrative pronouns, as also with substantives, as :

Мы все, 'all of us ;' мы оба, 'both of us ;' вы трое, 'three of you ;' я одинъ, 'I am by myself ;' весь народъ, 'all people ;' оба стороны, 'both sides ;' онъ самъ, 'he himself ;' самый домъ, 'the house itself.'

The pronoun самый before qualifying adjectives serves to strengthen their signification and to express the superlative degree, as : самый добрый, 'the kindest.'

39. Pronouns vary their terminations, like adjectives, according to gender, number and case.

#### DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

40. The first two personal pronouns and the reflective personal have no genders, and are declined like substantives in the feminine, as :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	я, I,	ты, thou,	N. мы, we, вы, you.
G.	меня,	тебя.	G. насъ, васъ.
D.	мнѣ,	тебѣ.	D. намъ, вамъ.
A.	меня,	тебя.	A. насъ, васъ.
I.	мною (ой),	тобою (ой).	I. нами, вами.
P.	мнѣ,	тебѣ.	P. насъ, васъ.

41. The pronoun себя has no nominative nor plural, and is declined like the second personal pronoun, viz., gen. and acc. себя, dat. and prep. себѣ, instr. собою (ой).

42. The third personal pronoun онъ and all others are declined like adjectives, as :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>M. and N. Fem.</i>
N. онъ, he,	оно́, it,	она́.	N. онѣ́, онѣ́.
G. егѡ́,		еѣ́ (еѣ́),	G. ихѣ́.
D. емѹ́,		ей́,	D. имѣ́.
A. егѡ́,		еѣ́.	A. ихѣ́.
I. имѣ́,		еѣ́ю.	I. имѣ́.
P. (н)ѣмѣ́,		(н)ей́.	P. (н)ихѣ́.

This pronoun takes an *н* prefixed in all oblique cases when preceded by a preposition, as: *для него́, для ней́*, 'for him, for her;'; *о нёмъ, о ней*, 'about him, about her.'

43. The genitive of the third pers. pron. singular and plural is also used as possessive, without however taking the prefix *н*, as: *для егѡ́ брата́*, 'for his brother;'; *о егѡ́ братѣ́*, 'about his brother.'

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N. нашъ, на́ше,	на́ша.	на́ши.
G. на́шего,	на́шей.	на́шихъ.
D. на́шему,	на́шей.	на́шимъ.
A. Like the N. or G.	на́шу.	Like the N. or G.
I. на́шимъ,	на́шею (еѣ́).	на́шими.
P. на́шемъ,	на́шей.	на́шихъ.

According to the above is declined *вашъ*, 'your, yours.'

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Femin.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N. свой, своё́,	своѣ́.	своѣ́.
G. своегѡ́,	своей́.	своѣ́хъ.
D. своему́,	своей́.	своѣ́мъ.
A. Like the N. or G.	своѣ́ю.	Like the N. or G.
I. своѣ́мъ,	своѣ́ю (еѣ́).	своѣ́ми.
P. своѣ́мъ,	своей́.	своѣ́хъ.

According to the above are declined *мой, твой* and *кой*, the last not being used in the nom. and acc. sing.

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc. and Neut. Fem.</i>			<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>			<i>Fem.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
N.	тотъ,	то,	та,	весь,	всѣ,	вся.	тѣ́,	всѣ́.
G.	того́,	той,		всего́,		всей.	тѣ́хъ.	всѣ́хъ.
D.	тому́,	той,		всему́,		всей.	тѣ́мъ,	всѣ́мъ.
A.	Like the N. or G. ты,		Like the N. or G.			всю.	Like the N. or G.	
I.	тѣ́мъ,	тою (й),		всѣ́мъ,		всѣ́ю(ей)	тѣ́ми,	всѣ́ми.
P.	томъ,	той,		всѣ́мъ,		всей.	тѣ́хъ.	всѣ́хъ.

The pronouns *кто* and *что* have neither gender nor plural.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>
N.	кто, что	это́тъ, это́,	э́та	э́ти
G.	кого́, чего́	э́того,	э́той	э́тихъ
D.	кому́, чему́	э́тому,	э́той	э́тимъ
A.	кого́, что	Like N. or G.	э́му	Like N. or G.
I.	кѣ́мъ, чѣ́мъ	э́тимъ, э́тою (-ой)		э́тими
P.	комъ, чѣ́мъ	э́томъ, э́той		э́тихъ

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem. &amp; Neut.</i>	
N.	како́й, како́е,	кака́я.	какі́е, какі́я.	
G.	како́го,	како́й.	какі́хъ.	
D.	како́му,	како́й.	какі́мъ.	
A.	Like the N. or G.		како́ю.	Like the N. or G.
I.	какі́мъ,	како́ю (ой).	какі́ми.	
P.	како́мъ,	како́й.	какі́хъ.	

According to the above are declined *такóй*, *нѣ́какій*, *э́та-кой*, and the three following, used only in the plural—*ско́ль-кіе*, *сто́лькіе*, and *нѣ́сколькіе*.

44. The pronouns *ко́торый*, *всѣ́кій*, *дру́гой*, *и́ной*, *ка́ждый*, *како́вый*, *ко́лікій*, *о́ный*, *са́мый*, *тако́вой*, *то́лікій* are declined like the adjective *по́вый*.

## THE VERB.—Глаголь.

47. Verbs are divided into six voices (залогъ), viz.:

(1) The *active* (дѣйствительный), denoting the action of an agent upon an object, as, кидать, 'to throw.'

(2) The *passive* (страдательный), formed from the active, and denoting the condition or state of the object on which the action is exerted, as, быть кидаему, 'to be thrown.'

(3) The *reflective* or *pronominal* (возвратный), formed from the active by adding the contracted pronoun *ся*, and denoting an action falling upon the agent, as, одѣваться, 'to clothe one's self.' The reflective is often used in the sense of the passive, especially when speaking of inanimate objects, as, книга читается, 'the book is read.'

(4) The common (общій) ending also in *ся*, without which the verb by itself cannot be used, and denoting an internal feeling influencing the agent, as, бояться, 'to fear;' смѣяться, 'to laugh.'

(5) The *reciprocal* (взаимный), ending also in *ся*, and denoting an action falling mutually upon two or more agents, and answering the question *with whom*, as, сражаться, 'to fight.'

(6) The neuter (средній), which has a threefold signification, and therefore a threefold form, viz.,

*a.* Denoting an action not passing over to an object, as, сидѣть, 'to sit;' стоять, 'to stand.' In this sense it has the form of the active.

Of this class are verbs denoting the gradual acquirement of a quality, as, бѣлѣть, 'to grow white;' сохнуть, 'to dry.'



*b.* Denoting a state or quality independent of an action, as, *быть веселы*, 'to be merry.' In this it has the form of the passive.

*c.* Denoting a capability of action or possession of a quality, as, *крапива жжётся*, 'the nettle stings.' In this sense it has the form of the reflective.

48. Verbs undergo certain changes of structure and inflexions, to indicate :

1. The aspects.
2. The moods.
3. The tenses.
4. Gender, person and number.

49. There are three principal aspects :

(1) The imperfect aspect (*несовершенный видъ*).

Verbs of this aspect are subdivided into definite (*опредѣлённые*) and indefinite (*неопредѣлённые*). Lesson 52.

(2) The perfect aspect (*совершенный видъ*) is subdivided into :

- a.* Perfect inchoative (*начинательный*).
- b.* Perfect of duration (*длительный*).
- c.* Perfect of unity (*однократный*).

(3) The iterative (*многократный*).

For explanation of aspects, see Lesson 51.

For formation of aspects, see Lessons 53, 54, and 55.

50. The moods (*наклонѣнія*) are three, viz :

1. The infinitive (*неопредѣлённое*).
2. The indicative (*изъявительное*).
3. The imperative (*повелительное*).

The subjective (сослагательное) is formed in Russian by adding the particle бы to the past tense.

The first two moods are found in all the three aspects, but the imperative is found in the imperfect and perfect aspects only.

51. There are three tenses (временá), viz :

1. The present (настоящее).
2. The past (прошедшее).
3. The future (будущее).

52. The tenses are only found in the indicative, and vary in number according to the voice and aspect.

(1) The active, reflective, common, reciprocal and neuter voices take all the three tenses in the imperfect aspect.

(2) The perfect aspect takes only the past and future.

(3) The iterative takes only the past.

(4) The passive voice having a double conjugation, takes double tenses, as shown in subsequent examples.

53. The persons (лица) of the present and future tenses are distinguished by inflexions, and therefore may be used without their pronouns ; but those of the past, which take only the terminations of gender, require the personal pronouns.

54. Verbs are either simple (простые) or compound (сложные).

(1) The simple are those consisting of one word only, as :

дѣлать, 'to do ;' любить, 'to love.'

(2) Compound verbs are formed by adding an auxiliary verb to the infinitive or to the participle passive, as :

Я сталъ страдать, 'I begun to suffer ;' онъ былъ убитъ, 'he was killed.'

To these terminations the suffix *ся* is added for the reflective, reciprocal and common voices.

The auxiliaries, which are all of the neuter voice, are : *быть*, *быва́ть*, ‘to be,’ and *ста́ть*, ‘to become.’

55. Participles in Russian, both active and passive, are adjectives formed from verbs, and have gender, number, and the present and past tenses.

(1) Active participles end :

*a. in the present*, *щи́й*, *щая*, *щее*, plur. *щие*, *щя*.

*b. in the past*, *ши́й*, *шая*, *шее*, plur. *шие*, *شيا*.

These participles take the suffix *ся* in reflective verbs, as, *оде́вающ́ийся*, ‘dressing himself.’

(2) Passive participles end :

*a. in the present*, { Full, *мый*, *мая*, *мое*, plur. *мые*, *мья*.  
                                  { Аросор., *мъ*, *ма*, *мо*, plur. *мы*.

*b. in the past*, { Full, { *нный*, *нная*, *нное*, plur. *нные*, *нныя*.  
                                  { *тый*, *тая*, *тое*, plur. *тые*, *тыя*.  
                                  { Аросор., { *нъ*, *на*, *но*, plur. *ны*.  
  { *тъ*, *та*, *то*, plur. *ты*.

These participles do not take the suffix *ся*.

56. Apocopated passive participles, with the auxiliaries *быть*, *быва́ть*, form the moods and tenses of the passive voice.

57. Besides the participles, there are also gerunds (*дѣе-прича́тіе*) or verbal adverbs (*нарѣ́чія отлагóльныя*) formed from verbs. They are both active and passive.

(1) The active gerund has neither number nor gender, but has inflexions for the present and past tenses, as :

*Present*, *я*, *ая*, *учи* : *люб́и*, ‘in loving ;’ *чита́я*, ‘while reading.’

*Past*, *въ*, *ши* : *люб́ивъ*, ‘after having loved ;’ *чита́вши*, ‘after having read.

(2) The passive gerund is formed by adding *бѹдучи, бывъ (бывши)*; the present and past gerunds of the auxiliary *быть*, to the apocopated participle, and has both gender and number, as: *бѹдучи* or *бывъ по́сланъ*, fem. *по́слана*, neut. *по́слано*; pl. *по́сланы*, 'being or having been sent.'

58. Verbs are either personal or impersonal.

(1) Personal are those which have all the persons and genders.

(2) Impersonal are those used in the third person only without a pronoun or agent expressed, and take in the past tense the neuter gender only. Lesson 49.

59. According to their conjugation, verbs are either regular (*пράвильные*) or irregular (*непράвильные*).

(1) All regular verbs are divided into two conjugations, according to the inflexions of the indicative present.

*a.* Of the first are those whose second person sing. ends in *ешь*, and the third person plur. in *ють* or *уть*, as: *чита́ешь*, 'thou readest;' *чита́ють*, 'they read.'

*b.* Of the second are those whose second person sing. ends in *ишь*, and the third person plur. in *ятъ* or *атъ*, as: *говори́шь*, 'thou speakest;' *говори́тъ*, 'they speak.'

(2) Regular verbs are also divided into ten classes in respect of the termination of the infinitive and first person of the indicative present, of which the first eight belong to the first, and the last two to the second conjugation. Lessons 32 to 35.



## 60. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

### I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

БЫТЬ, 'to be.' | БЫВАТЬ, 'to be usually.' | СТАТЬ, 'to become.'

### II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### a. Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	Есмь, I am. Еси, etc. Есть	бываю, I am usually. бываешь, etc. бываётъ	<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Есмы Есте Суть	бываемъ бываете бывають	

#### b. Past.

<i>Sing.</i>	Я. былъ, а, о, I was. Ты былъ, а, о, etc. Онъ былъ, она была, онó было	я бывалъ, а, о ты бывалъ, а, о онъ бывалъ, она бывала, онó бывало	я сталъ, а, о ты сталъ, а, о онъ сталъ, она стала, онó сталó
<i>Plur.</i>	Мы были Вы были Они, онѣ были	мы бывали вы бывали они, онѣ бывали	мы стали вы стали они стали.

#### c. Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	Буду, I shall or will be. Будешь, etc. Будеть	<i>Wanting.</i>	стану станешь станетъ
<i>Plur.</i>	Будемъ Будете Будутъ		станемъ станете станутъ.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Я былъ бы, была бы, было бы, Ты былъ бы, была бы, было бы Онъ былъ бы, она была бы, оно было бы	я бывалъ бы, ла бы, ло бы, ты бывалъ бы, ла бы. ло бы онъ бывалъ бы, она бывала бы, оно бывало бы	я сталъ бы, стала бы, стало бы, ты сталъ бы, ла бы, ло бы онъ сталъ бы, она стала бы, оно стало бы
<i>Plur.</i> Мы были бы Вы были бы Они, онѣ были бы.	мы бывали бы вы бывали бы они, онѣ бывали бы.	мы стали бы вы стали бы они, онѣ стали бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE.

2nd pers. будь, pl. бѣдьте, be.	бывай, pl. бывайте	стань, pl. станьте
3rd pers. пусть бѣдетъ, plur. пусть бѣдутъ, let him, them be.	пусть бѣдаетъ, pl. пусть бѣдаютъ.	пусть станетъ, pl. пусть станутъ.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

## a. Present.

<i>Sing.</i> Сѣщій, щая, щее, which is,	бывающій, щая, щее	
<i>Plur.</i> Сѣщие, щія (Future, бѣдущій, щая, щее).	бывающие, щія.	<i>Wanting.</i>

## b. Past.

<i>Sing.</i> Бѣвшій, щая, щее, which was.	бывавшій, щая, щее,	ставшій, щая, щее,
<i>Plur.</i> Бѣвшие, щія.	бывавшие, щія.	ставшие, щія.

## VI. GERUND.

## a. Present.

Бѣдучи, while being.	бывая or бываючи.	<i>Wanting.</i>
----------------------	-------------------	-----------------

## b. Past.

Бывъ or бѣвши, having been.	бывавъ or бывавши.	ставъ or ставши.
-----------------------------	--------------------	------------------

## 61. CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Imperfect Asp. First Conj.      Perfect Asp. Second Conj.*

Рѣш́ать, 'to decide.'      Рѣш́ить, 'to decide thoroughly.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

## a. Present.

*Sing.* Рѣш́аю, I decide.

Рѣш́аешь

Рѣш́аетъ

*Plur.* Рѣш́аемъ

Рѣш́аете

Рѣш́ають.

*Wanting.*

## b. Past.

*Sing.* Я рѣш́алъ, ла, ло, I was de-  
ciding

Ты рѣш́алъ, ла, ло, etc.

Онъ рѣш́алъ, она рѣш́ала, онѣ  
рѣш́ало*Plur.* Мы рѣш́али

Вы рѣш́али

Онѣ, онѣ рѣш́али.

я рѣш́илъ, ла, ло, I have decided

ты рѣш́илъ, ла, ло, etc.

онъ рѣш́илъ, она рѣш́ила, онѣ рѣ-  
ш́ило

мы рѣш́или

вы рѣш́или

онѣ, онѣ рѣш́или.

## c. Future.

*Sing.* Бѹду } рѣш́ать, { I shall  
Бѹдешь } or will  
Бѹдетъ } decide,*Plur.* Бѹдемъ } рѣш́ать.  
Бѹдете }  
Бѹдутъ }рѣш́у, I will decide  
рѣш́ишь, etc.

рѣш́ишь

рѣш́имъ

рѣш́ите

рѣш́атъ.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> Я рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы, I should or would decide	я рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы, I should have decided
Ты рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы	ты рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, ла бы, ло бы
Онъ рѣш <sup>а</sup> лъ бы, она рѣш <sup>а</sup> ла бы, онъ рѣш <sup>а</sup> ло бы	онъ рѣш <sup>и</sup> лъ бы, она рѣш <sup>и</sup> ла бы, онъ рѣш <sup>и</sup> ло бы
<i>Plur.</i> Мы рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы	мы рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы
Вы рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы	вы рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы
Онѣ, онѣ рѣш <sup>а</sup> ли бы.	онѣ, онѣ рѣш <sup>и</sup> ли бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> й, <i>plur.</i> рѣш <sup>а</sup> йте, decide	рѣш <sup>и</sup> , <i>pl.</i> рѣш <sup>и</sup> те
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть рѣш <sup>а</sup> етъ, let him decide, <i>pl.</i> пусть рѣ- ш <sup>а</sup> ютъ.	пусть рѣш <sup>и</sup> тъ, <i>pl.</i> пусть рѣш <sup>а</sup> тъ.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющ <sup>и</sup> й, щая, щее, he who decides	<i>Wanting.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющ <sup>и</sup> е, рѣш <sup>а</sup> ющ <sup>и</sup> я.	

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> й, шая, шее, he who decided	рѣш <sup>и</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> й, шая, шее, he who has decided
<i>Plur.</i> Рѣш <sup>а</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> е, шя.	рѣш <sup>и</sup> вш <sup>и</sup> е, шя.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

*Sing.* Рѣш<sup>а</sup>емъ, ма, мо, which is decided ; *plur.* рѣш<sup>а</sup>емы.

*b. Past.*

*Sing.* Рѣш<sup>е</sup>нъ, н<sup>а</sup>, н<sup>о</sup>, which was decided ; *plur.* рѣш<sup>е</sup>ны.

## VII. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

Рѣш <sup>а</sup> я, in deciding		<i>Wanting.</i>
---------------------------------	--	-----------------

*b. Past.*

Рѣш <sup>а</sup> въ, вши, having decided.		рѣш <sup>и</sup> въ, вши, having decided.
---	--	---



## 62. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS OF ACTIVE FORM.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Second Conjugation.*

*Imperfect Aspect.*

Звенѣть, 'to ring.'

*Perfect Inchoative Aspect.*

Зазвенѣть, 'to begin to ring.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

a. Present.

*Sing.* Звеню́, I am ringing, etc.

Звенѣшь

## Звеніть

*Plur.* Звенѣмъ

## Звеніте

Звеня́тъ.

*Wanting.*

b. *Past.*

*Sing.* Я звенѣлъ, ла, ло, I was ringing, etc.

Ты звенѣлъ, ла, ло.

Онъ звенѣлъ, она звенѣла,  
онó звенѣло.

*Plur.* Мы, вы, онѣ звенѣли.

я зазвенѣлъ, ла, ло, I began to ring.

ТЫ зазвенѣлъ, ла, ло.

онъ зазвенѣлъ, она зазвенѣла, оно  
зазвенѣло.

МЫ, ВЫ, ОНІ зазвенѣли.

### c. *Future.*

*Sing.* БУДУ } звенѣть { I shall  
БУДЕШЬ } or  
БУДЕТЬ } will ring,  
etc.

БҮДҮ

Будеш

*Plur.* Бѹдемъ }  
Бѹдете } звенѣтъ.  
Бѹдутъ }

Будемт

Будете

завеню, I shall begin to ring, etc.

зазвенѣшь

зазвѣпѣть

завенѣмъ

зазвенѣте

зазвенѣть

### III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* Я звенѣлъ бы, I should ring.

*Plur.* Мы звенѣли бы, etc.

я зазвенѣлъ бы, etc.

мы зазвенѣли бы, etc.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2nd pers. Звенѣй, plur. звенѣйте.	зазвенѣй, plur. зазвенѣйте.
3rd pers. Пусть звенѣтъ, plur. пусть звенѣтъ.	пусть зазвенѣтъ, plur. пусть зазвенѣтъ.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

## a. Present.

Sing. Звенѣщій, щая, щее.	Wanting.
Plur. Звенѣщіе, щія.	

## b. Past.

Sing. Звенѣвшій, вшая, вшее.	зазвенѣвшій, вшая, вшее.
Plur. Звенѣвшіе, вшія.	зазвенѣвшіе, вшія.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

## Wanting.

## VII. GERUND.

## a. Present.

Звенѣ.	Wanting.
--------	----------

## b. Past.

Звенѣвъ or звенѣвши.	Зазвенѣвъ or зазвенѣвши.
----------------------	--------------------------

## 63. CONJUGATION OF VERBS OF ITERATIVE ASPECT AND OF PERFECT OF UNITY.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Iterative Aspect.</i>	<i>Asp. Perfect of Unity.</i>
БѢДЫЕТЬ, 'to throw repeatedly.'	БѢНУТЬ, 'to throw once.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

## a. Present.

Wanting.	Wanting.
----------	----------

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Я кидывалъ, ла, ло.	Я кинулъ, ла, ло.
Ты кидывалъ, ла, ло	Ты кинулъ, ла, ло
Онъ кидывалъ, она кидывала,	Онъ кинулъ, она кинула, онб кину
онб кидывало	ло
<i>Plur.</i> Мы, вы, онѣ кидывали.	Мы, вы, онѣ кинули.

*c. Future.*

<i>Wanting.</i>	<i>Sing.</i> кину
	кнешь
	кнетъ
	<i>Plur.</i> кнемъ
	кнете
	кнутъ.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> Я кидывалъ бы, etc.	Я кинулъ бы, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Мы кидывали бы, etc.	Мы кинули бы, etc.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Wanting.</i>	<i>2nd pers.</i> кинь, plur. киньте.
	<i>3rd pers.</i> пусть кинетъ, plur.
	пусть кнутъ.

## V ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Wanting.</i>		<i>Wanting.</i>
-----------------	--	-----------------

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидывавшій, шая, шее.	Кинувшій, шая, шее.
<i>Plur.</i> Кидывавшіе, шія.	Кинувшіе, шія.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Wanting.</i>		<i>Wanting.</i>
-----------------	--	-----------------

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидыванъ, на, по.	Кинуть, та, то.
Кидываны.	Кинуты.

## VII. GERUND.

a. Present.

Wanting.

|

Wanting.

b. Past.

Кидывавъ or кидывавши.

|

кинувъ or кинувши.

## 64. CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

## I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*

Кидаться, 'to throw one's self.'    Веселиться, 'to enjoy one's self.'

## II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

a. Present.

*Sing.* Кидáюсь  
Кидáешься  
Кидáется  
*Plur.* Кидáемся  
Кидáетесь  
Кидáются.

веселю́сь  
весели́шься  
весели́тся  
весели́мся  
весели́тесь  
веселя́тся.

b. Past.

*Sing.* Я кидáлся, лась, лось  
Ты кидáлся, лась, лось  
Онъ кидáлся, она́ кидáлась,  
        онó кидáлось  
*Plur.* Мы кидáлись  
Вы кидáлись  
Онѣ, онѣ́ кидáлись.

я весели́лся, лась, лось  
ты весели́лся, лась, лось  
онъ весели́лся, она́ весели́лась, онó  
        весели́лось  
мы весели́лись  
вы весели́лись  
онѣ, онѣ́ весели́лись.

c. Future.

*Sing.* Бúду } кидáться.  
Бúдешь }  
Бúдетъ }  
*Plur.* Бúдемъ } кидáться.  
Бúдете }  
Бúдутъ }

бúду } весели́ться.  
бúдешь }  
бúдетъ }  
бúдемъ } весели́ться.  
бúдете }  
бúдутъ }



## III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> Я кидáлся бы, лась бы, лось бы	я веселíлся бы, лась бы, лось бы
Ты кидáлся бы, лась бы, лось бы	ты веселíлся бы, лась бы, лось бы
Онъ кидáлся бы, она́ кидáлась бы, онó кидáлось бы	онъ веселíлся бы, она́ веселíлась бы, онó веселíлось бы
<i>Plur.</i> Мы кидáлись бы, вы кидáлись бы, онí онѣ́ кидáлись бы.	мы веселíлись бы, вы веселíлись бы, онí, онѣ́ веселíлись бы.

## IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Кидáйся, plur. кидáйтесь.	веселíсь, plur. веселíтесь.
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть кидáется, plur. пусть кидáются.	пусть веселíтся, plur. пусть веселíтся.

## V. ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидáющійся, щаяся, шееса.	веселíющійся, щаяся, шееса.
<i>Plur.</i> Кидáющіеся, щіеся.	веселíющіеся, щіеся.

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Кидáвшійся, вшаяся, вшееса.	веселíвшійся, вшаяся, вшееса.
<i>Plur.</i> Кидáвшіеся, вшіеся.	веселíвшіеся, вшіеся.

## VI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

*Wanting.**Wanting.*

## VII. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

Кидáясь от кидáются.	веселíясь.
----------------------	------------

*b. Past.*

Кидáвшиь.	веселíвшиь.
-----------	-------------

## 65. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Participle Passive Pres. Кидáемъ, 'which is thrown.'

„ „ Past, Киданъ, 'which was thrown.'

## I. INFINITIVE.

'To be thrown.'

*Masc. & N.* БЫТЬ кидáему,*Fem.* БЫТЬ кидáемой*Plur.* БЫТЬ кидáемымиъ*M. & N.* БЫТЬ кидану.*Fem.* БЫТЬ киданой.*Plur.* БЫТЬ киданымъ.

## II. INDICATIVE.

## a. Present.

*Sing.* Я (есмъ) кидáемъ, а, о  
 Ты (еси) кидáемъ, а, о  
 Онъ (естъ) кидáемъ, она́ (естъ)  
 кидáема, онó (естъ) кидáе-  
 мо

*Plur.* Мы (есмы) } кидáемы.  
 Вы (есте) }  
 Они́, онѣ́ (суть) }

я (есмъ) киданъ, а, о  
 ты (еси) киданъ, а, о  
 онъ (естъ) киданъ, она́ (естъ) ки-  
 дана, онó (естъ) кидано.

мы (есмы) } киданы.  
 вы (есте) }  
 они́, онѣ́ (суть) }

## b. Past.

*Sing.* Я былъ, а́, ó кидáемъ, а, о  
 Ты былъ, а́, ó кидáемъ, а, о  
 Онъ былъ кидáемъ, она́ была́  
 кидáема, онó было́ кидáемо

*Plur.* Мы были } кидáемы.  
 Вы были }  
 Они́, онѣ́ были }

я былъ, а́, ó киданъ, а, о  
 ты былъ, а́, ó киданъ, а, о  
 онъ былъ киданъ, она́ была́ кидана,  
 онó было́ кидано

мы были } киданы.  
 вы были }  
 они́ были }

## c. Future.

*Sing.* Я б́уду }  
 Ты б́удешь } кидáемъ, а, о,  
 Онъ, она́, онó }  
 б́удеть }

*Plur.* Мы б́удемъ } кидáемы.  
 Вы б́удете }  
 Они́, онѣ́ б́удутъ }

я б́уду }  
 ты б́удешь } киданъ, а, о.  
 онъ, она́, онó }  
 б́удеть }

мы б́удемъ } киданы.  
 мы б́удете }  
 они́, онѣ́ б́удутъ }

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Я былъ бы кидаемъ	Я былъ бы киданъ
Я была бы кидается	Я была бы кидана
Я было бы кидается, etc.	Я было бы кидано, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Мы были бы кидаемы, etc.	Мы были бы киданы, etc.

## IV. IMPERATIVE.

<i>2nd pers.</i> Будь кидаемъ, ема, емо	Будь киданъ, а, о
<i>plur.</i> будьте кидаемы	<i>plur.</i> будьте киданы
<i>3rd pers.</i> Пусть будетъ кидаемъ,	Пусть будетъ киданъ, а, о
кидается, о	
<i>plur.</i> пусть будутъ кидаемы.	<i>plur.</i> пусть будутъ киданы.

## V. PARTICIPLES.

*Wanting.*

## VI. GERUND.

*a. Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> Будучи кидаемъ, а, о	Будучи киданъ, а, о
<i>Plur.</i> Будучи кидаемы.	Будучи киданы.

*b. Past.*

<i>Sing.</i> Бывъ отъ бывши кидаемъ, а, о	Бывъ отъ бывши киданъ, а, о
<i>Plur.</i> Бывъ отъ бывши кидаемы.	Бывъ отъ бывши киданы.

66. Compound prepositional are conjugated in the same way as the simple verbs (Lessons 56, 57, 58).

67. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the rules of conjugation. They are divided into those of mixed conjugation and those of mixed class (Lesson 59).

68. Active and neuter derivative verbs are formed from substantives and adjectives by changing the termination of the primitive into *ить, ѣть, ать, ять, or овать*, etc.

Соли́ть, to salt,	from соль, salt.
Шумѣ́ть, to make a noise, „	шумъ, noise.
Защища́ть, to defend, „	защита, defence.
Мѣ́рить, to measure, „	мѣра, measure.
Торгова́ть, to trade in, „	торгъ, trade.
Краснѣ́ть, to blush, „	красный, red.
Бѣли́ть, to whitewash, „	бѣлый, white.
Радо́вать, to please, „	радъ, glad.

69. Compound verbs may be formed by coupling a substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb or a preposition with a verb, etc.

Путешество́вать, to travel,	from путь, road, шество́вать, to march.
Злодѣ́йствовать, to do evil, „	злой, wicked, дѣйствовать, to act.
Единобо́рствовать, to combat singly, „	еди́нъ, one, боро́ться, to wrestle.
Любопы́тствовать, to be curious, „	люби́ть, to love, пыта́ть, to inquire.
Разно́рѣчить, to contradict one's self, „	ра́зно, differently, рѣ́чь, to speak.
Противо́дѣйствовать, to counteract, „	прóтивъ, against, дѣйствовать, to act.
Находи́ть, to find, „	на, upon, ходи́ть, to walk.

## THE ADVERB.—(Нарѣ́чie.)

70. Adverbs, according to their meaning, are divided into :

### (1) Adverbs of *quality* (Кáчественныя).

*a.* Manner, as : такъ, 'thus,' 'so ;' ина́че, 'otherwise ;' хоро́шó, 'well ;' на́рочно, 'intentionally ;' на уга́дъ, 'at random.'

To this class belong all adverbs derived from adjectives.

*b.* Measure of time and space, as : скóро, 'quickly ;' до́лго, 'long time ;' ча́сто, 'often ;' бли́зко, 'near ;' далёко, 'far.'

To these may be added the gerunds or verbal adverbs.



(2) Adverbs of *quantity* (Количествовныя).

a. Measure, as : много, 'much ;' мало, 'a little.'

b. Number and order, as : однажды, 'once ;' дважды, 'twice ;' пятью, 'fivefold ;' десятью, 'tenfold ;' во первых, 'firstly ;' во вторых, 'secondly ;' на конецъ, 'lastly.'

(3) Adverbs of *time* (Времени).

a. Point of time, as : теперь, 'now ;' вчера, 'yesterday ;' завтра, 'to-morrow ;' сегодня, 'to-day ;' уже, 'already,' прежде, 'before ;' послѣ, 'after.'

b. Duration and repetition, as : всегда, 'always ;' никогда, 'never ;' рѣдко, 'seldom ;' опять, 'again ;' иногда, 'sometimes ;' снова, 'anew ;' вообще, 'generally.'

(4) Adverbs of *place* (Мѣста).

a. Rest, as : тамъ, 'there ;' здѣсь, 'here ;' дома, 'at home ;' гдѣ-то, 'somewhere ;' нигдѣ, 'nowhere.'

b. Motion, as : отсюда, 'hence ;' оттуда, 'thence ;' съзади, 'from behind ;' сюда, 'hither ;' туда, 'thither ;' домой, 'homewards ;' впередъ, 'forwards.'

(5) Adverbs of *interrogation* (Вопросительныя).

Развѣ? неужели? ужели?

(6) Adverbs of *mood* (Подлинности).

a. Affirmation, as : истинно, 'truly,' въ самомъ дѣлѣ, 'in fact ;' дѣйствительно, 'really ;' да, 'yes.'

b. Negation, as : не, ни, нѣтъ, 'not.'

c. Probability or doubt, as : авось, 'perchance ;' можетъ быть, 'perhaps ;' едва ли, 'scarcely ;' можетъ статься, 'may be.'

(7) Adverbs of *measure* (Мѣры).1st. Strengthening the *affirmation*.

a. Used with the positive degree, as : весьма, очень, 'very ;' отменно, 'excellently ;' слишкомъ, 'too ;' крайне, 'extremely ;' нарочито, 'on purpose ;' довольно, 'sufficiently ;' and the prefix пре, as : премного, 'very much.'

b. With the comparative, as : гораздо, 'far, much ;' несравнѣнно, не-  
впримѣръ, 'incomparably ;' вдвое, 'doubly.'

c. With the superlative ; the prefix нап, as : наибольшій, 'the largest ;'  
налучшій, 'the best.'

## 2nd. Strengthening the *negation*, as :

вовсе, 'at all ;' совсѣмъ, 'entirely ;' нимало, 'not in the least ;' нисколь-  
ко, ничуть, 'not at all.'

## 3rd. Modifying the *affirmation or negation*, as :

едва, чуть, 'hardly, 'scarcely ;' нѣсколько, 'somewhat ;' немного, 'a little ;'  
отчасти, 'partly ;' почти, 'almost.'

71. Many substantives and adjectives are used ad-  
verbially, as :

(1) Substantives in the instrumental and other cases, as : верхомъ,  
'on horseback ;' даромъ, 'gratis, 'although ;' шагомъ, 'at a walking pace ;'  
на показъ, 'for show ;' въ торопяхъ, 'in haste ;' погодно, 'yearly ;' помѣ-  
сячно, 'monthly ;' попеременно, 'alternately.'

(2) Apocopated qualifying adjectives in the neuter singular, as : хо-  
рошó, 'well ;' дурно, 'badly.'

(3) Possessive and relative adjectives in the dative, with the prefix  
по, as : по лѣтнему, 'summer like ;' по звѣринóму, 'like beasts.'

Those ending in скій, ій, take the termination ски, ѣи, as : порусски,  
'in Russian ;' подружески, 'in a friendly manner ;' порыбьи, 'like a fish.'

72. The pronouns столько, много, máло, нѣсколько and  
сколько become adverbs when referring to a verb or an ad-  
jective, as : много трудиться, 'to work much ;' нѣсколько  
рѣбокъ, 'somewhat timid.'

73. Adverbs formed from verbs end in мя or ма, емъ, as :  
дождь ливмя лѣтъ, 'it is a pouring rain ;' живѣемъ, 'alive.'  
This last form is seldom used.

74. Adverbs formed from apocopated qualifying adjectives have :

(1) Degrees of Comparison, as :

Positive :—много, 'much ;' хорошо, 'well.'

Comparative :—болѣе, 'more ;' лучше, 'better.'

Superlative :—болѣе всего, 'most ;' лучше всего, 'best.'

To the comparative of adverbs the prefix по may be added, as, поболѣе, 'a little more.'

The superlative in adverbs may be formed as in adjectives by adding the prefix наи to the comparative, as, наиболѣе, 'most.'

(2) Augmentatives and Diminutives, as :

a. Augmentative, бѣлѣхонько, 'thoroughly white ;' перерѣмко, 'very loud.'

b. Diminutive, бѣловато, 'whitish ;' немножко, 'rather a little. (Lesson 37.)

## THE PREPOSITION.—(Предлогъ.)

73. Prepositions are used in two ways :

(1) Separately, to indicate the relation in which objects stand to each other, as, на столѣ, 'on the table.'

(2) Conjointly with nouns, adjectives and verbs, *i.e.* as, prefixes : найти, 'to find.'

74. The following is a complete list of primitive prepositions, classed according to their use, as :

(1) Used both conjointly and separately.

Безъ, without.

Въ, (во), in, into.

До, until, before.

За, behind, for.

Изъ (изъ), out of, from.

На, on, upon.

Надъ (надо), over, above.

О (объ, обо), about, against.

Отъ (ото), from.

По, after, according.

Подъ (подо), under.

Предъ (предо), before, in.

Передъ (передо), front of.

При, in the time of, near.

Съ (со), with, from.

У, at, near.

## (2) Used separately only :

Къ (ко), 'towards, to,' and the prepositional adverbs для, 'for ;' кромѣ, 'besides ;' изъ за, 'from behind ;' изъ подъ, 'from under.'

## (3) Used as prefixes only :

Вз (воз, возо), 'up ;' вы, 'out ;' низъ (низо), 'down ;' на, пере, пра, пре, разъ, (разо), розъ, су.

## 75. As prepositions, are also used—

a. The following adverbs, близъ, 'near ;' вдоль, 'along ;' вмѣсто, 'instead ;' внутри, внутрь, 'in, inwards ;' внѣ, 'out of ;' възлѣ, 'beside, near ;' вопреки, 'contrary to ;' между, (межъ, промежъ), 'between ;' мимо, 'by ;' насупротивъ, 'opposite ;' около, 'about ;' окрестъ, 'around ;' поверхъ, 'over ;' подлѣ, 'near ;' позади, 'behind ;' послѣ, 'after ;' среди, посреди, 'amidst ;' прежде, 'before ;' противъ (противу), 'against ;' ради, 'for the sake of ;' сверхъ, 'besides ;' сзади, 'from behind ;' сквозь, 'through.'

b. The following adverbs formed from adjectives : относительно, 'with regard to ;' касательно, 'concerning ;' сообразно, 'in conformity with ;' соответственно, 'corresponding to ;' соразмѣрно, 'in proportion to.'

c. Some gerunds, as : исключая, 'except ;' не смотря на, 'notwithstanding.'

d. Substantives in different cases, as : посредствомъ, 'by means of ;' по мѣрѣ, 'in proportion to.'

## THE CONJUNCTION.—(Союзъ).

76. Conjunctions are for the most part derivatives, and are used to connect words and different parts of a sentence.

According to their signification they are divided into :

(1) *Copulative* (соединительные), as : и, 'and ;' да, 'and, but, let ;' же (жъ) 'but, then ;' также, 'also ;' ещё, 'yet ;' даже, 'even ;' то, 'that ;' отчасти, частью, 'partly.'

(2) *Distributive* (раздѣлительные), или, либо, 'or ;' ни, 'nor.'

(3) *Interrogative* (вопросительные), ли, или.

(4) *Explanatory* (пояснительные), что, 'that ;' будто, якобы, 'as if ;'



молъ, де and дѣскать, 'quoth ;' то, ёто, вѣдь, used after nouns, pronouns and adverbs.

(5) *Comparative* (сравнительные), словно, будто бы, 'as, as if ;' пѣжели, чѣмъ, 'than ;' какъ, 'as.'

(6) *Conditional* (условные), ежели, ёсли, бѣде, 'if ;' когда, 'when, if.'

(7) *Desiderative* (желательные), дабы, чтобы, 'in order that ;' ежелибъ, еслибъ, 'would it were ;' да, 'may, let.'

(8) *Concessive* (уступительные), хотя, 'although ;' пусть, пускай, 'let ;' правда, 'true ;' пожалуй, 'if you like.'

(9) *Adversative* (противительные), а, же, да, но, 'but ;' однако, 'however ;' ёсли же, 'if then ;' такъ, 'for all that.'

(10) *Causative* (винсловные), такъ, 'thus ;' то, 'then ;' и такъ, 'and so ;' посему, 'hence ;' почему и, 'wherefore ;' слѣдовательно, стало быть, 'consequently ;' потому, 'therefore.'

77. Of the above, the following when repeated become correlatives :

и, или, ни, то, отчасти, частью, иногда, гдѣ.

78. The other correlatives are :

какъ—такъ и, 'as—as ;' не только—но и, 'not only—but ;' тогда—когда, 'then—when ;' тамъ—гдѣ, 'there—where ;' отсюда—откуда, 'thence—whence ;' чѣмъ—тѣмъ, 'the (more)—the (more) ;' сколько—столько, 'as—as.'

79. There are also many other simple and compound conjunctions, as also conjunctive phrases formed from other parts of speech. The following may be taken as examples :

то есть, 'that is ;' а именно, 'namely ;' притомъ, 'besides ;' подобно какъ, 'as ;' наконецъ, 'at last ;' какъ ни, 'however ;' сколько ни, 'however much ;' равнобрно, 'equally ;' какъ-то, 'such as ;' etc.

## THE INTERJECTION.—(Междомѣtie.)

80. The principal interjections in Russian are the following, denoting :

*Surprise* : а! ахъ! 'ah !' ба! 'oh !' ой ли? 'is it ?'

*Encouragement* : сла́вно ! 'glorious !' ура ! hurrah ! исполáть ! 'well done !'

*Assurance* : ей ! прáво ! 'indeed !' upon my word !'

*Affirmation* : да ! 'yes !' ко́нечно ! 'of course !'

*Refusal* : нѣтъ ! 'no !'

*Repulsion* : прочь ! 'off !' долóй ! 'away !' пóлно ! 'cease !'

*Call* : эй ! гей ! 'holla !'

*Response* : а ! ась ! 'what !'

*Offer* : на ! plur. на-те ! 'take it !'

*Indication* : се ! 'behold !' вотъ ! 'there !' вонъ ! 'out !'

*Prohibition* : сть ! ть ! 'hush !' молча́ть ! 'silence !'

*Threat* : ужó ! 'beware !' добрó ! 'never mind !'

*Aversion* : фу ! 'faugh !'

*Indignation* : тьфу ! 'fie !'

*Grief* : ахъ ! охъ ! 'ah ! oh !' го́ре ! бѣда́ ! 'woe !' увы́ ! 'alas !'

*Compulsion* : ну ! plur. ну-те ! 'come !' ну-же ! 'now then !'

81. Besides the above, expressive of emotion, there are also others imitating different sounds, as, бухъ ! шмякъ ! бацъ ! хлопъ ! etc. From these may be formed verbs, as, бóухнуть, шмя́кнуть, ба́цнуть, хло́пнуть, etc.

## II. SYNTAX.—(Словосочинѣніе.)

### 1. CONCORD.—(Согласованіе.)

82. The predicate, if an adjective or a verb, agrees with the subject in person, gender, number and case.

Она́ читáла,

She was reading.

Она́ добра́,

She is kind.

83. When, however, the predicate is a noun, it may differ from the subject in gender and number, agreeing in case only. The copula when expressed agrees in number with the subject.

Римляне были парóдъ войнственный, The Romans were a warlike people.

84. Determinative words, either adjectives or pronouns, agree in gender, number and case with the word they qualify.

Моя хорошая книга.

My good book.

85. But when the determinative word is a substantive, it agrees in case and may differ in number and gender.

Городъ Москвѣ обширенъ.

The city of Moscow is large.

86. When the subject is followed by an attribute, the predicate, whether an adjective or a verb, agrees with the former and not with the latter in gender and number.

Рѣка Дунай судоходна.

The river Danube is navigable.

Рѣка Дунай замёрзла.

The river Danube is frozen over.

87. The numerals два, три, четы́ре, полтора́, полтретья́, etc., and the pronoun оба́, agree with their noun in number and case, except in the nom. and acc., when the noun takes the termination of the genit. sing.

Два стола́, two tables ; gen. двухъ столо́въ, etc.

Оба прі́ятеля, both friends ; gen. обо́ихъ прі́ятелей, etc.

88. Other numerals, from five up to eighty, as also двое́, трое́, четве́ро, etc., agree in all cases except the nom. and acc., which require the noun in the genit. plur.

Пять столо́въ, five tables ; dat. пяти́ столáмъ, etc.

Восемьдеся́тъ городо́въ, eighty towns ; dat. восьми́десяти́ города́мъ, etc.

89. In compound sentences having two or more subjects and predicates, the rules of concord depend chiefly on the conjunctions uniting the subjects, as also on whether or not the latter are of the same gender and number (Lesson 32, Obs. 3 to 7.)

90. With regard to compound numerals, the noun agrees with the last.

Двадцать одинъ столъ,

Twenty-one tables.

Пятьдесятъ два стола,

Fifty-two tables.

91. The relative pronoun *ко́торый*, *кой*, *кто*, *что*, agreeing in gender and number with the noun or pronoun in the principal clause, take the case governed by the verb or noun in the subordinate clause.

Человѣкъ, котораго я люблю,

The man whom I love.

92. The gerund of the subordinate and the verb of the principal clause must express an action of the same agent.

Онѣ сѣдя работаютъ,

They work sitting.

93. When an action indicated in the subordinate takes place at the same time as that of the principal clause, the gerund present is employed not only with verbs in the present, as,

Сѣдя пишу́,

I write sitting.

but also with verbs in the past and future tenses, as :

Сѣдя писа́лъ,

I wrote sitting.

Сѣдя бу́ду писа́ть,

I will write sitting.

94. When one action precedes another, then the preceding one is expressed by a gerund in the past tense, which likewise may agree not only with a verb in the past, as,

Одѣвшись, онъ вышелъ,

After dressing, he went out ;

but also with verbs in the present and future tenses, as :

Одѣвшись, я выхожу́,

After dressing I go out.

Одѣвшись, я выйду́,

After dressing I will go out.

## 2. GOVERNMENT.—(Управлѣніе.)

95. This part of Syntax will be found fully treated of in



the Practical Part. For direct government, see Lesson 60 ; and for government through prepositions, see Lessons 61, 62 and 63.

---

### III. ORTHOGRAPHY.—(Правописаніе.)

#### 1. USE OF LETTERS.

96. The proper and accidental sounds of each letter were explained in the beginning of this work, and it will be remembered that some letters have more than one sound, and, on the other hand, that there are some different ones which represent the same sound. Hence it follows that it is impossible to write Russian correctly by the ear alone. In cases of doubt, the proper letter may be ascertained either by finding the radical form of the word, or by going through its inflexions ; but since this process entails some trouble, and even then is not always successful, certain rules are here given, in alphabetical order, for the convenience of reference.

**А** occurs in the genit. sing. of adject. and pronouns ending in the nom. in **ый, ой**, as, **добраго, святаго, котораго**.

**А** is not written after hard vowels, except some foreign words, thus—**Гёнуа**, and not **Гёнуя**.

**Б** (as also **в, м, п, ф**) when followed by **ю** take **л**, as, **любл-ю, лов-л-ю, куп-л-ю, граф-л-ю**.

**Г**.—After **г**, in inflexions, **я, е, ы** are changed into **а, о, и**, thus—**строгаго, лёговъкій, сапоги**, and not **строгаго, лёгенькій, сапогы**.

**Д.**—Though the sound of *д* is given to the prefix *от*, yet *д* must never be written, as *отдѣлать, отзы́въ*.

**Е.**—In the inflexions of true Russian words, *е* is changed into *о* after *г, к, х*, as, *лёгонькій, мя́конькій, сѹхонькій*.

*Е* is found in the apocopated termination of adjectives ending in *йный, льный*, as, *споко́йный, во́льный*; *аросор. спокó-ень, во́л-ень*.

*Е* final accented after *ж, ч, ш, щ* is changed into *о*, as, *лицó, свѣ́жó*, instead of *лице́, свѣ́же*.

**Ж.**—After this letter, *ы* and *о* are changed into *и* and *е*, as, *ложи́, ло́жею*, instead of *лóжы, лóжою*.

**З** is preserved in the prefixes *воз, низ, раз, из* only before *с, ц, щ*, as, *из-суши́ть, раз-цара́пать, раз-щипа́ть*; but before all other consonants it is changed into *с*, as, *ис-чезну́ть, рас-ха́живать, рас-пи́литель*. In the prefixes *безъ* and *чрезъ*, *з* is never changed into *с*, as, *безсме́ртный, чрезме́рный*.

**З** is written before *мъ* final of foreign words, as, *матерья́лизмъ барбара́измъ*.

**И** is written :

*a.* Before consonants and at the end of words : *иду́, иди́*.

*b.* Before vowels only in the inflexions of the numer. *пять, шесть*, etc., in compound words, as, *пятиуго́льный, семи́парши́рный*, etc.

*c.* In the inflexion of the second person pres. indicat. of verbs of second conjugation, as, *смотре́ть, гово́рить*, second pers. *смóтришь, гово́ришь*.

**I** is written before vowels : *Іюль, лінія.*

*I* must not be confounded with *ы* or *о* in the termination of the adjectives, numerals and pronouns : *іи* is written in the nom. sing. of adjective having the gen. in *яго*, and *ый* or *ой* of those having the gen. in *аго*.

**К** never precedes *я, ю, ь*, except in foreign words, as, *кюмень, кяхта.*

**Н** is doubled :

*a.* In words ending in *никъ, ный, ній*, if these latter are formed from words ending in *н*, as, *плѣнникъ, плѣн-ный, осѣн-ній*, derived from *плѣнь, бсень.*

*b.* In passive particip. and qualif. adjectives ending in *ан-ный, ян-ный, ен-ный*, as, *желанный, деревянный, убійственный.*

**И** is prefixed to personal pronouns after prepositions, to distinguish them from the possessive, as : *у него, 'he has ;' у егó брата, 'at his brother's.'*

**О** is written in the nom. of masculine adjectives and pronouns having an accented termination, as, *золотой, какой.*

*Ого* is written in the gen. sing. of the pron. *какой, такой.*

**С** is doubled in nouns ending in *ство, скій*, if formed from words ending in *с* : *искус-ство, Русскій.*

**Т** is doubled when *отъ* is prefixed to a word beginning with *т* : *оттого, оттаять.*

**Ц.**—After *ц*, *ы* is written instead of *и*, as, *цыплёнокъ, цырюльникъ.* Except foreign words, as, *цита́та, медици́на.*

**Ц** must not be written instead of **тс** or **дс** if **т** or **д** belong to the root and **с** to the termination, thus—ара-**вѣтскій**, персѣдскій, and not ара**вѣ**цкій, персѣцкій.

**Ч** is not followed by **я**, **ю**, **ы**, thus—чаять, чѣткій, чинѣ, and not чѣять, чѣткій, чынѣ.

**Ш** is not followed by **я**, **ю**, **ы**, which are changed into **а**, **у**, **и**, thus—нѣзшая, нѣзшую, нѣзшіе, and not нѣзшая, нѣзшую, нѣзшые.

**Щ** is not followed by **о**, **ы**, **я**, **ю**, but by **е**, **и**, **а**, **у**, thus—гѣщею, гѣщи, гѣща, гѣшу, and not гѣщою, гѣшы, гѣщя, гѣщю.

This letter must not be written instead of **жч**, or **сч** if **ж**, **ч**, **с** belong to the root or to the prefix, thus—муж-чѣна, с-читѣть, счѣстіе, and not му**жѣ**на, му**чѣ**тъ, му**сѣ**стіе.

**Ы**.—This sound is sometimes confounded with **ѣ**, and some grammarians do not change **ѣ** into **ы** when **ѣ** belongs to the prefix and **и** to the root, as, отѣгры-**вать**, предѣдѣщій; others in the same instance use **ы**, as, отѣгры**вать**, предѣдѣщій. **Ы**, however, is beginning to be generally adopted.

**Ъ**, **Ь**.—These two semivowels when final do not always give a distinct hard or soft sound to the preceding consonant, but are mute after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**.

For the placing of **ъ** or **ь** after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, the following rules are to be observed :

**Ъ** is used :

*a.* In the nom. sing. of mascul. nouns and adjectives,



as, мужъ, мечъ, камышъ, плащъ, горячъ, похóжъ,  
as also in the nom. of the pron. нашъ and вашъ.

- b. In the gen. plur. of nouns ending in e and a, as, учíлишъ, тучъ, ложъ, ношъ, and in that of the numerals ты́сячъ.
- c. In the conjunction жъ contracted from же, as, тожъ, тогдажъ, from то́же, тогда́же.
- d. In the prepositions межъ, проме́жъ.

*B* is written :

- a. In the nom. of femin. nouns, as, ночь, мышъ, вещь.
- b. In the second pers. sing. pres. indicat., as, дѣлаешь, говоришь.
- c. In the second pers. of the imperative, as, плачь, ѣшь, рѣжь.
- d. In the infinitive of verbs ending in чъ, as, жечь, толо́чь.
- e. In the terminations of the adverbs : лишь, прочъ, то́чь въ то́чь, and some others.

**Ъ**, pronounced like *e*, is used in the following roots and terminations :

- (1) **Ъ** is initial in only two words and their derivatives : ѣхать, 'to ride,' and ѣсть, 'to eat.'

**Ъ** occurs in the middle of the following and their derivatives :

Бесѣда, conversation.

Блѣдный, pale.

Бѣгать, бѣжать, to run.

Бѣда, woe, (бѣдный, poor; побѣда, victory.)

Бѣлый, white.

Бѣсъ, demon.

Вѣди, the name of the letter *e*.

Вѣдать, to know.

Вѣкъ, age.

Вѣна, Vienna.

Вѣнецъ, crown.

Вѣнникъ, a broom.

Вѣрить, to believe.

Вѣра, faith.

Вѣсить, to weigh.

Вѣсть, intelligence.

Вѣсъ, weight.

Вѣтвь, branch.

Вѣтръ, wind.

Вѣко, eye-lid.

Вѣять, to blow.

Гнѣвъ, anger.

Гнѣдой, bay.

Гнѣздѣ, nest.

Грѣхъ, sin.

Двѣпръ, } names of rivers.

Двѣстръ, }

Дѣва, a virgin.

Дѣвать, дѣтъ, (except одѣжда, clothes).

Дѣдъ, grandfather.

Дѣлѣть, to divide.

Дѣти, children.

Дѣять, дѣлать, to do.

(Надѣяться, to hope, except надежда, hope.)

Желѣза, glands.

Желѣзо, iron.

Затѣя, devices.

Звѣзда, star.

Звѣрь, beast.

Змѣй, serpent.

Зѣвать, to yawn.

Зѣница, pupil (of the eye).

Калѣка, a cripple.

Клѣтъ, chamber.

Клѣтка, cage.

Колѣно, knee.

Крѣпкій, strong.

Лелѣять, to fondle.

Лѣвый, left.

Лѣзть, to climb.

Лѣнь, idleness.

Лѣпѣть, to stick.

Лѣса, fishing line.

Лѣсъ, forest.

Лѣто, summer.

Лѣчить, to cure.

Лѣкарь, a physician.

Медвѣдь, a bear.

Мѣдь, copper.

Мѣлъ, chalk.

Мѣна, change.

Мѣра, measure.

Мѣсто, place.

Мѣсяцъ, month.

Мѣшать, to hinder.

Мѣтить, to mark.

Мѣхъ, fur, bag.

Невѣста, bride.

Нѣ, (prefix used with pronouns and adverbs).

Нѣга, indulgence.

Нѣжный, tender.

Нѣдро, bosom.

Нѣмецъ, a German.

Нѣтъ, no.

Нѣкаться, to deny.

Обѣдъ, dinner.

Обѣтъ, vow, promise.

Орѣхъ, nut.

Печенѣгъ, (name of people).

Плѣнь, captivity.

Плѣсень, mould.

Плѣшь, a bald pate,

Повѣтъ, district.

Полѣно, log.

Посѣтить, to visit.

Прорѣха, a hole, slit.

Прѣсный, sweet.

Пѣгій, dappled, piebald.

Пѣна, froth.  
 Пѣнѣть, to reproach.  
 Пѣхота, infantry.  
 Пѣшій, a pedestrian.  
 Рѣдкій, scarce.  
 Рѣдка, radish.  
 Рѣзать, to cut.  
 Рѣзвый, playful.  
 Рѣка, river.  
 Рѣпа, turnip.  
 Рѣсница, eye-lash.  
 Рѣсті (root deriv. встрѣча, meeting).  
 Рѣчь, speech.  
 Рѣшетó, sieve.  
 Рѣшѣть, to decide.  
 Рѣять, to gush.  
 Свирѣпый, ferocious.  
 Свѣжій, fresh.  
 Свѣтъ, the light.  
 Слѣдъ, trace.  
 Слѣпой, blind.  
 Смѣяться, to laugh.  
 Снѣгъ, snow.  
 Спѣхъ, haste.  
 Стрѣла, arrow.  
 Стѣна, wall.  
 Сѣверъ, north.  
 Сѣдой, grey.

Сѣно, hay.  
 Сѣня, tabernacle.  
 Сѣра, sulphur.  
 Сѣрый, gray.  
 Сѣтовать, to lament.  
 Сѣтъ, net.  
 Сѣчь, (сѣку), to hew, to whip.  
 Сѣять, to sow.  
 Сѣмя, seed.  
 Тѣло, body.  
 Тѣнь, shadow.  
 Тѣсный, narrow.  
 Тѣсто, dough.  
 Тѣшѣть, to amuse.  
 Хлѣбъ, bread.  
 Хлѣвъ, stay.  
 Хрѣнъ, horseradish.  
 Хѣръ, the letter x.  
 Цвѣтъ, colour.  
 Цѣдить, to filter.  
 Цѣловать, to kiss.  
 Цѣлый, whole.  
 Цѣль, aim.  
 Цѣна, price.  
 Цѣпенѣть, to grow stiff.  
 Цѣпъ, a flail.  
 Цѣпь, chain.  
 Человѣкъ, man.

*Ъ* occurs in the following terminations :

- (1) In the comparative degree, as, добрѣе, добрѣйшій.
- (2) In the prepositional case of nouns of the first declension, except those ending in ію, ie, as, на столѣ, въ полѣ.
- (3) In the dative and prepositional sing. of nouns of the second declension, except those ending in я, ь; also in the dative and prepositional of the pronouns я, ты, себя, as, водѣ, мнѣ, тебѣ, себѣ.

- (4) In the instrumental sing. of the pronouns **кто, что, тотъ, весь, as, кѣмъ, чѣмъ, тѣмъ, всѣмъ.**
- (5) In the nominat. plur. feminine of the numerals **одинъ, два,** and the pronouns **она́, оба, тотъ, вся, as, однѣ, двѣ, онѣ, обо́ѣ, тѣ, всѣ.**
- (6) In all cases plur. of the numeral feminine **однѣ,** and the pronouns **обо́ѣ, тѣ, всѣ.**
- (7) In verbs of first conjugation of first class ending in **ѣю, ѣтъ,** the vowel **ѣ** is preserved in all aspects, tenses, moods and derivative words, as, **владѣю, владѣтъ, perf. asp. овладѣтъ, nouns владѣнiе, владѣтель, etc.**

The verbs **пѣтъ, сѣтъ,** and all verbs of the ninth class having **ѣ** before **тъ** in the infinitive, take it both in the past tense and in the derivative words, as, **пѣтъ, пѣтый, пѣнiе, etc.**

*Exceptions.*—The participle passive past of verbs of ninth class ending in **дѣтъ, тѣтъ,** in which **д, т** is changed into **ж, ч,** take **е** instead of **ѣ,** as, **вертѣтъ, верченъ, сидѣтъ, сиженъ.**

- (8) **Ѣ** occurs in the termination of the following adverbs: **вездѣ, внѣ, вóзлѣ, здѣсь, доколѣ, доселѣ, дотóлѣ, ѣндѣ, крóмѣ, нýнѣ, отколѣ, отселѣ, пóдлѣ, пóслѣ, рáзвѣ.**
- (9) **Ѣ** is also written in words having a doubtful sound similar to **я,** as in some proper names—**Алексѣй, Сергѣй,** and in the nouns **грамотѣй** and **Апрѣль.**

**Э, V.**—See Practical Part, pp. 14 and 16.

**Ю** if preceded by **ч, ш** is changed into **у.**

**Я.**—Occurs in the termination of foreign words ending



in *ia*, *io*, as, *Азія*, *матерія*, *Италія*; but in their derivatives, *я* is changed into *а*, as, *азіатецъ*, *матеріальный*.

Those derivatives in which *i* can be contracted into *ь*, are written with *я*, as, *итальянскій*.

Θ is found in Greek words written with θ (not φ), in English, French, etc. with *th*, as, *Аѳѳины*, *Θѳдоръ*; but foreign words introduced not earlier than the beginning of the last century, as also those met with in common use are written with *т*, as, *театръ*, 'theatre,' *теорія*, 'theory,' etc.

## II. CAPITAL LETTERS.

97. Capital letters are used in Russian as in English, with a few slight exceptions :

- a.* Adjectives are written with capitals only when used as proper names, as : *Австрійская Имперія*, 'Austrian Empire;' *Французская Республіка*, 'French Republic;' *Чѳрное Море*, 'Black Sea.' Otherwise a small letter is used, as : *австрійскій солдатъ*, 'Austrian soldier;' *французскій табакъ*, 'French tobacco.'
- b.* The pronoun *вы*, 'you,' in all its inflexions takes a capital letter in correspondence.

## III. PUNCTUATION.—(Знаки Препинанія.)

98. The points used in Russian are the following :

- (1) The comma [, ] (*запятая*).
- (2) The semicolon [ ; ] (*точка съ запятою*).

- (3) The colon [ : ] (двоеточіе).
- (4) The full stop [ . ] (точка).
- (5) The note of interrogation [ ? ] (знакъ вопросительный).
- (6) The note of exclamation [ ! ] (знакъ восклицательный).
- (7) The hyphen [ - ] (черта́ or знакъ отдѣлительный).
- (8) The point of suspension [ . . . . . ] (знакъ пресѣкательный).
- (9) The parenthesis [ ( ) ] (знакъ вмѣстительный or ско́бки).
- (10) The quotation marks [ „ ” ] (кавы́чки or знакъ впо́сный).

99. They only differ from the English in their use in the following particulars :

- (1) Subordinate clauses, however short or whatever word they begin with, must be separated from the main clause by a comma.

Человѣкъ, котораго вы видите, мой братъ.	The man whom you see is my brother.
Онъ поступилъ, какъ слѣдовало.	He acted as he ought.
Лучше поздно, чѣмъ никогда.	Better late than never.

- (2) Short sentences, whether connected by the conjunctions и, а, но or not, are likewise separated by commas.

Это справедливо, а то ложно,	This is true and that is false,
------------------------------	---------------------------------

100. The semicolon must be employed between two or more members of a period, when they are either complex or comprise subordinate or parenthetical clauses, as :

Не тотъ бѣденъ, кто имѣетъ máло; но тотъ, кто желáетъ многого.	Not he is poor who has little, but he who desires much.
---	--

## IV. THE TONIC ACCENT.—(Слогосударѣніе.)

(See page 29).

101. The accent undergoes transposition in inflexion according to fixed and definite laws, which are easily learnt.

102. The oblique cases of nouns generally retain the accent of the nominative, as, Законъ, тетрадь, gen. закона, тетради, dat. закону, тетради, etc.

103. When the accent is transposed, the change is retained in all subsequent cases. The transposition may begin :

*a.* With the gen. sing., as : рукавъ, слонъ ; gen. рукава, слона ; dat. рукаву, слону, etc.

*b.* With the nom. plur., as : чинъ, садъ ; gen. чина, сада ; plur. nom. чины, сады ; gen. чиновъ, садовъ, etc.

*c.* With the gen. plur., as : зубъ, гробъ ; plur. nom. зѹбы, гробы ; gen. зубовъ, гробовъ ; dat. зубамъ, гробамъ, etc.

104. In the plural of neuter nouns ending in o, e, when the accent is on the first syllable of the nom. sing., it passes to the last, and when on the last passes to the first, as : слóво, винó ; plur. nom. слова, вина.

105. In adjectives and passive participles the accent is shifted :

*a.* To the apocopated termination of the feminine, as :

Нóвый, аросор. m. новъ, f. нова, n. нóво.

Видный, „ m. виденъ, f. видна, n. видно.

*b.* To the apocop. termination of feminine, neuter and plural, as :

Бѣлый, аросор. m. бѣлъ, f. бѣла, n. бѣлб, pl. бѣлы.

Хорошій, „ m. хорошъ, f. хороша, n. хорошб, pl. хороші.

To these belong passive participles in анъ, ѣнъ, енъ, and possessive adjectives in инъ, as :

Данъ,	fem. данá,	neut. данó,	plur. даны́.
Ильинъ,	„ Ильинá,	„ Ильинó,	„ Ильины́.

106. In verbs the chief transpositions calling for notice are those of tense, person, gender, and that of number in the past tense.

- (1) The present and past tenses, or the 1st and 2nd branch of verbs take the accent on the same syllable, as: читáть, 'to read;' pres. чита́ю; past чита́лъ. But in monosyllabic verbs having two syllables in the present with the accent on the last, the accent is restored to the first syllable in the past, as: пѣть, 'to sing;' pres. пою́; past пѣ́лъ, fem. пѣ́ла, neut. пѣ́ло, plur. пѣ́ли.
- (2) Verbs of the fourth class having the accent on the penultimate, transfer it to the final in the past tense, as: ро́евáть, 'to grieve;' pres. ро́рюю; past ро́евáлъ.
- (3) Verbs of the second and third classes having the accent on the termination of the first person, transfer it in the second person to the radical syllable, the change being retained throughout, as: ора́ть, 'to till;' коло́ть, 'to sting;' pres. орю́, колю́; second pers. оре́шь, коле́шь; third pers. оре́тъ, коле́тъ, etc.
- (4) The following three of the ninth class, смотре́ть, 'to look;' терпе́ть, 'to bear;' and держа́ть, 'to hold;' and most verbs of the tenth class also follow this rule, as: смотре́ю, терпе́лю, люблю́; second person, смотре́ишь, терпе́ишь, люби́ишь, etc.



Besides the above, a few verbs of the fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth classes transpose the accent from the termination of the 1st person to the penultimate syllable for other persons, example :

Of the 5th class :—стон<sup>у́</sup>, 2nd pers. сто<sup>не</sup>шь, etc.

„ „ 6th „ прим<sup>у́</sup>, „ „ при<sup>ме</sup>шь, „

„ „ 7th „ мог<sup>у́</sup>, „ „ мо<sup>ж</sup>ешь, „

„ „ 8th „ тян<sup>у́</sup>. „ „ тя<sup>не</sup>шь, „

107. According to the second person singular are accented the third pers. sing. and all persons of the plural, as, пиш<sup>у́</sup>, пи<sup>ше</sup>шь, пи<sup>ше</sup>тъ, пи<sup>ше</sup>тъ, пи<sup>ше</sup>те, пи<sup>шутъ</sup>.

108. According to the first pers. sing. are accented the persons of the imperative, as, пиш<sup>у́</sup>, imperat. пи<sup>ши́</sup>, plur. пи<sup>ши́</sup>те. But if the imperative end in *и́*, and the first person pres. in *ю́* accented, then the accent necessarily falls on the vowel preceding it, as, сто<sup>ю́</sup>, кля<sup>ю́</sup>, imperat. сто<sup>и́</sup>, кля<sup>и́</sup>.

109. When the past tense masc. sing. is monosyllabic without counting the prefix or the suffix *ся*, the accent is shifted for the other genders and number according to the rule of adjectives and participles.

110. Of the above, those having the past in *а́*, *я́*, *и́*, *ы́*, shift the accent to the feminine only ; such are бра<sup>ть</sup>, гна<sup>ть</sup>, да<sup>ть</sup>, дра<sup>ть</sup>, жда<sup>ть</sup>, жра<sup>ть</sup>, зва<sup>ть</sup>, зда<sup>ть</sup>, лга<sup>ть</sup>, вра<sup>ть</sup>, тка<sup>ть</sup>, взя<sup>ть</sup>, сня<sup>ть</sup>; and others formed from the root *ятъ*, as also кля<sup>сть</sup>, ви<sup>ть</sup>, жи<sup>ть</sup>, ли<sup>ть</sup>, пи<sup>ть</sup>, бы<sup>ть</sup>, плы<sup>ть</sup>, слы<sup>ть</sup>, ме<sup>рѣть</sup>, перѣ<sup>ть</sup>, and their compounds померѣ<sup>ть</sup>, отперѣ<sup>ть</sup>, as, for example :

бра<sup>лъ</sup>, fem. бра<sup>ла́</sup>, neut. бра<sup>ло́</sup>, plur. бра<sup>ли</sup>.

бы<sup>лъ</sup>, „ бы<sup>ла́</sup>, „ бы<sup>ло́</sup>, „ бы<sup>ли</sup>.

при<sup>ня́лъ</sup>, „ при<sup>ня́ла́</sup>, „ при<sup>ня́ло́</sup>, „ при<sup>няли</sup>.

111. Compounds formed from the root *ять*, which in the masculine take the accent on the prefix, follow the same rule, as, *з́аняль*, feminine *заня́ла*, neuter *з́аняло*, plural *з́аняли*.

112. Most verbs of the seventh class transfer the accent in the past tense to the termination of the fem. and neut., as also to that of the plural, as: *вести́*, 'to lead;' *толочи́*, 'to pound;' past *вѣлъ*, *толókъ*; fem. *велá*, *толклá*; neut. *велó*, *толклó*; plur. *велѣ́*, *толклѣ́*.

113. Some of the above named, when used in reflective form, transfer the accent in the past to the suffix *ся* for the masculine, but for the femin. and neut. as well as the plur. to the syllable preceding it, as :

брался, fem. бралась, neut. бралось, plur. брались.  
принялся, „ принялась, „ принялось, „ принялись.

114. The prepositions *взо, во, до, за, изó, на, надó, о, объ, обо, от, отó, по, под, подó, пре, перé, при, про, разó, раз, со, у*, when prefixed to the past tense of some monosyllabic verbs or their passive participles, take the accent, as follows :

(1) The following twelve verbs and their participles transfer the accent in the past to the prefix for the masculine, neuter and plural, the feminine taking the accent on the final syllable :

дать, звать, ять, чать, клясть, лить, пить, жить, плыть, быть, мереть, переть,  
as for example :

<b>Masc.</b>	Продать, прожить ;	<b>participle</b>	проданъ, прожитъ.
<b>Fem.</b>	Продала, прожила ;	„	продана, прожита.
<b>Neut.</b>	Продало, прожило ;	„	продано, прожито.
<b>Plur.</b>	Продали, прожили ;	„	проданы, прожиты.

(2) The following passive participles take the accent on the prefix for all genders and plural:

ending in аяъ: сѡзнаяъ, отѡслаяъ, разѡслаяъ, сѡлгаяъ, взѡрваяъ, прѣтка-  
каяъ, за́зваяъ, на́враяъ, прѡждаяъ, по́жраяъ, из-  
браяъ, обѡдраяъ, во́гнаяъ, прѡспаяъ.

ending in яденъ: derived from идти́, аs, найденъ, пройденъ, etc.

ending in утъ: за́мкнутъ, взѡткнутъ, подѡгнутъ, etc.

115. The prefix вы takes the accent in verbs of perfect aspect throughout all their inflections and in all their derivatives, as: вы́вести, 'to lead out;' past вы́велъ, fut. выведу; imperat. вы́веди, etc.





# INDEX.

---

## A.

About, 325, Obs. 4.  
 Abroad, 208.  
 Accent, 29, 557.  
 Accusative (Government), 454.  
 Ache (to), 296.  
 Active Verbs (Conjugation of), 529.  
 Adjective, 510.  
 Adjective (Possessive), 222.  
 Adjective (Relative), 281.  
 Adverb, 538.  
 Against, 312.  
 All, 521.  
 Alone, 95.  
 And, 48.  
 Any, 43.  
 Apocope, 29.  
 Apocope of Adjective, 230.  
 Appendix, 499.  
 Article, 499.  
 As, 269.  
 As—as, 268.  
 As far as, 290.  
 Aspects of Verbs, 205, 374, 523.  
 Augmentative Adjectives, 273.  
 „ Nouns, 85, 184.  
 Auxiliary Verbs (Conjugation of), 527.

## B.

Behave (to), 290.  
 Both, 151, 240.  
 Branches of the Verb, 322.  
 But, 181.  
 By, 297.

## C.

Call (to), 284.  
 Cannot, 164.  
 Capital Letters, 555.  
 Cardinal Numerals, 95, 104, 163, 179.  
 Cases, 503.  
 Collective Nouns, 78, Obs. 7.  
 Common Gender, 500.  
 „ Verbs, 355, 522.  
 Comparative (Formation of Indeclinable), 265.  
 Comparison (Degrees of ), 259.  
 Complete Verbs, 377.  
 Compound Adjectives, 516.  
 „ Nouns, 510.  
 „ Verbs, 420, 426, 433, 538.  
 „ Numerals, 348.  
 Concord of words, 544.  
 Conjugation, 238, 257.  
 „ of Active Verbs, 529.

Conjugation of Auxiliary Verbs, 527.

„ „ Irregular Verbs, 440.

„ „ Iterative and Perfect  
of Unity, 532.

„ „ Neuter Verbs, 531.

„ „ Passive Verbs, 536.

„ „ Regular Verbs, 406.

„ „ Reflective Verbs, 534.

Conjunction, 542.

Christian Names, 196.

## D.

Dative (Government), 453.

Declension of Adjectives, 512, 514.

„ „ Possessive Adjectives,  
223.

Declension of Pronouns, 519.

„ „ Substantives, 504.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Feminine, 156, 170.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Masculine, 31, 76.

Declension of Substantives and Ad-  
jectives Neuter, 127, 137.

Defective Verbs, 378.

Definite Imperfect Aspect, 375.

Demonstrative Pronouns, 65.

Derivation of Adjectives, 516.

„ „ Nouns, 509.

„ „ Verbs, 538.

Diminutive Adjectives, 273.

„ „ Nouns, 85, 185, 194.

Division of Letters, 9.

Do (to), 67, Obs. 4.

Double Verbs, 377, 382.

## E.

Each other, 311.

Else, 304.

Epenthesis, 29.

Etymology, 499.

Ever, 288.

## F.

Family Names, 224, Obs. 4.

Fear (to), 107.

Feminine Gender, 155.

„ „ Nouns, 500.

Feminine Nouns (Formation of),  
211, 501.

Few, 146.

For, 191, 319.

Foreign Nouns, 245.

Forty, 325, Obs. 3.

Future Tense, 324.

## G.

Gender, 36, 500.

Generic Possessive Adjectives, 225.

Genitive (Government), 450.

Genitive of Substantives in *y*, 45.

Gerund, 307, 525.

Get (to), 141, 290.

Glad, 254.

Go (to), 131, 197.

Government (direct), 450.

Government of Compound and  
Simple Words, 480.

Government of Prepositions, 459.

## H.

Half, 340.

Have (you), 35, Obs. 1.

He, 520.

His, 47.

However, 338.

Hundred, 325, Obs. 3.

## I.

- I (declension), 519.  
 If you please, 94.  
 Imperative, 330.  
 Imperative for Subjunctive, 316,  
   Obs. 4.  
 Imperfect Aspect, 205, 375.  
 Impersonal Verbs, 361, 526.  
 Impersonal Compound Verbs, 362.  
 In, 304.  
 Inchoative Aspect, 376, 421.  
 Incomplete Verbs, 377.  
 Indefinite Pronouns, 345.  
 Indefinite Imperfect Aspect, 375.  
 Infinitive as complement to Im-  
   personal Verbs, 364.  
 Infinitive Mood, 238, 245, 251, 257.  
 Instrumental (Government), 455.  
 Interjections, 543.  
 Interrogative Sentences, 55, 248,  
   Obs. 11, 363, Obs. 3.  
 Irregular Verbs, 439.  
 It, 36, 81, 162, 180, 520.  
 It is, 246, 363.  
 Iterative Aspect, 205, 376, 389.  
 Iterative Aspect (Conjugation of),  
   532.  
 Itself, 318.

## J.

- Judge of (to be a), 290.  
 Just, 199.

## K.

- Keep a promise (to), 431.  
 Keep on one's guard (to), 218.  
 Knit (to), 386.  
 Knock against (to), 311.  
 Know (to), 95.

## L.

- Learn (to), 227.  
 Leave (to), 287.  
 Left, 288.  
 Lend (to), 319.  
 Let (to), 334.  
 Love, like (to), 66, 192.

## M.

- Many, 146.  
 Marry (to), 277, Obs. 2.  
 Masculine Nouns, 500.  
 Masculine Nouns in *ъ*, 501.  
 Masculine Nouns having plural in  
   *а*, 92.  
 May, might, 317.  
 Moods, 523.  
 Most, 284.  
 Much, 248.  
 Must, 149.

## N.

- Names of Natives (Formation of),  
   202.  
 Nay, 288.  
 Need (to), 165.  
 Negation in Russian, 51.  
 Negative Pronouns, 345.  
 Negative Sentences, 363, Obs. 3.  
 Neuter Nouns, 500.  
 Neuter Verb, 522.  
 Neuter Verb (Conjugation of), 531.  
 Ninety, 325, Obs. 3.  
 Nor I, 290.  
 Not *а*, 165.  
 Nouns in *ъ*, 501.  
 Nouns (Verbal), 369.  
 Now and then, 288  
 Number, 75, 502

Number (defective), 123, 178.  
 Numerals, 104.  
 Numerals (declension), 514.

## O.

Of, 72, Obs. 6, 179.  
 One and a half, 348.  
 One's own, 520.  
 Ordinal Numerals, 117.  
 Orthography, 547.  
 Ought, 317.  
 Our, 54, 520.  
 Out, 242.

## P.

Participle (Active), 293.  
 „ (Passive), 300.  
 Participles, 525.  
 Passive Verbs, 356, 522.  
 Passive Verbs (Conjugation of), 536.  
 "Past," 326, Obs. 7.  
 Past Tense, 89, 245, Obs. 2.  
 People, 82.  
 Perfect Aspect, 205, 214, Obs. 4,  
 376, 396.  
 Perfect Aspect of Duration, 376.  
 Perfect Aspect of Unity, 215, 376,  
 397.  
 Perfect Inchoative Aspect, 421.  
 Perfect of Unity (Conjugation of),  
 532.  
 Perfect Simple Verbs, 404.  
 Permutation of Letters, 28.  
 Personal Verbs, 526.  
 Passive Adjectives, 222, 283, Obs. 6.  
 Possessive Case, 46, Obs. 8.  
 Possessive Pronouns, 71.  
 Position of Words, 486, 492.  
 Potential Mood, 315.

Prefixes, 415, 481.  
 Predicate, 246, 253.  
 Prepositions, 541.

„ Governing the Genitive, 459  
 „ Governing the Dative, 464.  
 „ Governing the Accusative,  
 468.  
 „ Governing the Instrumen-  
 tal, 474.  
 „ Governing the Preposition-  
 al, 476.

Prepositional Verbs, 207, Obs. 9.  
 420, 426, 433.  
 Present (Formation of), 314.  
 Present Tense, 59.  
 Pronoun, 517.  
 Pronunciation, 9.  
 Prosthesis, 29.  
 Punctuation, 555.

## Q.

Qualifying Adjectives, 510.

## R.

Rather, 296.  
 Reciprocal Verbs, 355, 522.  
 Reflective Verbs, 151, 353, 522.  
 Reflective Verbs (Conjugation of),  
 534.  
 Relative Adjectives, 281.  
 Remain (to), 287.

## S.

Same, 318.  
 Self, 215, 519.  
 Shall, 385.  
 She, 520.  
 Should, 316, Obs. 5.  
 Simple Verbs, 524.



Simple Verbs of Perfect Aspect, 404.

Sir, 110.

Some, or any, 43.

Sore, 297.

Speak (to), 70.

Strong, 234, Obs. 9.

Subjunctive Mood, 315.

Substantive, 30, 500.

Substantives in *ORB*, 39.

Syncope, 29.

Syntax, 544.

### T.

Tense, 524.

That, 316, Obs. 2, 521.

The—the, 269.

Then, 317, Obs. 7.

This, 70, 180.

Thou, 519.

Tonic Accent, 557.

Trade (to), 132.

Trot (to), 192.

### U.

Use of letters, 547.

Used to be, 365, 398.

### V.

Verb, 522.

Verbal Nouns, 369.

Verbs (Conjugation of), 527.

„ Irregular, 439.

„ Regular, 526.

„ Irregular formation, 444.

„ Preceded by a negative, 42.

Very much, 103.

### W.

Wash (to), 181.

Whatever, whenever, wherever  
whichever, whoever, 338.

Which, 146, Obs. 3, 521.

Who, which, 65, Obs. 1.

Why, 103.

Will, 385.

Words Governing the Genitive, 481.

„ „ the Dative, 482.

„ „ the Accusative, 483.

„ „ the Instrumental, 483.

„ „ the Prepositional, 484.

Would, 316, Obs. 5.

### Y.

Yes, 33.

Your, 33.

Yearly, 380.

Years, 217.



# A CATALOGUE

OF

## DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, READING-BOOKS, AND OTHER IMPORTANT WORKS

OF THE PRINCIPAL

## EUROPEAN LANGUAGES,

PUBLISHED BY  
**TRÜBNER & CO.,**  
57 & 59 LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

### CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE		PAGE
ALBANIAN . . . . .	1	HUNGARIAN . . . . .	11	ROUMANIAN . . . . .	13
ANGLO-SAXON . . . . .	1	INTERNATIONAL		RUSSIAN . . . . .	13
BASQUE . . . . .	2	LANGUAGES . . . . .	11	SERBIAN . . . . .	14
DANO-NORWEGIAN . . . . .	2	ITALIAN . . . . .	11	SPANISH . . . . .	14
DUTCH . . . . .	2	LATIN . . . . .	12	SWEDISH . . . . .	15
ENGLISH . . . . .	3	NORWEGIAN — <i>see</i>		TECHNICAL Dic-	
FRENCH . . . . .	5	DANO-NORWEGIAN.		TIONARIES . . . . .	15
FRISIAN . . . . .	9	POLISH . . . . .	12	TURKISH . . . . .	16
GERMAN . . . . .	9	PORTUGUESE . . . . .	13	WELSH . . . . .	16
GREEK . . . . .	11				

### ALBANIAN.

**GRAMMAIRE ALBANAISE** à l'Usage de ceux qui désirent Apprendre cette Langue sans l'Aide d'un Maître. Par P. W. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 170. 1887. Price 7s. 6d.

### ANGLO-SAXON.

**HARRISON and BASKERVILL.**—A HANDY DICTIONARY OF ANGLO-SAXON POETRY. Based on Groschopp's Grein. Edited, Revised, and Corrected, with Grammatical Appendix, List of Irregular Verbs, and Brief Etymological Features. By JAMES A. HARRISON, Professor of English and Modern Languages in Washington and Lee University, Virginia; and W. M. BASKERVILL, Ph.D. Lips., Professor of English Language and Literature in Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Ten. Square 8vo, cloth, pp. 318. 1886. Price 12s.

**MARCH.**—A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE; in which its forms are illustrated by those of the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Old Saxon, Old Friesic, Old Norse, and Old High-German. By FRANCIS A. MARCH, LL.D. Demy 8vo, cloth, pp. xi. and 253. 1877. Price 10s.

**MARCH.**—INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-SAXON. An Anglo-Saxon Reader. With Philological Notes, a Brief Grammar, and a Vocabulary. By FRANCIS A. MARCH, LL.D. 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 166. 1870. Price 7s. 6d.

**RASK.—GRAMMAR OF THE ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE**, from the Danish of Erasmus Rask. By BENJAMIN THORPE. Third Edition, corrected and improved, with Plate. Post 8vo, cloth, pp. vi. and 191. 1879. Price 5s. 6d.

**WRIGHT.—ANGLO-SAXON AND OLD ENGLISH VOCABULARIES.** By THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., Hon. M.R.S.L. Illustrating the Condition and Manners of our Forefathers, as well as the History of the forms of Elementary Education, and of the Languages Spoken in this Island from the Tenth Century to the Fifteenth. Second Edition, Edited and Collated by RICHARD PAUL WULCKER. Two vols. demy 8vo, pp. xx.-408, and iv.-486, cloth. 1884. 28s.

### BASQUE.

**VAN EYS.—OUTLINES OF BASQUE GRAMMAR.** By W. J. VAN EYS. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 52. 1883. Price 3s. 6d.

### DANO-NORWEGIAN.

**\*BOJESSEN.—A GUIDE TO THE DANISH LANGUAGE.** Designed for English Students. By Mrs. MARIA BOJESSEN. 12mo, cl., pp. 250. 1863. Price 5s.

**LARSEN.—DANISH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** By L. LARSEN. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 646. 1880. Price 10s. 6d.

**\*OTTÉ.—DANO-NORWEGIAN GRAMMAR: A Manual for Students of Danish**, based on the Ollendorffian System of teaching Languages, and adapted for self-instruction. By E. C. OTTÉ. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xix. and 337. 1884. Price 7s. 6d.

Key to ditto. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 84. Price 3s.

**\*OTTÉ.—SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE DANISH LANGUAGE.** By E. C. OTTÉ. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 66. 1884. Price 2s. 6d.

**ROSING.—ENGLISH-DANISH DICTIONARY.** By S. ROSING. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 722. 1883. Price 8s. 6d.

**SMITH and HORNEMAN.—NORWEGIAN GRAMMAR; with a Glossary for Tourists.** By M. SMITH and H. HORNEMAN. Post 8vo, cloth, pp. 64. 1889. Price 2s.

### DUTCH.

**\*AHN.—A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE DUTCH LANGUAGE**, with Selections from the Best Authors in Prose and Poetry. After Dr. F. AHN's Method. Fourth Edition, thoroughly Revised and Enlarged by Dr. J. M. HOOGVLIET and Dr. KERN (of Leiden). 12mo, pp. viii. and 168, cloth. 1887. Price 3s. 6d.

**KRAMERS.—NEW POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH-DUTCH AND DUTCH-ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** Containing also in the First Part Pronunciation, and a Vocabulary of Proper Names, Geographical and Historical. By J. KRAMERS. 16mo, cl., pp. xiv. & 714. 1876. Price 4s.

**PICARD.—A NEW POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH-DUTCH AND DUTCH-ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** Remodelled and corrected from the Best Authorities. By A. PICARD. Fifth Edition, 16mo, cloth, pp. xiv. and 1186. 1877. Price 10s.



# ENGLISH.

- \*ANDERSON.—PRACTICAL MERCANTILE CORRESPONDENCE.** A Collection of Modern Letters of Business, with Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and an Appendix, containing a Dictionary of Commercial Technicalities, *pro forma* Invoices, Account Sales, Bills of Lading, and Bills of Exchange; also an Explanation of the German Chain Rule. Twenty-ninth Edition, revised and enlarged. By WILLIAM ANDERSON. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xxxii. and 280. Price 3s. 6d.
- BELL.—SOUNDS AND THEIR RELATIONS.** A Complete Manual of Universal Alphabets, Illustrated by means of Visible Speech; and Exhibiting the Pronunciation of English, in Various Styles, and of other Languages and Dialects. By A. MELVILLE BELL, F.E.I.S., &c. 4to, cloth, pp. viii. and 102. 1881. Price 7s. 6d.
- BELL.—THE FAULTS OF SPEECH; a Self-Corrector and Teachers' Manual.** By A. MELVILLE BELL, F.E.I.S. 18mo, cloth, pp. vi. and 65. 1880. Price 2s. 6d.
- BELL.—THE PRINCIPLES OF ELOCUTION,** with Exercises and Notations for Pronunciation, Intonation, Emphasis, Gesture, and Emotional Expression. By A. MELVILLE BELL, F.E.I.S., &c. Fourth Revised and Enlarged Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. 243. 1878. Price 7s. 6d.
- BELL.—VISIBLE SPEECH.** The Science of Universal Alphabets; or, Self-Interpreting Physiological Letters for the Writing of all Languages in One Alphabet. Illustrated by Tables, Diagrams and Examples. By A. MELVILLE BELL, F.E.I.S., &c. 4to, cloth, pp. 126. 1867. Price £1. 5s.
- BELL.—ENGLISH VISIBLE SPEECH FOR THE MILLION** for Communicating the Exact Pronunciation of the Language to Native and Foreign Learners, and for Teaching Children and Illiterate Adults to Read in a few days. By A. MELVILLE BELL, F.E.I.S., &c. 4to, paper, pp. 16. 1867. Price 2s.
- FURNIVALL.—EDUCATION IN EARLY ENGLAND.** Some Notes used as Forewords to a Collection of Treatises on "Manners and Meals in Olden Times," for the Early English Text Society. By FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 8vo, paper, pp. 4 and lxxiv. 1867. Price 1s.
- GALLOWAY.—EDUCATION: SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL; or, How the Inductive Sciences are Taught, and How they Ought to be Taught.** By R. GALLOWAY, F.C.S. 8vo, cl., pp. xvi. & 462. 1881. Price 10s. 6d.
- GOULD.—GOOD ENGLISH; or, Popular Errors in Language.** By EDWARD S. GOULD. New Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. ix. and 214. 1880. Price 6s.
- HALL.—ON ENGLISH ADJECTIVES IN -ABLE,** with Special Reference to RELIABLE. By FITZEDWARD HALL, C.E., M.A., Hon. D.C.L., Oxon. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 238. 1877. Price 7s. 6d.
- HARLEY.—THE SIMPLIFICATION OF ENGLISH SPELLING,** specially adapted to the Rising Generation. An Easy Way of Saving Time in Writing, Printing, and Reading. By Dr. GEORGE HARLEY, F.R.S., F.C.S. 8vo, cloth, pp. 128. 1877. Price 2s. 6d.
- HYMANS.—PUPIL versus TEACHER.** Letters from a Teacher to a Teacher. By M. HYMANS. 18mo, cloth, pp. 92. 1875. Price 2s.
- INMAN.—HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH ALPHABET.** A Paper read before the Liverpool Literary and Philosophical Society. By T. INMAN, M.D. 8vo, paper, pp. 36. 1872. Price 1s.

- JENKINS.—VEST-POCKET LEXICON.** An English Dictionary of all except Familiar Words, including the principal Scientific and Technical Terms, and Foreign Moneys, Weights and Measures; omitting what everybody knows, and containing what everybody wants to know and cannot readily find. By JABEZ JENKINS. 64mo, cloth, pp. 563. 1879. Price 1s. 6d.
- MANNING.—AN INQUIRY INTO THE CHARACTER AND ORIGIN OF THE POSSESSIVE AUGMENT** in English and in Cognate Dialects. By the late JAMES MANNING, Q.A.S., Recorder of Oxford. 8vo, paper, pp. iv. and 90. 1864. Price 2s.
- PARRY.—A SHORT CHAPTER ON LETTER-CHANGE,** with Examples. Being chiefly an attempt to reduce in a simple manner the principal classical and cognate words to their primitive meanings. By J. PARRY, B.A., formerly Scholar of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo, pp. 16, wrapper. 1884. Price 1s.
- PLUMPTRE.—KING'S COLLEGE LECTURES ON ELOCUTION; or, The Physiology and Culture of Voice and Speech, and the Expression of the Emotions by Language, Countenance and Gesture.** To which is added a Special Lecture on the Causes and Cure of the Impediments of Speech. Being the Substance of the Introductory Course of Lectures annually delivered by CHARLES JOHN PLUMPTRE, Lecturer on Public Reading and Speaking at King's College, London, in the Evening Classes Department. Dedicated by permission to H. R. H. the Prince of Wales. Fourth and greatly enlarged Illustrated Edition. 8vo, cloth, pp. xvi. and 494. 1883. Price 15s.
- PLUMPTRE.—THE RIGHT MODE OF RESPIRATION, in Regard to Speech.** Song, and Health. By CHARLES JOHN PLUMPTRE, Author of "King's College Lectures on Elocution," of which this forms Lecture VI. Demy 8vo, pp. iv.—16, wrapper. Price 1s.
- RUNDALL.—A SHORT AND EASY WAY TO WRITE ENGLISH AS SPOKEN.** By J. B. RUNDALL, Certificated Member of the London Shorthand Writers' Association. Price 6d.
- SPRUNER.—HISTORICO-GEOGRAPHICAL HAND-ATLAS.** By Dr. KARI VON SPRUNER. Third Edition. Twenty-seven Coloured Maps. Oblong cloth. 1872. Price 15s.
- TURNER.—THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.** A Concise History of the English Language, with a Glossary showing the Derivation and Pronunciation of the English Words. By ROGER TURNER. In German and English on opposite Pages. 18mo, pp. viii.—80, sewed. 1884. Price 1s. 6d.
- UNGER.—SHORT CUT TO READING.** *The Child's First Book of Lessons.* Part I. By W. H. UNGER. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 32. 1878. Price 5d. *In folio sheets*, pp. 44. Sets A to D, 10d. each; set E, 8d. *Complete*, 4s. *SEQUEL* to Part I. and Part II. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 64. 1877. Price 6d. Parts I. and II. in One Volume. Third Edition. Demy 8vo, cloth, pp. 76. 1873. Price 1s. 6d.
- UNGER.—CONTINUOUS SUPPLEMENTARY WRITING MODELS,** designed to impart not only a Good Business Hand, but Correctness in Transcribing. By W. H. UNGER. New Edition. Oblong 8vo, stiff covers, pp. 44. Price 6d.
- UNGER.—THE STUDENT'S BLUE BOOK.** Being Selections from Official Correspondence, Reports, &c.; for Exercises in Reading and Copying Manuscripts, Writing, Orthography, Punctuation, Dictation, Précis, Indexing, and Digesting, and Tabulating Accounts and Returns. Compiled by W. H. UNGER. Folio, paper, pp. 100. 1875. Price 2s.



- UNGER.—TWO HUNDRED TESTS IN ENGLISH ORTHOGRAPHY, or Word Dictations.** Compiled by W. H. UNGER. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, pp. vi. and 200. 1877. Price 1s. 6d.; interleaved, 2s. 6d.
- UNGER.—THE SCRIPT PRIMER.** By which one of the Remaining Difficulties of Children is entirely removed in the First Stages, and, as a consequence, a considerable saving of time will be effected. In Two Parts. By W. H. UNGER. Part I. 12mo, cloth, pp. xv. and 44. 1879. Price 5d. Part II. 12mo, cloth, pp. 59. 1879. Price 5d.
- UNGER.—PRELIMINARY WORD DICTATIONS ON THE RULES FOR SPELLING.** By W. H. UNGER. 18mo, cloth, pp. 44. Price 4d.; interleaved, 6d.
- WEDGWOOD.—THE PRINCIPLES OF GEOMETRICAL DEMONSTRATION,** reduced from the Original Conception of Space and Form. By H. WEDGWOOD, M.A. 12mo, cloth, pp. 48. 1844. Price 2s.
- WEDGWOOD.—ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE UNDERSTANDING.** By H. WEDGWOOD, M.A. 12mo, cloth, pp. 133. 1848. Price 3s.
- WEDGWOOD.—THE GEOMETRY OF THE THREE FIRST BOOKS OF EUCLID.** By Direct Proof from Definitions alone. By H. WEDGWOOD, M.A. 12mo, cloth, pp. 104. 1856. Price 3s.
- WEDGWOOD.—ON THE ORIGIN OF LANGUAGE.** By H. WEDGWOOD, M.A. 12mo, cloth, pp. 165. 1866. Price 3s. 6d.
- WEDGWOOD.—A DICTIONARY OF ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.** By H. WEDGWOOD, M.A. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. With Introduction on the Origin of Language. 8vo, cloth, pp. lxxii. and 746. 1878. Price £1, 1s.
- WEDGWOOD.—CONTESTED ETYMOLOGIES IN THE DICTIONARY OF THE REV. W. W. SKEAT.** By H. WEDGWOOD. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii.—194. 1882. Price 5s.
- WIEBÉ.—THE PARADISE OF CHILDHOOD.** A Manual for Self-Instruction in Friederich Froebel's Educational Principles, and a Practical Guide to Kinder-Gartners. By EDWARD WIEBÉ. With Seventy-four Plates of Illustrations. 4to, paper, pp. iv.—83. 1869. Price 7s. 6d.
- WITHERS.—THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE SPELLED AS PRONOUNCED,** with Enlarged Alphabet of Forty Letters, a Letter for each Distinct Element in the Language. By G. WITHERS. 8vo, paper, pp. 77. 1874. Price 1s.

## FRENCH.

- \*AHN.—NEW, PRACTICAL, AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.** By Dr. F. AHN. First Course. 12mo, cloth, pp. 114. Price 1s. 6d. Second Course. 12mo, cloth, pp. 170. Price 1s. 6d. The Two Courses in 1 vol. 12mo, cloth. 1879. Price 3s.
- \*AHN.—NEW, PRACTICAL, AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.** Third Course, containing a French Reader, with Notes and Vocabulary. By H. W. EHRLICH. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 125. 1877. Price 1s. 6d.
- \*ARAGO.—LES ARISTOCRATIES.** A Comedy in Verse. By ÉTIENNE ARAGO. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Étienne Arago, by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D., Head-Master of the French School, Christ's Hospital, Examiner in the University of London. 12mo, cloth, pp. xiii. and 235. 1869. Price 4s.

**ASPLET.—THE COMPLETE FRENCH COURSE.** Part II. Containing all the Rules of French Syntax, Irregular Verbs, Adjectives, and Verbs, together with Extracts from the Best Authors. By GEORGES C. ASPLET, French Master, Frome. 12mo, cloth, pp. xviii. and 276. 1880. Price 2s. 6d.

\***AUGIER.—DIANE.** A Drama in Verse. By ÉMILE AUGIER. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Augier, by THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B., of the Royal Military Academy and the University of London. 12mo, cloth, pp. xiii. and 145. 1867. Price 2s. 6d.

u? **BARANOWSKI.—VADE-MECUM DE LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE.** Rédigé d'après les Dictionnaires classiques avec les Exemples de Bonnes Locutions que donne l'Académie Française, ou qu'on trouve dans les ouvrages des plus célèbres auteurs. Par J. J. BARANOWSKI, avec l'approbation de M. E. LITTRÉ, Sénateur, &c. 32mo, cloth, pp. x.—223. 1879. Price 2s. 6d.; morocco, 3s. 6d.; morocco tuck, 4s.

\***BARRIERE and CAPENDU.—LES FAUX BONSHOMMES.** A Comedy. By THÉODORE BARRIERE and ERNEST CAPENDU. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Barrière, by Professor CH. CASSAL, LL.D., of University College, London. 12mo, cloth, pp. xvi. and 304. 1868. Price 4s.

**BELLOWS.—TOUS LES VERBES.** Conjugations of all the Verbs in the French and English Languages. By JOHN BELLOWS. Revised by Professor BELJAME, B.A., LL.B., and GEORGE B. STRICKLAND, late Assistant French Master, Royal Naval School, London. Also a New Table of Equivalent Values of French and English Money, Weights, and Measures. Second Edition. 32mo, sewed, pp. 48. 1889. Price 6d.

**BELLOWS.—DICTIONARY FOR THE POCKET.** French and English—English and French. Both divisions on same page. By JOHN BELLOWS. Masculine and Feminine Words shown by distinguishing Types, Conjugations of all the Verbs, *Liaison* marked in French Part, and Hints to Aid Pronunciation, together with Tables and Maps. Revised by ALEXANDRE BELJAME, M.A. Second Edition. 32mo, roan tuck, pp. 608. 1880. Price 10s. 6d.; morocco tuck, 12s. 6d.

**BRETTE and THOMAS.—FRENCH EXAMINATION PAPERS,** set at the University of London from 1839 to January 1888. Compiled and edited by the Rev. P. B. ERNEST BRETTE, B.D., Head Master of the French School, Christ's Hospital, London; Examiner in the University of London; at Eton College, &c., &c.; and FERDINAND THOMAS, B.A., B.Sc., Late Assistant Examiner in the University of London.

PART I.—MATRICULATION EXAMINATIONS, JULY 1853 TO JANUARY 1888. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xx. and 176. Price 3s. 6d.

KEY TO PART I. Price 5s.

In the Key all the Extracts from the Writings of French Authors are translated into English, and all the Questions on Grammar, Idiom, and Elementary Etymology are fully answered.

PART II.—FIRST B.A. (or INTERMEDIATE IN ARTS) and B.A. PASS EXAMINATIONS;—Examinations for Honours (Intermediate in Arts and B.A.); and for Certificates of Higher Proficiency—M.A. (Branch IV.), and D.Litt. Examinations. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xx. and 441. Price 7s.

The KEY TO PART II. will be divided into Two Divisions, and will be published early in 1890.



- CASSAL.—GLOSSARY OF IDIOMS, GALLICISMS, and other Difficulties** contained in the Senior Course of the Modern French Reader. With Short Notices of the most important French Writers and Historical or Literary Characters, and Hints as to the Works to be Read or Studied. By CHARLES CASSAL, LL.D. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 104. 1880. Price 2s. 6d.
- \***EHRlich.—FRENCH READER.** With Notes and Vocabulary. By H. W. EHRlich. 12mo, limp cloth, pp. viii. and 125. 1877. Price 1s. 6d.
- FRUSTON.—ECHO FRANCAIS.** A Practical Guide to French Conversation. By F. DE LA FRUSTON. With a Complete Vocabulary. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 120 and 71. 1878. Price 3s.
- \***KARCHER.—QUESTIONNAIRE FRANCAIS.** Questions on French Grammar, Idiomatic Difficulties, and Military Expressions. By THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B. Fourth Edition, greatly enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 215. 1879. Price 4s. 6d.; interleaved with writing paper, 5s. 6d.
- \***LE-BRUN.—MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING FROM ENGLISH INTO FRENCH.** Being a Short Essay on Translation, followed by a Graduated Selection in Prose and Verse. By L. LE-BRUN. Sixth Edition. Revised and corrected by HENRI VAN LAUN. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 204. 1882. Price 4s. 6d.
- \***LITTLE FRENCH READER (The).** Extracted from "The Modern French Reader." Edited by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.B., and Professor T. KARCHER, LL.B. With a New System of Conjugating the French Verbs, by Professor CASSAL. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 112. 1884. Price 2s.
- MANESCA.—THE SERIAL AND ORAL METHOD OF TEACHING LANGUAGES.** Adapted to the French. By L. MANESCA. New Edition, carefully revised. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xxviii. and 535. Price 7s. 6d.
- \***MARMonTEL.—BÉLISAIRe.** Par J. F. MARMonTEL. With Introduction by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE and Professors CASSAL and KARCHER. Nouvelle Edition, 12mo, cloth, pp. xii. and 123. 1867. Price 2s. 6d.
- \***MODERN FRENCH READER (The).** PROSE. Junior Course. Edited by C. CASSAL, LL.D., and THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xiv. and 224. 1881. Price 2s. 6d.
- \***MODERN FRENCH READER (The).** PROSE. Senior Course. Edited by C. CASSAL, LL.D., and THEODORE KARCHER, LL.B. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cl., pp. xi. & 418. 1880. Price 4s. With Glossary. Price 6s.
- NOIRIT.—A FRENCH COURSE IN TEN LESSONS.** By JULES NOIRIT, B.A. Lessons I.-IV. Crown 8vo, limp cloth, pp. xiv. and 8c. 1870. Price 1s. 6d.
- NOIRIT.—FRENCH GRAMMATICAL QUESTIONS** for the Use of Gentlemen Preparing for the Army, Civil Service, Oxford Examinations, &c., &c. By JULES NOIRIT. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 62. 1870. Price 1s.; interleaved, 1s. 6d.
- NOTLEY.—COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, and PORTUGUESE LANGUAGES.** With a Copious Vocabulary. By EDWIN A. NOTLEY. Oblong 12mo, cloth, pp. xv. and 396. 1868. Price 7s. 6d.

**NUGENT'S IMPROVED FRENCH AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND FRENCH POCKET DICTIONARY.** Par SMITH. 24mo, cloth, pp. xxxii. and 320, and 488. 1875. Price 3s.

**\*PONSARD.—CHARLOTTE CORDAY.** A Tragedy. By F. PONSARD. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Ponsard, by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.D. Third Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. xi. and 133. 1871. Price 2s. 6d.

**\*PONSARD.—L'HONNEUR ET L'ARGENT.** A Comedy. By F. PONSARD. Edited, with English Notes and Memoir of Ponsard, by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.D. Second Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. xvi. and 171. 1869. Price 3s. 6d.

**ROCHE.—FRENCH GRAMMAR** for the Use of English Students, adopted for the Public Schools by the Imperial Council of Public Instruction. By A. ROCHE. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 176. 1869. Price 3s.

**ROCHE.—PROSE AND POETRY.** Select Pieces from the Best English Authors, for Reading, Composition, and Translation. By A. ROCHE. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo, cl., pp. viii. and 226. 1872. Price 2s. 6d.

**RUNDALL.—MÉTHODE RAPIDE ET FACILE D'ÉCRIRE LE FRANCAIS** COMME ON LE PARLE. Par J. B. RUNDALL. Price 6d.

**\*THÉÂTRE FRANCAIS MODERNE.**—A Selection of Modern French Plays. Edited by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.; C. CASSAL, LL.D.; and TH. KARCHER, LL.B.

*First Series*, in 1 vol. crown 8vo, cloth. Price 6s. Containing—

**CHARLOTTE CORDAY.** A Tragedy. By F. PONSARD. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Ponsard, by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.D.

**DIANE.** A Drama in Verse. By EMILE AUGIER. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Augier, by TH. KARCHER, LL.B.

**LE VOYAGE À DIEPPE.** A Comedy in Prose. By WAFFLARD and FULGENCE. Edited, with English Notes, by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.

*Second Series*, crown 8vo, cloth. Price 6s. Containing—

**MOLIÈRE.** A Drama in Prose. By GEORGE SAND. Edited, with English Notes and Notice of George Sand, by TH. KARCHER, LL.B.

**LES ARISTOCRATIES.** A Comedy in Verse. By ÉTIENNE ARAGO. Edited, with English Notes and Notice of Étienne Arago, by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.

*Third Series*, crown 8vo, cloth. Price 6s. Containing—

**LES FAUX BONSHOMMES.** A Comedy. By THÉODORE BARRIÈRE and ERNEST CAPENDU. Edited, with English Notes and Notice on Barrière, by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.D.

**L'HONNEUR ET L'ARGENT.** A Comedy. By F. PONSARD. Edited, with English Notes and Memoir of Ponsard, by Professor C. CASSAL, LL.D.



- \***VAN LAUN.—GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.** In Three Parts. Parts I. and II. Accidence and Syntax. By H. VAN LAUN. Nineteenth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 151 and 120. 1880. Price 4s. Part III. Exercises. Eighteenth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 285. 1880. Price 3s. 6d.
- \***WAFFLARD and FULGENCE.—LE VOYAGE À DIEPPE.** A Comedy in Prose. By MM. WAFFLARD and FULGENCE. Edited, with English Notes, by the Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D. Second Edition, revised, with an Index to the Notes. 12mo, cloth, pp. 107. 1870. Price 2s. 6d.
- WELLER.—AN IMPROVED DICTIONARY.** English and French, and French and English, including Technical, Scientific, Legal, Commercial, Naval, and Military Terms, Vocabularies of Engineering, &c., Railway Terms, Steam Navigation, Geographical Names, Ancient Mythology, Classical Antiquity, and Christian Names in present use. By E. WELLER. Third Edition. Royal 8vo, cloth, pp. 384 and 340. 1864. Price 7s. 6d.

---

## FRISIAN.

- CUMMINS.—GRAMMAR OF THE OLD FRIESIC LANGUAGE.** By A. H. CUMMINS, A.M. Crown 8vo, pp. 128, cloth. 1887. Price 6s.

---

## GERMAN.

- \***AHN.—PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,** with a Grammatical Index and Glossary of all the German Words. By Dr. F. AHN. A New Edition, containing numerous Additions, Alterations, and Improvements. By DAWSON W. TURNER, D.C.L., and Prof. F. L. WEINMANN. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. cxi. and 430. 1878. Price 3s. 6d.
- \***AHN.—NEW, PRACTICAL, AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.** By Dr. F. AHN. First and Second Course, in 1 volume, 12mo, cloth, pp. 86 and 120. 1880. Price 3s.  
KEY to Ditto. 12mo, sewed, pp. 40. Price 8d.
- \***AHN.—MANUAL OF GERMAN CONVERSATION,** or Vade Mecum for ENGLISH TRAVELLERS. By Dr. F. AHN. Second Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. x. and 137. 1875. Price 1s. 6d.
- \***APEL.—PROSE SPECIMENS FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN,** with copious Vocabularies. By H. APEL. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 246, 1862. Price 4s. 6d.
- \***BENEDIX.—DER VETTER.** Comedy in Three Acts. By Roderich Benedix. With Grammatical and Explanatory Notes by F. WEINMANN, German Master at the Royal Institution School, Liverpool, and G. ZIMMERMANN, Teacher of Modern Languages. 12mo, cloth, pp. 126. 1863. Price 2s. 6d.
- BOLIA.—THE GERMAN CALIGRAPHER.** Copies for German Hand-writing. By C. BOLIA. Obl. fcap. 4to, sewed, pp. 6. Price 1s.
- DUSAR.—GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE;** with Exercises. By P. FRIEDRICH DUSAR, First German Master in the Military Department of Cheltenham College. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 207. 1879. Price 4s. 6d.

- DUSAR.**—**GRAMMATICAL COURSE OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.** By P. FRIEDRICH DUSAR. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. x. and 134. 1877. Price 3s. 6d.
- FRIEDRICH.**—**PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER.** With Copious Notes to the First Part. By P. FRIEDRICH. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. vii. and 190. 1876. Price 4s. 6d.
- \***FREMBLING.**—**GRADUATED GERMAN READER.** Consisting of a Selection from the most Popular Writers, arranged progressively; with a complete Vocabulary for the First Part. By FRIEDRICH OTTO FREMBLING, Ph.D. Eighth Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 306. 1879. Price 3s. 6d.
- \***FREMBLING.**—**GRADUATED EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN.** Consisting of Extracts from the best English Authors, arranged progressively; with an Appendix, containing Idiomatic Notes. By FRIEDRICH OTTO FREMBLING, Ph.D., Principal German Master at the City of London School. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xiv. and 322. With Notes, pp. 66. 1867. Price 4s. 6d. Without Notes, 4s.
- LANGE.**—**GERMAN PROSE WRITING.** Comprising English Passages for Translation into German. Selected from Examination Papers of the University of London, the College of Preceptors, London, and the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, arranged progressively, with Notes and Theoretical as well as Practical Treatises on Themes for the Writing of Essays. By F. K. W. LANGE, Ph.D., Assistant German Master, Royal Academy, Woolwich; Examiner, Royal College of Preceptors, London. Crown 8vo, pp. viii. and 176, cloth. 1881. Price 4s.
- LANGE.**—**GERMANIA.** A German Reading-Book, arranged Progressively. By FRANZ K. W. LANGE, Ph.D. Part I.—Anthology of German Prose and Poetry, with Vocabulary and Biographical Notes. 8vo, cloth, pp. xvi. and 216. 1881. Price 3s. 6d. Part II.—Essays on German History and Institutions. With Notes. 8vo, cloth, pp. 124. Parts I. and II. together. 1881. Price 5s. 6d.
- LANGE.**—**GERMAN GRAMMAR PRACTICE.** By F. K. W. LANGE, Ph.D., &c. Crown 8vo, pp. viii. and 64, cloth. 1882. Price 1s. 6d.
- LANGE.**—**COLLOQUIAL GERMAN GRAMMAR.** With Special Reference to the Anglo-Saxon Element in the English Language. By F. K. W. LANGE, Ph.D., &c. Crown 8vo, pp. xxxii. and 380, cloth. 1882. Price 4s. 6d.
- RUNDALL.**—**KURZE UND LEICHTE WEISE DEUTSCH ZU SCHREIBEN** wie man es Spricht. Von J. B. Rundall. Price 6d.
- SINCLAIR.**—**A GERMAN VOCABULARY OF SOME OF THE MINOR DIFFICULTIES IN THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, AND EASY CONVERSATIONS.** By F. SINCLAIR. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 88. 1888. Price 2s.
- WOLFRAM.**—**DEUTSCHES ECHO.** The German Echo. A Faithful Mirror of German Conversation. By LUDWIG WOLFRAM. With a Vocabulary, by HENRY P. SKELTON. Sixth Revised Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 128 and 69. 1879. Price 3s.



## GREEK.

**CONTOPOULOS.** — **A LEXICON OF MODERN GREEK-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH MODERN GREEK.** By N. CONTOPOULOS. Part I. Modern Greek-English. Part II. English Modern Greek. In 2 vols. 8vo, cloth, pp. 460 and 582. 1877. Price 27s.

**CONTOPOULOS.** — **HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH AND GREEK DIALOGUES AND CORRESPONDENCE,** with a Short Guide to the Antiquities of Athens. By N. CONTOPOULOS. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 238. Price 2s. 6d.

**\*GELDART.** — **A GUIDE TO MODERN GREEK.** By E. M. GELDART, M.A. Post 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 274. 1883. Price 7s. 6d. — **KEY,** cloth, pp. 28, price 2s. 6d.

**\*GELDART.** — **SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF MODERN GREEK.** By E. M. GELDART, M.A. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 68. 1883. Price 2s. 6d.

**LASCARIDES.** — **A COMPREHENSIVE PHRASEOLOGICAL ENGLISH-ANCIENT AND MODERN GREEK LEXICON.** Founded upon a Manuscript of G. P. LASCARIDES, Esq., and compiled by L. MYRIANTHEUS, Ph.D. Two vols., cloth, fcap. 8vo, pp. xii. and 1338. 1883. Price £1, 10s.

## HUNGARIAN.

**\*SINGER.** — **A SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE HUNGARIAN LANGUAGE.** By IGNATIUS SINGER, of Buda-Pesth. Crown 8vo, pp. vi. and 88, cloth. 1882. Price 4s. 6d.

## INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGES.

**BELL.** — **WORLD ENGLISH THE UNIVERSAL LANGUAGE.** By ALEXANDER MELVILLE BELL, Author of "Visible Speech," &c. Royal 8vo, pp. 34, wrappers. 1888. Price 1s.

**BELL.** — **HANDBOOK OF WORLD ENGLISH.** By ALEXANDER MELVILLE BELL, Author of "Visible Speech," &c. Demy 8vo, pp. 38, wrappers, cloth back. 1888. Price 1s.

**SPRAGUE.** — **THE INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE. HANDBOOK OF VOLAPÜK.** By CHARLES E. SPRAGUE, Member of the Academy of Volapük, President of the Institute of Accounts, U.S. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 119. Price 5s.

**WOOD.** — **DICTIONARY OF VOLAPUK.** Volapuk-English and English-Volapuk. By M. M. WOOD, M.D., Captain and Assistant-Surgeon, United States Army, Volapükatidele cif. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 398. 1889. Price 10s. 6d. Volapuk has obtained a footing of its own among the speakers of twenty-one different tongues, and its adherents are numbered by hundreds of thousands.

## ITALIAN.

**\*AHN.** — **NEW, PRACTICAL, AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.** By Dr. F. AHN. First and Second Course. Thirteenth Issue. 12mo, cloth, pp. iv. and 198. 1886. Price 3s. 6d.

**CAMERINI.** — **L'ECO ITALIANO. A Practical Guide to Italian Conversation.** By EUGENE CAMERINI. With a Complete Vocabulary. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii., 128, and 98. 1871. Price 4s. 6d.

- LANARI.**—COLLECTION OF ITALIAN AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES ON GENERAL SUBJECTS. For the Use of those Desirous of Speaking the Italian Language Correctly. Preceded by a Brief Treatise on the Pronunciation of the same. By A. LANARI. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 199. Price 3s. 6s.
- MILLHOUSE.**—MANUAL OF ITALIAN CONVERSATION, for the Use of Schools and Travellers. By JOHN MILLHOUSE. New Edition. 18mo, cloth, pp. 126. 1879. Price 2s.
- MILLHOUSE.**—NEW ENGLISH AND ITALIAN PRONOUNCING AND EXPLANATORY DICTIONARY. By JOHN MILLHOUSE. Vol. I. English-Italian. Vol. II. Italian-English. Sixth Edition. 2 vols. square 8vo, cloth, pp. 654 and 740. 1887. Price 12s.
- NOTLEY.**—COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, AND PORTUGUESE LANGUAGES. With a Copious Vocabulary. By EDWIN A. NOTLEY. Oblong 12mo, cloth, pp. xv. and 396. 1868. Price 7s. 6d.
- TOSCANI.**—ITALIAN CONVERSATIONAL COURSE. A New Method of Teaching the Italian Language, both Theoretically and Practically. By GIOVANNI TOSCANI, late Professor of the Italian Language and Literature in Queen's College, London, &c. Fifth Edition. 12mo, cloth, pp. xiv. and 300. 1880. Price 5s.
- TOSCANI.**—ITALIAN READING COURSE. Comprehending Specimens in Prose and Poetry of the most distinguished Italian Writers, with Biographical Notices, Explanatory Notes, and Rules on Prosody. By G. TOSCANI. 12mo, cloth, pp. xii. and 160. With Table of Verbs. 1875. Price 4s. 6d.

### LATIN.

- \*IHNE.**—LATIN GRAMMAR FOR BEGINNERS, on Ahn's System. By W. H. IHNE, late Principal of Carlton Terrace School, Liverpool. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. vi. and 184. 1864. Price 3s.
- LEWIS.**—JUVENALIS SATIRÆ. With a Literal English Prose Translation and Notes. By J. D. LEWIS, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 230 and 400. 1882. Price 12s.
- LEWIS.**—THE LETTERS OF PLINY THE YOUNGER. Translated by J. D. LEWIS, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. Post 8vo, cloth, pp. vii. and 390. 1879. Price 5s.

### POLISH.

- BARANOWSKI.**—SŁOWNIK POLSKO-ANGIELSKI OPRACOWANY. Przez J. J. BARANOWSKIEGO, 6 Podsekretarza Banku Polskiego, w Warszawie. (Polish-English Lexicon. With Grammatical Rules in Polish.) 16mo, cloth, pp. 403. Price 12s.
- BARANOWSKI.**—ANGLO-POLISH LEXICON. By J. J. BARANOWSKI, formerly Under-Secretary to the Bank of Poland, in Warsaw. (With Grammatical Rules in English, and a Second Part, containing Dialogues, Bills of Exchange, Receipts, Letters, &c.; English and Polish Proverbs, &c.) 16mo, cloth, pp. vii. 400 and 90. Price 12s.
- \*MORFILL.**—SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE POLISH LANGUAGE. By W. R. MORFILL, M.A. Cr. 8vo, pp. viii.-64, cloth. 1884. Price 3s. 6d.



## PORTUGUESE.

- \***ANDERSON and TUGMAN.**—**MERCANTILE CORRESPONDENCE.** Containing a Collection of Commercial Letters in Portuguese and English, with their Translation on opposite pages, for the Use of Business Men and of Students in either of the Languages, treating in Modern Style of the System of Business in the principal Commercial Cities of the World. Accompanied by *pro forma* Accounts, Sales, Invoices, Bills of Lading, Drafts, &c. With an Introduction and Copious Notes. By **WILLIAM ANDERSON** and **JAMES E. TUGMAN.** 12mo, cloth, pp. xi. and 193. 1867. Price 6s.
- BENSABAT.**—**NOVO DICCIONARIO INGLEZ-PORTUGUEZ.** Composte sobre os Dicionarios de Johnson, Webster, Grand, Richardson, &c., e as Obras especiais de uma e outra Lingua por **JACOB BENSABAT.** 8vo, sheep, pp. xvi. and 1596. 1885. Price £1, 10s.
- \***D'ORSEY.**—**PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF PORTUGUESE AND ENGLISH.** Exhibiting in a Series of Exercises, in Double Translation, the Idiomatic Structure of both Languages, as now written and spoken. By the Rev. **ALEXANDER J. D. D'ORSEY, B.D.,** of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and Lecturer on Public Reading and Speaking at King's College, London. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 302. 1887. Price 7s.
- \***D'ORSEY.**—**COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE; or, Words and Phrases of Everyday Life.** Compiled from Dictation and Conversation. For the Use of English Tourists in Portugal, Brazil, Madeira, and the Azores. With a Brief Collection of Epistolary Phrases. By the Rev. **A. J. D. D'ORSEY.** Fourth Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 126. 1886. Price 3s. 6d.
- NOTLEY.**—**COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, AND PORTUGUESE LANGUAGES.** With a Copious Vocabulary. By **EDWIN A. NOTLEY.** Oblong 12mo, cloth, pp. xv. and 396. 1868. Price 7s. 6d.
- VIEYRA.**—**A NEW POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE PORTUGUESE AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** In Two Parts, Portuguese and English and English and Portuguese. Abridged from "*Vieyra's Dictionary.*" A New Edition, considerably Enlarged and Corrected. Two vols. Pott 8vo, pp. viii. and 760 and vi. and 924, bound in leather. 1889. Price 10s.

## ROUMANIAN.

- \***TORCEANU.**—**SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE ROUMANIAN LANGUAGE.** By **R. TORCEANU.** Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 72. 1884. Price 5s.

## RUSSIAN.

- ALEXANDROW.**—**COMPLETE ENGLISH-RUSSIAN AND RUSSIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** By **A. ALEXANDROW.** 2 vols. demy 8vo, cloth. pp. x. and 734 and iv. and 1076. 1879 and 1885. Price £2.
- FREETH.**—**A CONDENSED RUSSIAN GRAMMAR** for the Use of Staff-Officers and Others. By **F. FREETH, B.A.,** late Classical Scholar of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo, pp. iv.-75, cloth. 1886. Price 3s. 6d.

**MAKAROFF.—DICTIONNAIRE FRANCAIS-RUSSE ET RUSSE-FRANCAIS.** Complet. Composé par N. P. MAKAROFF. Honoré par l'Académie des Sciences d'une Mention Honorable, approuvé par les Comités Scientifiques et adopté dans les Établissements d'Instruction. 2 vols. in four parts. Super royal 8vo, wrapper. 1884. Price 30s.

\***RIOLA.—HOW TO LEARN RUSSIAN.** A Manual for Students of Russian, based upon the Ollendorffian System of Teaching Languages, and adapted for Self-Instruction. By HENRY RIOLA, Teacher of the Russian Language. With a Preface by W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. x. and 567. 1890. Price 12s.

KEY to Ditto. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 126. Price 5s.

\***RIOLA.—GRADUATED RUSSIAN READER,** with a Vocabulary of all the Russian Words contained in it. By HENRY RIOLA. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 314. 1879. Price 10s. 6d.

**THOMPSON.—DIALOGUES, RUSSIAN AND ENGLISH.** Compiled by A. R. Thompson, some time Lecturer of the English Language in the University of St. Vladimir, Kieff. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. iv. and 132. 1882. Price 5s.

### SERBIAN.

**MORFILL.—SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE SERBIAN LANGUAGE.** By W. R. MORFILL, M.A. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 72. 1887. Price 4s. 6d.

### SPANISH.

\***BUTLER.—THE SPANISH TEACHER AND COLLOQUIAL PHRASE-BOOK.** An Easy and Agreeable Method of acquiring a Speaking Knowledge of the Spanish Language. By FRANCOIS BUTLER. 18mo, half-roan, pp. xvi. and 240. 1870. Price 2s. 6d.

\***CARREÑO.—METODO PARA APRENDER A LEER,** escribir y hablar el Inglés segun el sistema de Ollendorff, con un tratado de pronunciacion al principio y un Apendice importante al fin, que sirve de complemento a la obra. Por RAMON PALENZUELA Y JUAN DE LA CARREÑO. Nueva Edicion, con una Pronunciacion Figurada segun un Sistema Fonografico, por ROBERT GOODACRE. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. iv. and 496. 1876. Price 7s. 6d.

KEY to Ditto. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. iii. Price 4s.

**HARTZENBUSCH and LEMMING.—ECO DE MADRID.** A Practical Guide to Spanish Conversation. By J. E. HARTZENBUSCH and H. LEMMING. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii., 144, and 84. 1877. Price 5s.

**NOTLEY.—COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, AND PORTUGUESE LANGUAGES.** With a Copious Vocabulary. By EDWIN A. NOTLEY. Oblong 12mo, cloth, pp. xv. and 396. 1868. Price 7s. 6d.

\***SIMONNE.—METODO PARA APRENDER A LEER,** escribir y hablar el Frances, segun el verdadero sistema de Ollendorff; ordenado en lecciones progresivas, consistiendo de ejercicios orales y escritos; enriquecido de la pronunciacion figurada como se estila en la conversacion; y de un Apéndice abrazando las reglas de la sintáxis, la formacion de los verbos regulares, y la conjugacion de los irregulares. Por TEODORO SIMONNE, Professor de Lenguas. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 342. 1876. Price 6s.

KEY to Ditto. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 80. Price 3s. 6d.



**\*VELASQUEZ and SIMONNÉ.—NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.** Adapted to Ollendorff's System. By M. VELASQUEZ and J. SIMONNÉ. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 558. 1880. Price 6s.

KEY to Ditto. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 174. Price 4s.

**VELASQUEZ.—DICTIONARY OF THE SPANISH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** For the Use of Learners and Travellers. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. In Two Parts.—I. Spanish-English; II. English-Spanish. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 846. 1889. Price 6s.

**VELASQUEZ.—PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY OF THE SPANISH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** Composed from the Dictionaries of the Spanish Academy, Terreros, and Salvá, and Webster, Worcester, and Walker. In Two Parts.—I. Spanish-English; II. English-Spanish. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. Royal 8vo, cloth, pp. xvi. and 675, xv. and 604. 1880. Price £1, 4s.

**\*VELASQUEZ.—NEW SPANISH READER.** Passages from the most approved authors, in Prose and Verse. Arranged in progressive order, with Vocabulary. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 352. 1880. Price 6s.

**\*VELASQUEZ.—AN EASY INTRODUCTION TO SPANISH CONVERSATION,** containing all that is necessary to make a rapid progress in it. Particularly designed for persons who have little time to study, or are their own instructors. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 12mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 139. 1888. Price 2s. 6d.

## SWEDISH.

**NILSSON, WIDMARK, and COLLIN.—ENGLISH-SWEDISH DICTIONARY.** Compiled by L. G. NILSSON, P. F. WIDMARK, and A. Z. COLLIN. New Edition. Demy 8vo, cloth, pp. iv. and 1304. 1889. Price 16s.

**OMAN.—SVENSK-ENGELSK HAND-ORDBOK.** (Swedish-English Dictionary.) By F. E. OMAN. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. iv. and 470. 1872. Price 8s.

**\*OTTÉ.—SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE SWEDISH LANGUAGE.** By E. C. OTTÉ. Crown 8vo, pp. xii.-70, cloth. 1884. Price 2s. 6d.

## TECHNICAL DICTIONARIES.

**EGER.—TECHNOLOGICAL DICTIONARY IN THE ENGLISH AND GERMAN LANGUAGES.** Edited by GUSTAV EGER, Professor of the Polytechnic School of Darmstadt, and Sworn Translator of the Grand Ducal Ministerial Departments. Technically revised and enlarged by OTTO BRANDES, Chemist. 2 vols., royal 8vo, cloth, pp. viii. and 712, and pp. viii. and 970. 1884. £1, 7s.

**KARMARSCH.—TECHNOLOGICAL DICTIONARY OF THE TERMS EMPLOYED IN THE ARTS AND SCIENCES;** Architecture, Civil, Military, and Naval; Civil Engineering; Mechanics; Machine Making; Shipbuilding and Navigation; Metallurgy; Artillery; Mathematics; Physics; Chemistry; Mineralogy, &c. With a Preface by Dr. K. KARMARSCH. Third Edition. 3 vols.

Vol. I. German-English-French. 8vo, cloth, pp. 646. Price 12s.

Vol. II. English-German-French. 8vo, cloth, pp. 666. Price 12s.

Vol. III. French-German-English. 8vo, cloth, pp. 618. Price 15s.

**VEITELLE.—MERCANTILE DICTIONARY.** A Complete Vocabulary of the Technicalities of Commercial Correspondence, Names of Articles of Trade, and Marine Terms, in English, Spanish, and French; with Geographical Names, Business Letters, and Tables of the Abbreviations in Common Use in the three Languages. By I. DE VEITELLE. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 303. Price 7s. 6d.

## TURKISH.

**ARNOLD.—SIMPLE TRANSLITERAL GRAMMAR OF THE TURKISH LANGUAGE.** Compiled from Various Sources. With Dialogues and Vocabulary. By Sir EDWIN ARNOLD, M.A., K.C.I.E., C.S.I., F.R.G.S. 18mo, cloth, pp. 80. 1877. Price 2s. 6d.

**HOPKINS.—ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF THE TURKISH LANGUAGE.** With a Few Easy Exercises. By F. L. HOPKINS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 48. 1877. Price 3s. 6d.

**REDHOUSE.—THE TURKISH VADE-MECUM OF OTTOMAN COLLOQUIAL LANGUAGE:** Containing a Concise Ottoman Grammar; a Carefully Selected Vocabulary, Alphabetically Arranged, in Two Parts, English and Turkish, and Turkish and English; also a Few Familiar Dialogues and Naval and Military Terms. The whole in English Characters, the Pronunciation being fully indicated. By J. W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S. Third Edition. Fourth Thousand. 32mo, cloth, pp. viii. and 368. 1882. Price 6s.

**\*REDHOUSE.—A SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE OTTOMAN TURKISH LANGUAGE.** By J. W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. xii. and 204. 1884. Price 10s. 6d.

**REDHOUSE.—A TURKISH AND ENGLISH LEXICON.** Showing in English the Signification of the Turkish Terms. By J. W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S. Parts I. to III. Imperial 8vo, paper covers, pp. 960. 1884-85. Price 27s.

## WELSH.

**EVANS.—A DICTIONARY OF THE WELSH LANGUAGE.** By the Rev. D. SILVAN EVANS, B.D., Rector of Llanwrin, Machynlleth, North Wales. Part I., A—AWYS. Royal 8vo, paper, pp. 420. Price 10s. 6d. Part II., B—BYW. Royal 8vo, paper, pp. 192. Price 5s.

LONDON: TRÜBNER & Co., 57 & 59 LUDGATE HILL.

PRINTED BY BALLANTYNE, HANSON AND CO.  
EDINBURGH AND LONDON.

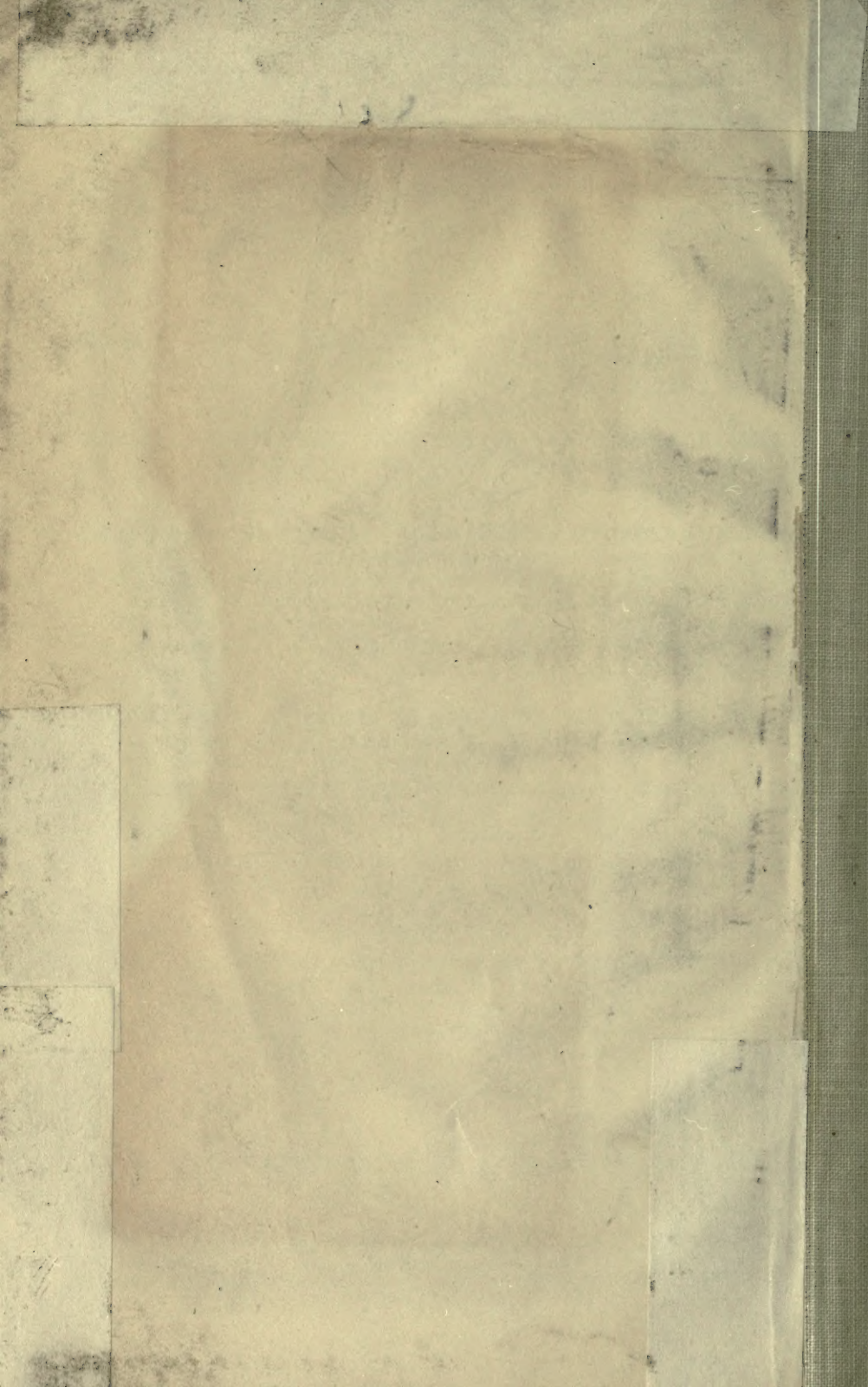


1176

1  
2  
3  
4  
5

6  
7  
8  
9  
10

11





38226

Riola, Henry  
How to learn Russian.  
4th ed., rev.

LaR.Gr.  
R5856h

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
LIBRARY

Do not  
remove  
the card  
from this  
Pocket.

*Send*

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File."  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU



